

GA33-1510-1
File No. S370-01

Systems

**IBM System/370 Model 115
Functional Characteristics**

IBM

Systems

**IBM System/370 Model 115
Functional Characteristics**

IBM

Second Edition (December 1974)

This is a major revision of, and obsoletes, GA33-1510-0 and Technical Newsletters:

GN33-1576

GN33-1579

GN33-1582

GN33-1585

GN33-1589

All information in the manual has been reviewed and changed where necessary to bring it up to date. Changes or additions to text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Changes are periodically made to the information herein; before using this publication in connection with the operation of IBM systems, refer to the latest *IBM System/360 and System/370 Bibliography*, order no. GA22-6822, and associated Technical Newsletters, for the editions that are applicable and current.

Requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form for readers' comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to IBM Laboratories, Product Publications, Dept. 3179, 703 Boeblingen/Wuertt, P.O. Box 210, Germany. Comments become the property of IBM.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1973

Preface

This publication describes the characteristics of the IBM System/370 Model 115, including the central processing unit, multiplexer channel, direct disk attachment, and the integrated attachments and adapters for other input/output devices. Its main purpose is to give systems analysts an understanding of the structure, features, and operations of the system. The manual also provides system programmers with information which is essential when writing and maintaining channel programs and operating systems for the System/370 Model 115.

The information in this manual refers both to systems with an IBM 3115-0 Processing Unit and systems with an IBM 3115-2 Processing Unit. Note that the 3115-0 Processing Unit is equipped with a machine instruction processor (MIP), whereas the 3115-2 has an instruction processing unit (IPU).

In the six chapters of the manual, the characteristics of the Model 115 are described in terms of:

1. The basic system structure.
2. Main storage addressing.
3. The operations which can be performed and the means of manual and program control.
4. Compatibility features.
5. The commands, status and sense information for input/output devices attached other than through the multiplexer channel.
6. The characteristics of the integrated communications adapter.

Appendixes A, B, and C provide (respectively) code tables for the integrated communications adapter, instruction timings, and an example procedure for conversion from 2311 Model 1s to a 3340 disk subsystem. Appendix D gives

some information on magnetic tape unit compatibility; Appendix E gives definitions of the abbreviations and special terms used in this manual.

The reader is assumed to be conversant with the IBM System/370 instruction sets, data formats, channel operations, and basic programming concepts such as status switching and interruption.

Prerequisite Reading

IBM System/370 System Summary, GA22-7001.

IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000.

Associated Publications

IBM System/370 Input/Output Configurator, GA22-7002.

IBM 3115 Processing Unit Integrated Communications Adapter: Configurator, GA33-1513.

General Information - Binary Synchronous Communications, GA27-3004.

IBM System/360 Component Descriptions - 2841 and Associated DASD, GA26-5988.

IBM System/360 Component Descriptions - 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility and 2844 Auxiliary Storage Control, GA26-3599.

Emulating the IBM 1401, 1440 and 1460 on the IBM System/370 Models 145 and 155, Using Disk Operating System/360, GC33-2004.

Emulating the System/360 Model 20 on the System/370 Model 135 Using DOS, GC33-2006.

The titles of other publications that may help the reader appear in *IBM System/360 and System/370 Bibliography*, GA22-6822, and its newsletter, *Accumulative Index of Publications and Programs*, GN20-0360.

Contents

Introduction	1	Line 16	73
OUTLINE OF OPERATION	7	USAGE METERING	74
Operator Console	7	I/O Metering	74
Power On	7	Teleprocessing Metering	74
Initial Program Loading	7		
Machine Operation	7	Compatibility Features	77
Program Execution	7	1401/1440/1460 COMPATIBILITY FEATURE	79
Arithmetic and Logical Instructions	7	2311-1/3340 SERIES COMPATIBILITY FEATURE; 2314/3340 SERIES COMPATIBILITY FEATURE	82
I/O Instructions	7	General Information	82
Interruptions	7	Method of Emulation	82
Manual Operations	7	Mapping Schemes	82
		Command Execution Scheme	84
Main Storage Addressing	11	Conversion from 2311-1 or 2314 to 3340	84.1
		Normal Job Processing	85
System Control	17	Emulated 2311 and 2314 Commands	85
PROGRAM STATUS WORDS	18	Seek Commands	85
PSW in BC Mode	18	'Recalibrate' Command	86
Loading a BC Mode PSW	18	'Set File Mask' Command	86
Changing Bits in the BC Mode PSW	18	Search Commands	87
BC Mode PSW Errors	18	Read Commands	88
PSW in EC Mode	20	Write Commands	89
Loading an EC Mode PSW	20	'Space Count' Command	90
Changing Bits in the EC Mode PSW	20	'Sense' Command	90
EC Mode PSW Errors	20	'Control No-op' Command	91
CONTROL REGISTERS	22	'Transfer-in-Channel' Command	91
Block Multiplexing Control	22	2311-2314/3340 Feature Status Information	91
Monitoring	22	Channel Status	91
Program Event Recording	22	Unit Status	92
Successful Branch	22	2311-2314/3340 Feature Sense Information	93
Instruction Fetching	23	Sense Byte 0	93
Storage Alteration	23	Sense Byte 1	94
General Register Alteration	23	Sense Byte 2	94
Error Recovery Enhancement	23	Sense Byte 3	94
FIXED AREAS IN MAIN STORAGE	32	Sense Byte 4	95
Machine-check Logout	32	Sense Byte 5	95
INTERRUPTION MECHANISM	41	2311-2314/3340 Feature Input/Output Instructions	95
TIMERS	42	Start I/O	95
OPERATOR CONSOLE	47	Test I/O	95
Mode Selection	61	Test Channel	95
Mode Selection Errors	61	Halt I/O, Halt Device	95
Operating Modes	61	1403/3203 CARRIAGE CONTROL FEATURE	96
System Reset (R)	61	Switching The Feature On and Off	96
Address Compare (C)	62	Console Operations	96
Program Load (L)	62	MODEL-DEPENDENT INFORMATION	97
Interval Timer (T)	63	Timers	97
Check Control (K)	63	Resolution	97
Storage Dump (D)	64	Damage	97
ICA Line Mode (E)	64	Updating of CPU Timer	97
Alter/Display (A)	66	Instructions	97
Instruction Step (I)	68	Start I/O Fast Release	97
Restart (P)	69	Diagnose	97
Maintenance (M)	69	'Halt Device' on the Byte-Multiplexer Channel	97
Store Status (S)	69	'Read Direct' and 'Write Direct'	97
Save Usage Counters (U)	69	Channel Available Interruption	97
Printer Forms (F)	69	Check-Stop Control	97
Machine Status Area	71	Check-Reset Function	97
Line 13	71	Error Logging	97
Line 14	72	Multiprocessing	97
Line 15	72	Automatic Reference and Change Recording	98

Handling of Invalid CBC during Machine-Check	98	Sense Byte 2	132
Main Storage	98	Sense Byte 3	133
Keys in Storage	98	Sense Byte 4	133
Registers	98	Sense Byte 5	133
Timers	98	3203 Error Recovery	134
Unit Deletion Due to Machine-Check	98	Unit Check in CSW	134
Input/Output Characteristics	99	Unit Exception in CSW	135
INPUT/OUTPUT OPERATIONS	99	Channel Data Check in CSW	135
Channel Organization	99	Channel Control Check in CSW	135
Channel 0	102	IBM 3340 DIRECT ACCESS STORAGE FACILITY,	
Channel 1	102	MODELS A2, B1, AND B2	136
Channel 2	102	3340 Commands	136
Channels 3, 4, and 5	102	Read Commands	136
Device Selection	102	Non-formatting Write Commands	138
Multiplexer Channel	102	Formatting Write Commands	139
INPUT/OUTPUT CONTROL	107	Search Commands	140
Input/Output Instructions	107	Sense Commands	141
Start I/O	107	Control Commands	142
Halt I/O	107	Block Multiplexing	145
Halt Device	107	3340 String Switch (for 3115-2 Models)	145
Test I/O	109	String Switch Operation	145
Test Channel	109	Effect of String Switch on DOS/VS	146.1
Store Channel ID	109	3340 Track and Record Formats	146.1
Input/Output Commands	110	Record Zero	146.1
IBM 2560 MULTI-FUNCTION CARD MACHINE,		Track Capacity	146.2
MODELS A1 AND A2	111	3340 Status Information	148
2560 Commands	111	Unit Status	148
Read Commands	111	Channel Status	149
Punch Commands	113	3340 Sense Information	149
Load Commands	115	Sense Byte 0	149
Write Commands	116	Sense Byte 1	150
Stacker Select Commands	118	Sense Byte 2	151
Other Commands	119	Sense Byte 3	151
Cycle Definitions	119	Sense Byte 4	152
2560 Status Information	120	Sense Byte 5	152
Unit Status	120	Sense Byte 6	152
Channel Status	120	Sense Byte 7	152
2560 Sense Information	122	Sense Bytes 8 to 23	152
Sense Byte 0	122	3340 Error Recovery	154
Sense Byte 1	123	Unit Check in CSW	154
Sense Byte 2	123	IBM 3410 MAGNETIC TAPE UNIT, MODELS 1, 2, AND 3;	
Sense Bytes 3, 4, and 5	124	IBM 3411 MAGNETIC TAPE UNIT AND CONTROL,	
Sense Byte 3	124	MODELS 1, 2, AND 3	157
Sense Byte 4	124	3410/3411 Commands	157
Sense Byte 5	124	3410/3411 Status Information	161
Sense Byte 6	125	Unit Status	161
2560 Error Recovery	125	Channel Status	161
Unit Check in CSW	125	3410/3411 Sense Information	162
Channel Data Check in the CSW	126	Sense Byte 0	162
Channel Control Check in the CSW	126	Sense Byte 1	164
IBM 3203 PRINTER, MODELS 1 AND 2	127	Sense Byte 2	164
3203 Commands	127	Sense Byte 3	164
Write Commands	127	Sense Byte 4	165
Carriage Control Commands	127	Sense Byte 5	166
UCS Commands	129	Sense Byte 6	166
'Control No-op' Command	130	Sense Byte 7	167
Sense Commands	130	Sense Byte 8	167
3203 Status Information	130	3410/3411 Error Recovery	167
Unit Status	130	IBM 3803 TAPE CONTROL, MODEL 3; IBM 3420	
Channel Status	131	MAGNETIC TAPE UNITS, MODELS 3 OR 5	167.1
3203 Sense Information	131	3803-3/3420 Subsystem Commands	167.1
Sense Byte 0	131	3803-3/3420 Subsystem Status Information	167.6
Sense Bytes 1 to 5	132	Unit Status	167.6
Sense Byte 1	132	Channel Status	167.6
		3803-3/3420 Subsystem Sense Information	167.7

Sense Bytes 0 to 8	167.7	IBM TERMINAL CONTROL – TYPE 1	203
Sense Bytes 9 to 23	167.7	Characteristics	203
IBM 5203 PRINTER MODEL 3	168	Line Control Characters	203
5203 Character Sets	168	Transmission Code	203
Dualing	168	Commands	203
5203 Commands	168	Unit Status	209
Write Commands	168	Sense Information	210
Carriage Control Commands	168	IBM TERMINAL CONTROL – TYPE 2	212
UCS Commands	171	Characteristics	212
Control No-Op Command	172	Line Control Characters	212
Read Commands	172	Transmission Code	212
Sense Command	172	Commands	212
5203 Status Information	172	Unit Status	215
Unit Status	172	Sense Information	215
Channel Status	173	TELEGRAPH TERMINAL CONTROL – TYPE 1	216
5203 Sense Information	173	Characteristics	216
Sense Byte 0	173	Line Control Characters	216
Sense Byte 1	174	Transmission Code	216
Sense Byte 2	174	Commands	216
Sense Byte 3	175	Unit Status	219
Sense Byte 4	175	Sense Information	220
Sense Byte 5	175	TELEGRAPH TERMINAL CONTROL – TYPE 2	221
5203 Error Recovery	176	Characteristics	221
Unit Check in CSW	176	Line Control Characters	221
Unit Exception in CSW	176	Transmission Code	221
Channel Data Check in CSW	177	Commands	221
Channel Control Check in CSW	177	Unit Status	224
IBM 5425 MULTI-FUNCTION CARD UNIT, MODELS A1 AND A2	178	Sense Information	224
5425 Commands	178	WORLD TRADE LEASED TELEGRAPH LINE CONTROL	226
Read Commands	178	Characteristics	226
Write Commands	182	Line Control Characters	226
Control Commands	183	Transmission Code	226
5425 Status Information	184	Commands	226
Unit Status	184	Unit Status	228
Channel Status	185	Sense Information	228
5425 Sense Information	185	BINARY SYNCHRONOUS COMMUNICATION CONTROL	230
Sense Byte 0	185	Characteristics	230
Sense Byte 1	186	Line Control Characters	230
Sense Byte 2	186	Line Transmission Code	230
Sense Byte 3	187	Commands	230
Sense Byte 4	188	Unit Status	237
Sense Byte 5	188	Sense Information	237
Sense Bytes 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10	189	ICA INLINE TEST AND CONTROL PROCEDURES	240
5425 Error Recovery	189	Appendix A. ICA Code Tables	241
Unit Check in CSW	189	Appendix B. Instruction Timings for Processing Unit	249
MODEL 115 CONSOLE	191	3115-0 Models	249
Video Display Commands	191	3115-2 Models	256
Command Descriptions	191	Appendix C. Conversion from 2311-1 to 3340; Job Example	257
Video Display Control Characters	194	Initialize 3340	257
Video Display Status Information	196	Job Control Statements	257
Unit Status	196	Clear Disk and Preformat 3340	257
Channel Status	197	Job Control Statements	257
Video Display Sense Information	197	Initialize 2311	257
Sense Byte 0	197	Job Control Statements	257
Video Display Error Recovery	197	Appendix D. Transfer of Old DOS Releases (3410/3411 Compatibility)	259
Console Printer Commands	198	Preparing and Reading in the Control Cards	259
Command Descriptions	198	Testing	259
Console Printer Status Information	199	Appendix E. Definitions	261
Unit Status	199	Abbreviations	261
Channel Status	200	Glossary	262
Console Printer Sense Information	200	Index	265
Sense Byte 0	200		
Console Printer Error Recovery	200		
Teleprocessing Facilities	201		
INTEGRATED COMMUNICATIONS ADAPTER – INTRODUCTION	201		

Illustrations

<i>Figure</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Figure</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Page</i>
1	System Profile	2	56	Mapping Scheme for 2311 and 2314 Emulation	83
2	System Features	3	57	3348 Cylinder Assignment	84
3	CPU Concept	4	58	Variations of Real Main Storage Boundary	85
4	Configurator	5	59	Emulated 2311 and 2314 Commands	86
5	Simplified Data Flow (3115-0 Models)	6	60	Carriage Control Feature – Function Selection Display	96
5.1	Simplified Data Flow (3115-2 Models)	6.1	61	Integrated Adapters and Attachments	100
6	Video Display – Mode Selection	8	62	Channel Organization	101
7	Video Display – Program Load	8	63	Channel 0 Definition	102
8	Video Display – Main Storage Address Compare	8	64	Addressing I/O Devices Operating in Channel 0	103
9	Types of Main Storage Addressing	12	65	Address Bytes for Byte-Multiplexer Subchannel	105
10	Dynamic Address Translation Overview	13	66	Additional Information on CCWs	108
11	Dynamic Address Translation Step 1	14	67	2560 Commands	111
12	Dynamic Address Translation Step 2	15	68	Typical Situations in 2560 Card Path	112
13	Dynamic Address Translation Step 3	16	69	Read and Feed Timing	113
14	Program Status Word (BC Mode)	19	70	Punch or Punch and Feed Timing	114
15	Program Status Word (EC Mode)	21	71	Write Card Timing	116
16	Control Registers Overview	24	72	Command Sequence during Write Operation	117
17	Relationship between EC Mode PSW Masks and Control Registers	25	73	3203 Write Commands	127
18	Control Register 0	26	74	3203 – Carriage Control Space and Skip Commands	128
19	Control Registers 1 and 2	27	75	3203 – Carriage Control Buffer Byte Codes	128
20	Control Register 8	28	76	3203 UCS Commands	129
21	Control Register 9	29	77	Characteristics of 3348 Data Modules	136
22	Control Registers 10 and 11	30	78	3340 Commands	137
23	Control Register 14	31	79	3340 Disk Addressing	143
24	Fixed Areas in Main Storage	33	80	3340 Record Formats	146
25	Main Storage Locations 132–143	34	81	3340 Disk Record Sub-Areas	147
26	Main Storage Locations 144–171	35	82	3340 – How Sense Byte 7 Specifies the Format of Sense Bytes 8 to 23	152
27	Main Storage Locations 176–179	36	83	3410/3411 Commands	157
28	Main Storage Locations 184–231	37	84	Command Codes for Set Mode 1 Commands	160
29	Main Storage Locations 232–239	38	85	Conditions of Setting Data Converter Bit	163
30	Main Storage Locations 248–263	39	85.1	3803/3420 Commands	167.1
31	Main Storage Locations 352–511	40	85.2	Command Codes for Set Mode 1 Commands	167.4
32	Additional Information on Interruptions	41	85.3	Sense Bytes 0 to 8	167.7
33	Interval Timer	43	86	EBCDIC Codes of Graphics Dually on the 5203	168
34	Time-of-Day Clock	44	87	Characters Printed from EBCDIC for a 48 AN or 48 HN Train	169
35	CPU Timer	45	88	5203 Write Commands	170
36	Clock Comparator	46	89	5203 – Carriage Control Space and Skip Commands	170
37	Operator Console	48	90	5203 – Carriage Control Buffer Byte Codes	170
38	Console Keyboard	49	91	5203 UCS Commands	171
39	Alphanumeric Keys	50	92	5425 Commands	178
40	Cursor Control	51	93	Typical Situations in 5425 Card Path	179
41	Backspace and Tabulator Keys	52	94	96-column Card Code Superimposed on EBCDIC	180
42	Function Keys (Left-hand Side of Keyboard)	53	95	Revised Katakana	181
43	Function Keys (Right-hand Side of Keyboard)	54	96	5425 – Checks in Sense Byte 3	187
44	Control Panel	55	97	5425 – Functions of Sense Byte 4	188
45	Control Panel Keys	56	98	Video Display Commands	191
46	Control Panel Keys and Switch	57	99	Video Display Control Characters and Display Characters	192
47	Control Panel Lights	58	100	Console Printer Commands	198
48	Video Display	59	101	ICA Overview Configurator and Line Addressing	202
49	Mode Displays	60	102	Commands for Type 1 Terminals	204
50	Machine Status Display	70	103	Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 1050 Data Communication System	206
51	Usage Metering	75	104	Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 1060 Data Communication System	207
52	I/O Device Compatibility with System/360	77			
53	Model 20 Compatibility Feature	78			
54	1401/1440/1460 Compatibility Feature	80			
55	Transferring Existing Programs to the Model 115	81			

<i>Figure</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Page</i>
105	Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 2740 Communication Terminal . . .	208
106	Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 2741 Communication Terminal . . .	208
107	Commands for Type 2 Terminals	212
108	Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 2 with 1030 Data Collection System	214
109	Commands for Type 1 Telegraph Terminals	216
110	Line Control Sequences for Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 1 with AT & T 83B2/83B3 and Western Union Plan 115A Terminals	218
111	Commands for Type 2 Telegraph Terminals	221
112	Line Control Sequences for Telegraph Terminal – Type 2 with Paper Tape Reader and TWX Models 33/35	223
113	Commands for World Trade Leased Telegraph Line Control	226
114	BSC Commands	231
115	Code Structure for 1050 Data Communication System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations	241
116	Code Structure for 1060 Data Communication System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations	242

<i>Figure</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Page</i>
117	Code Structure for 2740 Communications Terminal or 2741 Communication in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations	243
118	Code Structure for 1030 Data Collection System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 2 Operations	244
119	Code Structure for AT & T 83B2/83B3 Terminals and Western Union Plan 115A Terminals in Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations	245
120	Eight-Level TWX Code for Standard Keyboard Arrangement in Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 2 Operations	246
121	EBCDIC, as used for Binary Synchronous Communication Control	247
122	ASCII, as used for Binary Synchronous Communication Control	248

Note: The illustrations in this manual have a code number to the right of the caption. This is a publishing control number and is unrelated to the subject matter.

Introduction

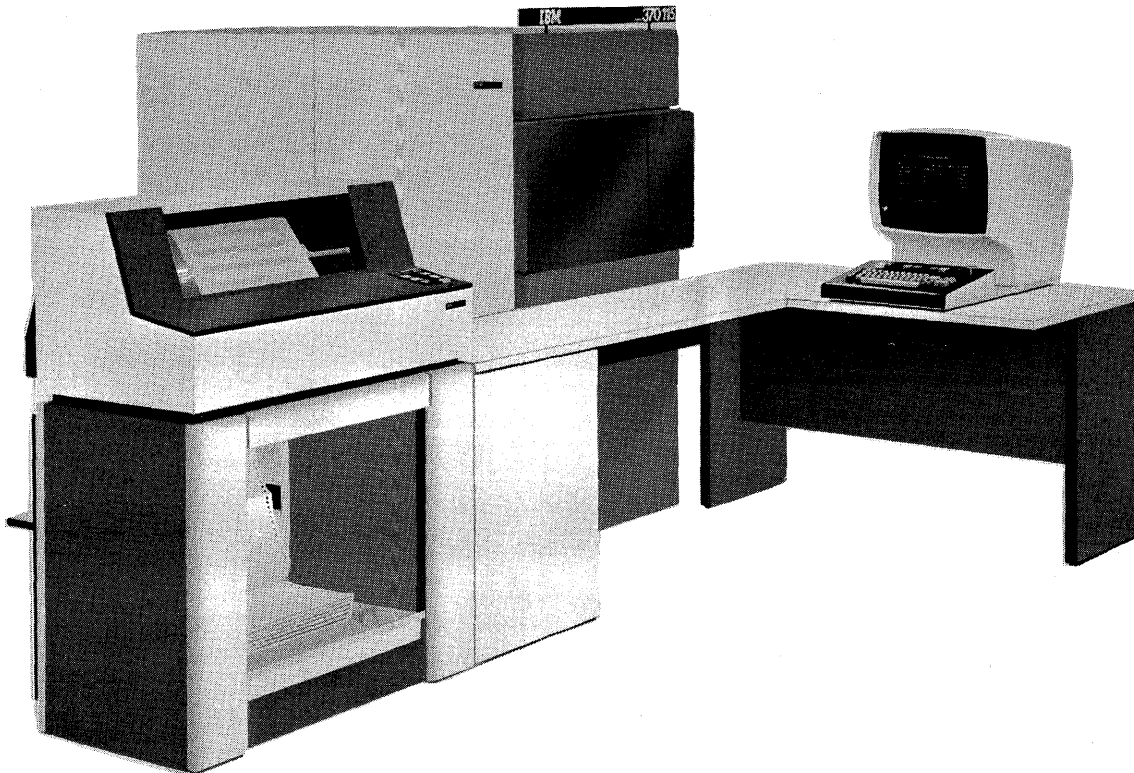
This chapter contains general information on the IBM System/370 Model 115. The following graphic pages show:

- The features of the system (Figures 1 and 2)
- The concept of the central processing unit (CPU) – the IBM 3115 Processing Unit (Figure 3)
- The system configuration (Figure 4)
- | ● Simplified data flow (Figures 5 and 5.1).

The chapter closes with a short description of System/370 Model 115 operation.

A general-purpose data processing system of wide application – the low-cost entry into the System/370

System/370 Model 115



Applications

Commercial, scientific and teleprocessing

Compatibility

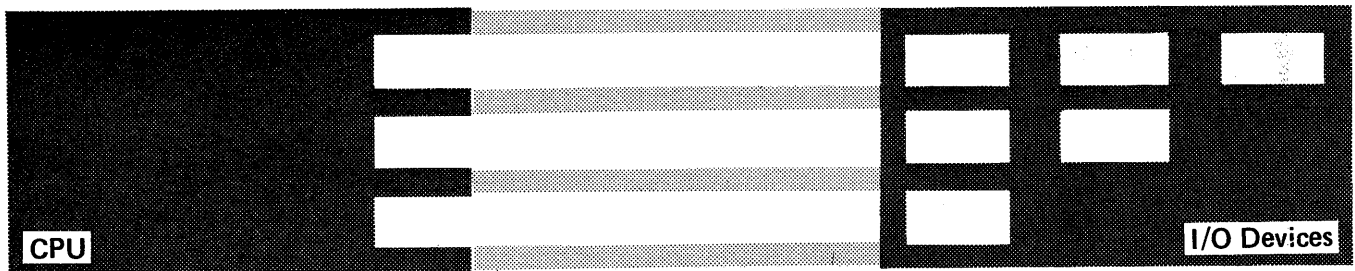
- Compatibility with IBM System/360
- Upward compatibility with IBM System/370
- Features available for compatibility with:
 - IBM System/360 Model 20
 - IBM 1401/1440/1460 Data Processing Systems
- Features available for compatibility with:
 - Disk Operating System (DOS)
 - IBM 2311 Disk Storage Drive, Model 1
 - IBM 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility
 - IBM 1052 Printer-Keyboard
- Carriage control feature available for compatibility of IBM 3203 Printer with IBM 1403 Printer

System Profile

Figure 1. System Profile [10780D]

The Model 115 consists of the 3115 Processing Unit (with main storage, addressing and instruction processing facilities), connected to a number of input/output (I/O) devices. The 3115-0 models have a machine instruction processor (MIP), which executes instructions and controls the IBM 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility; the 3115-2 models have an instruction processing unit (IPU) in place of the MIP, and a separate input/output processor (IOP) to control the 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility.

All I/O devices appear to be channel-attached and are programmed accordingly. Operations begin with a 'start I/O' instruction and are implemented through channel command words (CCWs).



Specialized integrated adapters, integrated attachments, a direct disk attachment, and a standardized channel are used for attaching I/O devices. The integrated adapters, attachments, and the channel work like System/360 channels. For programming purposes, the I/O attachment facilities are considered to consist of three channels.

System Features

Figure 2. System Features [10781A]

Model 115 Design

The Model 115 has a decentralized design and consists of several independent subprocessors grouped round the main storage. A specialized unit therefore exists for each main system function, and there is little interference within the system.

A Main Storage

- Nondestructive readout
- Storage cycle 480 nanoseconds (ns) per halfword
- Storage sizes (in bytes):

65,536	131,072	196,608
98,304	163,840	262,144
		393,216

All storage has automatic correction of single bit errors, and detection (but not correction) of double bit errors. No extra cycle is required for the automatic correction.

Main Storage Controller

The main storage controller (MSC) controls access to main storage. The MSC is composed of circuitry and has no microprogram. Subprocessors may request access at any time. At regular intervals the MSC examines requests and accepts the one with the highest priority, as follows:

HIGH	11 = Address stop
PRIORITY	10 = (Not used)
	9 = Multiplexer channel
	8 = Integrated communications adapter (ICA)
	7 = Direct disk attachment
	6 = (Not used)
	5 = Magnetic tape adapter
	4 = (Not used)
	3 = Integrated card input/output and printer attachments
	2 = Spare
	1 = Service processor
LOW	0 = Machine instruction processor
PRIORITY	or instruction processing unit

B Machine Instruction Processor (MIP) (3115-0 Models Only)

- Fetches and executes program instructions
- Carries out arithmetic/logical instructions entirely
- Analyzes I/O instructions so that the I/O processor can be selected
- Calculates addresses, sets condition codes, updates PSW
- Controls the 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility.

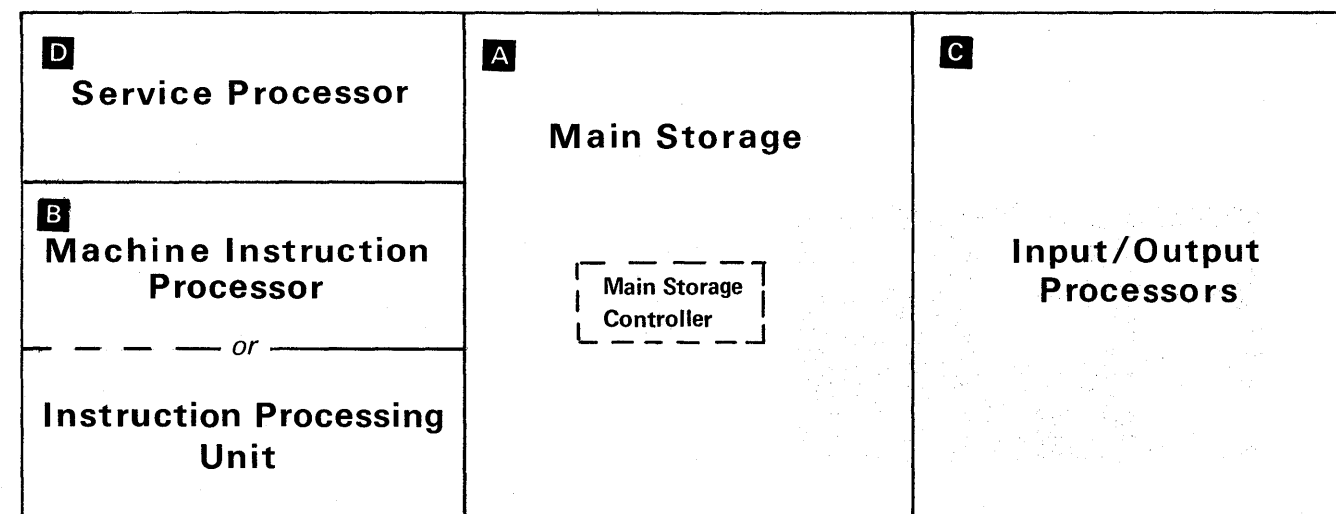
The MIP has a similar internal structure to that of an I/O processor, and uses a byte-wide data flow. To fulfill its tasks, the MIP includes special hardware such as:

- A byte-sized shift unit
 - A six correction unit
 - An expanded local storage
 - An expanded control storage
 - A translation look-aside buffer with 8 associative arrays.
- With these hardware and microprogram enhancements, the MIP is able to process more instructions than can be processed by an I/O processor, and can handle the full complement of System/370 instructions.

B Instruction Processing Unit (IPU) (3115-2 Models Only)

- Fetches and executes program instructions
- Carries out arithmetical/logical instructions entirely
- Analyzes I/O instructions so that the I/O processor can be selected
- Calculates addresses, sets condition codes, updates PSW, handles interrupts.

The IPU is a microprogram-controlled subprocessor with a data flow and an ALU one halfword wide. The microprogram is loaded into the IPU control storage by the service processor. A microinstruction is processed in 480 nanoseconds. Information is processed through two data registers which may be loaded from the MSC, the IPU local storage, the shift unit, external data, or from immediate data in a microinstruction. The data is processed in the ALU, and the results are sent back to main storage and/or IPU local storage.



Addressing

Main storage is addressed through address registers in the MSC local storage. Each subprocessor has two or more address registers (not available to the programmer). On a request from a subprocessor, the MSC uses the contents of the assigned register to address main storage. During access, the MSC updates the main storage address, and later returns it to the original local storage register. Thus, a subprocessor provides only the start address of the data field.

The MSC also notifies the requesting subprocessors of selection, data validity, and of errors such as protection violation, bad parity, and violation of the upper storage limit. Communication between the subprocessors and the MSC is over a data bus, a control bus, and direct control lines.

C Input/Output Processors (IOPs)

- Execute I/O commands
- Supervise data transfer between the addressed I/O device and MSC.

An IOP is a subprocessor with its own microprogram storage, ALU, internal and external work registers, and clock. It operates on a cycle of 450 nanoseconds. All IOPs have the same design. To meet the special needs of a connected I/O device, they are supplemented by a "front end" which is compatible with the I/O interface, over which signals pass to and from the device. Special microprograms are loaded to service attached I/O devices, and several microprograms can run concurrently in one IOP in "time-slicing" mode. Each identical IOP thus performs a different task, representing an attachment, adapter, or the multiplexer channel.

D Service Processor (SVP)

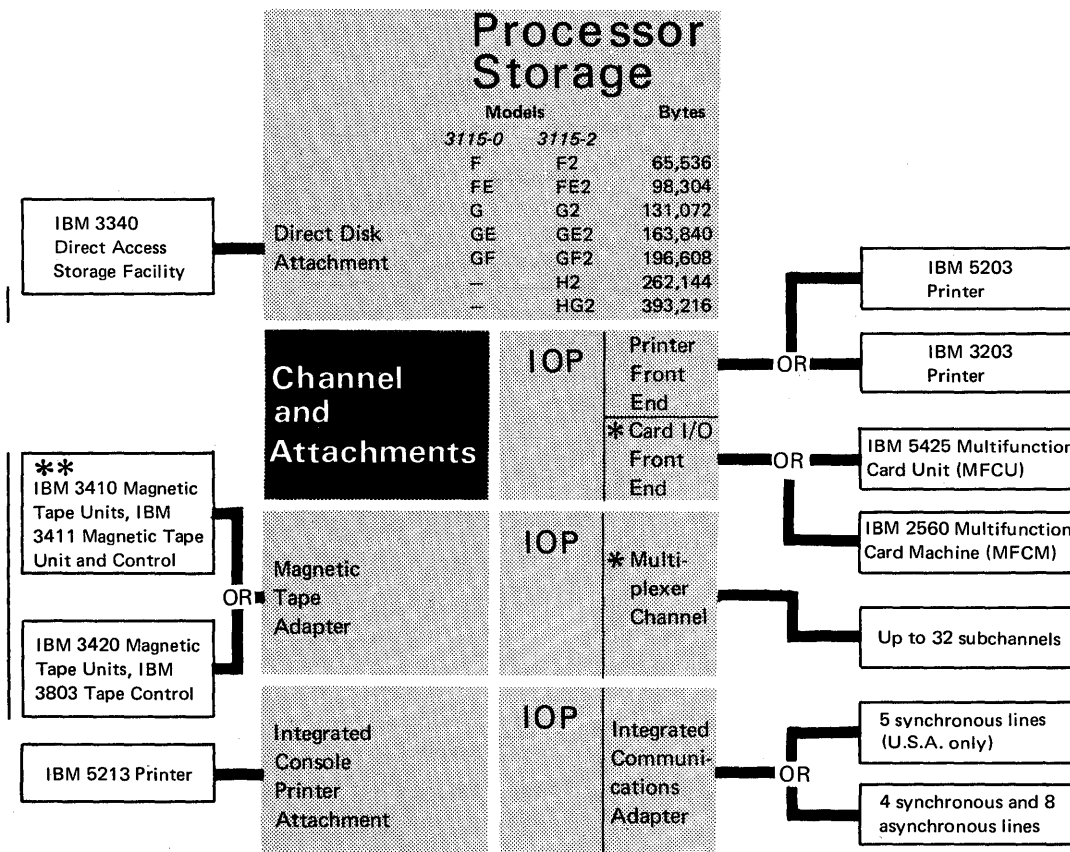
- Loads microprograms into all subprocessors (including itself)
- Provides the link between the operator and the system
- Reloads microprograms upon request from any IOP, logs error conditions and reads them out later for program analysis.

The SVP is a microprogram-controlled subprocessor with a data flow and ALU one byte wide. The small "bootstrap" program in read-only storage allows the SVP to load its own main microprogram from the console file. This file also stores the microprograms of the other subprocessors, and provides space for error logging.

The SVP contains local storage for handling data, and the circuitry for operating the console file and the operator console.

CPU Concept

Figure 3. CPU Concept [10782F]



* If you wish to install an integrated card I/O attachment *and* a multiplexer channel in a 3115, request a price quotation (an RPO) from IBM. Without this RPO, you can install either the card I/O attachment or the multiplexer channel but not both.

** A 3410/3411 magnetic tape subsystem cannot be attached to a 3115-2 Model HG2 unless you request a price quotation from IBM.

Features

Standard

Direct disk attachment (with block multiplexing)
System/370 commercial instruction set
Byte-oriented operands
Store and fetch protection
Error correction and checking for main storage
Extended control mode
Dynamic address translation
Indirect data addressing
Program event recording
Monitor call
Interval timer
TOD clock, CPU timer, clock comparator
CPU and channel identification
Limited channel logout

Optional

External signals (3115-0 models only)
Floating point instruction set

Extended-precision floating point

Byte multiplexer channel

Integrated card I/O attachment

Integrated adapters for:

Magnetic tape units

Telecommunications

Integrated attachments for:

Line printer

Console printer

Features for compatibility with

System/360 Model 20

IBM 1401/1440/1460 Data Processing Systems

IBM 1052 Printer-Keyboard

IBM 2311 Disk Storage Drive, Model 1 (with 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility)

IBM 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility (with 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility)

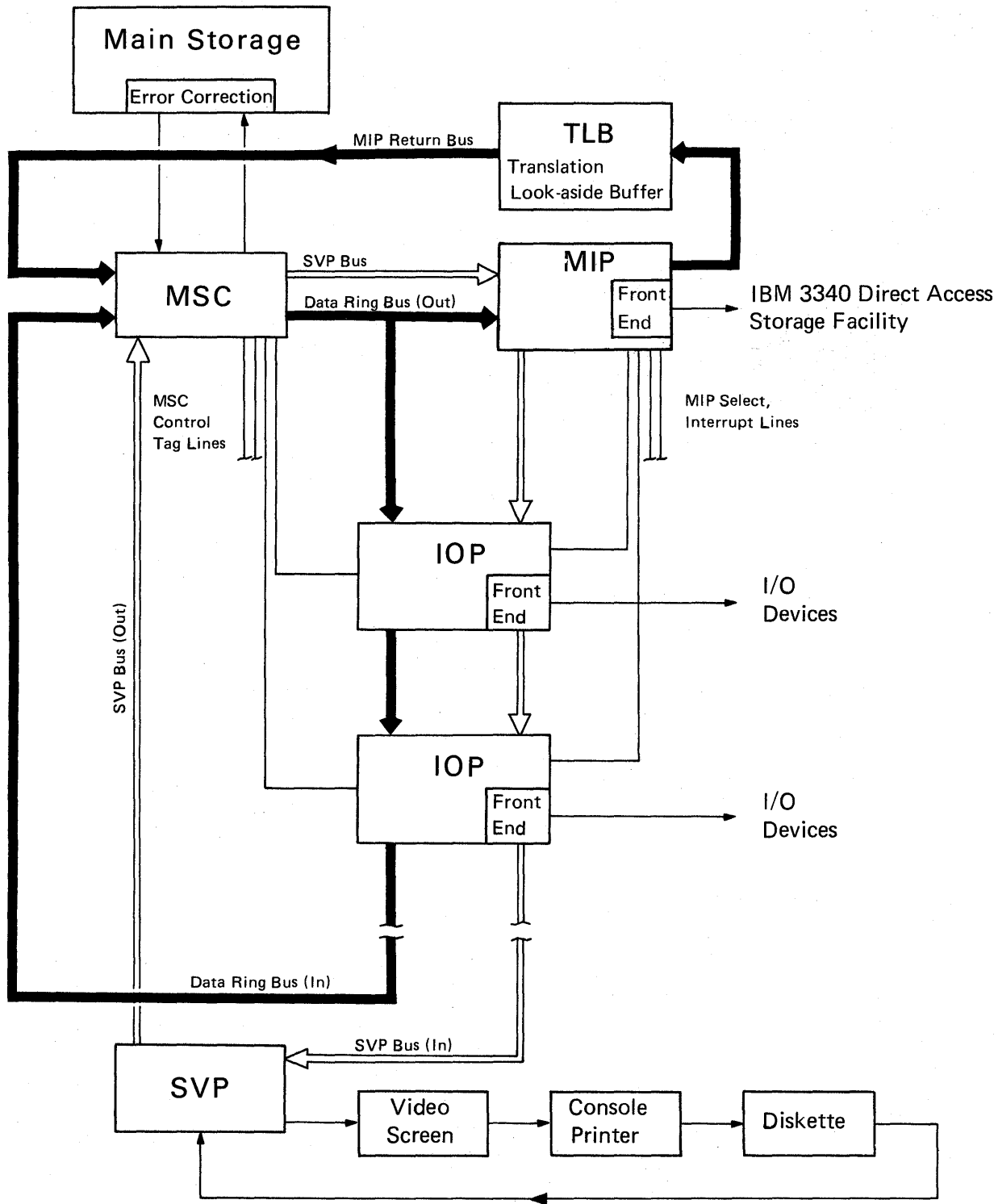
Carriage operation on IBM 1403 Printer (with carriage operation on 3203 Printer)

3340 fixed-head feature

String switch for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility (for 3115-2 models only)

Configurator

Figure 4. Configurator [10783G]



Simplified Data Flow

(3115-0 Models)

Figure 5. Simplified Data Flow [19568B]

Outline of Operation

The Model 115 is generally under the control of an operating system. To prepare the system for operation, however, and also to check details and enter information, action must be taken by the operator.

OPERATOR CONSOLE

The operator controls the system by means of an operator console, which consists of a video display with a keyboard and control panel. The video screen displays the state of the machine in clear text. The keyboard allows the operator to display and alter registers and storage locations, or to enter new information.

POWER ON

To make the system operational, the operator must first press the POWER ON key. The key lights up red and remains red until the power-on sequence is completed, when it changes to white. The control storages of the various subprocessors are then automatically loaded, and corresponding messages such as 'MIP/IPU Loaded' appear on the screen. When loading is completed, the Model 115 is in manual mode and the operator can take over.

INITIAL PROGRAM LOADING

After the control storages have been loaded with microprogram, the program load display for the operator appears on the screen. Into this display, the operator keys the address of the device from which the program is to be entered. He must then make sure that the program medium (for example, magnetic tape or punched cards) is loaded into the device and that the device is ready. When he presses the ENTER key, loading begins and the screen is available to the operating system.

MACHINE OPERATION

As soon as the program is loaded, the machine takes over and the program is executed. From time to time, the operating system may send messages which are displayed on the video screen and/or printed out on the console printer (if installed). The operator may have to respond to these messages by keying in specifications.

Program Execution

Before the Model 115 executes a program, it must first analyze the current program status word. Depending on the setting of the PSW bits, interruptions will be allowed or disallowed, and certain modes will be set. The PSW also contains the address of the next instruction to be processed. This instruction is fetched by the machine

instruction processor, which analyzes the operation code (op code) to find out which operation must be performed next.

Arithmetic and Logical Instructions

If the next instruction to be processed is arithmetic or logical, the MIP/IPU executes it (that is, a result is produced and placed in main storage, and a condition code showing the outcome is set). The program can use the condition code to branch to a specific routine.

I/O Instructions

If the next instruction to be executed is an input/output instruction, the MIP/IPU transfers it to the input/output processor responsible for the addressed I/O device. By means of a condition code, a response is sent through the IOP, allowing the program to branch, check on the actual condition (indicated in the CSW), or proceed normally.

The MIP/IPU waits only for the initial response, then fetches the next instruction. Thus the IOP is left to process the I/O command independently. In this way, the data transfer from or to main storage and the actions controlling the device are performed at the same time as logical operations in the MIP/IPU.

Interruptions

When an IOP has executed a command, it attempts to inform the program by requesting an interruption from the MIP/IPU. The MIP/IPU is prepared for such requests because, before executing each instruction, it checks whether interruptions are allowed. If they are allowed, the MIP/IPU scans for the interruption requests, and if the interruption request line (from all IOPs to the MIP/IPU) is active, it does not execute the next sequential instruction, but switches instead to a new PSW.

By introducing a new PSW, the MIP/IPU has also brought in a new address for the next sequential instruction. Consequently, the MIP/IPU fetches an instruction from a different storage location owing to the switching of the PSWs, and the interruption has the effect of a program branch.

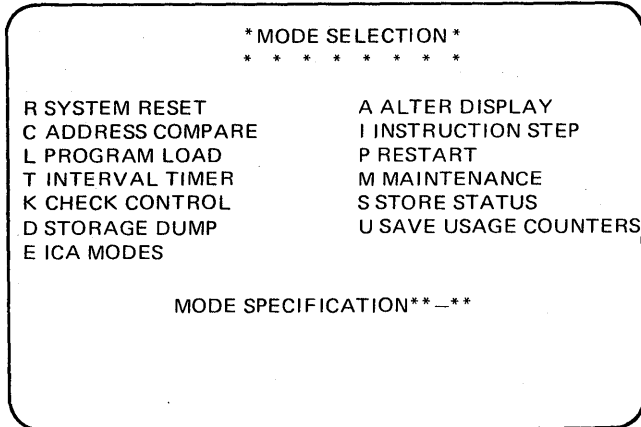
The program branch is usually to a routine which examines the interruption code in the old PSW to determine the interruption source. If the source was, for example, an I/O device which had finished delivering data to main storage, the program will now process this data. When the processing is completed, the program will restore the old PSW as the current PSW, thus continuing at the point of interruption.

Manual Operations

Manual operations are those performed by the operator and not by the program. First, the operator brings the mode selection display onto the video screen by pressing the

MODE SEL (mode selection) key. The 3115 Processing Unit does not stop, but the screen is now no longer available for messages from the operating system.

The mode selection display (Figure 6) shows the repertoire of modes (with selector characters) which are available to the operator. The operator selects a mode by keying in the selector character at the keyboard and pressing the ENTER key.



Note: When the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is installed, 'F PRINTER FORMS' appears in place of 'D STORAGE DUMP'.

Figure 6. Video Display - Mode Selection [10785A]

The following paragraphs describe, as examples, the actions the operator must take to select and to perform operations in two typical modes. For further information, see the description of mode selection in the "Operator Controls" section of "System Control".

Program Load

If the manual operation to be performed is program load, the operator must select 'L' (by pressing 'L' on the keyboard) and then press the ENTER key. The program load display (Figure 7) will then appear on the screen. The operator enters the address of the device from which the program is to be loaded by means of the alphameric keys, and the selected address appears in hexadecimal characters on the screen under 'Channel', 'Control Unit', and 'Device'.

Program loading begins with a system reset which the operator can specify as "normal" or "clear" by keying in 'N' or 'C'. In normal loading, the general registers, floating point registers, control registers, and main storage contents remain unchanged but the parity is made valid in all registers. In clear loading, these facilities are reset to zero (with valid parity), except the control registers, which are initialized.

Providing no errors have been made and the selected device is loaded and ready, pressing the ENTER key will now cause program loading to commence.

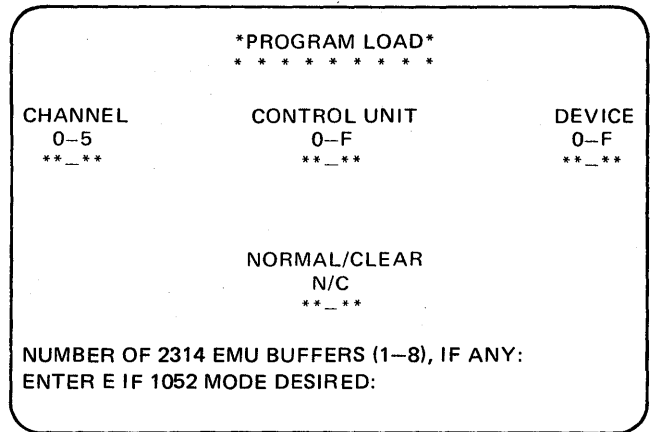


Figure 7. Video Display - Program Load [10786B]

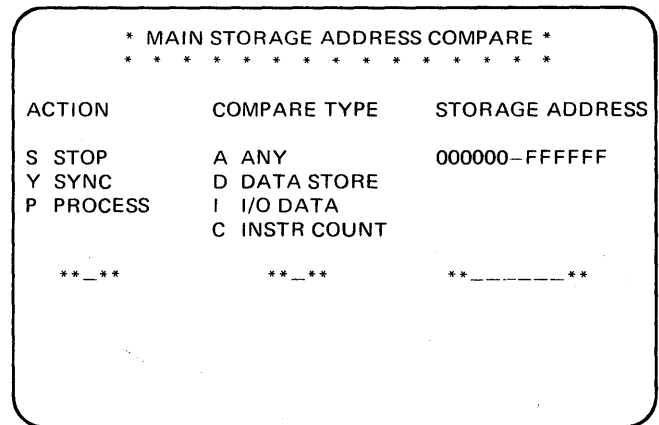


Figure 8. Video Display - Main Storage Address Compare [10787]

Address Compare

If the operator wishes to perform an address compare operation, he must first key 'C' into the mode selection display and then press ENTER. The main storage address compare display (Figure 8) will appear on the screen.

Under 'Storage Address', the operator keys in the main storage address which is the subject of the address compare operation (the search address). Under the 'Compare Type' heading, the operator keys in a code letter which represents one of four possible types of compare operation.

1. *Any (A)*. If the operator keys in code 'A', all addresses used in the system are checked against the search address.
2. *Data Store (D)*. If the operator keys in code 'D', only addresses used by the CPU to store data into main storage are compared with the search address.
3. *I/O Data (I)*. If the operator keys in code 'I', only addresses used in transferring data to and from input/output devices are compared with the search address.

4. *Instr Count (C)*. If the operator keys in code 'C', only addresses used by the CPU to fetch instructions (instruction count) are compared with the search address.

Under the 'Action' heading, the operator keys in a code letter which represents the action the machine should take when an address match occurs. If the operator keys in code 'S' (stop), the machine halts as if the STOP key had been pressed. If code 'Y' (sync) is keyed in, a signal is made available for the customer engineer. If code 'P' (process) is keyed in, address compare mode is turned off, and the Model 115 is restored to normal processing.

Main Storage Addressing

In the System/370 the addressable main storage is not confined to the storage bytes physically installed in the CPU. These bytes of "real storage" are supplemented by a large area of "virtual storage" on an external file. By this arrangement programmers can address up to 16,777,216 bytes of storage, even though the installed storage is, for example, only 98,304 bytes.

When bytes of virtual storage are addressed by the program they are automatically called into main storage on a "page" of information, and their addresses are adjusted by a translation process.

The Model 115 contains a translation look-aside buffer (TLB) which assists in the translation process. The operation of the TLB is automatic and transparent to the programmer. The TLB stores up to 8 virtual page addresses (for 3115-0 models) or 16 virtual page addresses (for 3115-2 models) and the corresponding real addresses, so that real addresses can be automatically substituted for virtual addresses that have already been translated. Thanks to this procedure, the three-step translation process for a 16K or 32K storage block can often be avoided.

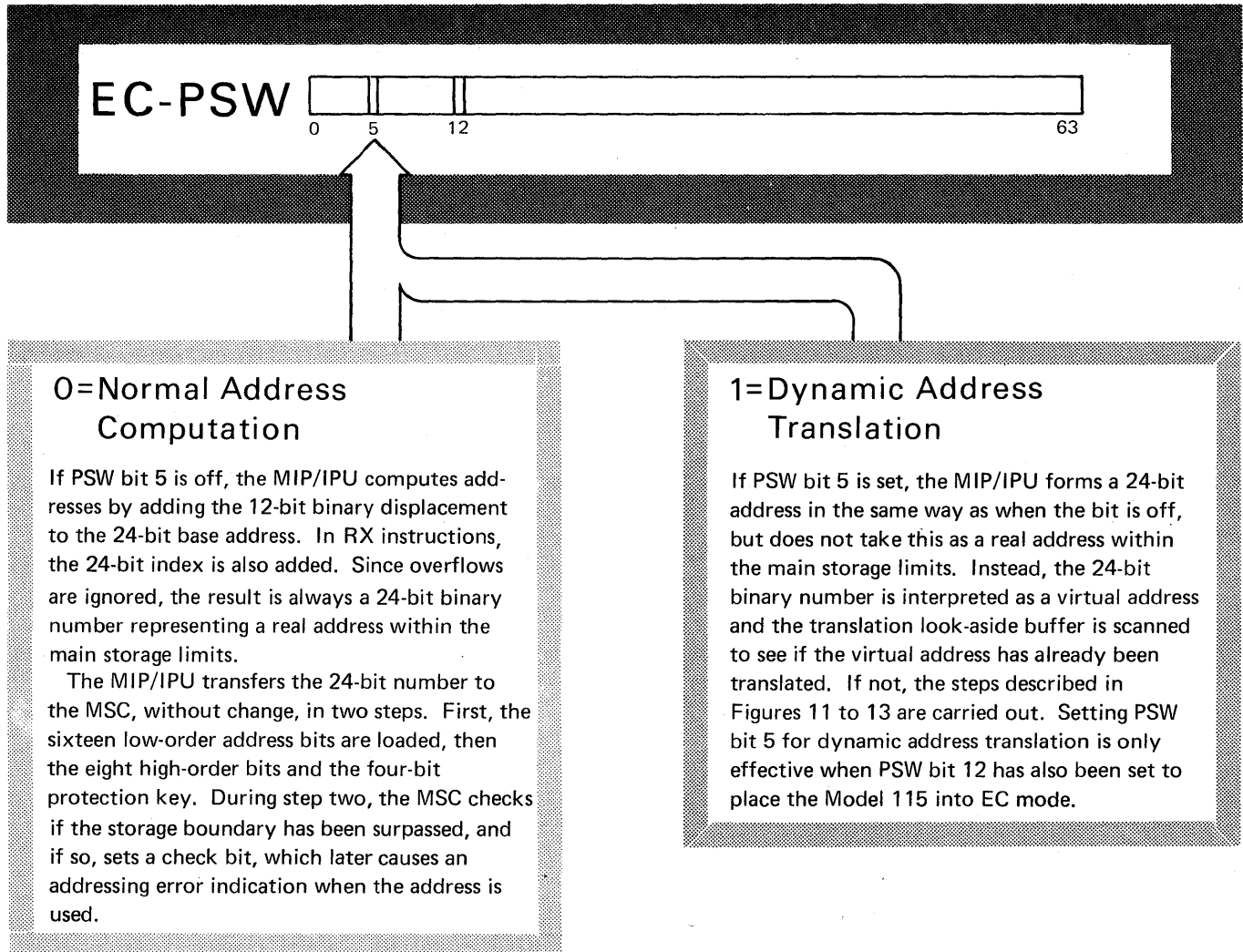
The TLB contains virtual and real address registers. Each virtual register combines with a corresponding real register

to form an associative array. The virtual registers retain the data corresponding to the real address (obtained in some previous translation process). The real registers contain the translation results. Whenever a virtual address is sent to the main storage controller in preparation for an access operation, the TLB automatically compares that address with all of the registers in the associative array. If a match is obtained, the associated real address is automatically substituted, and translation is avoided. If no match is found, the TLB initiates the three-step translation process and, upon completion, stores the new address for possible substitution later. New addresses are stored on a first-in, first-out basis.

The virtual storage facility is supported by three standard features: dynamic address translation, extended control mode, and indirect data addressing.

This chapter consists of five graphic pages on main storage addressing. The first graphic page shows how either normal address computation or dynamic address translation may be specified (Figure 9). The remaining pages show how, in the process of dynamic address translation (Figure 10), virtual addresses are converted to real addresses in three successive steps (Figures 11 to 13).

To obtain access to main storage, the MIP/IPU must place a real address, which falls within the main storage boundaries, into MSC local storage. The method of address generation is determined by PSW bit 5.



Types of Main Storage Addressing

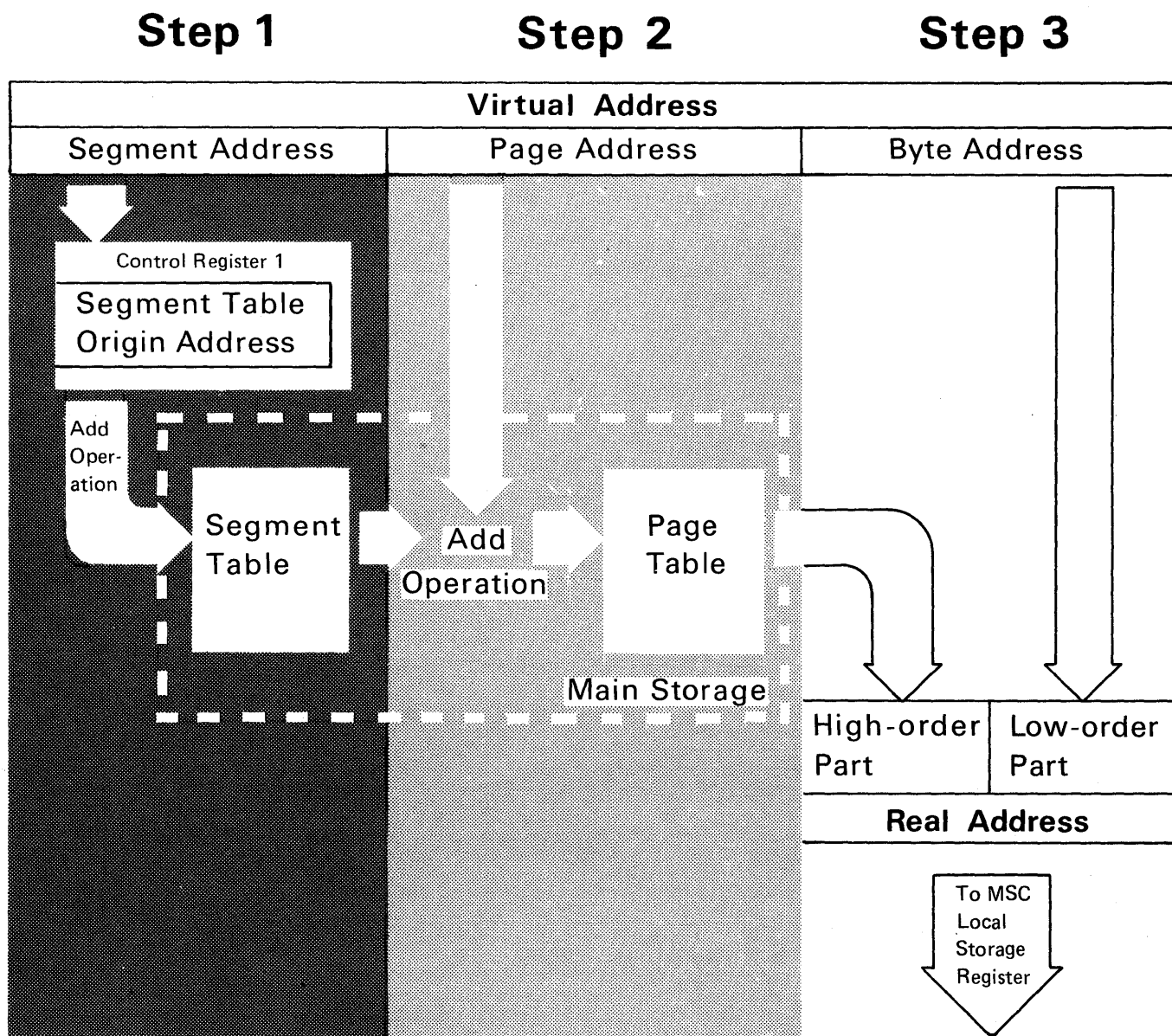
Figure 9. Types of Main Storage Addressing [10788B]

The virtual address shown below consists of the segment address, the page address, and the byte address.

The segment address is added to the segment table origin address located in bits 8 to 25 of control register 1. The resulting binary number points to a specific entry of the segment table in main storage.

Using the computed binary number as a real address, the MIP/IPU fetches the contents of the selected segment table entry and adds them to the page address portion of the 24-bit virtual address. The resulting binary number points to an entry in the page table.

The contents of the selected page table entry represent the high-order part of the real address. The byte address portion of the virtual address is attached as the low-order part, and the resulting bit string represents the real address.

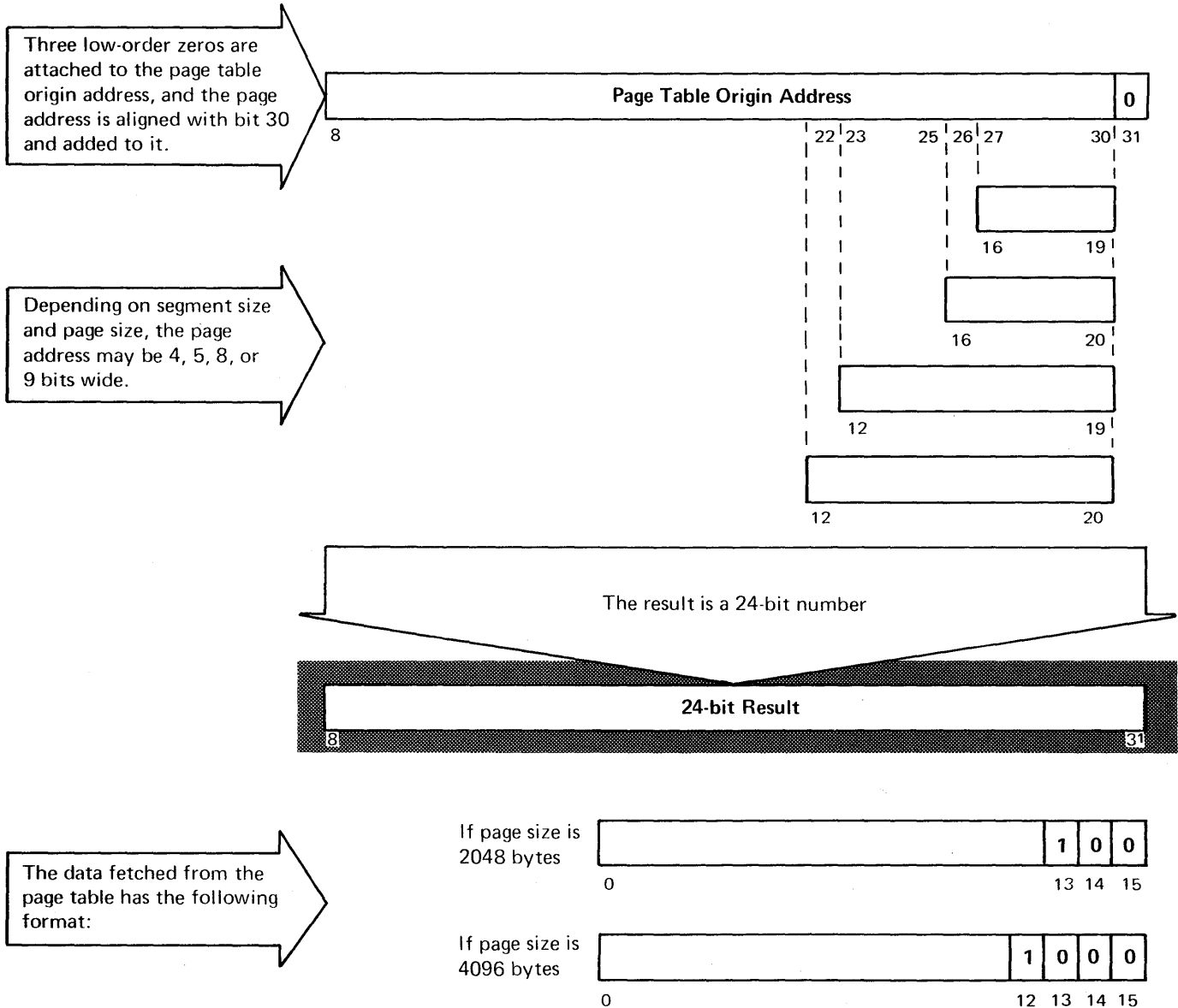


Dynamic Address Translation Overview

Figure 10. Dynamic Address Translation Overview [10789A]

As a prerequisite for translation step 2, the invalid bit (bit 31) in the segment table entry must be zero. A one-bit causes a segment translation exception. A length check is carried out to ensure that the computed page table address points to an existing page table entry. In this check, the four high-order

bits of the page address are compared with the length code (bits 0 to 3) of the data fetched from the segment table. If the length code is smaller, a page translation exception is recognized. If the check is satisfactory, the 24-bit address is used to fetch the selected page table entry.

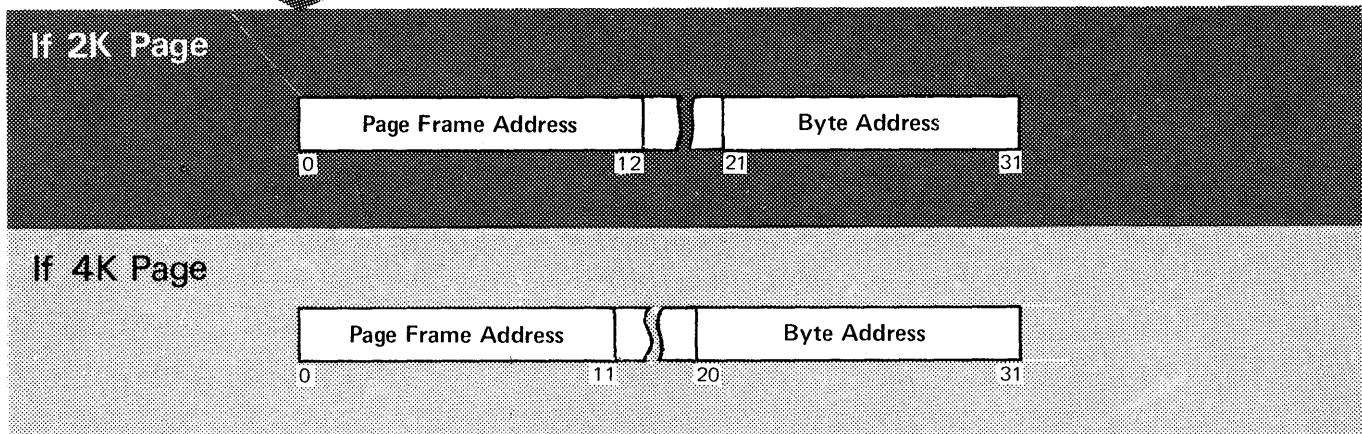


Dynamic Address Translation Step 2

Figure 12. Dynamic Address Translation Step 2 [10791]

Further processing depends on the state of the invalid bit (bit 12 or 13, according to the page size). If the invalid bit is set, the page address is invalid and a page translation exception is recognized. If the invalid bit is off, the page address is valid, and either bits 0 to 11 or 0 to 12 represent the high-order part of the real address.

Real Address



The low-order part of the real address is formed by attaching the byte portion from the virtual address. This completes the dynamic address translation process performed by the MIP microprogram.

Dynamic Address Translation Step 3

Figure 13. Dynamic Address Translation Step 3 [10792]

The Model 115 is controlled by means of the following main facilities:

- **Program status words**
- **Control registers**
- **Fixed areas in main storage**
- **Interruption mechanism**
- **Timers**
- **Operator console**

All of these control facilities are available to the operating system and/or the operator.

Program Status Words

The PSW is the most important factor in system control, because it contains the basic information required for running programs. Throughout the course of a program, the PSW provides the internal control mechanism with information on where the next instruction is located, which facilities are masked off, and which states and modes apply. The PSW is a doubleword (that is, 64 bits long) with a choice of two formats. The format is determined by the state of PSW bit 12: when this bit is off, it specifies basic control mode, when set, it specifies extended control mode. The microprogram always examines bit 12 first because it determines how the rest of the PSW is to be interpreted.

Note: In System/360 machines, PSW bit 12 specifies either EBCDIC or ASCII mode. This choice is not available in the Model 115, which always uses EBCDIC as its internal code.

PSW IN BC MODE

A PSW in which bit 12 is off is interpreted as shown in Figure 14. The PSW bit assignment in BC mode is similar, but not identical, to the format in System/360. For instance, when the external mask bit (PSW bit 7) is set, it is only effective in BC mode for those interruption-requesting sources which have a subclass mask bit set in control register 0 (see Figure 18).

Loading a BC Mode PSW

When a BC mode PSW is set up by means of the 'load PSW' instruction, the doubleword designated by the operand address is loaded as the current PSW. The interrupt code (bits 16–31) and the instruction length count (bits 32–33) of the current PSW loaded in this way are always zero.

Changing Bits in the BC Mode PSW

Several instructions are available to the programmer for changing PSW bits. New information can be placed into PSW bits 0 to 7 by means of the 'set system mask'

instruction, or individual bits can be changed by the instructions 'store then OR system mask' and 'store then AND system mask'. The program mask (PSW bits 36 to 39) can be replaced with a new mask by giving the 'set program mask' instruction, which also introduces a new condition code. The instruction address (PSW bits 40 to 63) can be changed by means of the 'branch and link' instruction.

BC Mode PSW Errors

If a PSW containing any of the following errors is introduced by a 'load PSW' instruction or by an interruption, these errors will be recognized during the execution of the next instruction:

- A one-bit, pointing to an odd boundary, is in the low-order position (PSW bit 63) of the instruction address (specification error).
- The location specified by the instruction address is outside the available main storage (addressing error).
- The location specified by the instruction address is protected against fetching (protection error).

The detection of any of these errors causes a specification exception interruption during which the invalid PSW is stored as the old PSW, the instruction length count having a value of 1, 2, or 3 to indicate the number of halfwords by which the instruction address has been updated. The extent of this updating (1, 2, or 3 halfwords) depends on the format of the instruction (RR, RX/RS/SI, or SS) in progress when the exception is recognized.

There are conditions in which the invalid PSW may not be recognized. If the invalid PSW enabled pending I/O and/or external and/or machine check interruptions, these interruptions would occur instead of any interruptions caused by the errors listed above, thus preventing recognition of the invalid PSW. The same applies if the invalid PSW has the wait state bit set, because the CPU then enters the wait state and leaves it only through an interruption, which again prevents detection of the invalidity.

0–5 Channel Mask

Bits 0 to 5 are assigned to channels 0 to 5. When a channel mask bit is set, I/O interruptions are enabled for the respective channel. If a bit is off (zero), interruptions are disabled for that channel. The interruption conditions remain pending.

6 Input/Output Mask

1 = Interruptions are enabled for channel 6 and above.
 0 = Interruptions are disabled for channel 6 and above.
 These channels are not available on the Model 115.

7 External Mask

1 = Interruptions are enabled from the following external sources:

- Interval timer
- CPU timer
- Clock comparator
- Interrupt key on console
- External signals

0 = External interruptions are disabled.

Note: CPU timer and clock comparator interruption conditions remain pending only if no new values are set before the interruption is taken.

8–11 Key

This is a binary key which is compared with a key in storage when the CPU stores a result or fetches data from a fetch-protected location. Fetching and storing only succeed if these two keys match or the PSW key is zero.

12 Extended Control Mode

1 = EC mode is set and the PSW bits are interpreted as shown in Figure 15.
 0 = Basic control (BC) mode is set and the PSW bits are interpreted as shown in this Figure.

13 Machine Check Mask

1 = Interruptions due to machine checks (such as parity errors, system, processing, or timer damage) are enabled,
 0 = Interruptions due to suppressible machine checks are disabled. They remain pending.

14 Wait State

1 = The CPU is in the wait state (no instruction processing by MIP and no CPU meter recording).
 0 = The CPU is in the running state.

15 Problem State

1 = The CPU is in the problem state, and only unprivileged instructions are executed.
 0 = The CPU is in the supervisor state, and both privileged and unprivileged instructions are executed.

16–31 Interruption Code

This is a binary code which identifies the source of an interruption.

32–33 Instruction Length Code

This is a binary code which shows the length of the last-interpreted instruction (1, 2, or 3 halfwords) when a program or supervisor call interruption occurs.

34–35 Condition Code

This is a binary number set by the results of various instructions, so that branching decisions can be made.

36–39 Program Mask

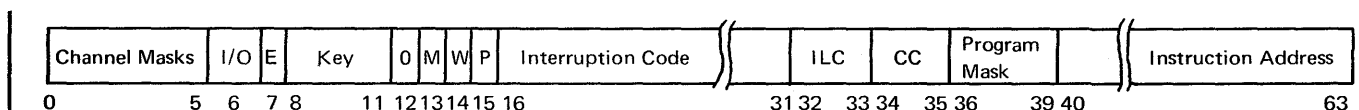
When set the program mask bits enable interruptions due to:

- Fixed point overflow (bit 36)
- Decimal overflow (bit 37)
- Exponent underflow (bit 38)
- Significance (bit 39)

If the bits are 0, the relevant interruptions are disabled.

40–63 Instruction Address

This is a binary field representing the main storage address of the next instruction to be executed.



Program Status Word (BC Mode)

Figure 14. Program Status Word (BC Mode) [10793A]

PSW IN EC MODE

When bit 12 of the current PSW is set, the contents of the PSW are interpreted as shown in Figure 15. Some of the bit assignments are the same as in the BC mode PSW. Bits 8 to 11, 13, 14, and 15, for instance, are identical in meaning for both BC mode and EC mode PSWs. Other assignments differ. For example, the BC mode PSW contains an instruction length count and an interruption code, but when EC mode is specified, these two fields are located in a fixed area of main storage.

Loading an EC Mode PSW

When an EC mode PSW is set up by means of the 'load PSW' instruction, the doubleword designated by the operand address is loaded as the current PSW. In contrast to the BC mode PSW, the EC mode PSW is loaded unchanged, and none of the bits is forced to zero. The reason is that in EC mode the instruction length count and interruption code are located in fixed areas of main storage and not in the PSW.

Changing Bits in the EC Mode PSW

Several instructions are available to the programmer for changing PSW bits. New information can be placed into PSW bits 0 to 7 by means of the 'set system mask' instruction, or individual bits can be changed by the instructions 'store then AND system mask' and 'store then OR system mask'. The program mask (PSW bits 20 to 23) can be replaced by means of the 'set program mask' instruction. The instruction address (PSW bits 40 to 63) can be changed by means of the 'branch and link' instruction.

EC Mode PSW Errors

When an EC mode PSW containing errors is introduced by a 'load PSW' instruction or by an interruption, certain errors are recognized while the next instruction is being executed,

and other errors are recognized immediately. The following error causes a specification exception interruption before the PSW becomes active:

- One or more unassigned bits are set. (Bits 0, 2, 3, 4, 16, 17, and 24 to 39 are unassigned and must be zero.)

Should this error be detected, a specification exception interruption occurs, even if the invalid PSW enables pending I/O or machine check interruptions, or has the wait state bit set. The specification exception interruption thus takes priority. The pending I/O or machine check interruptions are under the control of the new PSW introduced by the specification exception interruption. The wait state bit is ignored when the described error occurs.

The specification exception interruption, which occurs immediately when the error is detected, causes the instruction length count (in main storage) to be reset to zero because instruction processing has not been started.

The following errors in an EC mode PSW are recognized during the execution of the next instruction:

1. The low-order bit of the instruction address (PSW bit 63) is set (that is, an odd address is specified).
2. The location designated by the instruction address is outside addressable storage, or is protected against fetching.

If either of these errors is detected, an interruption occurs. The instruction length count in main storage is updated by one, two, or three, indicating the number of halfwords by which the instruction address was updated. The updating depends on the format of the instruction in progress when the exception is recognized. Any pending I/O interruptions or machine check interruptions enabled by the invalid PSW will, however, occur, and the invalidity of the PSW is therefore not detected. The same applies when the invalid PSW has the wait state bit set, because the CPU then enters the wait state and leaves it only by an interruption which again prevents detection of the PSW invalidity.

1 Program Event Recording Mask

- 1 = Program events specified in control register 9 (such as successful branching) will cause an interruption.
- 0 = Program event recording is disabled.

5 Translation Mode

- 1 = Dynamic address translation is used (the address base + displacement is translated via segment and page tables into the real storage address).
- 0 = Address translation is not used.

6 Input/Output Mask

- 1 = I/O interruptions are enabled for all channels whose mask bits in control register 2 are set.
- 0 = All I/O interruptions are disabled, and requests remain pending.

7 External Mask

- 1 = External interruptions are enabled for all sources whose mask bits in control register 0 are set.
- 0 = External interruptions are disabled.

8–11 Key

This is a binary key which is compared with a key in storage when the CPU stores a result or fetches data from a fetch-protected location. Fetching and storing only succeed if the keys match or the PSW key is zero.

12 Extended Control Mode

- 1 = Model 115 is in EC mode and the PSW bits are interpreted as shown in this Figure.
- 0 = Model 115 is in BC mode and the PSW bits are interpreted as shown in Figure 14.

13 Machine Check Mask

- 1 = Machine check interruptions are enabled for:
 - System and processing damage.
 - All other machine checks whose mask bits in control register 14 are set.
- 0 = Suppressible machine check interruptions are disabled.

14 Wait State

- 1 = The CPU is in the wait state (no instruction processing by MIP and no CPU meter recording).
- 0 = The CPU is in the running state.

15 Problem State

- 1 = The CPU is in the problem state, and only privileged instructions are executed.
- 0 = The CPU is in the supervisor state, and both privileged and unprivileged instructions are executed.

18,19 Condition Code

This is a binary number set by the results of various instructions, so that branching decisions can be made.

20–23 Program Mask

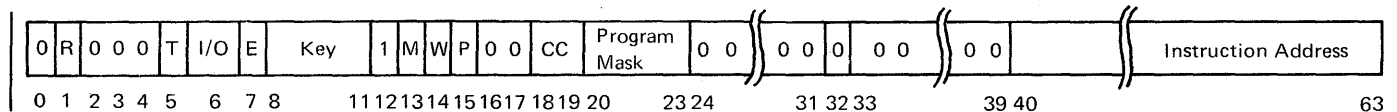
When set, these bits enable interruptions due to:

- Fixed point overflow (bit 20)
- Decimal overflow (bit 21)
- Exponent underflow (bit 22)
- Significance (bit 23)

If a bit is 0, relevant interruption is disabled (the condition remains pending).

40–63 Instruction Address

This is a binary field representing the main storage address of the next instruction to be executed.



Program Status Word (EC Mode)

Figure 15. Program Status Word (EC Mode) [10794A]

Control Registers

The control registers (Figures 16 to 23) are a standard feature on the Model 115. The feature provides 16 registers, each of which is one word (32 bits) wide. The registers are not part of addressable main storage, they are located in the MIP. The bits in these registers define how certain features such as monitoring, program event recording, and dynamic address translation are to operate.

The control registers are automatically initialized during a system reset operation, but they can also be loaded by means of the 'load control' instruction. This instruction contains two register specification fields, the first of which defines the first register to be loaded, the other defines the last register to be loaded. The operand address designates the storage location from which the data is to be fetched. During execution, the instruction causes as many words to be fetched from main storage (in ascending order of address) as are required to fill the number of control registers specified (including the first and the last).

The contents of the control registers can be made available for inspection by means of the 'store control' instruction. This instruction causes the opposite effect of the 'load control' instruction, that is, the contents of as many registers as are specified are placed in main storage.

Note: The first register to be loaded or stored may be any of the 16 registers, it need not be register 0. The count wraps around during loading or storing and continues in ascending order until the last register is reached. The last register may, likewise, be any of the 16 registers.

The following is supplementary information related to individual control registers.

BLOCK MULTIPLEXING CONTROL

Block multiplexing control applies to channel 1 only. When bit 0 of control register 0 (see Figure 18) is set, disk files operate in block multiplexing mode and interleaving is allowed. For example, if command chaining has been specified and channel end is presented separately from device end, the channel logically disconnects from the control unit to make the interface available for other disk operations. In block multiplexing mode, the channel also provides a 'channel available' interruption to indicate to an instruction which previously caused a channel busy response (condition code 2) that it may now proceed.

Note: Block multiplexing cannot be used in 2311 or 2314 emulation mode.

MONITORING

Control register 8 (see Figure 20) contains the monitor mask bits for the Monitoring feature which is standard in the Model 115. Monitoring provides the means to record and analyze software events such as entry or exit from

specific subroutines, program execution time, and the sequence in which programs were entered.

Each bit in the monitor mask field (bits 16 to 31 of control register 8) represents a class of events, and the bit setting determines whether or not the class is to be monitored. Each bit can be addressed by a 'monitor call' instruction.

The 'monitor call' instruction contains a monitor class number that can range from 0 to 15. The number 0 addresses mask bit 16, number 1 addresses mask bit 17, number 2 addresses mask bit 18, and so on. When the 'monitor call' instruction addresses a mask bit that is 0, the instruction has no effect (no-op). However, when the 'monitor call' instruction addresses a mask bit that is set, an interruption occurs.

The interruption causes the class number (in the instruction), the result of the B1/D1 field of the instruction (the monitor code), and a monitor interruption bit to be stored in main storage. Class number, monitor code, and monitor interruption bit together identify the cause of the interruption and the unique monitoring event that is thus indicated. A program can be monitored in detail by including 'monitor call' instructions at strategic points.

PROGRAM EVENT RECORDING

Program event recording (PER), which is a standard feature of the Model 115 but available in EC mode only, is handled through control register 9 (see Figure 21). Bits 0 to 3 and 16 to 31 specify which predefined event (such as a successful branch, instruction fetching, or storage alteration) can cause an interruption. Bits 4 to 15 are not assigned.

When a particular bit is set, the assigned event is monitored and an interruption is requested when the event occurs. Whether or not the interruption takes place depends on the PER mask bit in the EC mode PSW (bit 1). The interruption can only occur if PSW bit 1 is set. The cause of the interruption is identified as described in the following text.

Successful Branch

When bit 0 of control register 9 is set, the instructions 'branch on condition', 'branch and link', 'branch on count', 'branch on index high', and 'branch on index low or equal' are being monitored. If one of these instructions causes a branch, the address to which the instruction branched is placed into the program old PSW, and the address of the instruction that caused the branch is placed into the program event address field of main storage during the interruption. If the successful branch instruction is the object of an 'execute' instruction, the address of the 'execute' instruction is recorded in main storage.

Instruction Fetching

When bit 1 of control register 9 is set, the main storage area defined by the start and end addresses in control registers 10 and 11 is monitored. If an instruction which has its first (leftmost) byte in this area is fetched, the event occurs. During the resulting interruption, the updated instruction address is transferred to the program old PSW, and the address of the first byte of the instruction is recorded in the program event address field in main storage. In addition, the instruction length code is set to indicate the length of the instruction that caused the event. If the instruction is the object of an 'execute' instruction, the address of the 'execute' instruction is recorded.

Storage Alteration

When bit 2 of control register 9 is set, the storage area defined by the start and end addresses in control registers 10 and 11 is monitored for alteration. The monitoring is limited to operations in which the MIP replaces part or all of an operand. Typically, these are operations such as move, shift, edit, and arithmetic operations. An operand is considered to have been altered even if it has merely been shifted by zero, or if a zero has been added.

Automatic CPU operations such as timer updating, PSW exchange during interruption, and so on (that is, operations not caused by an explicit instruction) are not monitored. If the timer value is changed by an instruction, however, a program event is recognized.

When main storage is altered within the monitored area, the resulting interruption causes the address of the instruction responsible for the alteration to be recorded in the event address field in main storage, and the updated instruction address is placed in the program old PSW. If the altering instruction is the object of an 'execute' instruction, the address of this 'execute' instruction is recorded.

General Register Alteration

When bit 3 of control register 9 is set, bits 16 to 31 determine which general register is being monitored. If bit 3 is zero, alterations to the general registers cannot cause interruptions.

Bits 16 to 31 of register 9 correspond to the general registers 0 to 15. If any of these bits is set, the assigned general register is monitored for alteration. If the monitored register is altered, an interruption can occur only if bit 3 in control register 9 and PSW bit 1 are set.

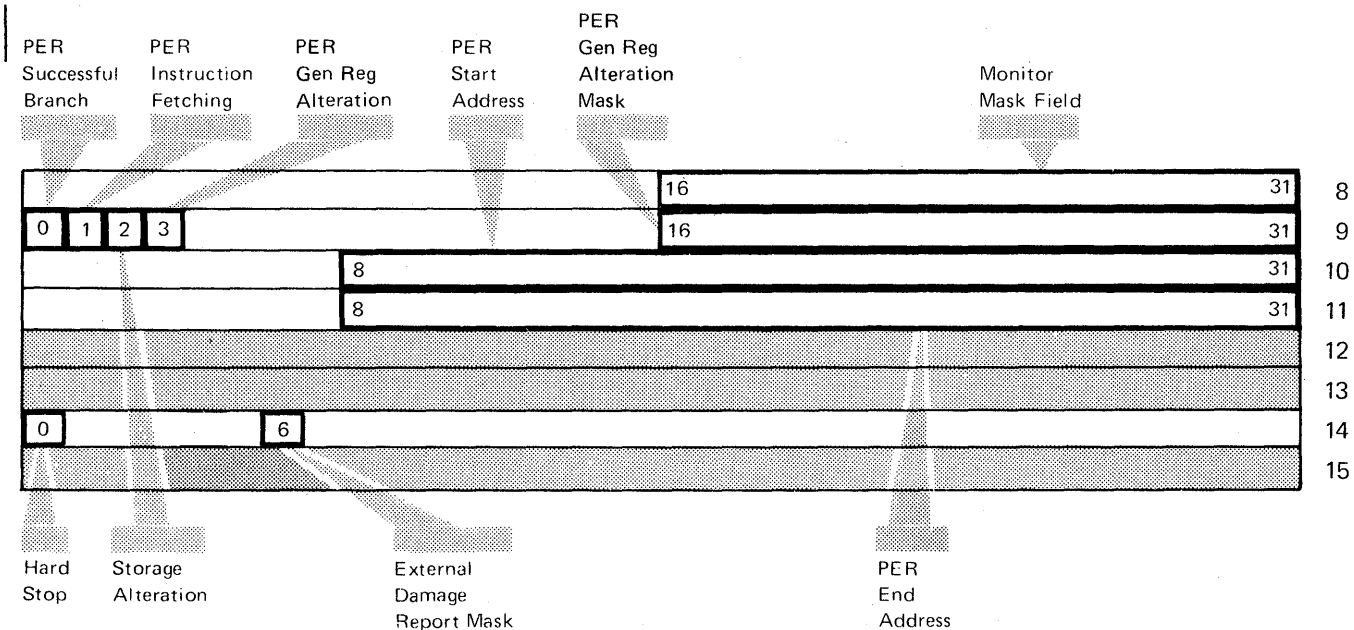
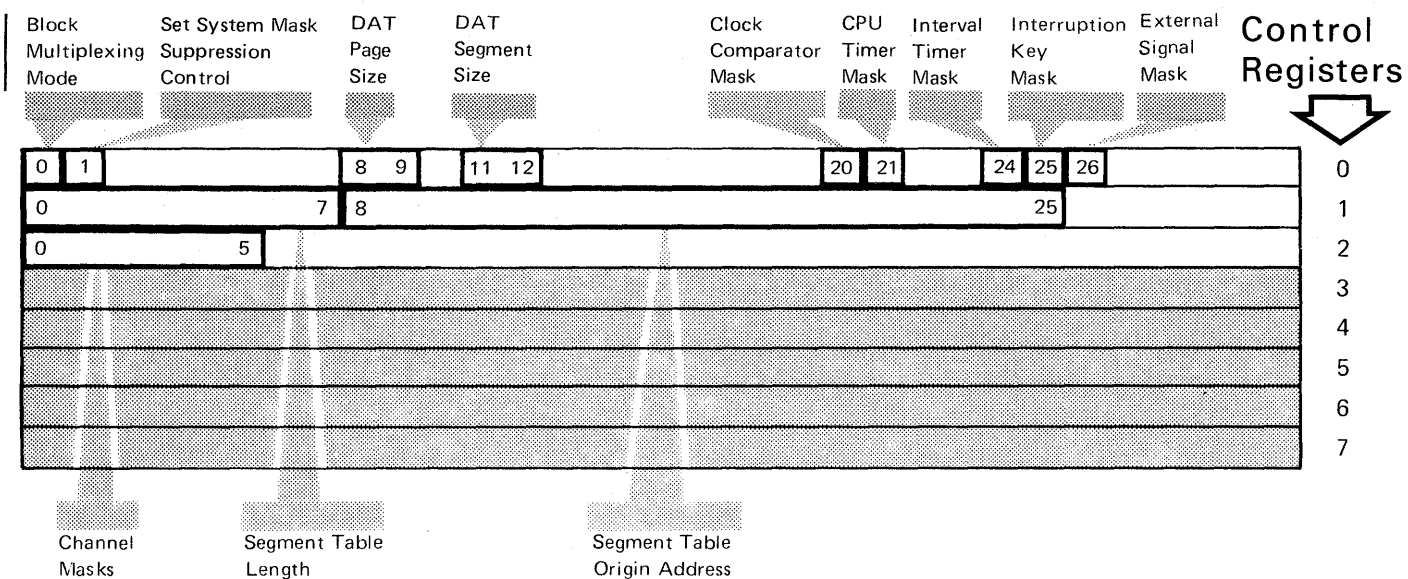
If the monitored register has been altered, or implicitly or explicitly designated as the destination, the address of the instruction responsible for the alteration or designation is recorded, and the updated instruction address is placed in the old PSW during the event interruption. Should the responsible instruction be the object of an 'Execute' instruction, the address of the 'execute' instruction is recorded.

Note: Program event recording applies to all System/360 and System/370 instructions, including 'do interpretive loop' (DIL). The emulator routines called via DIL are, however, not monitored explicitly. Because of this, a program event is indicated for any string of DIL instructions whenever the PER bit is on, whether or not the event occurred.

ERROR RECOVERY ENHANCEMENT

The Error Recovery Enhancement feature, which is a standard feature available in BC and EC mode, is handled through control register 14. Those error recovery functions implemented on the Model 115 are shown in Figure 23. The following functions, available on other System/370 models, are *not* implemented on the Model 115 because errors are logged and analyzed without the need for program support.

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Function (Not On Model 115)</i>
0	Check-stop control (always treated as if turned on)
1	Synchronous machine-check Extended logout mask
2	Input/output extended logout mask
3	(Not assigned)
4	Recovery report mask
5	Configuration report mask
7	Warning mask
8	Asynchronous machine-check logout mask

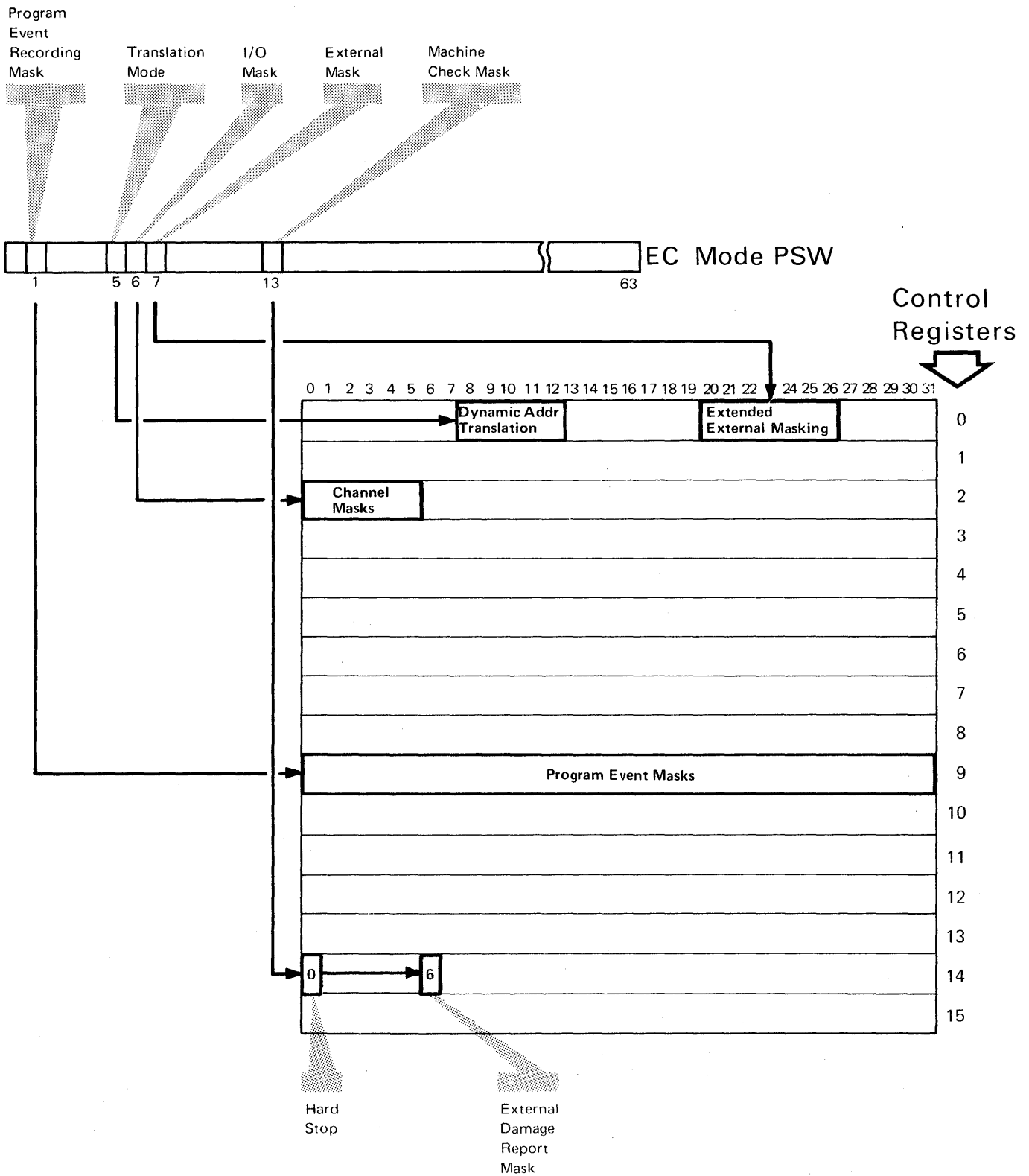


Registers not used on Model 115

Note: Although control register 15 is not used on the Model 115, bit 22 (MCEL address) is set by a system reset operation for compatibility reasons.

Control Registers Overview

Figure 16. Control Registers Overview [10795A]



Relationship between EC Mode PSW Masks and Control Registers

Figure 17. Relationship between EC Mode PSW Masks and Control Registers [10796]

0 Block Multiplexing

- 1 = The direct disk attachment operates as a block multiplexer.
- 0 = The block multiplexing feature on the direct disk attachment is disabled.

1 Set System Mask Interruption

- 1 = The 'set system mask' instruction is suppressed and an interruption occurs instead.
- 0 = The 'set system mask' instruction is executed normally.

8,9 DAT Page Size

If dynamic address translation is specified in the PSW, these bits specify the page size as follows:

Bit 8	Bit 9	
0	1	2,048 bytes
1	0	4,096 bytes (optional)

Other codes are invalid when DAT is on. The bits are ignored when DAT is off.

11,12 DAT Segment Size

If dynamic address translation is specified in the PSW, these bits specify the segment size as follows:

Bit 11	Bit 12	
0	0	65,536 bytes (64K)
1	0	1048,576 bytes (1 Mega) (optional)

Other codes are invalid when DAT is on. The bits are ignored when DAT is off.

20 Clock Comparator Mask

- 1 = An interruption will occur if the clock comparator value is less than the time-of-day (TOD) clock value, and PSW bit 7 is set.
- 0 = The interruption is disabled but remains pending as long as the comparator value is less than the TOD clock value. The interruption condition is removed if a greater value is set by the 'set clock comparator' instruction.

21 CPU Timer Mask

- 1 = An interruption can occur if the value in the CPU timer becomes negative, and PSW bit 7 is set.
- 0 = The interruption is disabled but remains pending as long as the value in the CPU timer is negative. If a positive value (zero is considered positive) is introduced, the interruption condition is removed.

24 Timer Mask

- 1 = An interruption can occur if the location 80 timer value becomes negative, and PSW bit 7 is set (in EC or BC mode).
- 0 = The interruption remains pending.

25 Key Mask

- 1 = An interruption can occur if the INTRPT (interrupt) key on the console keyboard is pressed, and PSW bit 7 is set (in EC or BC mode).
- 0 = The interruption remains pending.

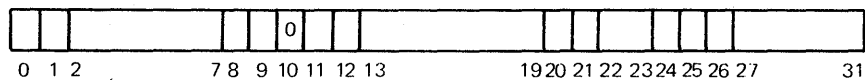
26 Signal Mask

- 1 = An interruption can occur from a condition in one or more of the six optional external signal lines, provided PSW bit 7 is set (in EC or BC mode).
- 0 = The interruption remains pending.

Effect of System Reset

Bit	Setting	Meaning
0	0	Block multiplexing on disk is off.
1	0	'Set system mask' instruction is enabled.
8, 9	0	Page size is set to an invalid code.
10	0	Unassigned; must be zero.
11, 12	0	Segment size is set to 64K.
20	0	Clock comparator interruption is disabled.
21	0	CPU timer interruption is disabled.
24	1	Timer interruption is enabled.
25	1	INTRPT key is enabled.
26	1	External signal interruptions are enabled.

Unassigned bits are set to 0.



Control Register 0

Figure 18. Control Register 0 [10797A]

0–7 Segment Table Length

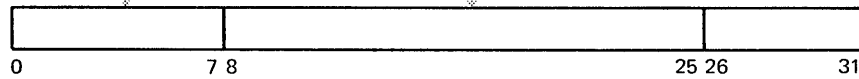
A binary field that indicates the length of the DAT segment table in units of 64 bytes. During address translation, the segment address is matched against the length code to determine whether the entry is inside or outside the table. The bits are significant only in EC mode with PSW bit 5 set.

8–25 Segment Table Origin Address

This field is part of an address that designates the main storage location of the DAT segment table. During address translation, six low-order zero bits are appended to bit 25, to form the real address where the segment table begins. The segment address is then added to the origin address to obtain the location of a specific entry. The bits are significant only in EC mode with PSW bit 5 set.

Effect of System Reset

Bits 0 to 31 are reset to zero.



Control Register 1

0–5 Channel Masks

Each of these bits is assigned to the correspondingly numbered channel and determines whether the CPU is enabled or disabled for interruption from this channel.

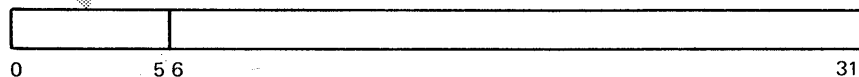
1 = An I/O interruption from the associated channel can occur provided PSW bit 6 (in EC mode) is set.

0 = The interruption remains pending.

The bits are significant in EC mode but not in BC mode.

Effect of System Reset

All bits in control register 2 are set, enabling interruptions for all channels.

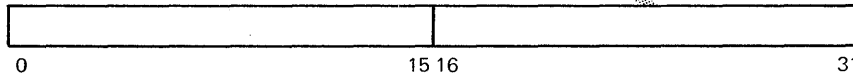


Control Register 2

Figure 19. Control Registers 1 and 2 [10798A]

16–31 Monitor Mask Field

Each bit represents a class of events, which is monitored when the bit is set. Bit addressing is done by a 'monitor call' instruction containing a monitor class number ranging from 0 to 15. Number 0 addresses mask bit 16, number 1 addresses mask bit 17, and so on. When a bit set at one is addressed, an interruption occurs; when a bit which is off is addressed there is no effect.

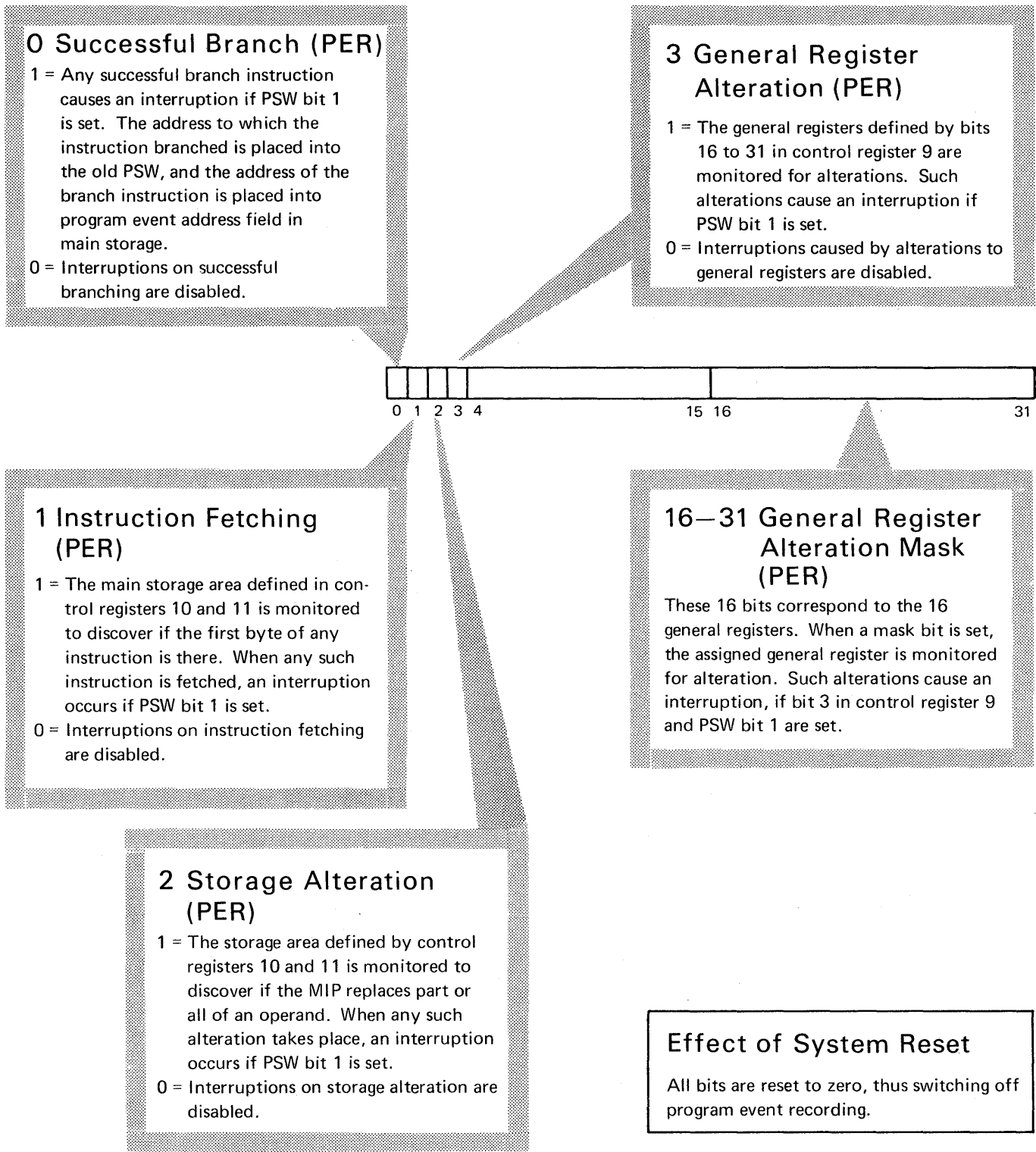


Effect of System Reset

All bits are reset to zero, thus switching monitoring off.

Control Register 8

Figure 20. Control Register 8 [10799]

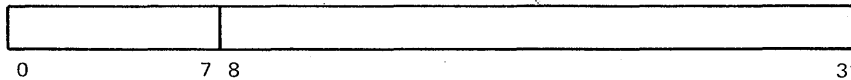


Control Register 9

Figure 21. Control Register 9 [10800]

8—31 PER Start and End Addresses

These bits contain the start address (control register 10) and the end address (control register 11), which define the area in main storage to be monitored for two of the program events, instruction fetching and storage alteration. The addresses are both virtual. When both addresses are identical, only one location (byte) is monitored. If the start address is higher than the end address, monitoring extends to location 16,777,215, wraps around and continues from 0 through the end address.



Effect of System Reset

Both addresses are forced to zero.

Control Registers 10 and 11

Figure 22. Control Registers 10 and 11 [10801]

0 Hard Stop

1 = A 'hard' machine check condition causes the system to enter the check stop state, provided machine check interruptions are masked off (PSW bit 13 is 0). In the check stop state, the machine is stopped and the START key does not function. Recovery is by reloading the program: it may also be necessary to repeat the initial microprogram loading.

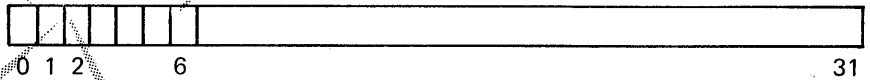
Because the Model 115 enters the check-stop state only on exigent machine-check conditions (defined in the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*) this bit is treated as if it were set at all times.

0 = The zero setting of this bit is not used.

6 External Damage Report Mask

1 = An interruption reporting damage to the interval timer, the TOD clock, the CPU timer, the clock comparator, I/O attachments, channel, or other external sources can occur if PSW bit 13 is set.

0 = External damage interruptions cannot occur.



1 Synchronous Machine Check Extended Logout Control

Bit 1 has no function on the Model 115.

2 I/O Extended Logout Mask

Bit 2 has no function. The Model 115 performs no I/O extended logouts because errors are logged and analyzed without the need for program support. The bit may be set or at 0.

Effect of System Reset

Bit	Set to
0	1
1	1
2	0
6	1

Control Register 14

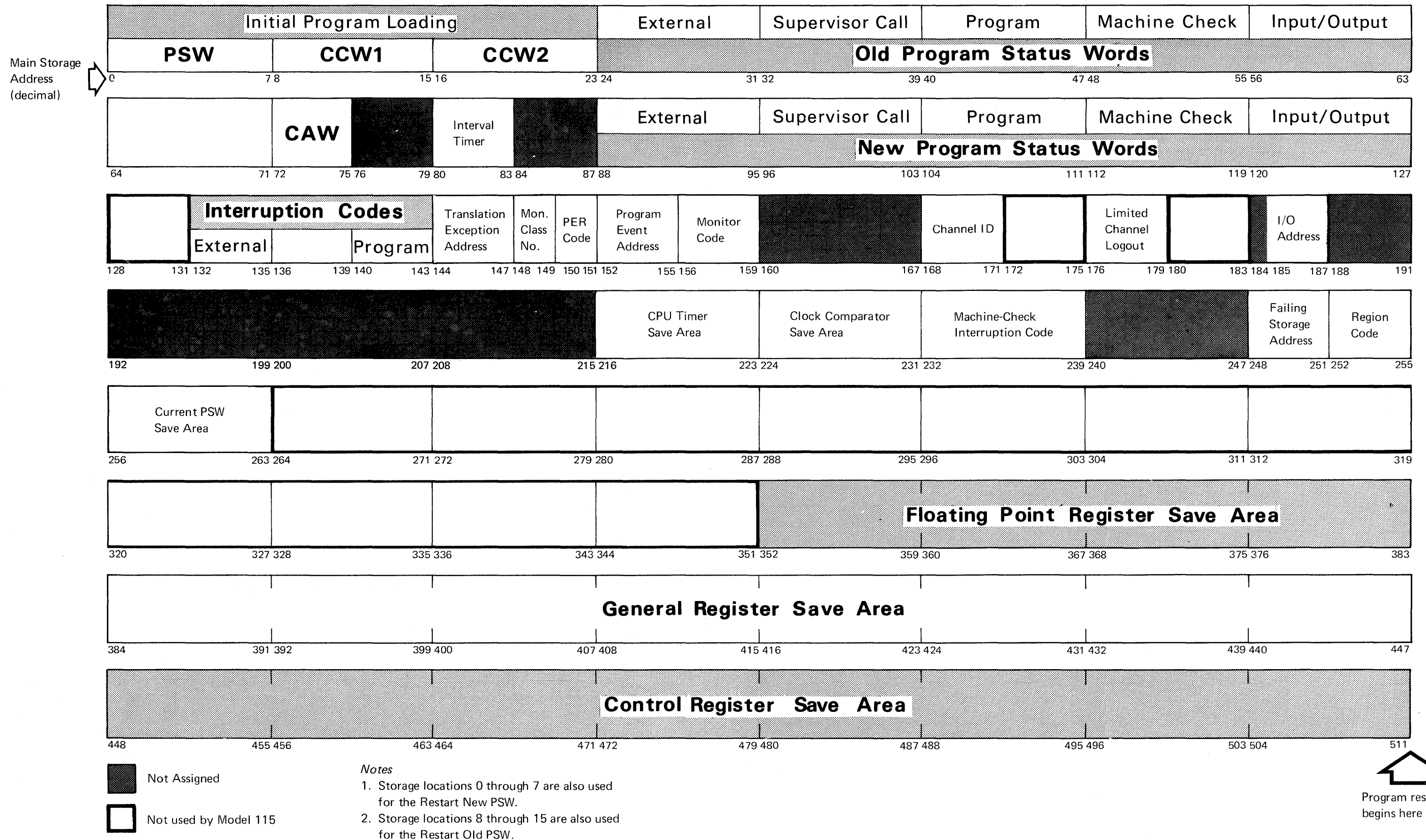
Figure 23. Control Register 14 [10802A]

Fixed Areas in Main Storage

The fixed areas in main storage (Figures 24 to 31) are important for system control because they contain the various new and old program status words, and special reports which show, for example, channel error data. The areas are permanently allocated and the internal control mechanism of the Model 115 relies on this allocation.

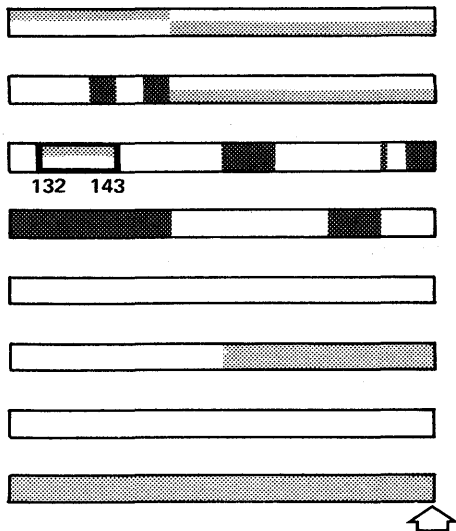
MACHINE-CHECK LOGOUT

Instead of logging error information into fixed or extended main storage areas, the Model 115 logs detailed information about the nature of the malfunction onto its internal file. This log operation occurs whenever the interrogation loop (which runs continuously) detects an error condition. If such a condition is detected, a machine-check interruption is requested. For details of the machine-check interruption code see Figure 29; for details of limited channel logout see Figure 27.

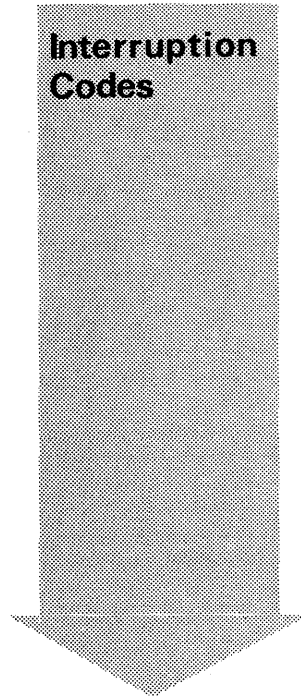


Fixed Areas in Main Storage

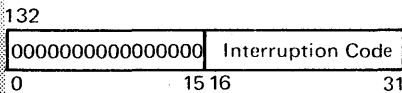
Figure 24. Fixed Areas in Main Storage [10803]



Interruption Codes



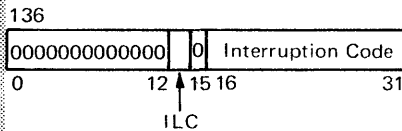
External Interruption Code



This storage location is used only when an external interruption occurs during operation in EC mode. If BC mode was specified, the code is placed into bits 16 to 31 of the external old PSW.

SVC Interruption Code

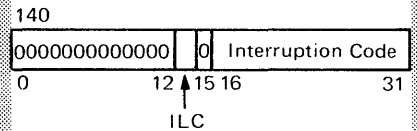
with Instruction Length Count



When EC mode is specified, the supervisor call (SVC) interruption code and the instruction length count are placed in storage location 136 to 139. In BC mode, the code is placed into bits 16 to 31 and 32 to 33 of the supervisor call old PSW.

Program Interruption Code

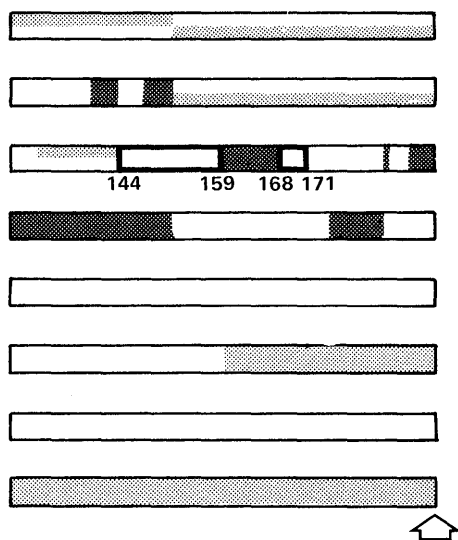
with Instruction Length Count



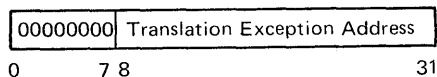
When EC mode is specified, the program interruption code and the instruction length count are placed in storage location 140 to 143. In BC mode, the code is placed into bits 16 to 31 and 32 to 33 of the program old PSW.

Main Storage Locations 132–143

Figure 25. Main Storage Locations 132–143 [10804]

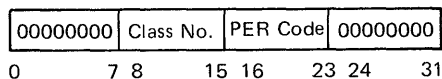


144–147 Translation Exception Address



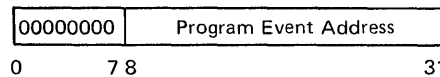
This field is used only when EC mode and dynamic address translation are on and the translation process ends with a segment translation or page translation exception interruption. The virtual address responsible is stored in location 144–147 and the interruption code identifies the exception.

148–151 Monitor Class Number and PER Code



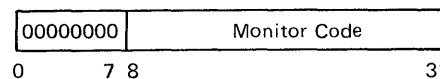
The monitor class number originates from the 'monitor call' instruction and corresponds to the monitor class bit found in the control register. The resulting interruption causes the class number to be stored. The PER code corresponds to the program event control bit or bits in the control register. The bit is stored during an interruption to identify the event causing the interruption.

152–155 Program Event Address



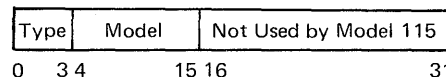
The program event address is stored during an interruption caused by a program event. The address points to the location of the instruction that caused the event (such as a general register alteration, a storage alteration, or a successful branch, etc.).

156–159 Monitor Code



During a monitor call interruption, the monitor code is stored to identify uniquely the monitored event. The code is the result of adding the contents of the base register (referenced in the 'monitor call' instruction) to the displacement provided by this instruction.

168–171 Channel Identification



This field is stored as the result of the 'store channel ID' instruction. The channel is addressed by adding the contents of the base register to the displacement provided by the 'store channel ID' instruction. The type field specifies:

- Selector Type (0000)
- Multiplexer (0001)
- Block Multiplexer (0010) (see Note)

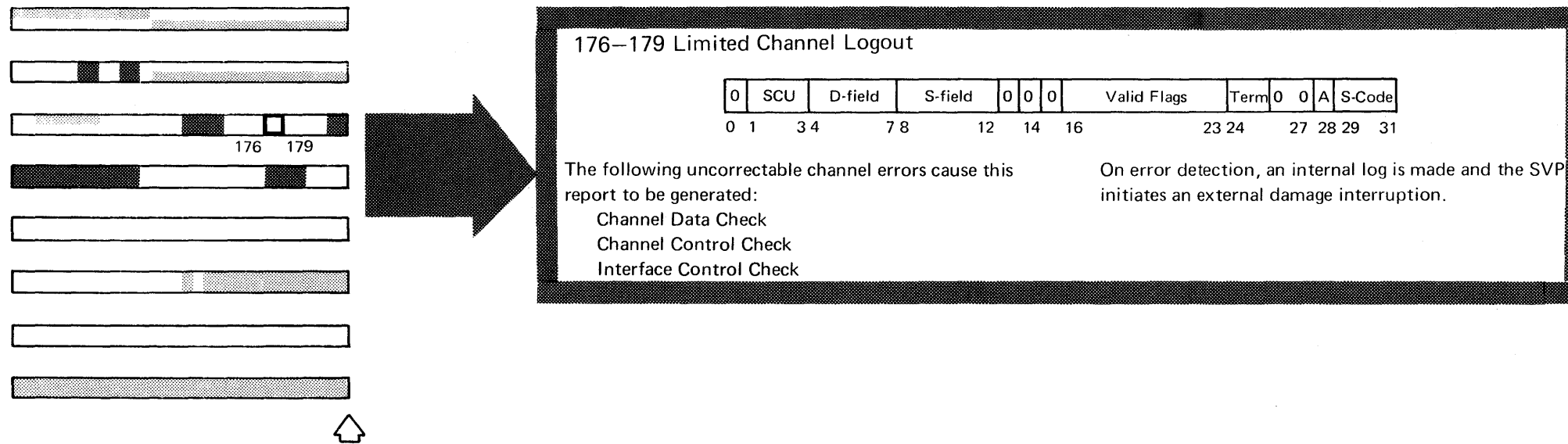
The model number in bits 4–15 identifies the integrated adapters, attachments, and the channel as follows:

Hex Code	Channel
00C	0 (multiplexer)
00E	1 (direct disk attachment)
00D	2 (magnetic tape adapter)
00F	All integrated adapters and attachments in channel 0 (console, card I/O, line printer, ICA)

Note: Channel 1 is only identified as a block multiplexer when bit 0 is set in control register 0.

Main Storage Locations 144–171

Figure 26. Main Storage Locations 144-171 [10805A]



1–3 Storage Control Unit

These bits are at zero, indicating that the MSC was the unit through which the storage reference was directed when the error occurred. The Model 115 has no other storage control units.

4–7 Detect Field

The unit detecting the error is identified by the setting of one of the following bits:

Bit	Designation
4	CPU
5	Channel
6	Storage control unit
7	Storage

8–12 Source Field

The most likely source of the error is indicated by the setting of one of the following bits:

Bit	Designation
8	CPU
9	Channel
10	Storage control unit
11	Storage unit
12	Control unit

16–23 Field Validity Flags

A field validity flag bit set at one indicates that the assigned field was stored with valid information. If a bit is zero, the assigned field is unpredictable. Assignments are:

Bit	Designation
16	Interface address (not applicable to Model 115)
17	Reserved
18	
19	Sequence code
20	Unit status
21	Command address and key
22	Channel address
23	Device address

28 I/O Error Alert

This bit is used only by the multiplexer channel. When the bit is on, it indicates that the control unit has detected a malfunction that prevents this unit from communicating properly with the channel.

24–25 Type of Termination

These bits indicate how the affected channel operation was ended, as follows:

Bit Setting	Meaning
00	Interface disconnect
01	Stop, stack, or normal termination
10	Selective reset
11	System reset

29–31 Sequence Code

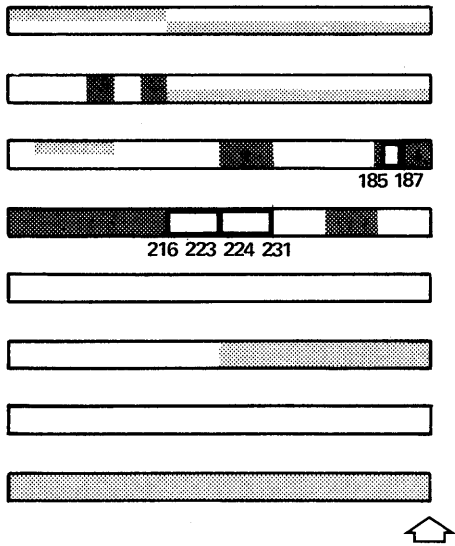
The I/O sequence in progress when the error occurred is identified by the following bit settings:

Bit Setting	Meaning
000	Execution of test I/O
001	Command byte went out but status not yet available
010	Command accepted but data transfer not yet started
011	At least one data byte already transferred
100	Command not yet sent or not accepted
101	Command accepted but data transfer unpredictable
110	Reserved
111	

Note: These codes are meaningless for 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instructions.

Figure 27. Main Storage Locations 176–179 [19569]

Main Storage Locations 176–179



185–187 I/O Address

During an I/O interruption in EC mode, the two-byte I/O address is stored at locations 186-187, and zeros are stored at location 185.

224–231 Clock Comparator Save Area

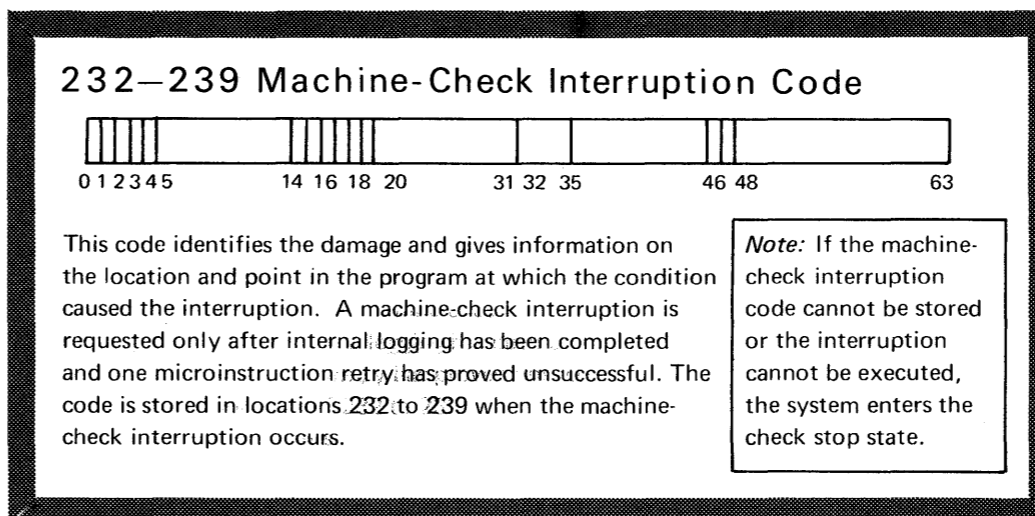
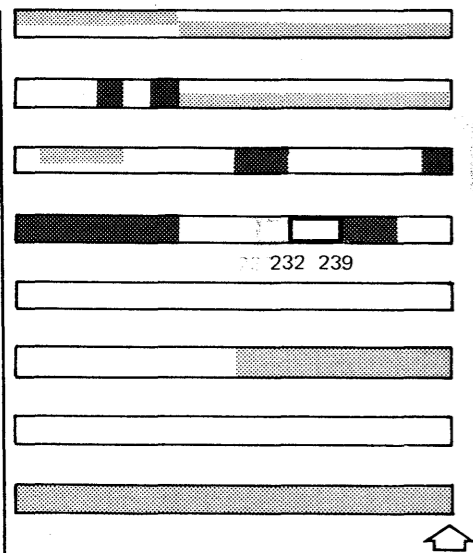
The contents of the clock comparator are stored in this area during a machine-check interruption, or when a store status operation is carried out by the operator.

216–223 CPU Timer Save Area

This location is used during a machine check interruption or a store status operation to save the contents of the CPU timer.

Main Storage Locations 184–231

Figure 28. Main Storage Locations 184-231 [10807A]



20–63 Machine - Check Interruption Code Validity Bits

These bits indicate the reliability of information stored during a machine-check interruption. The degree of damage so far caused can be assessed by evaluating these bits whose meanings, when set, are as follows:

Bit	Meaning
20	Bits 12 to 15 of machine-check old PSW are valid
21	PSW masks and key of machine-check old PSW valid
22	Program mask and condition code valid in old PSW
23	Instruction address valid in old PSW
24	Failing storage address saved valid (in storage)
25	Region code saved valid (in storage)
26	Always 0
27	Floating point registers saved valid (in storage)
28	General purpose registers saved valid (in storage)
29	Control registers saved valid (in storage)
30	(Not used)
31	Storage area prior to interruption point valid
32–45	(Not used)
46	CPU timer saved valid
47	Clock comparator saved valid
48–63	(Not used).

0 System Damage

This bit is set to indicate uncorrectable errors in one of the following units or functions:

- Interruption system (loss of interruptions)
- MSC circuitry.

1 Instruction Processing Damage

This bit is set to indicate uncorrectable parity errors as follows:

- In MIP
- From main storage to MIP
- In addresses or keys

2 System Recovery

This bit is set to indicate that automatic recovery (reloading of a subprocessor) was successful.

3 Timer Damage

This bit is set to indicate an uncorrectable error in the interval timer.

4 Timing Facilities Damage

This bit is set to indicate damage to the TOD clock, clock comparator or CPU timer.

5 External Damage

This bit is set to indicate an error in an IOP or its attachment, or in the SVP. The bit is also set when damage has occurred to the timing facilities. The system recovery bit will then show whether the external damage can be recovered or not.

14 Backup

This bit indicates that unsuccessful internal retry attempts have been made.

1 The instruction address in the machine-check old PSW refers to the instruction that caused the error, or was being executed when the error was detected.

0 = The address in the machine-check old PSW points to an instruction located beyond the point of error detection.

15 Delayed

This bit is set when the machine-check interruption was delayed, as in the case with most external damage, where a recovery attempt (reloading) precedes the interruption in any case.

16 Storage Error

This bit, when set, indicates that a storage reference caused the detection of uncorrectable damaged data. (For example, a double-bit error in a storage with automatic correction for single-bit errors.)

17 Storage Error Corrected

This bit, when set, indicates that a storage reference resulted in an error that was corrected.

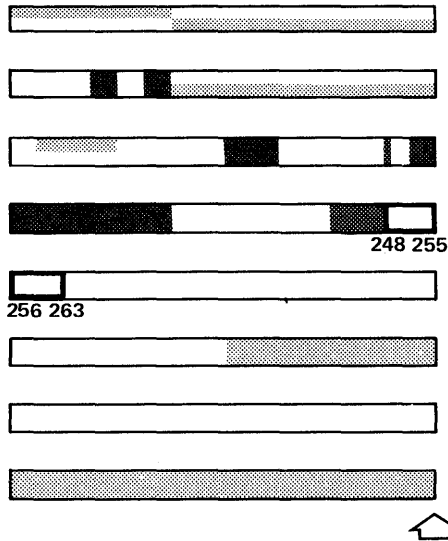
18 Storage Key Error Uncorrected

This bit, when set, indicates that a storage reference caused the detection of an uncorrectable key error. Storage keys are checked for errors only when the PSW or CAW key is non-zero.

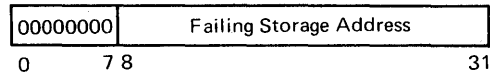
Note: Bits 6 and 9 to 13 are not assigned. Bits 7 and 8 are not used by the Model 115.

Main Storage Locations 232–239

Figure 29. Main Storage Locations 232–239 [19570]

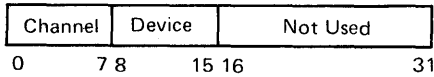


248–251 Failing Storage Address



During a machine-check interruption, this area is used to record the address of the failing storage location if an uncorrectable storage error occurs.

252–255 Region Code



The region code is stored during a machine-check interruption that is caused by external damage. The code identifies the affected IOP, and therefore also identifies the native attachment or channel (or the timing facility).

Bits 0 to 15 provide the following information:

Hex code	Meaning
000E	Card I/O and printer
001F	Video console
0020	Telecommunications
00F0	Multiplexer channel
0100	Disk attachment
0200	Tape adapter
003A	Timer facilities
003B	External signals

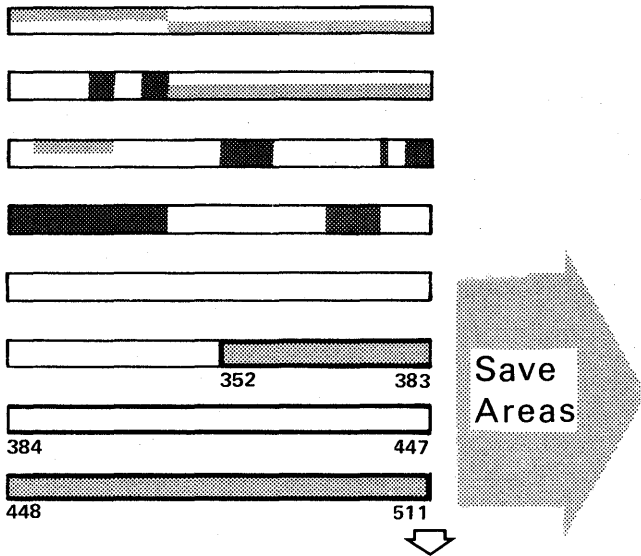
The device address from the instruction is used in the region code if it is available, otherwise the addresses listed above are used. During other machine-check interruptions (non-external) the region code is unpredictable and marked invalid.

256–263 Current PSW Save Area

The current PSW is stored in this area when the operator carries out a store status operation.

Main Storage Locations 248–263

Figure 30. Main Storage Locations 248-263 [10809A]



352–383 Floating Point Register Save Area

If a machine-check interruption occurs, the CPU attempts to save the contents of all floating point registers (if floating point feature is installed) into this area. If none or only part of the registers can be saved, the validity bit in the machine-check interruption code will be zero. The contents of the floating point registers are also saved during a store status operation.

384–447 General Register Save Area

During a machine-check interruption or during a store status operation, the CPU attempts to save the contents of all general registers.

Note on Register Saving

If the MIP is damaged, the task of saving registers is delegated to the SVP. If the SVP is unsuccessful, system damage is indicated. The validity bits in the machine-check interruption code show the extent to which saving was successful.

448–511 Control Register Save Area

During a machine-check interruption or during a store status operation, the CPU attempts to save the contents of all control registers.

Main Storage Locations 352–511

Figure 31. Main Storage Locations 352-511 [10810A]

Interruption Mechanism

The interruption mechanism of the Model 115 is logically the same as that of the System/360 except for handling differences in EC mode and the extra information available in certain new types of program interruptions. An interruption consists of storing the current PSW into a main storage location where it becomes the old PSW, and fetching a new PSW which is set up as the current PSW. Processing then continues in the state and at the instruction address introduced by this PSW. The old PSW contains the address of the instruction which would have been executed next if the interruption had not occurred, and also the interruption code (bits 16 to 31) if BC mode is set. In EC mode, the interruption codes have fixed main storage allocations as shown in Figure 24.

The following types of interruptions, defined in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, are

recognized by the Model 115:

- Machine check.
- Supervisor call.
- Program (including program event, monitor event, and translation exception interruptions).
- External (including CPU timer and clock comparator interruptions).
- Input/output.
- Restart.

Input/output interruptions include a channel available interruption for channel 1 (direct disk attachment) when it is operating in block multiplexing mode. The channel available interruption occurs when, after condition code 2 was set in response to an I/O instruction which addressed the block multiplexer channel, the channel has become available.

Type of Interruption	Code Stored (Hexadecimal)	Main Storage Location (Decimal) where code is stored	Operating Mode in which the interruption occurs
DAT segment translation exception	Interruption code 0010	142–143	EC only
DAT page translation exception	Interruption code 0011		
DAT specification exception	Interruption code 0012		
Monitor	Monitor code	156–159	EC and BC
	Monitor class number	148–149	
Program event recording	Program event code	150–151	EC only
	Program event address	152–155	
Input/output	I/O address	185–187	EC only
		Old PSW bits 16–31	BC only
	Limited channel logout	176–179	EC and BC, when channel data check, channel control check, or interface control check is set
Machine check	Interruption code	232–239	EC and BC
	Failing storage address (depending on error)	248–251	
	Contents of floating point, general, and control registers	352–511	
CPU timer	Interruption code	132–135	EC
		Old PSW bits 16–31	BC
Clock comparator	Interruption code	132–135	EC
		Old PSW bits 16–31	BC

Figure 32. Additional Information on Interruptions [10811A]

Timers

A time-of-day clock, two timers, and a clock comparator (Figures 33 to 36) are available as standard features on the 3115. The TOD clock measures elapsed time; the timers and the clock comparator provide program-controlled interruptions.

These interruptions, which are classed as external interruptions, are enabled, disabled, or left pending according to the setting of the external mask (PSW bit 7) and the appropriate bits in control register 0 (see Figure 18). If the external mask bit and the relevant timer mask bit are set, timer interruptions are enabled. If the external mask bit or the relevant timer mask bit is zero, timer interruptions are disabled, except for interval timer interruptions which remain pending.

As most of the timing facilities are not located in main storage, special instructions are provided for the programmer to examine or change the contents of timer locations. An exception is the interval timer at main storage location 80, which can be addressed by any suitable instruction that has location 80 as an operand.

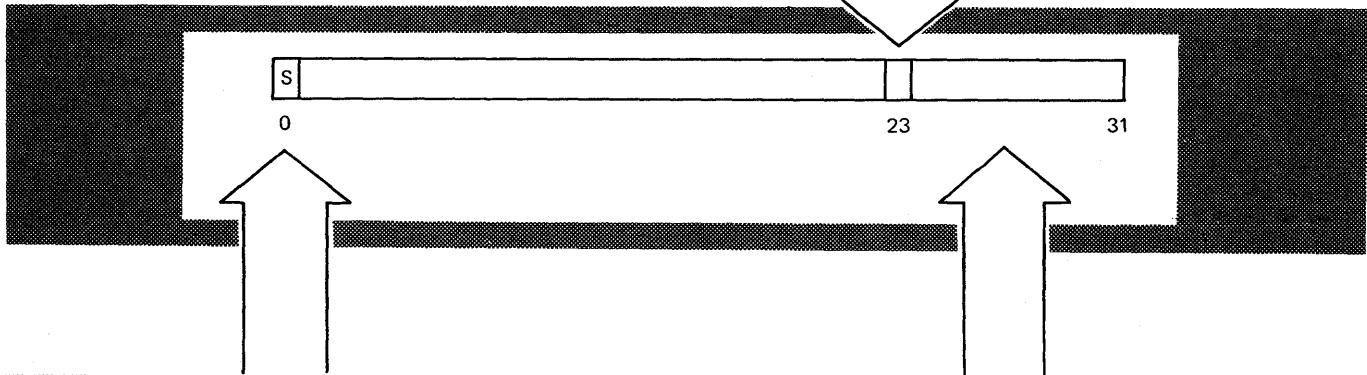
The timer is a 32-bit word at main storage location 80. Suitable instructions, designating location 80 as an operand, can store a value into or fetch a value from the timer at any time, provided location 80 is not protected against those operations.

The data in the timer is interpreted as a signed binary integer. Fetching from or storing into location 80 is interlocked to prevent collision with updating or with carry propagation. The updating of the timer causes internal performance degradation of 0.4%.

Updating

When the system is in run mode, bit position 23 is decremented by one every 3.33 milliseconds (ms). If higher priority requests prevent the MIP from accessing main storage, the next update compensates for the delay. Updating stops when the system is stopped or in the check-stop state. Updating is also suspended during manual operations that cause the Model 115 to stop, such as alter/display. In the wait state, however, the timer runs.

System reset normal does not change the timer data, but system reset clear resets the interval timer with valid parity.



Sign Change

An interruption is requested in EC or BC mode when the count goes from positive to negative if the external mask (PSW bit 7) and the timer subclass mask (bit 24 in control register 0) are both set. If the timer is masked off, the interruption remains pending (even if a positive value is introduced).

Ignored

Bit positions 24 to 31 do not participate in updating, and data placed in these positions remains unchanged.

Interval Timer

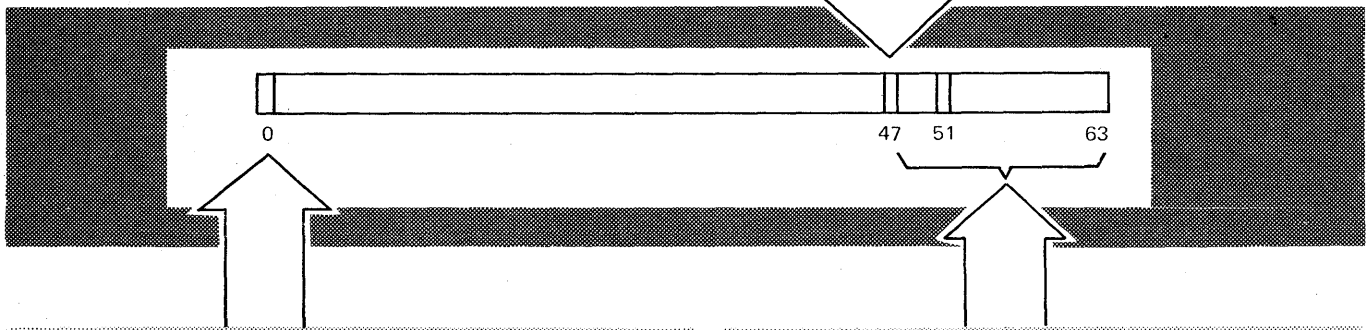
Figure 33. Interval Timer [10812A]

The time-of-day clock is a doubleword binary counter, with contents corresponding to a fixed point number of double precision. The clock is not located in main storage. Its contents can be inspected by the 'store clock' instruction. The clock has a resolution of $16 \mu s$, but successive instructions of this kind each store a unique clock value.

The clock value can be changed by the 'set clock' instruction. This instruction only works successfully, however, if the clock security switch at the operator console is simultaneously held to the ENBL SET position. This safeguards against accidental resetting. The success or failure of the 'set clock' instruction is indicated in the PSW condition code.

Updating

Time is measured by incrementing the clock value according to the rules for fixed point arithmetic. A 'one' is added to bit position 47 every $16 \mu s$ (equivalent to adding one to bit position 51 every μs). The clock is set to zero and begins counting after a successful power-on sequence. It keeps running until power is turned off, and is not affected by the stopped, check-stop, or wait states; nor by system reset, manual operations, or IPL. It can be stopped only by power-off or by damage. Updating is unaffected by heavy activity in main storage.



Effect of Carry

No interruption takes place when the clock is full, that is, a carry emerges from bit position 0. This carry is ignored, and counting continues from 0 onwards.

Ignored

Bit positions 48 to 63 do not participate in updating because they are physically non-existent. Therefore, a 'store clock' instruction cannot retrieve data from these positions, and a 'set clock' instruction cannot place data there.

Time-of-Day Clock

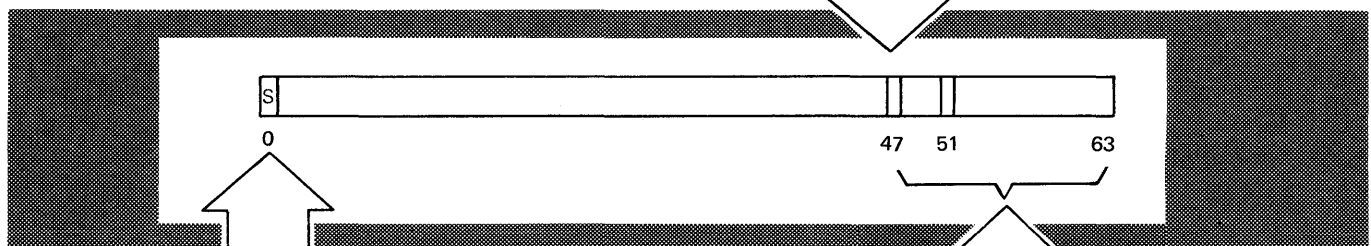
Figure 34. Time-of-Day Clock [10813]

The CPU timer is a binary counter with the same format as the time-of-day clock. It is not located in main storage. Its contents can be retrieved by the 'store CPU timer' instruction. Successive instructions of this kind each store a unique value into main storage.

The CPU timer value can be changed by the 'set CPU timer' instruction at any time without removing an interlock (there is no associated switch).

Updating

Time is measured by subtracting one from bit position 47 every 16 μ s. Subtract operations synchronize with the add operations in the TOD clock, so the two counters operate in unison. They are, however, independent in that the CPU timer sometimes runs when the TOD clock does not (in the case of damage, for example). Conversely the CPU timer stops when the system is in stopped mode but the TOD clock does not stop. An exception to this rule is that the CPU timer runs during the short time required for the execution of certain manual operations, including program reset, store status, and displaying and altering registers, the PSW, and keys in storage. It does not stop when the system is in the wait state. System reset or IPL resets the timer to zero.



Sign Change

An interruption condition is created in EC or BC mode when the count is negative. The interruption occurs if the external mask (PSW bit 7) and the CPU timer subclass mask (bit 21 in control register 0) are set while the timer is negative. If a positive value is set before the interruption is taken, the interruption condition is removed.

Ignored

Bit positions 48–63 do not physically exist and no data can be stored into or fetched from these positions.

CPU Timer

Figure 35. CPU Timer [10814A]

Purpose

The clock comparator is used to cause an interruption when the value of the TOD clock reaches or passes a value specified in the program.

Setting

The clock comparator is set by the 'set clock comparator' instruction.

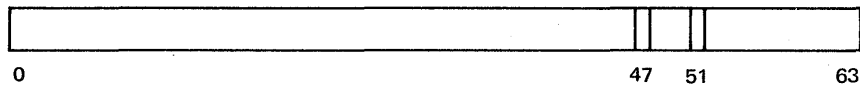
Inspection of Contents

The contents of the clock comparator can be inspected by means of the 'store clock comparator' instruction.

Interruptions

The 48 bits of the clock comparator represent an unsigned binary integer matching the size of the TOD clock. The comparator value is compared continuously with the TOD clock values, even if the system is in the stopped, check-stop, or wait state.

An interruption condition occurs whenever the comparator value is smaller than the TOD clock value, regardless of whether the clock is running, or in the error state. The interruption takes place if the external mask (PSW bit 7) and the comparator subclass mask (bit 20 in control register 0) are set. The condition is removed if a larger value is introduced by a 'set clock comparator' instruction before the interruption has occurred.



Resetting

System reset or IPL resets the clock comparator to zero.

Clock Comparator

Figure 36. Clock Comparator [10815]

Operator Console

The operator console (Figures 37 to 48), consisting of a video display and keyboard with control panel, is the means by which the operator can control the Model 115. The operator console replaces the conventional machine panel equipped with switches and lights.

Manual operations (such as displaying and altering data, loading programs, and running the system in instruction step or address compare mode) are performed by keying selector characters from the keyboard into displays on the video screen. The screen is used to display all actions. There are no indicator lights to be decoded, because all information is displayed on the screen, in clear text, hexadecimal notation, or binary zeros and ones. A console printer is available, as an optional feature, to record messages as hard copy.

When the console is not being used as an operator panel, it is available to the operating system for displaying messages, and receiving responses from the operator.

A permanent display of the 3115 status is provided on the lower part of the video screen.

The Model 115's operator console is a standard integrated feature which allows:

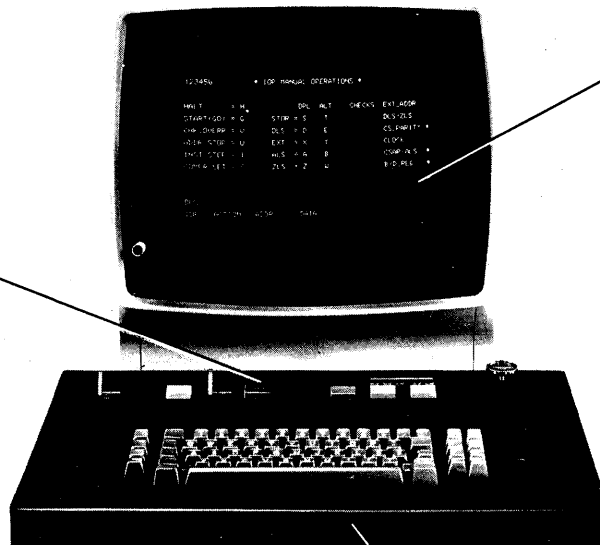
- Communication between the operator and the system
- Manual control of events within the system.

Video Screen

The video screen displays keyboard input and messages from the operating system

Control Panel

The control panel contains keys and lights for functions which cannot be handled conveniently by the video display and keyboard



Console Keyboard

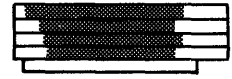
The console keyboard is used for keying information into the system, starting and stopping programs, and so on

Operator Console

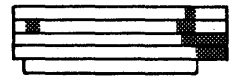
Figure 37. Operator Console [10816]

The console keyboard allows the operator to communicate with the system. Most of its functions are available in the stopped and in the running states of the system. There are three types of keys:

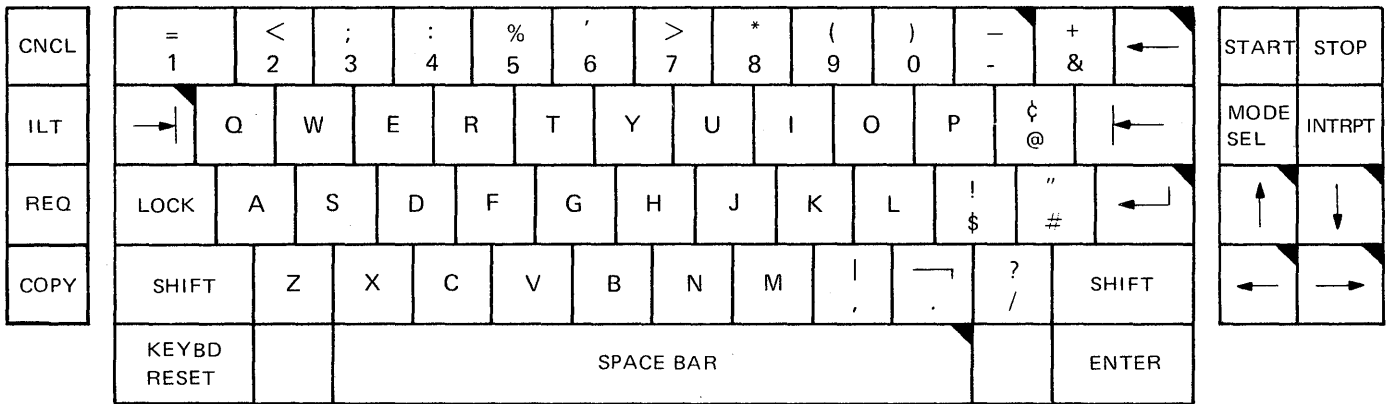
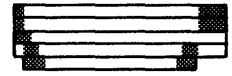
Alphameric Keys



Cursor, Backspace, and Tabulator Keys



Function Keys



Legend



Typamatic action

Keyboard Disable Action

Locking is electrical, not mechanical, so locked keys can still be physically operated but no action results.

Keys which lock:

- All alphameric keys (including space)
- ENTER
- COPY
- KEYBD RESET

Keys which do not lock:

- START
- INTRPT
- MODE SEL
- ILT
- CNCL
- REQ
- Cursor keys
- STOP

Note: The space bar is not marked on actual keyboard.

Console Keyboard

Figure 38. Console Keyboard [10817A]

The 45 alphameric keys, in conjunction with the shift keys, allow a total of 63 EBCDIC codes to be generated.

Nearly all the alphameric keys have momentary action: however long the key is pressed, only one character enters. The space bar and minus key are exceptions, being typamatic keys which cause

one character to be entered when briefly pressed, and repetitive entry when held down.

A typed-in character does not enter the system until the ENTER key is pressed. Key selection errors can be corrected by overwriting before the entry is finalized.

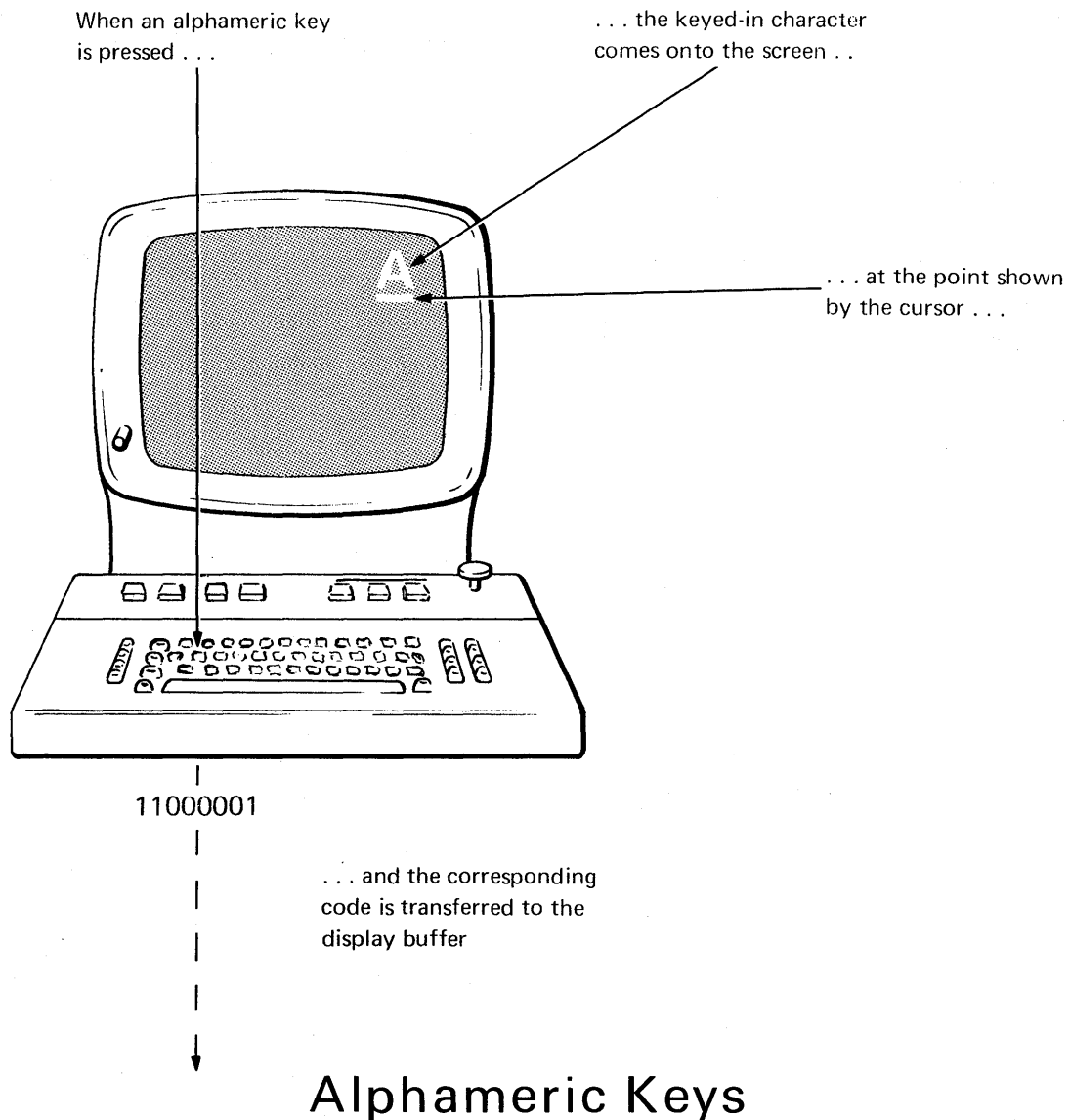
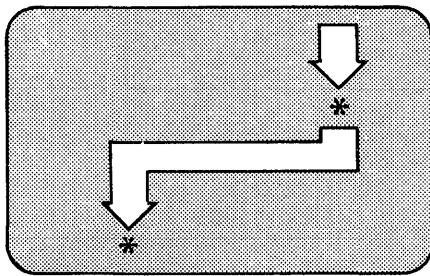
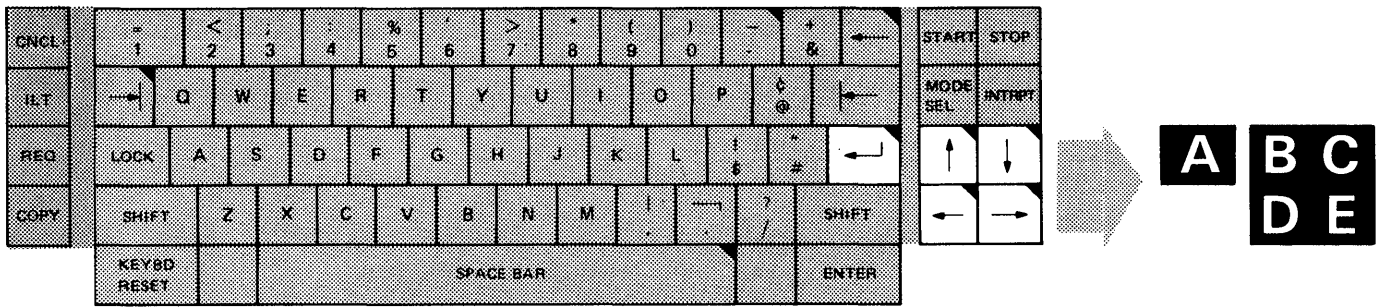
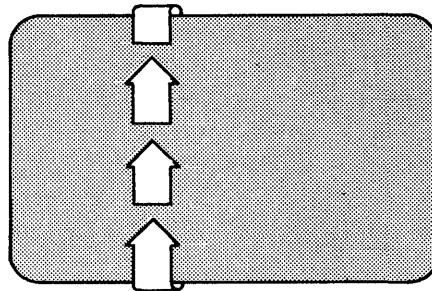


Figure 39. Alphameric Keys [10818A]



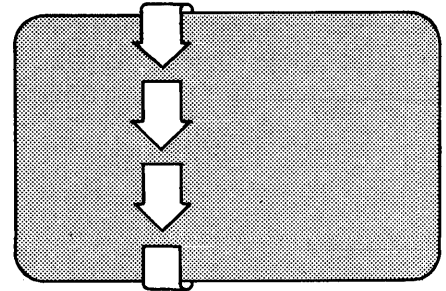
A Cursor to New Line

When the key is held down, the cursor moves to the first unprotected character position (*) in the first line down to have such an unprotected position, and so on, until a scan of all such lines has been made. On reaching the bottom of the screen, the cursor wraps to the first line with an unprotected character position.



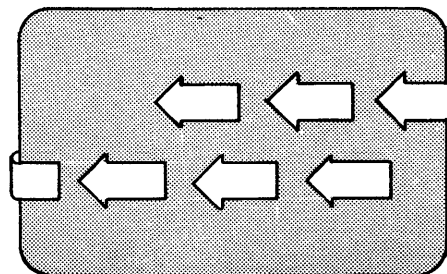
B Cursor Up

The cursor runs upwards, but stays in the same character column. On reaching the top of the screen, it wraps to the bottom and continues upwards again.



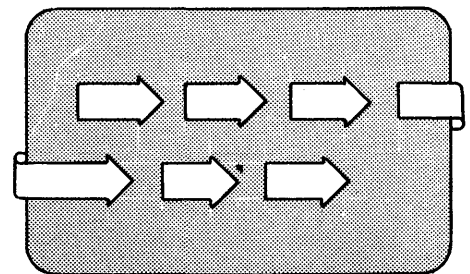
C Cursor Down

The cursor runs downwards but stays in the same character column. On reaching the bottom of the screen, it wraps to the top and continues downwards again.



D Cursor to Left

The cursor scans right-to-left, progressing up the screen. On reaching the top left-hand corner of the screen, it wraps to the bottom right-hand position and continues scanning.

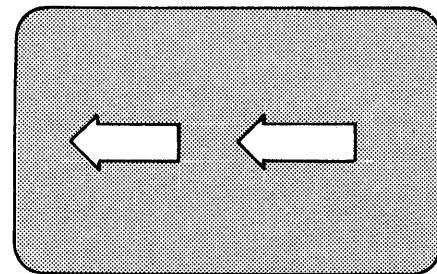
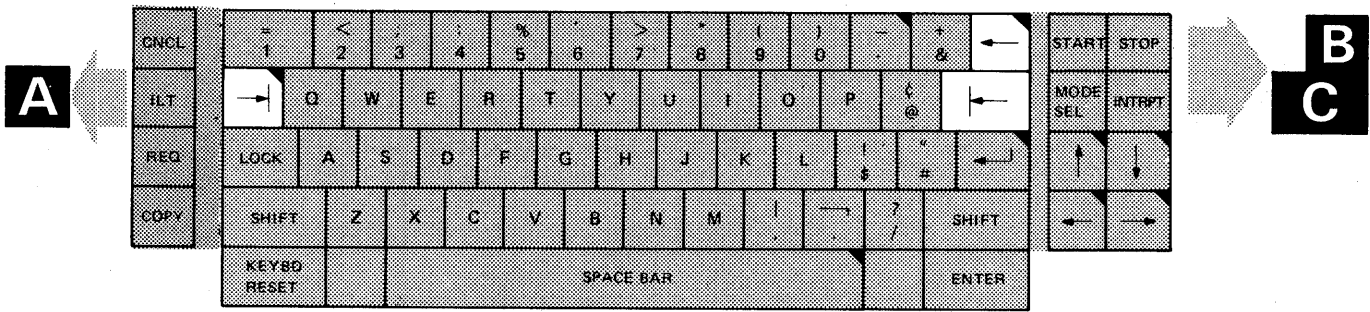


E Cursor to Right

The cursor scans left-to-right, progressing down the screen. On reaching the bottom right-hand corner of the screen, it wraps to the top left-hand position and continues scanning.

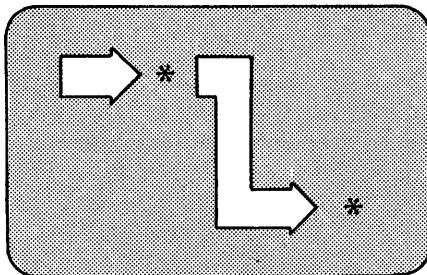
Cursor Control

Figure 40. Cursor Control [10819]



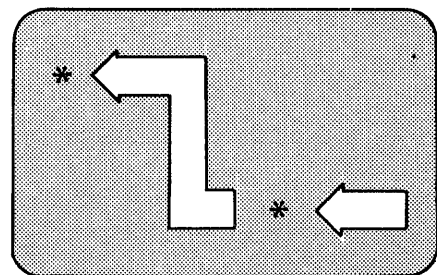
B Backspace Key

Each time this key is pressed, the cursor moves one position to the left, unless it is already in the leftmost position, in which case it moves to the rightmost position of the line above. When the key is held down this action is repetitive.



A Tabulator Left-to-Right

If the key is held down, the cursor skips rightwards to the first character position (*) of the first unprotected field it encounters, then scans all first character positions of unprotected fields line by line in a left-to-right top-to-bottom movement. On reaching the bottom right-hand corner of the screen, it wraps to the leftmost character of the topmost unprotected field.

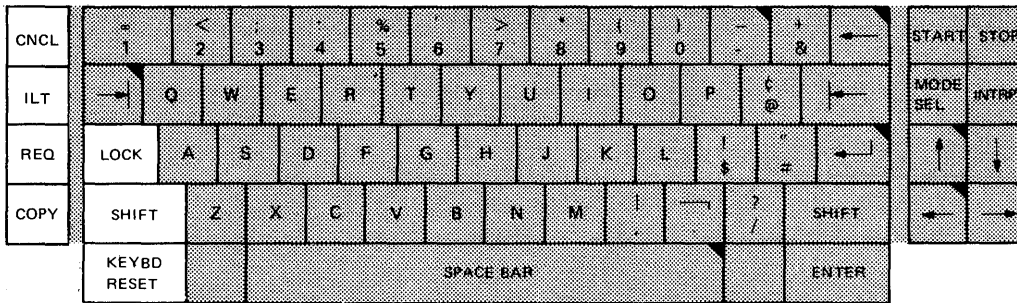


C Tabulator Right-to-Left

The current position of the cursor affects the operation of the back-tabulator key. When the cursor is in an input field at a location other than the first character location, the backtab key repositions it to the first character position in the field. When the cursor is in a protected field, or at the first character position of an input field, the backtab key repositions it to the first character position of the first input field to the left of the present field. It is not a typamatic key.

Backspace and Tabulator Keys

Figure 41. Backspace and Tabulator Keys [10820A]



Cancel

If the CNCL key is pressed when the screen is under control of the operating system and a message has been keyed in, the display disappears from the screen. The message is transferred to main storage and an attention interruption is requested.

If CNCL is pressed during manual operations such as alter/display, the display disappears from the screen and control of the screen is returned to the operating system.

Copy

The COPY key can only be used when the 5213 printer (the console printer) is attached to the system and when manual operations are on the screen.

When the COPY key is pressed, the console printer makes a copy of the display on the screen. Only the first 12 lines (and not the machine status area) are copied. During copying, the keyboard (except for the function keys) locks.

In-line Test

Pressing the ILT (in-line test) key causes the repertoire of in-line tests to appear on the screen for selection by the customer engineer. The operating system message (if any) is stored. The ILT key has no function when manual operations are displayed.

Lock

Pressing the shift LOCK key holds the shift keys down. The shift lock is released when either of the two shift keys is pressed.

Request

Pressing the request key when the 1052 command set is being used for console operations, causes an attention interrupt. This interrupt is used to obtain a read command which unlocks the keyboard. When the 1052 command set is not being used for console operations, the REQ key has no function during manual operations. However, when the system is under the control of the operating system, REQ can be pressed to call the DOS attention routine.

Shift

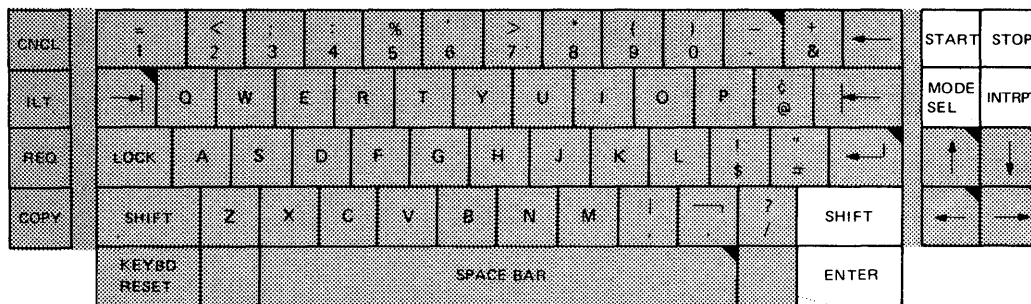
There are two SHIFT keys for use with those alphameric keys which are marked with two characters. When a SHIFT key is pressed together with one of these alphameric keys, the upper character is effective. When the alphameric key is pressed without a SHIFT key, the lower character is effective.

Keyboard Reset

Pressing the KEYBD RESET key restores the use of the keyboard to the operator, after it has been inhibited. If the keyboard is locked, the KEYBD RESET key has no function.

Function Keys

Figure 42. Function Keys (Left-hand Side of Keyboard) [10821B]



Start

When the system is in the stopped state, pressing the START key starts the MIP, thus ending the stopped state. The START key is ineffective if the system has a hardstop error condition or if a maintenance or log display program is running.

Stop

When the STOP key is pressed, the system stops but not before all instructions currently in progress are completed, and all pending interruptions not masked off are serviced. The STOP key is ineffective when a maintenance or log display program is running.

Shift

The SHIFT keys are used with those alphameric keys which are marked with two characters. When a SHIFT key is pressed together with one of these alphameric keys, the upper character is effective. When the alphameric key is pressed without the shift key, the lower character is effective.

Mode Select

Pressing the MODE SEL key causes the current message on the screen (if any) to be stored and the repertoire of manual modes to be displayed. The MODE SEL key cannot be used to stop or start the machine.

Pressing the key does not affect any programs running, but if the console printer is working it will stop: the console will appear busy to the operating system.

Interrupt

When the INTRPT key is pressed, an external interruption is generated. The interruption is interpreted solely by the program.

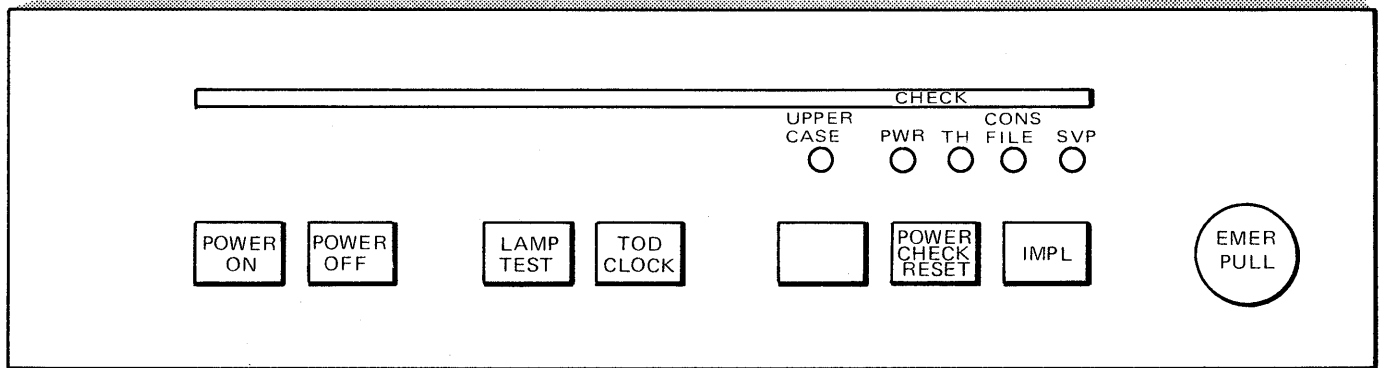
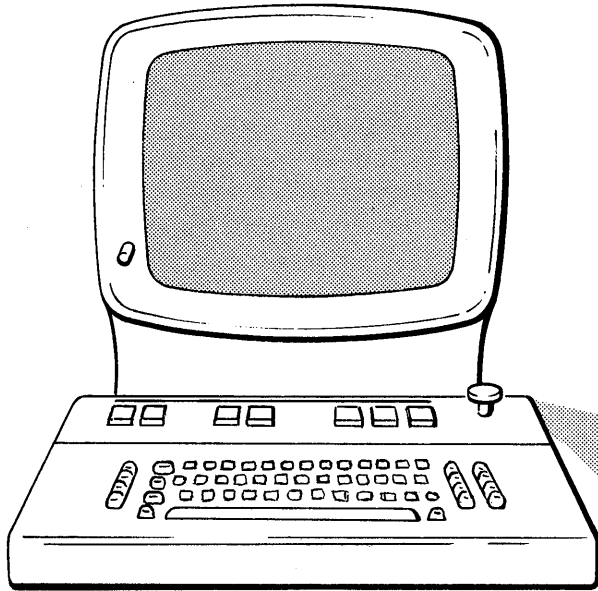
Enter

When the ENTER key is pressed, keyed-in data enters the system and is available to the program. Before the ENTER key is pressed, any keyed-in data can still be changed by the operator.

Function Keys

Figure 43. Function Keys (Right-hand Side of Keyboard) [10822A]

The control panel on the operator console keyboard houses a number of switches, keys, and lights (see Figures 45, 46 and 47). The keys are used for basic tasks such as making the system operational. The lights alert the operator to check conditions or upper case mode.



Control Panel

Figure 44. Control Panel [10823]

POWER
ON

Note: The POWER ON key can be backlit either red or white:
Red = The power-on sequence has been initiated. If the sequence is not successfully completed and partial power is present, the key remains red.
White = The power-on sequence has been successfully completed.
When the key is dark (unlit), power is off.

Pressing the POWER ON key initiates:

- System power-on sequence
- Initial microprogram loading (IMPL) sequence
- Reset, in such a way that the system performs no instructions or I/O operations until explicitly directed.

The machine enters the stopped state. The POWER ON key is only effective when the emergency pull switch is in the "in" position.

POWER
OFF

Pressing the POWER OFF key initiates a power-off sequence. The POWER ON key turns red during the power-down sequence and finally becomes dark when all power is removed. The contents of all storages are destroyed.

LAMP
TEST

When the LAMP TEST key is pressed, the check lights on the control panel, the lamps behind the illuminated keys, and the lamps on most I/O devices controlled by integrated adapters and attachments, are tested. (Some of these I/O devices have their own lamp test switches and others cannot be tested.) When the LAMP TEST key is released, the lights are turned off.

TOD
CLOCK

To enable execution of a 'set clock' instruction, the TOD CLOCK spring-loaded key must be pressed at the moment the instruction is given. If the TOD CLOCK key is not operated at this time, the instruction is not executed and the value in the TOD CLOCK is not changed. When the TOD CLOCK key is released it returns to the secure position, and the TOD clock cannot be affected by a 'set clock' instruction.

Control Panel Keys

Figure 45. Control Panel Keys [10824A]

POWER
CHECK
RESET

The POWER CHECK RESET key permits the power error indicator lights PWR (power check) and TH (thermal) to be reset after power is off. The key is unlit.

IMPL

The IMPL (initial microprogram loading) key is unlit. When it is pressed, all microprograms are loaded from the console file into the subprocessors which have loadable control storages. During IMPL, the video screen shows the message 'IMPL in Progress'. A malfunction in the console file causes the file check light to turn on. When all microprograms have been loaded, the message 'Program Load' is displayed on the screen, because program loading is normally the next operation to be performed. The IMPL key is not used in normal operation.

EMERGENCY
PULL

All power is at once removed when the emergency pull switch is pulled. Once operated, the switch must be restored mechanically by an IBM customer engineer (CE) before power can be turned on by the POWER ON key.

Control Panel Keys and Switch

Figure 46. Control Panel Keys and Switch [10825]

(UPPER CASE)



The UPPER CASE light indicates that data entered on the keyboard is transferred to main storage in upper case code because the SHIFT or shift LOCK key is pressed.

PWR



The PWR (power) check light indicates a failure in one of the logic voltage supplies.

TH



The TH (thermal) check light indicates that overheating has been detected in one of the logic gates, storage arrays, or power area.

CONS
FILE



The CONS FILE (console file) check light indicates a malfunction in the console file and/or its control, so that microprogram loading cannot be performed. This error requires attention by a customer engineer.

SVP



The SVP check light indicates an error in the service processor. This error requires attention by a customer engineer.

Power Failure

1. *In an external control unit.* If power failure occurs in a control unit, the POWER ON key turns red, but none of the power check lights are lit. The system is not powered down.
2. *In the 3115.* If power fails in the 3115 during the power-on sequence, or if an overvoltage or undervoltage condition occurs after power-on, the POWER ON key turns red and the PWR check light is lit.

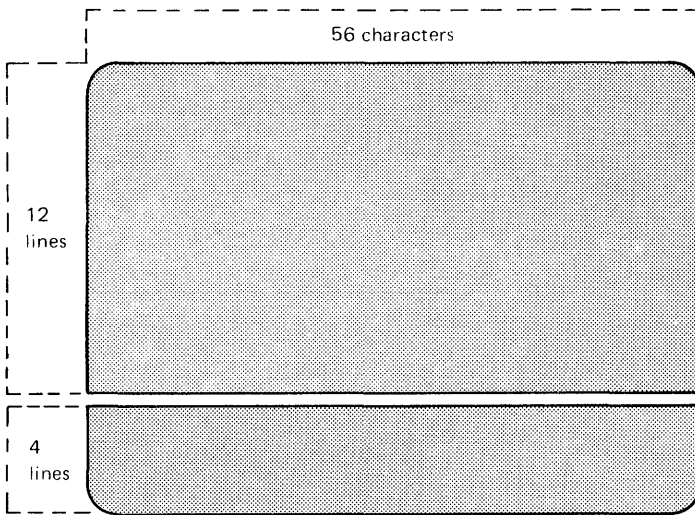
Control Panel Lights

Figure 47. Control Panel Lights [10826]

The Model 115's video display:

- Consists of a 15-inch video monitor attached to the service processor.
- Is mounted on a separate table and rotatable by 180°
- Displays numeric characters, upper case alphabetic characters, and special symbols.
- Is equipped with manual intensity adjustment.
- Is equipped with a program-controlled audible alarm, which alerts the operator to messages requiring attention.

Display Format



System Output Area

This area of the screen is used for displaying messages from the operating system during normal operation. During manual operations, it is used for displaying and selecting operating modes. If the operator is allowed to proceed he uses this area for his response. The cursor marks the beginning of the field assigned to him.

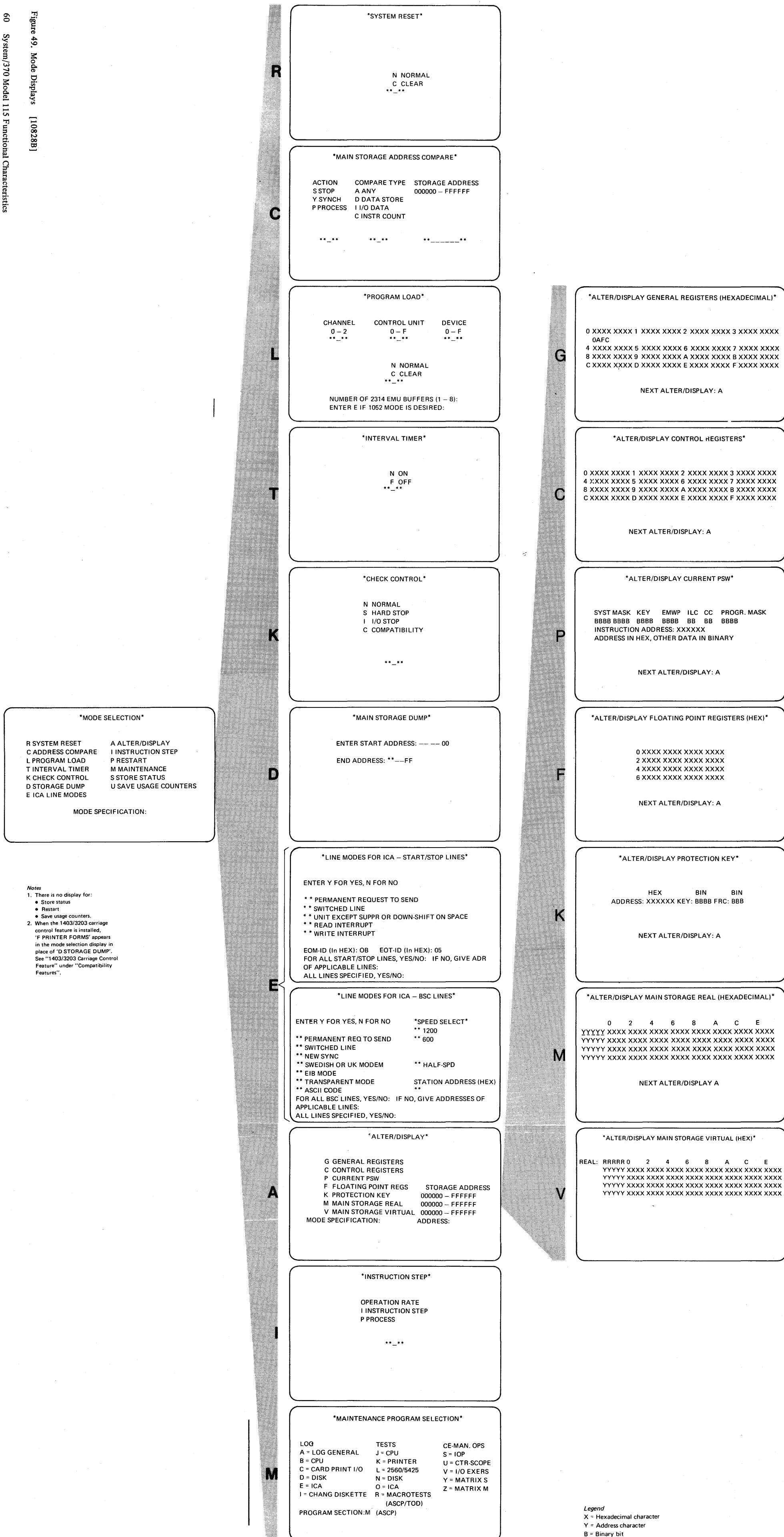
Machine Status Display

This area of the screen permanently displays the machine status.

Video Display

Figure 48. Video Display [10827]

Figure 49. Mode Displays [108288]



Mode Displays

Legend
 X = Hexadecimal character
 Y = Address character
 B = Binary bit

MODE SELECTION

The operator can place the Model 115 into any of the following modes:

- System reset
- Address compare
- Program load
- Interval timer
- Check control
- Storage dump or printer forms
- ICA modes
- Alter/display
 - General registers
 - Floating point
 - Current PSW
 - Protection key
 - Main storage real
 - Main storage virtual
 - Control registers
- Instruction step
- Restart
- Maintenance
- Store status
- Save usage counters.

To specify a mode, the operator must first press the MODE SEL key to bring the mode selection display to the video screen. This action does not affect the condition of the machine, which continues in its current state (running, or in the stopped state).

Pressing the MODE SEL key causes the following actions:

1. The last video screen message from the operating system is stored for later use.
2. The mode selection display (Figure 49) appears on the screen, with the cursor positioned at 'Mode Specification'.

The mode selection display lists the operating modes in which the Model 115 can be run. Against each mode listed is a selector character (R, C, L, T, K, D or F, E, A, I, P, M, S, or U) which the operator keys in to set the mode of his choice; for instance 'C' for address compare mode or 'I' for instruction step mode.

When the operator has keyed in the selector character he must press the ENTER key, which will cause a new display, defining the selected mode, to appear. The operator can now expand his specification by, for example, keying in a main storage address or defining registers for display. After he has again pressed the ENTER key, the Model 115 will be in the desired mode.

Note: Experienced operators may key *all* specifications for a particular mode direct into the mode selection display. This *fast selection* is described separately for each mode in the following paragraphs.

Mode Selection Errors

Every keyed-in specification is checked for validity as soon

as the operator presses the ENTER key. If the first character keyed in is not one shown in the mode selection display, the message 'Invalid Character' appears, and the mode selection display stays on the screen. The cursor marks the error spot. If no character was entered, or fast selection was attempted but the keyboard input was incomplete, the message 'Incomplete Entry' appears.

OPERATING MODES

The following paragraphs describe the available operating modes. Refer to the mode displays shown in Figure 49.

System Reset (R)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen, the operator can obtain the system reset display by keying in the selector character 'R' against 'Mode Specification' on the screen, then pressing the ENTER key. The mode selection display will disappear, and be replaced by the system reset display (see Figure 49). The operator can now specify a normal reset or clear reset by keying in selector character 'N' or 'C' respectively.

Normal and Clear Resets

Normal Reset: (also known as "program reset") resets the channels and the CPU. The CPU is put into the stopped state. In addition, parity is made valid in the following facilities (without changing their contents):

- PSW
- CPU timer
- Clock comparator
- Control registers
- General registers
- Floating-point registers.

The following facilities are not affected and their parity remains unchanged:

- Main storage
- Keys in storage
- TOD clock.

Note: After normal reset, the emulator buffers (if any) in main storage are available for display and will contain the status of the last operation. This status is reset by the next I/O instruction that addresses channel 1, after which the buffers become unavailable for display.

Clear Reset: resets the channels and the CPU and clears the following facilities to zero with valid parity:

- PSW
- CPU timer
- Clock comparator
- General registers
- Floating-point registers
- Main storage
- Keys in storage.

In addition, the control registers are initialized (that is,

specific bits in these registers are set to 1 or 0). The TOD clock is not altered and its parity is unchanged. (Only the power-on reset resets the TOD clock to zero.)

Note: If buffers have been assigned for 2311 or 2314 emulation this assignment is terminated by system reset clear.

If no errors were made, the specified reset operation is performed when the operator presses the ENTER key. Execution of the current CPU instruction (if any) is terminated, pending interrupts or machine check conditions are cleared and the CPU stops.

The system reset display remains on the screen and, after a while, the message 'Reset Complete' appears. The operator may then re-select the load picture (via the MODE SEL key) or perform another manual operation.

Note: When the system reset display is on the screen with the 'Reset Complete' message in it, pressing the START key does not make the display disappear, but the machine starts. The CNCL key must be pressed to release the screen to the operating system.

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can enter 'RN' or 'RC' direct into the mode selection display. After the operator has pressed the ENTER key, the message 'Reset Complete' appears as soon as the reset operation has been performed.

Address Compare (C)

By keying selector character 'C' into the mode selection display and pressing ENTER, the operator brings the main storage address compare display (see Figure 49) onto the screen. The operator must not key in three parameters; the action to be performed, the compare type, and the storage address.

Action

The operator must first key in, under the 'Action' heading, one of three code letters which represent the type of action to be performed.

1. *Stop Action (code 'S')* means that the Model 115 will stop when a match with the search address is detected in the conditions specified here under 'Compare Type' (see "Compare Type" below).
2. *Sync Action (code 'Y')* means that the Model 115 will not stop when the address match occurs, but that a synchronization pulse is issued. Processing continues.
3. *Process Action (code 'P')* means that the address compare mode is turned off. If the Model 115 is in the stopped state when 'P' is entered, it remains stopped.

Compare Type

After specifying the type of action to be performed, the operator must next key in one of four code letters. Each

letter represents a type of comparison which can be performed.

1. *Any (code 'A')* means that whenever an address is referred to, regardless of the operation, it is compared with the search address.
2. *Data Store (code 'D')* means that only addresses used by the CPU to store data into main storage are compared with the search address. Fetch operations are ignored.
3. *I/O Data (code 'I')* means that only addresses used in transferring data to and from input/output devices are compared with the search address.
4. *Instruction Count (code 'C')* means that only addresses used by the 3115 to fetch instructions are compared with the search address.

Storage Address

The storage address is the last piece of information that the operator must key into the main storage address compare display. The address which is to be the subject of the compare operation must be keyed in beneath the 'Storage Address' legend on the screen, with all leading zeros.

Entering the Specification

When the operator presses the ENTER key, the main storage address compare display disappears from the screen. The specifications that were keyed in are, however, displayed in the machine status area (see Figure 50) as a reminder that address compare mode is set.

Specification Errors

The following messages appear on the screen if the operator has made an error in his keyed-in specification.

Invalid Character: The 'Invalid Character' message appears if an incorrect selector character or non-hexadecimal character has been entered.

Invalid Address: The 'Invalid Address' message appears if an address exceeding the installed storage is specified.

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can key address compare mode direct into the mode selection display. For example, entry 'CSI005FA0' means 'compare and stop during I/O data transfer when address 005FA0 comes up'.

Program Load (L)

The program load display appears automatically when IMPL is successful. If IMPL is unsuccessful, a progress report remains on the screen. The program load display can, however, be fetched by entering 'L' against 'Mode Specification' in the mode selection display.

When the program load display appears, the cursor is located under the channel field (see Figure 49). The

operator may now specify the address of the device from which he intends to load his program. If he does not intend to load, he may press the MODE SEL key to do some other operation.

If he types his specification into the screen (via keyboard), the characters or numbers appear on the screen. As each character is typed-in, the cursor moves one step ahead. The operator need not look at the screen because the cursor moves automatically to the next field when one has been filled. Thus, after channel, control unit, and device have been specified, the cursor is at the normal/clear field. Either 'N' or 'C' can be specified. The normal or clear specification defines the type of reset action that is automatically performed before the load operation.

Normal Loading

Normal loading causes an initial program reset, which means that the channels and the CPU are reset, the CPU timer and the clock comparator are cleared to zero, and the control registers are initialized. The contents of the general and floating-point registers are unchanged but their parity is made valid. The main storage and the keys in storage, and their parity, are left unchanged.

Clear Loading

Clear loading causes main storage, keys in storage, general registers, floating-point registers, CPU timer, and clock comparator to be cleared to zero with valid parity. Channels and CPU are reset, and the control registers are initialized. This reset action is the same as occurs during power-on except that the TOD clock remains unchanged. (Only power-on sets the TOD clock to zero.)

2311/2314 Buffer Specifications

If the 2311-1/3340 Series, or 2314-1/3340 Series compatibility feature is installed, the program load display contains a line that allows the operator to specify up to eight buffers for this feature. One buffer must be specified to make the compatibility feature operational. If the operator enters nothing (or 0) the compatibility feature is not operational. Each buffer specified reduces the available physical storage by 4K bytes (for 2311), or 8K bytes (for 2314), which are taken from the "top" of main storage. Each specified buffer is used for the vital data of one emulated 2311 or 2314 track. Any buffer that is assigned in addition to the required minimum increases the performance during access-intensive jobs.

Block multiplexing must be off when buffers are assigned, otherwise the disk attachment is not operational.

1052 Compatibility

If the console is to operate under command set 2 in 1052-compatible mode, the character 'E' should be entered at the last line. Command set 2 is required for all DOS

releases prior to DOS/VS. If nothing is entered, the console operates under command set 1 (as required for DOS/VS).

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can key a program load specification direct into the mode selection display. For example, entry 'L09CN' means 'load from device 09C in normal fashion'.

Interval Timer (T)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen and the operator enters selector character 'T' against 'Mode Specification', the screen picture changes to the interval timer display (see Figure 49). The current state of the interval timer is shown in the machine status area (see Figure 50). The operator therefore knows which character will cause a change. Any new timer state is shown in the machine status area.

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can enter 'TN' or 'TF' direct into the mode selection display to specify interval timer on or off.

Check Control (K)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen and the operator enters selector character 'K' against 'Mode Specification', the screen picture changes to the check control display (see Figure 49). The current check control mode is shown in the machine status area (see Figure 50): if no check control mode has yet been specified, this area will show the check control status as 'Normal', which means that check control conditions are handled as specified by the mask bit in control register 14. The operator can, however, overrule this register by entering one of four code letters, which represent the following four modes listed in the check control display.

1. *Normal (code 'N')*. turns off any previously-selected check control mode and allows the waiting log (if any) to be recorded. Selecting normal mode returns control to the mask bits in control register 14. If 'N' is entered when normal mode is already in effect, the screen is returned to the operating system (no error indication is given).
2. *Hard Stop (code 'S')* is a diagnostic mode that suppresses automatic microprogram refreshing and logging of "hard" errors. The purpose of this re-loading and log suppression is to preserve the original error condition in the affected processor. When 'S' is entered, the message 'Hard Stop' appears in the machine status area as a reminder and the 'Test' indicator also appears. The Model 115 continues normal processing until a log request arises in the system, indicated on the screen by the message 'Log Waiting'. Further action depends on

the reason for the log request, as follows:

- a. If an IOP raised its program-controlled request (PCR) either for the purpose of logging an I/O device error or to obtain inline test parameters from the SVP, the request is kept pending but the system remains otherwise operational (keeps running). However, other log-like actions such as saving usage counters or loading UCS or forms control buffers are kept pending. Such actions are performed only when normal mode is set.
- b. If an IOP is stopped due to a hardware check, the MIP/IPU continues to run until it selects the stopped IOP. At that time the MIP/IPU times-out and stops. This also occurs when the MIP/IPU has an error. Logging and microprogram refreshing are suppressed. During the check stop state, the START key and the restart mode are ineffective. When the machine is in run mode, however, the MODE SEL key remains active. For recovery, the operator must enter 'KN' into the mode selection display.
3. *I/O Stop (code 'T')* causes the machine to enter the check stop state after a limited channel logout has been stored. Limited channel logouts are generated by a channel data check, channel control check, or interface control check.
4. *Compatibility (code 'C')* causes the 3115 to enter the check stop state after a limited channel logout or a machine-check interruption has occurred and the values of registers, timers, and so on have been transferred to the assigned main storage positions.

Note: Compatibility mode must be set before a System/360 program is run.

When one of the listed modes has been correctly entered, the screen display disappears and the machine status area shows the mode entered. A check control mode remains in effect until turned off by the entry 'N' (normal).

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can enter KN, KS, KI, or KC direct into the mode selection display.

Storage Dump (D)

The dump facility provides a non-destructive readout and printout of any main storage area (up to 64K bytes at a time) without any software support. The dump can be performed at any time, and the (dumped) program can continue as soon as dumping is completed (no IPL or restart is required). The dump can only be performed on a printer connected to an integrated printer attachment which has no 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature installed. The printer must first be made ready.

For dumping, the character 'D' must be typed into the mode selection display, then the ENTER key must be pressed. If there is no line printer on the integrated printer attachment, the message 'Not Installed' appears. Otherwise

the dump display comes onto the screen. The operator may then type in start and end addresses of his choice within the prescribed limitations (see Figure 49). The low-order halfword of the start address is limited (preselected zeros) to ensure proper print format. The end address is limited to a 64K range. The operator need only enter two hexadecimal digits because the two asterisks automatically assume the value of the start address digits above them. If more than 64K bytes are to be dumped, the operation must be repeated, using new start and end addresses.

Dumping is initiated as soon as the operator presses the ENTER key, provided no operator errors have been made and the line printer is ready. Pressing the ENTER key stops the MIP/IPU and starts the printer. Once printing has started, all function keys are operational. Thus, if the START key is pressed, dumping stops and instruction processing is resumed; the message 'Dump Cancelled' is displayed if dumping was not completed. Pressing the STOP key will now re-initiate dumping, and an address compare stop has the same effect. Pressing MODE SEL or CNCL will, however, terminate dumping.

Dumping ends automatically when either the selected dump range has been printed or the upper boundary of main storage (real) has been reached. Accordingly, either the message 'Dump Complete' or 'Storage End' appears in the dump display on the screen. The machine is in stopped state at this time. The operator may then dump another storage area or continue with the program by pressing the START key, after pressing the CNCL or MODE SEL key to remove the dump display from the screen.

Errors

If the line printer is not ready, the message 'Printer Not Ready' appears on the screen as soon as the operator presses the ENTER key. If the start address is greater than the real storage size, the message 'Storage End' appears and no action occurs (the dump facility does not wrap). Invalid (non-hex) characters are rejected.

Hardware Errors: If a log request is pending in the printer IOP when the dump is initiated, the message 'Press Cancel' appears. If the IOP is damaged, or not installed, the message 'Communication Error' appears because the IOP cannot respond to the dump request. In either case the operator should then press the CNCL key and will see the log message displayed in the machine status area. Dumping can be repeated as soon as the log message disappears. Once the dump is started, logging is suppressed until dumping ends.

Fast Selection

No fast selection is provided for storage dumping.

ICA Line Mode (E)

ICA line mode displays are only available if the Model 115 has an integrated communications adapter installed. Two

displays may be obtained, one for start/stop lines, and one for binary synchronous communications (BSC) lines. The line mode displays are not used in normal operation. They are provided as an installation aid and to offer a means of changing the specification quickly.

Normally, the line mode is specified by a 'set line mode' command in the program. Selector character 'E' (described more fully under "ICA Line Modes Display" in *Operator's Library: System/370 Model 115 Procedures*, GA33-1514) obtains a display, however, which offers the same options as the program command. These options are described under "Set Line Mode" (command) for each line control procedure in the "Teleprocessing Facilities" chapter of this manual.

Start/Stop Lines

To obtain the start/stop lines (or BSC lines) display, the operator must enter selector character 'E' against 'Mode Specification' on the mode selection display. The operator may type in 'Y' or 'N' (yes or no) as applicable against the first five legends on the start/stop lines display (refer to Figure 49). Most of the specifications have a dual meaning, the second of which is implied. For example, answering 'N' to 'Permanent Request To Send' means not-permanent request to send, that is, half-duplex operation. Answering 'N' to 'Switched Line' means leased line. The operator must therefore have some knowledge of teleprocessing to complete the specification successfully.

The end-of-message and end-of-transmission identifiers ('EOM-ID' and 'EOT-ID') have pre-selected (default) values and may be ignored if there are no world trade leased telegraph lines attached to the system. To ignore the identifiers, the operator moves the cursor to the next item by pressing the new line key. If there are world trade leased telegraph lines attached, the default values may be used or one or both may be changed. Care must be taken when entering new values for EOM or EOT because these apply always to the entire line group (not to an individual line). For example, there could be two line groups, where group 1 covers line address 20 to line address 27, and group 2 covers 28 to 2F. EOM and EOT may be different for each group but not different for lines, within a group. In addition, the operator must select a character in downshift mode as identifier; upshift characters are not recognized.

The operator must next enter 'Y' or 'N' against the legend 'For All Start/Stop Lines'. If he enters 'Y', he should then press the new line key to skip the next item (which is not applicable) and go to the last line.

If the specifications are to apply only to some (but not all) start/stop lines, the operator must enter 'N', and the hexadecimal addresses of the lines to which the modes are to apply. The line addresses may be entered in any sequence.

The operator must now enter 'Y' or 'N' against the last legend on the screen — 'All Lines Specified'. If he keys in

'Y', the start/stop lines display is replaced on the screen by the BSC lines display. If he keys in 'N', the specifications already keyed into the display disappear as soon as the ENTER key is pressed. These specifications are stored and the operator can continue to key in specifications for any remaining start/stop lines. When the modes have been specified for all start/stop lines, the operator can enter 'Y' against the last legend, which will cause the ending message or the BSC picture to appear when the ENTER key is pressed.

Errors: Errors such as specifying switched line although a leased line is installed, or entering an upshift character as EOM or EOT identifier, are not rejected.

If the operator enters other than 'N' or 'Y' or enters non-hexadecimal values, the specification is rejected and the 'Invalid Character' message appears on the screen. Entering addresses other than those from 20 to 2F causes the 'Invalid Line Number' message to appear. If a line group is not installed but a valid address for that group is entered, no error message is displayed. Whenever errors can be corrected by the operator, the display remains on the screen and the cursor marks the first error.

If the operator enters 'N' against 'For All Start/Stop Lines' but gives no line addresses or not enough line addresses, no error results because the system assumes the default values. Entering 'N' against 'For All Start/Stop Lines', then giving no applicable line address, is equivalent to a cancellation of the entered specifications. For further information on the default values, see the description of the 'set line mode' command for the appropriate line control procedure in the "Teleprocessing Facilities" chapter.

Note: To avoid errors in EOM or EOT specifications, operators are recommended to change or enter values only when the last line of the line group has been specified. This is because the last EOM or EOT specification always overwrites any previous one and thus becomes valid for the group.

BSC Lines

The BSC lines display appears as soon as all start/stop lines have been specified or, if there are no start/stop lines, the BSC lines display is the first (and only) display to appear when the operator specifies ICA line modes. The operator specifies modes on the screen in a similar way to that already described for start/stop lines. Again, most specifications have a dual function. For example, entering 'N' against 'Switched Line' means leased line; entering 'N' against 'ASCII Code' means EBCDIC; entering 'N' against 'Swedish or UK Modem' means all other.

The 'Speed Select' specification applies to the internal clock. Either 600 or 1200 (bits per second) can be specified. If the modem contains the clock, 'N' should be entered, or the items should be skipped. The 'Half-Spd'

specification is for self-clocked modems with two speeds. A 'Y' entered against 'Half-Spd' selects the lower speed.

The 'Station Address' is specified only when a line is to operate as a tributary station in a multipoint network. In all other cases two zeros must be entered. A polling or selection address may be given in the form of two hexadecimal digits. The operator must take care to specify the station address correctly. In particular, when the line code is ASCII, bit zero of the station address byte must be zero (because ASCII is a 7-bit code). This limits the station address to hexadecimal values between 20 and 7F in ASCII mode.

The operator must next enter 'Y' or 'N' against the legend 'For All BSC Lines'. If he keys in 'Y', he should skip the next item on the screen. If he keys in 'N', he must also enter the addresses of all the lines for which the specifications are intended. The operator must now enter 'Y' or 'N' against the last legend on the screen -- 'All Lines Specified'. Entering 'Y' brings the ending message to the screen. Entering 'N' causes all previously entered specifications to disappear from the screen (they are stored) so that the operator can continue to specify the modes for any remaining lines.

Errors: Errors in the operator's specification, such as specifying switched line where a leased line is installed or specifying '1200' where '600' is required, are not rejected.

Errors, such as using non-hexadecimal digits or characters other than 'N' or 'Y', result in rejection of the specification; the 'Invalid Character' message appears on the screen.

Obvious technical errors are rejected and the message 'Exclusivity Error' is displayed on the screen. The following specifications are mutually exclusive:

'Switched Line' and 'New Sync'

'ASCII Code' and 'Transparent Mode'

More than one speed selection (causes the message "Select One Speed" to appear).

If the operator specifies a line address other than 30 to 34, or 36, the specification is rejected and the 'Invalid Line Number' message appears on the screen. Note that line address 35 is invalid.

The applicable error message appears on the screen as soon as the operator presses the ENTER key. The BSC lines display remains on the screen and the operator can correct any specification errors; the position of the cursor indicates the first detected error.

If the operator specifies line addresses for lines which are not installed, no error message is displayed. Similarly, if the operator keys in 'N' against the 'For All BSC Lines' legend, but gives no line addresses or not enough line addresses, no error results because the system assumes the default values. Giving no address is equivalent to a cancellation of the entered specifications.

Ending Message

The ending message appears on the screen when the operator presses the ENTER key after entering 'Y' against the 'All Lines Specified' legend in the last (possibly the only) line mode display. The ending message is 'Line Modes Become Operational With IMPL Or Power-On'.

The operator may either press the IMPL key (to make the line modes immediately effective) or wait until the next time that power-on (which includes automatic IMPL) is performed. The operator may then proceed as is convenient. To remove the ending message from the screen, he may press the CNCL, MODE SEL or IMPL key.

The specified line modes are permanently stored when the operator presses the ENTER key, so if he decides to wait for the next power-on, rather than making the line modes immediately effective, there is no disadvantage. The operator may change the specified line modes at any time, but it is not possible to recall the previously-entered specifications onto the screen.

Programming Note

If the teleprocessing system uses the set line mode commands, such commands have priority over any manually-entered specifications. However, line mode commands are not permanently stored and are, therefore, effective only as long as power is on.

Fast Selection

No fast selection code is provided for the ICA line mode displays. This is because the line modes need be specified only once, at installation, and then only if the teleprocessing system does not use set line mode commands.

Alter/Display (A)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen and an 'A' is entered against 'Mode Specification', the screen picture changes to the alter/display repertoire (see Figure 49) and the program stops. This repertoire lists the facilities that can be displayed and altered. Against each mode listed is a selector character (G, F, P, C, K, M or V) which the operator may key in to display the information of his choice; for example, 'G' for general registers or 'K' for protection key.

Notes:

1. If the operator wishes to change the screen picture from one of the displays in the alter/display repertoire to another alter/display operation, he can enter the relevant selector character against the legend 'Next Alter/Display: A'; otherwise he presses the MODE SEL key once for the alter/display repertoire, or twice for the mode selection display.

2. The operator may alter data on any of the subdisplays within the alter/display repertoire, by first moving the cursor under any hexadecimal digit. He can then type in new data which will appear under the current contents. If he next presses the ENTER key, the new data replaces the old. The operator may press the ENTER key after keying in each digit, or after keying in all digits he wishes to change. After he has pressed the ENTER key, the subdisplay remains on the screen.
3. If ENTER is pressed while a program is running, the contents of the screen enter the storage area which is

being displayed. This causes unpredictable results in the program but normally this will not happen unless the program is started while an alter/display picture is on the screen.

The following text describes the facilities that can be displayed via the alter/display repertoire.

General Registers

If the operator keys selector character 'G' into the alter/display repertoire (or has used fast selection to key 'AG' into the mode selection display), the general registers are displayed on the screen (see Figure 49). All sixteen general registers are shown on the screen at the same time. The contents of each register are displayed as eight hexadecimal characters (each representing four bits), grouped in halfword format.

To change one or more hexadecimal characters, the operator must position the cursor under the first character to be altered and key in the desired data. When he presses the ENTER key, the new data replaces the old on the screen, and is stored in the register. The display remains on the screen and the cursor is now at 'Next Alter/Display: A'. The character 'A' is preselected so that further information can be displayed by entering 'F' (for floating point) or 'P' (for PSW).

If the operator wishes to display another facility but does not remember the selector character, he presses the MODE SEL key, which brings the alter/display repertoire (*not* the mode selection display) back to the screen. If he wants the mode selection display, he must press the MODE SEL key again.

If the operator wishes to resume operation, he can do so by pressing the START key. The system starts to process instructions again, but the display remains on the screen. If the operator then presses the STOP key, the system stops and the screen displays the current contents of the general registers.

Note: After an alteration, the system does not start until the operator presses the START key.

Selection Errors: If the operator enters an unspecified hexadecimal character, no change takes place and the legend 'Invalid Character' appears on the screen.

Floating Point Registers

If the operator wishes to display the contents of the floating point registers on the video screen (see Figure 49), he should enter selector character 'F' into the alter/display repertoire. He can also display the floating point registers by keying in 'F' at the end of the legend 'Next Alter/Display: A' in any subdisplay of the alter/display repertoire, or by keying 'AF' direct into the mode selection display (fast selection).

All eight floating point registers are displayed at the same time. The contents of each register are displayed as eight

hexadecimal characters (each representing four bits), grouped in halfword format.

Current PSW

To display the current PSW on the screen (see Figure 49), the operator should enter selector character 'P' either into the alter/display repertoire or, if a subdisplay of this repertoire is on the screen, against the legend 'Next Alter/Display: A'. He can also bring the PSW to the screen by keying 'AP' direct into the mode selection display (fast selection). Entering the selector character causes the machine to stop and the current PSW to be displayed.

The PSW display is in binary notation, except for the instruction address which is in hexadecimal.

Control Registers

To display the contents of the control registers on the screen (see Figure 49), the operator should enter selector character 'C' either into the alter/display repertoire or, if a subdisplay of this repertoire is on the screen, against the legend 'Next Alter/Display: A'. He can also bring the control registers to the screen by keying 'AC' direct into the mode selection display.

All sixteen control registers appear on the screen at the same time. The contents of each register are displayed as eight hexadecimal characters (each representing four bits), grouped in halfword format. The procedure for altering the contents of control registers is the same as previously described under "General Registers".

Protection Key

To display a protection key on the screen (see Figure 49), the operator must enter selector character 'K' either into the alter/display repertoire or, if any subdisplay within this repertoire is on the screen, against 'Next Alter/Display: A'. The operator must also specify a main storage address.

For fast selection, the operator can key 'AK', followed by the main storage address, direct into the mode selection display.

The protection key is shown as four binary bits immediately to the right of the word 'Key'. The three bits that follow are the reference bit, the change bit, and the protection bit.

Selection Errors: If an address larger than the installed storage is entered, the message 'Invalid Address' appears. If a character other than 0 through F is entered, 'Invalid Character' appears.

Main Storage Real

To display a section of main storage, 32 halfwords at once, on the screen (see Figure 49), the operator must enter selector character 'M' either into the alter/display repertoire or, if any subdisplay within the repertoire is on the screen, against 'Next Alter/Display: A'. The operator must also

specify a main storage address. For fast selection he can key 'AM', followed by a main storage address, direct into the mode selection display. The address which the operator keys in is taken as a real address, associated with a portion of real main storage.

The display shows the halfwords in hexadecimal notation. The Y characters, shown in frame M on Figure 49, represent real addresses minus their low-order hexadecimal digits. The low-order hexadecimal digit of the address is shown above each leftmost byte of halfword (0, 2, 4, 6, 8, A, C, E). In this way each halfword can be identified. The address which the operator specified is shown at the top (underlined). If the operator wants to see another portion of real storage, all he needs to enter against the 'Next Alter/Display: A' line is 'M' and a new address.

As previously described, another mnemonic may be entered against the 'Next Alter/Display: A' legend to obtain (for example) the floating point registers display. Mnemonics other than those for alter/display operations will cause the alter/display repertoire to appear with the invalid selection character and the 'Invalid Character' message in it.

If the operator does not remember a mnemonic, he can press the MODE SEL key to obtain the alter/display repertoire. To restart the machine, he must press the START key. To remove the display from the screen, he must press the CNCL key.

Main Storage Virtual

To display 32 main storage halfwords on the screen by using a virtual address (see Figure 49), the operator must enter selector character 'V' either into the alter/display repertoire or, if any subdisplay within the repertoire is on the screen, against 'Next Alter/Display: A'. The operator must also specify virtual main storage address. For fast selection, he can key 'AV', followed by a virtual main storage address, direct into the mode selection display. Pressing the ENTER key will then start the MIP for the purpose of dynamic address translation.

If segment and page are available, the display is the same as the main storage real display previously shown except that the word 'Virtual' replaces 'Real' in the heading. Except for the uppermost address (which is a real address), all others are virtual addresses. The RRRRR address shows the real equivalent of the virtual address underneath. This allows virtual addresses to be seen in relation to the real main storage location.

If the checks performed during dynamic address translation show that either the segment or the page is not available or the operator's specification was invalid, the main storage section is not displayed and one of the following messages appears on the screen:

- 'Outside Page Table'
- 'Outside Segment Table'
- 'Page Entry Invalid'
- 'Segment Entry Invalid'
- 'Specification Exception'
- 'Addressing Exception'

'Outside Page Table': This message means that the address computed from the contents of the segment table points to a location outside the page table.

'Outside Segment Table': This message means that the automatic check against the segment table length in control register 1 revealed that a location outside the segment table would be addressed.

'Page or Segment Entry Invalid': This message means that the desired segment or page is not currently in physical storage.

'Specification Exception': This message means that the page or segment entry does not have zeros in the prescribed bit positions (it is improperly specified).

'Addressing Exception': This message means that the address intended for reference to page or segment entries points to a location outside real main storage.

Operator Errors: (such as using non-hexadecimal digits) will, of course, produce the 'Invalid Character' or 'Incomplete Entry' message. As usual, the system is stopped when the display is shown. The START key must be pressed to continue processing, the CNCL key must be used to return the screen to the operating system. Alterations are performed as previously described. The 'Next/Alter Display' line can be used to specify another virtual or real address or another facility.

Instruction Step (I)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen and the operator enters selector character 'I' against 'Mode Specification', the screen picture changes to the instruction step display.

If the operator again enters character 'I', the machine stops, the display disappears, and the legend 'I-Step' appears in the machine status area. Instruction step mode is now set, and one instruction will be executed each time the START key is pressed. If the operator selects another mode, such as alter/display, it will be accepted and instruction step mode will remain in effect. Thus, new data can be seen on the screen as soon as each instruction step has been completed. In addition, the machine status area shows the address (and the data at this address) at which the 3115 stopped. This allows detailed tracing at each instruction step.

Instruction step mode is turned off by entering 'P' from the keyboard.

Fast Selection

For fast selection, the operator can enter 'II' direct into the mode selection display.

Restart (P)

If the mode selection display is on the video screen and the operator enters selector character 'P' against 'Mode Specification', restart mode is set and the screen is at the disposal of the operating system. If the 3115 was in the stopped state, it starts with the program restart PSW. If it was already running, it branches back to the program restart PSW. Restart mode has no screen display.

Note: The restart mode cannot be set if the machine is in the check-stop state.

Maintenance (M)

When the mode selection display is on the video screen and the operator enters selector character 'M' against 'Mode Specification', the screen picture changes to the maintenance repertoire. This repertoire consists of log analysis, micro tests, and CE manual operations. The cursor is positioned next to the preselected 'M' so that any one of the maintenance modes can be selected.

Log Analysis (A-E, I)

When a parameter 'A' through 'E' is entered into the maintenance display, log information is brought to the screen. Entering 'A' for instance, causes general log information to be displayed, which informs the operator if any logging occurred and, if so, which part of the system caused it. From this report, the operator can select a detailed log by keying in one of the four characters 'B' through 'E'. For example, 'B' provides log information for the CPU.

When 'I' is entered, the system diskette can be manually replaced by the service diskette, without IMPL being performed again.

Micro Tests (J-R)

When a parameter 'J' through 'R' is entered into the maintenance display, certain micro tests are performed. If, for example, the log analysis showed error logs on the line printer, the micro test (K) can be selected to locate the malfunction.

Note: After a micro test has been run, most subprocessors are automatically initialized. When the MIP/IPU or the storage have been tested, however, the IMPL key must be pressed to restore the microprograms.

CE Man Ops (S-Z)

CE manual operations are provided for the customer engineer, and can only be run when the CE key is inserted.

Concurrent Maintenance

It is possible to service disk drives, the ICA, and I/O devices connected to the multiplexer channel, while user programs are running on the system (see, for example, "ICA Inline Test and Control Procedures" in the chapter "Teleprocessing Facilities"). Before servicing natively attached printers, magnetic tape units, and card I/O machines, however, it may be necessary for safety reasons to power down the system, because these devices have their power supplies and logic housed within the CPU.

Store Status (S)

The store status mode has no display. When the operator enters selector character 'S' into the mode selection display, the status of certain facilities is automatically stored into fixed main storage areas as shown in the following table:

<i>Status</i>	<i>Stored into Storage Location (decimal)</i>
CPU timer	216
Clock comparator	224
PSW (current)	256
Floating point registers 0 to 6	352
General registers 0 to F	384
Control registers 0 to F	448

When the ENTER key is pressed, the mode selection display remains on the screen and the message 'Status Stored' appears. From this time on, the system is in the stopped state. The mode specification (that is, the character 'S') disappears and another operation, such as program load, can be specified.

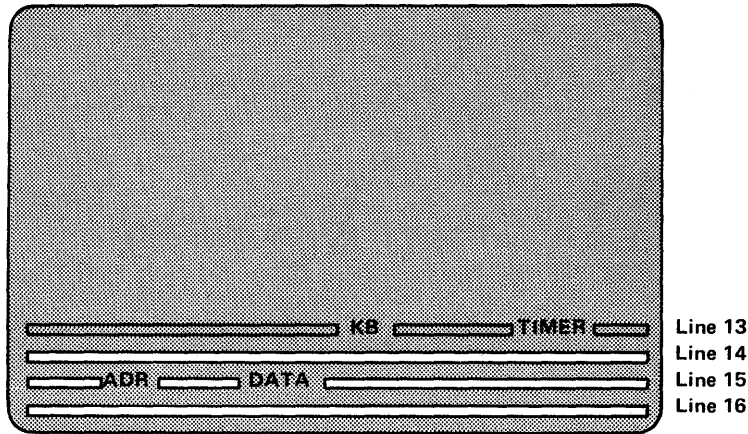
Save Usage Counters (U)

The save usage counters mode has no display. When the operator enters selector character 'U' into the mode selection display, the usage counters of all disk drives are logged on the internal diskette. The 'Counter Saved' message appears for each counter that is recorded. If an in-line test is in progress on a disk drive, the 'Terminate In-Line Test' message appears. The operator may repeat the counter saving after termination of the test. The operator should always carry out the save usage counters operation before switching power off. This preserves the usage figures for the CE, who needs the information for maintenance.

Printer Forms (F)

The printer forms mode supports the 1403/3203 carriage control feature. The mode is used when programs written for the 1403 Printer are run on the Model 115 for execution by the 3203 Printer. When the system is in

Permanent Display



Display Repertoire

Line 13	CHECK-STOP PSW-LOOP SYS MAN WAIT TEST LOAD KB: LOCK	PROCEED INHIBIT REQ CNSL-PRTR TIMER: ON	OFF
Line 14	ADR COMP REAL ADR XXXXXX TYPE: ANY	I-COUNT DATA STORE I/O	SYNC ACT: STOP I-STEP
Line 15	EC VIRT BC DAT REAL ADR XXXXXX DATA XXXX		I/O STOP HARD STOP COMPATIBLE
Line 16	<i>(CE Information)</i>		

Machine Status Display

Figure 50. Machine Status Display [10829]

printer forms mode, the operator can use the 3115 console keyboard to enter channel information from existing 1403 carriage control tapes into the 3203's forms control buffer. Carriage control information can also be stored on the console diskette and processed in various ways. These facilities are offered to the operator by a display of printer modes when he enters selector character 'F'. For further information see "1403/3203 Carriage Control Feature" in the chapter "Compatibility Features".

MACHINE STATUS AREA

The machine status area (Figure 50) consists of lines 13, 14, 15, and 16 — the lowest four lines of the screen. These four lines show the state of the machine; for example, whether it is running, stopped, or has a check-stop condition. Any special modes which may have been set, such as instruction step mode or address compare mode, are also shown. The machine status area is not shown when maintenance displays are on the screen. The following paragraphs describe the possible machine status displays.

Line 13

Line 13 shows the state of the 3115, the keyboard, and the console printer, if installed. From left to right, four fields showing the mode of operation and the state of 'KB' (keyboard), the console printer, and 'Timer' are provided.

Mode Field

The Mode field shows the current mode of operation of the 3115. Any one of the ten following legends can appear.

Sys: The legend 'Sys' (system) is on the screen whenever the system use meter is running. When 'Sys' is not on the screen, the system use meter is not running.

Man: The legend 'Man' (manual) is on the screen whenever the 3115 has been stopped by pressing the STOP key or by certain manual operations (such as alter/display) or during a normal stop (such as occurs in instruction step mode and address compare mode).

Wait: The legend 'Wait' is on the screen whenever the wait state bit in the current PSW is set. 'Wait' does not appear if the wait state bit in the current PSW is off or a PSW looping error has occurred.

Test: The legend 'Test' is on the screen if any of the following conditions applies:

- Instruction step mode is set.
- Address compare mode is set.
- An inline test is running.
- A check control mode other than 'normal' is set.
- Usage counters are being saved.

'Test' does not appear for program-initiated tests such as online tests (OLTs) or the online standalone executive program (OLSEP), or program event recording. It is also off

during log operations. 'Test' is not affected by the interval timer.

Load: The legend 'Load' appears on the screen as soon as the operator has started the load operation by pressing the ENTER key. 'Load' remains on the screen until a valid PSW is loaded.

Check-Stop: The legend 'Check-Stop' appears on the screen (at the positions otherwise occupied by 'Sys', 'Man', and 'Wait') whenever a check-stop occurs.

PSW-Loop: The legend 'PSW-Loop' appears on the screen (at the positions otherwise occupied by 'Man' and 'Wait') if a problem occurs in which the program continually loops to the same PSW. The loop can only be broken by a system reset operation.

IPL-Error: The legend 'IPL-Error' appears on the screen when the system was unable to load a valid PSW. This condition can occur when the load device is not ready, an invalid address is specified, two identical address plugs have been inserted on two disk drives, or an interruption from a device other than the load device is requested. The legend 'IPL-Error' occupies screen positions normally reserved for 'Sys', 'Man', and 'Wait'.

EC-PSW Error: The legend 'EC-PSW Error' appears on the screen when the load process has ended with an attempt to load a PSW with an invalid EC mode format, and processing cannot continue. The legend 'EC-PSW Error' occupies the screen positions normally reserved for 'Sys', 'Man', and 'Wait'. It indicates that a correct program should be loaded.

PSW-Adr Err: The legend 'PSW-Adr Err' appears on the screen when the system cannot continue processing because the instruction address in the current PSW is not an address in physical storage. The legend occupies the screen positions normally reserved for 'Sys', 'Man', and 'Wait'. It indicates that a correct program should be loaded.

KB Field

The KB (keyboard) field shows the state of the keyboard. Any one of four legends can appear in this field.

Proceed: The legend 'Proceed' means that the operator can use the keyboard to type in data. All keys are unlocked and will respond.

Inhibit: The legend 'Inhibit' means that the data entry keys are disabled because the operator tried to enter data into a protected area on the screen. When 'Inhibit' is on the screen, the operator can use the KEYBD RESET key to enable the keyboard.

Lock: The legend 'Lock' means that the system has locked all keys capable of interfering with the current operation. The operation may be, for example, a main storage transfer

or a log operation. When the 'Lock' legend is on the screen, the KEYBD RESET key has no function.

Note: When command set 2 is used for operations on the video display and console printer, the 'Lock' state is normal. Only a 'read inquiry' command or a manual operation will cause 'Proceed' to appear on the screen. (For further information on command set 2, see the section "Model 115 Console" in "Input/Output Characteristics".)

Req: The legend 'Req' (request) means that the operator has pressed the REQ key and the request has been accepted. The appearance of 'Req' on the screen is independent of 'Lock'. Both these legends are, however, replaced by 'Proceed' when the request is taken by the program.

Cnsl-Prtr Field

The 'Cnsl-Prtr' (console printer) field is used only when a console printer is installed and the printer's supply of forms is exhausted or its cover is open. The 'Cnsl-Prtr' display is a request for operator intervention.

Timer Field

The Timer field shows the state of the interval timer at main storage location 80. The legend 'On' or 'Off' appears, depending whether the timer has been enabled or disabled.

Line 14

Line 14 consists of one field, for displaying information on two special modes: address compare and instruction step. When neither of these modes applies, the whole line is blank. When either or both of the modes are selected, the information on the selected special mode appears on the screen.

Adr Comp

When 'Adr Comp' appears on the screen, address compare mode has been set. The following information (described in more detail under "Main Storage Address Compare" earlier in this section) is also shown.

Real: The legend 'Real' indicates that the search address is a real address.

Adr: The search address entered for the address compare operation is displayed after the legend 'Adr' (address).

Type: The legend 'Type' is followed by the indicator 'Any', 'Data Store', 'I-Count', or 'I/O' and shows the type of comparison to be made.

Act: The legend 'Act' (action) is followed by the indicator 'Stop' or 'Sync', and shows the action to be performed when an address match occurs.

I-Step

When the legend 'I-Step' appears on the screen beside 'Mode', instruction step mode has been set.

Note: All modes on line 14 are automatically reset when a maintenance picture is selected.

Line 15

Line 15 provides additional information on the state of the system. From left to right, three fields are shown: the control mode (basic or extended) field; the address and data field; and the check control field.

Control Mode Field

The control mode field shows the current control mode of the system, as follows.

EC and BC: Either of these two legends is on the screen; 'EC' (extended control) whenever bit 12 of the current PSW is set, and 'BC' (basic control) whenever bit 12 of the current PSW is off.

DAT: This indicator is on the screen when the EC mode PSW bit 5 (DAT bit) is set.

Address and Data Field

The Address and Data field shows the address mode, the main storage location of the next instruction, and the associated data, as follows.

Virt: The legend 'Virt' (virtual) means that dynamic address translation (PSW bit 5) was set when the system stopped.

Real: The legend 'Real' means that dynamic address translation (PSW bit 5) was off when the system stopped.

Adr: The 'Adr' (address) field shows the storage address of the instruction to be processed. This address is always the instruction address in the current PSW or the location where an address compare stop has occurred. When the system is in the check-stop or wait state the address is not shown but it can be brought onto the screen by a display PSW operation.

Data: The 'Data' field shows the halfword stored at the main storage location indicated by the address field. The first byte of this halfword is the op code of the next instruction, or other data (when an address stop has occurred).

Chk-Ctl Field

The 'Chk-Ctl' (check control) field shows any one of three selectable modes. If the check-control mode is normal, as it is after initialization of control register 14, the 'Chk-Ctl' field is blank. The check control mode shown on line 15 is

automatically reset when a maintenance picture has been selected.

Hard Stop: The legend 'Hard Stop' means that the message 'Log Waiting' will be displayed when an error log is attempted. No retry or machine-check interruption occurs and the log operation is suspended.

I/O Stop: The legend 'I/O Stop' means that a check-stop takes place after a limited channel logout is performed.

Compatible: The legend 'Compatible' means that a check-stop takes place after a machine check interruption or a limited channel logout has occurred.

Line 16

Line 16 is reserved for displays and special messages for the customer engineer when special modes, such as logging or inline tests, are being run.

Usage Metering

The system usage meter is located on the console above the console file. The meter covers all activity in the main storage controller, the instruction processing unit, and the service processor. The system usage meter stops if the CE meter is switched on.

The modes and conditions during which the meter runs are summarized in Figure 51.

I/O METERING

The Model 115 attachments, adapters, and multiplexer channel have no meters. Instead, each I/O device attached other than through the multiplexer channel has a usage meter, and each channel-attached device has one, either under its own covers, or in the control unit, or both.

I/O metering is controlled by metering-in and metering-out lines connected to the internal bus system. The metering-in line is activated when an I/O device accepts a command, and deactivated when device end is presented for

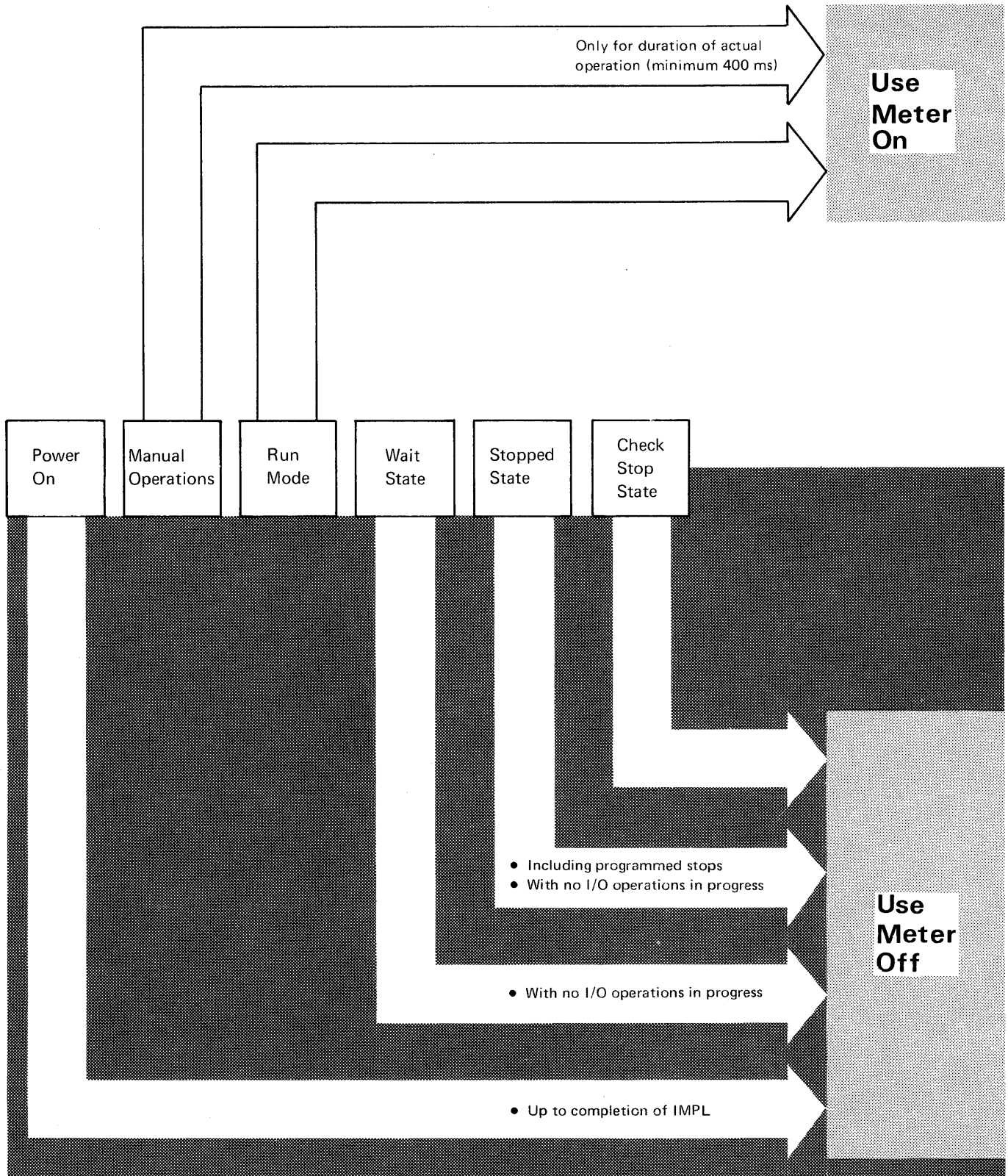
the same command. The line remains inactive for instructions, such as 'test I/O', which do not generate device end. The metering-out line is active when the system meter runs.

TELEPROCESSING METERING

For teleprocessing operations, the metering-in line is activated as soon as character transfer occurs to or from main storage.

The following types of commands do not activate metering in:

- Input/Output
- Enable
- Disable
- Set mode
- Prepare
- Adprep
- No-operation.



Usage Metering

Figure 51. Usage Metering [10830A]

The Model 115 is designed in accordance with the principles specified in the *IBM System/360 Principles of Operation*, GA22-6821, and the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000. It is therefore compatible with the System/360 and with the other models of the System/370. Model-dependent information is given at the end of this chapter.

The information in this chapter will be helpful for transferring existing programs from other IBM systems to the Model 115. For transferring System/360 programs, special compatibility features are available. These features allow I/O devices that are attached to the Model 115 other than through the multiplexer channel to emulate the

corresponding channel-attached devices on the original System/360 (Figure 52). The chapter contains detailed information on disk drive compatibility features and an outline of the 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature.

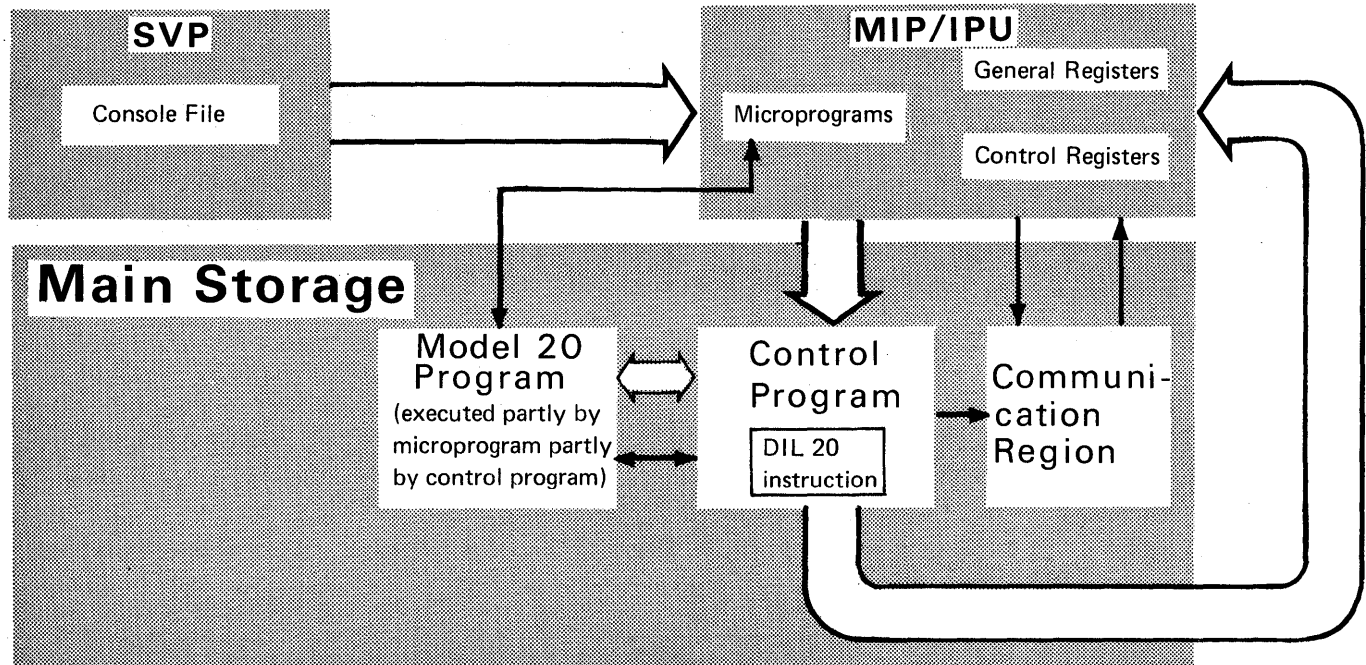
Figures 53 and 54 provide information on the special compatibility features for emulating (respectively) Model 20 operations and 1401/1440/1460 operations on the Model 115.

Programs transferred from the System/360 must not be time-dependent, or rely on facilities disallowed by the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, such as ASCII mode. Figure 55 provides recommendations for running existing System/360 programs on the Model 115.

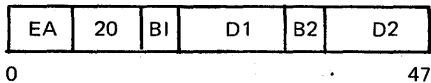
System/360 I/O Devices	Corresponding System/370 I/O Devices	Notes
IBM 1052 Printer-Keyboard	3115's console keyboard and 5213 Printer	Two command sets are available. At initial program loading the operator can select a command set which is compatible with the 1052. Channel indirect data addressing is not supported
IBM 2311 Disk Storage Drive Model 1	3340 Direct Access Storage Facility	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Compatibility is provided by a microprogram in the MIP (special feature). 2. At least 4,096 (4K) bytes of main storage are required for the 2311 emulator buffer and tables, and at least 8,192 (8K) bytes are required for the 2314 emulator buffer and tables. 3. Emulated volumes can be intermixed with native files if different disk extents are used. Block multiplex mode must, however, be off during emulation. 4. One disk emulator can run at the same time as emulators for 1401/1440/1460 or System/360 Model 20
IBM 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility	3340 Direct Access Storage Facility	
IBM 2401 Magnetic Tape Unit IBM 2415 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control IBM 2420 Magnetic Tape Unit	3410 Magnetic Tape Unit 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control	Compatible in operation except for the detailed execution of the 'rewind unload' command (see "Appendix D. Transfer of Old DOS Releases")
IBM 2703 Transmission Control	Integrated Communications Adapter	Compatibility is provided by special displays which allow the operator to specify line modes
IBM 1403 Printer	3203 Printer	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The 1403 'diagnostic write', 'diagnostic read', and 'diagnostic check read' commands are rejected by the 3203. 2. Because UCS is a standard 3203 feature, data checks (sense byte 0, bit 4) can occur when a program written for a non-UCS 1403 is run on the 3203. These checks are more likely to occur if the 3203 is not equipped with an AN or HN train. 3. Programs originally written for a channel-attached 1403 allow for only one sense byte, and may give different results when run on the 3203, which is designed to provide six sense bytes. 4. Carriage control compatibility is provided as stated in "1403/3203 Carriage Control Feature" at the end of this chapter. Note that this feature affects the setting of the no-channel-found bit, the command reject bit, and the number of sense bytes provided, as described under "IBM 3203 Printer, Models 1 and 2" in the chapter "Input/Output Characteristics"

Figure 52. I/O Device Compatibility with System/360 [19486B]

The System/360 Model 20 Compatibility feature supports a software control program. The feature and control program together provide the means to execute original Model 20 programs on the Model 115.



DIL 20 Format



Byte	Contents
0	Predefined op code EA
1	20
2,3	Address of first byte in communication region
4,5	Address of displacement byte table at end of communication region

Instruction Execution

The following Model 20 instructions are executed directly by DIL 20 microprograms without branching to a control program routine: AR, SR, AH, SH; BCR, BC; CH; CLI; LH, STH; MVI, OI, NI, TM; BASR, BAS; all decimal instructions; MVC, MVN, MVZ; TR; ED; CLC. For descriptions of these instructions, see *IBM System/360 Model 20 Functional Characteristics, GA26-5847*.
 Note: I/O operations are simulated by software.

DIL 20 Functions

- Emulates Model 20 instruction fetching and checks format of instructions fetched.
- Converts address fields of Model 20 instructions and checks validity.
- Updates Model 20 instruction address and program error condition codes.
- Performs linking and branching.

Communication Region

- The communication region contains:
- First two bytes of Model 20 instruction
 - Model 20 current PSW
 - Address relocation factor and highest Model 20 address
 - Address of program error stop and interruption routines
 - Model 20 pending interruptions, with priority.

Model 20 Compatibility Feature

Figure 53. Model 20 Compatibility Feature [10831B]

1401/1440/1460 Compatibility Feature

Seven special instructions, each six bytes long, make up the instruction set of the 1401/1440/1460 compatibility feature (Figure 54). The first byte specifies the operation code (EA) assigned to the instruction set, the second byte defines the instruction.

Note: The feature is not a complete emulator. Instead, the feature provides support for a software control program. 1401/1440/1460 emulation is provided by the control program and compatibility feature together.

The 1401/1440/1460 compatibility feature performs the most complex functions of 1401, 1440, and 1460 Data Processing Systems. Fixed addresses do not have to be allocated in the Model 115's main storage, and the entire program is therefore relocatable.

The feature uses several general registers and a communication region. The communication region contains:

- An operation-code table for locating the emulating routine
- Tables for translating EBCDIC characters to BCD internal code and vice versa
- Address conversion tables for converting 1401/1440/1460 addresses to System/370 addresses
- Data used by the emulator program.

Instruction Name	Mnemonic	Purpose of Instruction	Format	Notes												
Do Interpretive Loop	DIL	Fetches 1401/1440/1460 instructions Converts 1401/1440/1460 addresses Indexes addresses (if needed) Updates AAR, BAR, and IAR Branches to routine that emulates the 1401/1440/1460 instruction.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>00</td> <td>B1</td> <td>D1</td> <td>B2</td> <td>D2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>B1, D1 = Address of operation code table B2, D2 = Address of communication region</p>	EA	00	B1	D1	B2	D2	0					47	In fetching the 1401/1440/1460 instructions, the DIL instruction recognizes and executes the following 1401/1440/1460 instructions: Branch if character equal (BCE) Branch if bit equal (BBE) Branch if word mark or zone equal (BWZ) Branch unconditional (4-character branch) Store A-register (SAR) Store B-register (SBR) No-op
EA	00	B1	D1	B2	D2											
0					47											
Branch DIL	BDIL	Places address from emulated IAR register into emulated BAR register Places address from emulated AAR register into emulated IAR register.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>01</td> <td>B1</td> <td>D1</td> <td>B2</td> <td>D2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>B1, D1 = Address of operation code table B2, D2 = Address of communication region</p>	EA	01	B1	D1	B2	D2	0					47	
EA	01	B1	D1	B2	D2											
0					47											
Branch on Invalid Flag	BIFLAG	Checks the validity of the 1401/1440/1460 addresses	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>0C</td> <td>00</td> <td>R1R2</td> <td>B3</td> <td>D3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>R1, R2 = Registers containing the 1401/1440/1460 addresses to be checked B3, D3 = Address of communication region</p>	EA	0C	00	R1R2	B3	D3	0					47	When the first byte of R1 or R2 is not zero, the BIFLAG instruction branches to the error address routine whose address is in the communication region.
EA	0C	00	R1R2	B3	D3											
0					47											
Add Numeric	ANUM	Emulate the following 1401/1440/1460 instructions: Add Subtract Zero and add Zero and subtract Modify address.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>04</td> <td>00</td> <td>R1R2</td> <td>B3</td> <td>D3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>R1 = Register containing address of 1401/1440/1460 destination field (B-field) R2 = Register containing address of 1401/1440/1460 source field (A-field) B3, D3 = Address of control byte used by instruction</p>	EA	04	00	R1R2	B3	D3	0					47	Control Byte Value (hex) Meaning x1 = Add x3 = Subtract x5 = Zero and add x7 = Zero and subtract x9 = Modify address xA to xF = Default to x9 ("x" is ignored and can be replaced by any value)
EA	04	00	R1R2	B3	D3											
0					47											
Compare	COMP	Executes the 1401/1440/1460 compare instruction and sets simulated high, low and equal indicators into the specified location of the communication region.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>05</td> <td>00</td> <td>R1R2</td> <td>B3</td> <td>D3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>R1 = Register containing address of B-field to be compared R2 = Register containing address of A-field to be compared B3, D3 = Internal code to EBCDIC translation table.</p>	EA	05	00	R1R2	B3	D3	0					47	
EA	05	00	R1R2	B3	D3											
0					47											
Move Data in CPU	MCPU	Executes the 1401/1440/1460 move instructions and performs other move operations within emulated 1401/1440/1460 core storage for emulator program.	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>08</td> <td>00</td> <td>R1R2</td> <td>B3</td> <td>D3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>R1 = Register containing address of destination field (B-field) R2 = Register containing address of source field (A-field) B3, D3 = Address of control byte.</p>	EA	08	00	R1R2	B3	D3	0					47	Control Byte Value (hex) Meaning 11 = Move numeric 21 = Move zone 3D = Move character BD = Move record 75 = Load character 89 = Scan right to group mark/word mark in A-field 09 = Scan left to word mark in B-field
EA	08	00	R1R2	B3	D3											
0					47											
Move Data for Input/Output	MIO	Moves data from emulated 1401/1440/1460 core storage to Model 115 buffer area (output) Moves data from Model 115 buffer area to emulated 1401/1440/1460 core storage Translates data to EBCDIC (output), or to internal core (input).	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>EA</td> <td>09</td> <td>00</td> <td>R1R2</td> <td>B3</td> <td>D3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>47</td> </tr> </table> <p>R1 = Register containing address of Model 115 buffer. A count register (R1-1) contains the number of bytes to be processed in Model 115 buffer. R2 = Register containing address of 1401/1440/1460 data field B3, D3 = Address of control word in which byte 0 is a control byte and bytes 1, 2, and 3 are the address of a character translation table. The translation table is loaded on a 256-byte boundary or, for output operations, on a 256-byte boundary + 1. Its address is that of its first character.</p>	EA	09	00	R1R2	B3	D3	0					47	Control Byte Bits Value Meaning 0 and 1 (Must always be set to zero) 2 0 Move mode 1 Load mode 3 0 Tape or unit record 1 Disk 4 0 If bit 3 is zero, simulated odd parity for data in buffer. If bit 3 is one, no translation. 1 If bit 3 is zero, simulated even parity for data in buffer. If bit 3 is one, no translation. 5 0 Output from 1401/1440/1460 core storage. 1 Input from Model 115 buffer. 6 0 Group mark word mark not considered. 1 Group mark word mark considered and a stop is performed when recognized 7 (Always one)
EA	09	00	R1R2	B3	D3											
0					47											

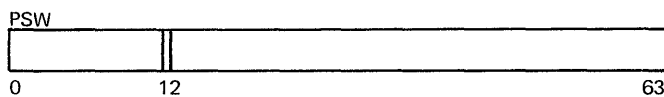
Figure 54. 1401/1440/1460 Compatibility Feature [17063A]

Reset the Control Registers

Before loading existing programs, perform the system reset clear procedure to ensure that the Model 115 control registers are set to a state which disables all new features and masking extensions.

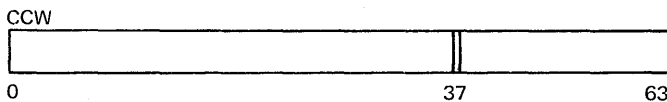
Failure to reset the control registers can cause:

- The extended external masking feature to prevent external interruptions, even if the PSW masking bit (bit 7) is set.
- The monitoring feature to unexpectedly store the monitor class number and monitor code into main storage when a 'monitor call' instruction is in the old program, thus overwriting program code.



Must Be
Zero

REASON: Existing programs must run in BC mode, which is set by a zero in bit 12. In System/360 programs, bit 12 = 0 meant EBCDIC mode, therefore old programs must run in EBCDIC mode and not in ASCII mode (bit 12 = 1).



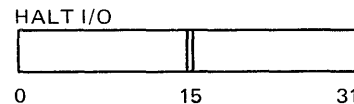
Must Be
Zero

REASON: If bit 37 is one, no specification exceptions are recognized. Instead, the Model 115 is switched to indirect data addressing mode, which cannot be handled by existing programs. In addition, existing programs written specially to provoke specification exceptions may bring unexpected results. For example, the Model 115 permits operands of unprivileged instructions to be at any byte boundary.

Set Compatibility Mode

Set compatibility mode before executing an existing program, so that the system enters the checkstop state when any data is logged into main storage location 128 and upwards. Such logging will not normally occur, but an uncorrectable channel error could cause the limited channel logout to be placed into location 176, thus possibly destroying program code. Also, a machine check causes a special interruption code and register contents to be logged, and the CPU timer and clock comparator to be saved. Compatibility mode does not prevent such logging, but stops the machine immediately afterwards. To continue, a new initial program load (IPL) is required. For the method of setting compatibility mode, see "Operator Console" in the "System Control" chapter.

To run EC mode programs, compatibility mode must be off.



Must Be
Zero

REASON: If bit 15 is set, the Model 115 executes a 'halt device' instruction, which causes an action different from that when 'halt I/O' is issued to a multiplexer channel which has a burst mode operation in progress. Instead of terminating the operation as 'halt I/O' would do, the 'halt device' instruction stops the operation only if the instruction addresses the device causing the burst mode data transfer. The 'halt device' instruction also puts the channel in the interruption pending state, which may be mishandled by the existing program.

Note: This page shows only hardware restrictions which exist when transferring existing programs which do not consider the extended architecture of the Model 115.

Transferring Existing Programs to the Model 115

Figure 55. Transferring Existing Programs to the Model 115 [19487]

2311-1/3340 Series Compatibility Feature; 2314/3340 Series Compatibility Feature

GENERAL INFORMATION

The optional 2311-1/3340 and 2314/3340 Series compatibility features allow the user to take advantage of the superior capacity and speed of the 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility without changing or reassembling any programs, data sets, files, or access methods previously used to access a 2311 Model 1 or 2314 disk subsystem under control of DOS releases 21 to 26.

The compatibility features enable easy conversion from a previously-used 2311 or 2314 disk subsystem to a 3340 disk subsystem. The user must dump 2311 or 2314 volumes onto magnetic tape (or punched cards), then store the contents of the tape (or cards) onto one or more 3340 volumes. For details of the conversion process, see "Conversion from 2311 and 2314 to 3340" in this section. After conversion, the only difference that the user will notice is the increased speed, because data, access method and programs have not changed.

If the user employs DOS/VS supporting the 3340 he can:

- Immediately benefit from the advantages of DOS/VS.
- Intermix in the job stream original 2311 or 2314 jobs with those accessing a native 3340, even across partitions.
- Develop applications to access both emulated volumes and native 3340 data sets in a single program.

The latter two capabilities are known as "mixed mode".

In addition to these advantages, the IBM 3348 Data Modules used on the 3340 subsystem need not become dedicated 2311 or 2314 storages but can hold emulated 2311 or 2314 volumes *and* native 3340 data sets. This means that one (physical) 3348 Data Module can be accessed by 3340 programs and 2311 or 2314 programs (mixed mode). For an explanation of mixed mode and how 2311 or 2314 volumes can be stored on 3348 Data Modules without losing their identity, see "Method of Emulation" in this section.

The compatibility features support the following access methods:

- Sequential access method (SAM)
- Indexed sequential access method (ISAM)
- Direct access method (random) (DAM).

The following record formats can be used:

- Fixed, unblocked
- Fixed, blocked
- Variable, unblocked
- Variable, blocked
- Undefined.

The compatibility features do not support block multiplexing (bit 0 set in control register 0).

The following paragraphs describe the emulation method,

command execution, status information, sense information and I/O instructions for the compatibility features.

Note: For brevity, the 2311-1/3340 and 2314/3340 Series compatibility features are referred to as "the compatibility features" or simply "the feature" in the remainder of this section.

METHOD OF EMULATION

Up to eight 2311 volumes or up to two 2314 volumes can be recorded on one 3348 Data Module. Each emulated volume (which was formerly stored on a physical disk pack on an individual 2311 or 2314) must allow identification and treatment by the program as if it were still stored on a 2311 or 2314. To the program, therefore, an emulated 2311 or 2314 volume appears to be a device, with its own device address. This "device" accepts the original 2311 or 2314 commands (CCWs) and produces the same logical results as the devices which were formerly used.

To describe how this effect is achieved, it is first necessary to explain how 2311 Model 1 and 2314 volumes are recorded on the 3348.

Mapping Schemes

Mapping 2311 Volumes

The mapping scheme is the method by which 2311 Model 1 volumes are recorded on a 3348 Data Module. The track organization of the 3348 is not changed in any way. Instead, the 2311 tracks are written as regular data records onto the 3348 as follows:

- Each 2311 track (including home address, count areas, key areas, data areas, but excluding gaps) becomes one 3348 record.
- Two such records (2311 tracks) fit onto one 3348 track.
- The 203 cylinders of the 2311 (at 10 tracks per cylinder) will thus fit onto the two versions of the 3348 Data Module as follows:
 - Four 2311 volumes per 3348-35
 - Eight 2311 volumes per 3348-70.

Mapping 2314 Volumes

The mapping of 2314 volumes is similar to that of 2311 volumes, except that the 2314 has 20 tracks per cylinder. The mapping scheme is as follows:

- Each 2314 track (including home address, count, key, and data areas, but excluding gaps) becomes one 3348 record.
- One such record (2314 track) fits into one 3348 track.
- The 203 cylinders of the 2314 (at 20 tracks per cylinder)

can be recorded on the two versions of the 3348 Data Module as follows:

- One 2314 volume per 3348-35
- Two 2314 volumes per 3348-70.

“Dummy” Device Addresses

To identify each 2311 or 2314 volume, a “dummy” device address is associated with each group of 3340 cylinders holding the emulated volume. The volumes are grouped as follows:

- One 2311 volume consists of 85 cylinders on the 3348 Data Module.
- One 2314 volume consists of 339 cylinders on the 3348 Data Module.

Each of these groups of cylinders can hold a former 2311 or 2314 volume and is logically associated with a dummy device address. The feature needs these dummy addresses to find the correct 3340 drive and cylinder, etc., when the old

program addresses a (former) 2311 or 2314 volume. Figure 56 shows the relationship between actual 3340 drives and the dummy addresses assigned to former 2311 or 2314 volumes on each 3348.

Device addresses not shown in Figure 56 must not be used. For example, if device addresses 198, 199, or 19A are used the condition code is set to not operational. Neither can addresses which exist, but are not applicable because of the data module installed, be used. For example, addressing dummy device 191 on the assumption that it contains an emulated 2314 volume, although only a 35 megabyte data module is installed, causes the intervention required bit to be set in sense byte 0.

Cylinders per Emulated Device

Figure 57 shows which cylinders on the two versions of the 3348 are assigned to emulated devices. All cylinders listed are logical cylinders. Cylinder zero is reserved for the

3115-0 Models

3340 Device Address	Dummy Device Addresses Corresponding to Emulated 2311 or 2314 Devices							
	2314 on 3348-35	2314 on 3348-70*	2311 on 3348-35			2311 on 3348-70*		
160	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197
161	19B	19C	19D	19E	19F	1A0	1A1	1A2
162	1A6	1A7	1A8	1A9	1AA	1AB	1AC	1AD
163	1B1	1B2	1B3	1B4	1B5	1B6	1B7	1B8

3115-2 Models

3340 Device Addresses	Dummy Device Addresses Corresponding to Emulated 2311 or 2314 Devices							
	2314 on 3348-35	2314 on 3348-70*	2311 on 3348-35			2311 on 3348-70*		
160	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197
161	19B	19C	19D	19E	19F	1A0	1A1	1A2
162	1A6	1A7	1A8	1A9	1AA	1AB	1AC	1AD
163	1B1	1B2	1B3	1B4	1B5	1B6	1B7	1B8
164	1BC	1BD	1BE	1BF	1C0	1C1	1C2	1C3
165	1C7	1C8	1C9	1CA	1CB	1CC	1CD	1CE
166	1D2	1D3	1D4	1D5	1D6	1D7	1D8	1D9
167	1DD	1DE	1DF	1E0	1E1	1E2	1E3	1E4

* The 3348-70F is not used for emulation because the 3340 fixed-head feature cannot be installed in a Model 115 which has a 2311 or 2314 compatibility feature

Figure 56. Mapping Scheme for 2311 and 2314 Emulation [19488C]

Emulated Device	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th	8th
Relative Track Start Address	12	1032	2052	3072	4092	5112	6132	7152
2311 on 3348-35	Cylinders 1 to 85	Cylinders 86 to 170	Cylinders 171 to 255	Cylinders 256 to 340	-	-	-	-
2311 on 3348-70*	Cylinders 1 to 85	Cylinders 86 to 170	Cylinders 171 to 255	Cylinders 256 to 340	Cylinders 341 to 425	Cylinders 426 to 510	Cylinders 511 to 595	Cylinders 596 to 680
Relative Track Start Address	12	4080	-	-	-	-	-	-
2314 on 3348-35	Cylinders 1 to 339	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2314 on 3348-70*	Cylinders 1 to 339	Cylinders 340 to 678	-	-	-	-	-	-

* The 3348-70F is not used for emulation because the 3340 fixed-head feature cannot be installed in a Model 115 which has a 2311 or 2314 compatibility feature

Figure 57. 3348 Cylinder Assignment [19489A]

volume table of contents (VTOC) which must appear on each data module. The VTOC may, however, be placed on any other cylinder which is not used for mapping an emulated device. The 2311 or 2314 volumes have to be mapped onto a 3348 Data Module within the cylinder boundaries shown in Figure 57. The full mapping capacity need not necessarily be used for the emulated device. Any remaining cylinders or mapping areas are available for native 3340 data sets.

Note: The relative track start address must be used in the clear disk run.

COMMAND EXECUTION SCHEME

Original 2311 or 2314 commands cannot be given directly to the 3340, but are executed indirectly via the compatibility features. The features are effected by microinstructions which reside in the 3115's MIP/IPU control storage, and are executed by the MIP/IPU.

The execution of a 2311 or 2314 command is a complex process, but the following list gives a brief outline of the basic steps.

1. A 'start I/O' instruction which addresses a "2311" or "2314" (with a dummy device address) is decoded by the MIP/IPU and then "handed" to the compatibility feature for further processing. The dummy device address distinguishes 2311 or 2314 'start I/O' instructions from 3340 'start I/Os'.
2. The compatibility feature fetches the 2311 or 2314 CCW and checks it for validity. Let us assume that the command is a seek command. Using the data address of this command, the feature fetches from main storage the specifications (that is, cylinder number and head selection, as applicable).
3. The feature calculates the applicable 3340 device address, 3348 cylinder, and head required to fetch the

correct 2311 or 2314 track. Although a "normal" 2311 or 2314 seek command would never fetch any data from a real 2311 or 2314, the feature nevertheless fetches a track.

4. The feature maintains an 8K buffer (for the 2314) or a 4K buffer (for the 2311), or several such buffers, in main storage. (The necessary buffers are allotted by the operator at IPL time.) Each buffer contains a predefined string of CCWs suitable for accessing the 3348. The result of the track calculation is used to select and modify the predefined CCW string in such a way that the correct 3348 record (2311 or 2314 track) can be fetched.
5. The 3348 record is then fetched into the track area of the compatibility feature buffer. This fetch operation appears to the 3340 like any other operation to main storage (the 3340 does not "know" that it is accessed by the feature).
6. When the emulated 2311 or 2314 track reaches the feature buffer, the feature makes an entry in its logical arms position table (which resides in the first (or only) buffer). The feature has thus positioned a notional 2311 or 2314 access mechanism on a notional 2311 or 2314 track which does not rotate under a head but is located in the buffer.
 - a. Any following 2311 or 2314 write command can now write into this buffer (onto the emulated 2311 or 2314 track). After such a write command, the compatibility feature will write back the updated 2311 or 2314 track onto the appropriate 3348 record, again using the predefined CCW string to access the 3348. The 3340 does not "notice" any difference between the feature-initiated write command and a 3340 write command.
 - b. A 2311 or 2314 read command does not read from the 3348 but rather from the emulated 2311 or 2314

track residing in the buffer. The logical arms position table contains up to 32 entries (assuming the maximum of four 3340 drives, which equal thirty-two 2311 drives) so that the last used access position for each drive is always available. Because there are no gaps, the compatibility features also maintain a pointer so that the record starting point for each operation is defined.

Because 2311 or 2314 commands are not directly executed on the 3340, violation of programming rules can cause responses which would not be expected from a real 2311 or 2314 in the same circumstances. The compatibility features are designed to be compatible with DOS programming techniques, and 2311 or 2314 programs that run under DOS will perform error-free on a Model 115 with a compatibility feature installed. Users who intend to write new 2311 or 2314 programs should refer to "Emulated 2311 or 2314 Commands" in this section, which explains all deviations that must be considered when writing 2311 and 2314 programs on the input/output control system (IOCS) level. All deviations which are significant for programmers are called out by a "Note".

Conversion from 2311-1 or 2314 to 3340

The conversion from 2311 Model 1s or 2314s to a 3340 disk subsystem can best be made if the user's old system and the Model 115 both include magnetic tape units. Alternatively, punched cards may be used or, if this is too time-consuming, the conversion can be handled by the IBM installation center. The conversion procedure (listed below) is similar for both magnetic tapes or punch cards.

1. On the System/360, dump the 2311 or 2314 volumes, preferably onto magnetic tape using the DOS-BPS (basic programming system) utility program 208 or the OS stand-alone dump/restore program. If punched cards are used, an appropriate utility program must be employed.
2. Run the initialize 3340 disk program on the Model 115 to write the VTOC and the track descriptor records. The VTOC may be written on cylinder 0 (VTOC = standard) which is reserved for that purpose, or on a cylinder that is not used for mapping an emulated device.
3. Run the clear 3340 disk program on the Model 115, specifying a record length of 3737 (for the 2311) and 7474 (for the 2314). The clear value in both cases is FF. *Note:* For security reasons, each mapped 2311 or 2314 volume should have an entry in the VTOC with a sufficiently late expiry date. Therefore each 2311 or 2314 extent should be cleared by a separate clear disk run.

4. On the Model 115 assign at least one disk compatibility feature buffer by keying a "1" into the 'Program Load' display on the video screen. Then load the 2311 or 2314 initialize disk (INITDSK) program and initialize as many emulated 2311 or 2314 volumes, on the 3340 disks, as required.
5. Mount the magnetic tape (or load the cards) containing the dumped 2311 or 2314 volumes. Then run the same dump/restore program as was previously used for dumping to restore the 2311 or 2314 volumes onto the 3340. For this purpose a compatibility buffer must be assigned. The dump/restore program must be the same to avoid format problems.

Note: Because the initialize 3340 disk program and the clear 3340 disk program are available only as integrated versions, the user must have at least one 3348 Data Module with a DOS/VS MINISYSRES which supports the 3340 and contains both of these programs. A 3340 alternate track program is required for maintenance.

If the conversion procedure is performed without errors, the user can now start normal job processing.

Normal Job Processing

The following text describes the basic procedures for running normal jobs, using a disk compatibility feature.

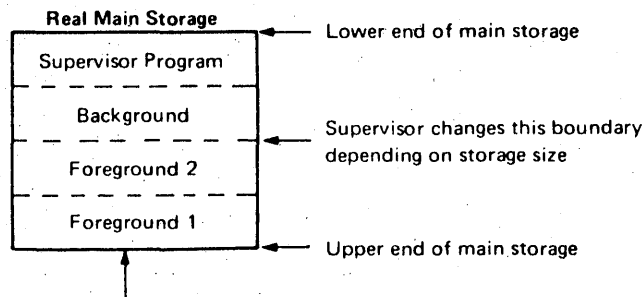
Note: The feature cannot work in block multiplex mode. Bit 0 of control register 0 must therefore be off when the feature is operating. The state of this bit can be checked by giving a 'store channel ID' instruction to the DDA.

Buffer Assignment

The operator must assign at least one compatibility feature buffer (he may assign up to eight) at IPL time. The number used depends on the main storage space available and the processing speed required. Each buffer assigned after the first one increases the feature's processing speed, if the job is access-intensive. For jobs which seldom access the files, the speed increase is not significant.

It is recommended that the same number of buffers is always assigned. Each buffer assigned reduces the available real main storage by 4K or 8K bytes, which are no longer available for program residence. This does not affect the supervisor program even if, for example, the operator assigns two buffers for one job, four buffers for the next, and so on. However, jobs from the user's own core image libraries (to use an example) are affected because their entry points into partitions do not vary according to the reduction in real main storage size. Figure 58 shows this situation graphically.

By appropriate use of the ALLOC statements the boundaries between partitions can be kept on the same storage locations even when the number of buffers is changed. In this case, however, there might not be sufficient space in the partitions for the programs assigned to them.



This boundary varies (physically) according to the number of buffers assigned

Figure 58. Variations of Real Main Storage Boundary [14990]

Running The Job

After buffer assignment, normal DOS processing can begin. Note that the dummy address (from 190 to 1B8, hex) of an emulated volume can be entered into the 'Program Load' display on the video screen. Note also that transferring the physical 3348 disk pack to another 3340 disk storage means an automatic change of the corresponding dummy device address (as shown in Figure 56).

Users employing a DOS release prior to Release 27 are advised to set compatibility mode, so that when the program is overwritten by machine-check interruptions or limited channel logouts, a check-stop occurs.

Note: Block multiplexing must be off, otherwise a 'start I/O' instruction to either a 3340 drive or an emulated drive is rejected with condition code 3 (not operational).

EMULATED 2311 AND 2314 COMMANDS

The 2311 commands are fully described in *IBM System/360 Component Descriptions - 2841 and Associated DASD, GA26-5988*. The 2314 commands are described in *IBM System/360 Component Descriptions - 2314 Direct Access Storage Facility and 2844 Auxiliary Storage Control, GA26-3599*. (These manuals will be referred to as the "Component Descriptions" in the remainder of this section.) The following paragraphs provide only a brief description of these commands, but give detailed information about deviations caused by use of the compatibility features. The description of these deviations will be of interest to programmers who write 2311 or 2314 programs on the physical IOCS level or are involved with DOS maintenance.

Figure 59 shows the 2311 and 2314 commands which can be emulated by the compatibility features.

Seek Commands

Seek commands are logically executed as described in the *Component Descriptions*: the six bytes of seek argument are fetched from main storage and used to emulate the positioning of a 2311 or 2314 access mechanism. To

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
05	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write data
0D	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Write key, data
1D	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	Write count, key, data
19	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	Write home address
15	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	Write record zero
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write special count, key, data
11	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	Erase
-1	X	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	Search ID equal
-9	X	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Search key equal
-9	X	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	Search home address equal
-1	X	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	Search ID high
-9	X	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	Search key high
-1	X	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	Search ID high or equal
-9	X	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	Search key high or equal
-D	X	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	Search key and data equal
-D	X	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	Search key and data high
-D	X	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	Search key and data high or equal
-6	X	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Read data
-E	X	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	Read key, data
-E	X	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	Read count, key, data
-A	X	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	Read home address
-6	X	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	Read record zero
-2	X	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	Read count
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read IPL
07	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	*Seek
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	*Seek cylinder
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	*Seek head
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	*Recalibrate
0F	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	*Space count
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	*Set file mask
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	*Control no-op
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
-8	-	-	-	-	1	0	0	0	Transfer-in-channel
-5	X	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	Continue scan equal
-5	X	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Continue scan high
-5	X	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	Continue scan high or equal
-5	X	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	Continue scan, no status mod
-5	X	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	Continue scan, set status mod
-5	X	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	Continue scan, set status mod

Legend

X is the multi-track bit. When X is 0, the operation is confined to a single track, when X is 1, the operation can be extended over one cylinder by repeating the command as often as required.

Note: Control commands marked with an asterisk (seek, recalibrate, and so on) cannot be used for data chaining.

Figure 59. Emulated 2311 and 2314 Commands [19491A]

achieve this, the appropriate 3340 record is calculated and a string of 3340 commands is issued which is suitable for fetching the desired record (2311 or 2314 track) into the compatibility feature buffer in main storage. The 3340 command string consists of a 3340 seek command followed by a 'search ID equal', followed by a 'TIC', followed by a

'read data'. The completion of this CCW chain completes the 2311 or 2314 seek because then the desired track is in the feature buffer, ready to be accessed by any 2311 or 2314 read or write command (this is the logical purpose of a seek command). A set CD flag bit in a seek command causes a unit check. The command reject bit and the seek check bit are set in sense byte 0.

The 2311 or 2314 seek command may be a 'seek cylinder' or a 'seek head' but in either case the command must use six bytes as the seek argument. If the 2311 or 2314 seek command specifies a length count of less than six bytes, unit check is set in the CSW and the seek check bit (bit 7) is set in sense byte 0. If the seek address is invalid, unit check is set in the CSW with command reject and seek check set in sense byte 0.

Note: The compatibility feature always fetches a full 2311 or 2314 track regardless of whether the seek command is a 'seek cylinder' or a 'seek head'. Channel end and device end are presented together for a seek command; there is no 15 ms delay associated with channel end as was the case on the 2311 and 2314.

'Recalibrate' Command

The 'recalibrate' command is logically executed as described in the *Component Descriptions*. The compatibility features emulate the 2311 or 2314 'recalibrate' command with the following sequence of 3340 commands. A 3340 'recalibrate' command is chained to a seek command followed by a search command to find the emulated 2311 or 2314 cylinder 0 and track 0, after which a read command reads track 0 into the feature buffer. The 'recalibrate' command then ends with channel end and device end both presented. A set CD flag bit in a 'recalibrate' command causes a seek check.

'Set File Mask' Command

The 'set file mask' command is executed exactly as described in the *Component Descriptions*. One byte containing the information about allowed write and seek commands is fetched from main storage and saved for file protection checking. However, the 'set file mask' command does not reset defective track or alternate track bits (as was done in an IBM 2841 Storage Control) because no such bits exist for emulated 2311s and 2314s. The 3340 itself is not affected by a 2311 or 2314 'set file mask' command.

The file mask is checked for validity and, if the file mask does not have bits 2, 5, 6 and 7 off, unit check is set in the CSW with command reject set in sense byte 0.

Only one 'set file mask' command is permitted in a command chain. If more than one is issued per chain, unit check is set with command reject, and invalid sequence (bit 3) is set in sense byte 1. System reset normal or clear resets the file mask. A set CD flag bit in the command causes a program check.

Search Commands

Search commands are used to find information previously recorded and may be single-track or multi-track operations according to the state of bit 0 in the CCW: automatic head switching is not performed if CCW bit 0 is off but is performed if this bit is set. Multi-track search commands must be preceded by a seek command in the same chain. Violation of this rule causes the command reject and invalid sequence bits to be set.

Search commands always operate on the emulated 2311 or 2314 track that was transferred into the feature buffer by the last seek command issued prior to the search command. The feature generates the index marker (necessary because the 3340 record does not have one) so that the search commands can signal "no record found" or fetch the next track when required. If the search criteria are satisfied, channel end, device end, and the status modifier bit are set and the command is completed. If the search criteria cannot be satisfied, the command ends with channel end and device end. Because the channel end/device end status is a normal ending status, command chaining continues (if the CC flag is on). Usually chaining occurs to a TIC minus 8 in most programs so that the search command is issued again. Since a search command causes only one field to be compared, it must be repeated continuously to ensure that the search covers an entire track or cylinder. If the search is a single-track command, it will search the same track and, if unsuccessful again because the index marker has been detected a second time, unit check is set with the no record found bit (bit 4 in sense byte 1), and the chain is terminated. If the command is multi-track, the next track is searched and the no record found bit is not set. Instead, continuous command repetition will finally reach end-of-cylinder (unless the search criterion is found prior to end-of-cylinder).

Search Home Address Equal

The 'search home address equal' command compares bytes 1 to 4 (the cylinder number and head number) of the home address in the emulated 2311 or 2314 track with the four bytes fetched from main storage. The comparison is performed on the track currently in the feature buffer (as a result of the most recent seek command). If more than one buffer has been assigned, the feature maintains an internal pointer that ensures that a search goes to the correct buffer.

The logical comparison looks for an equal result and, if equal is found, the command ends with channel end, device end, and the status modifier bit set. If the result is not equal, the command ends with channel end and device end.

The length count in the command should be four but is allowed to be greater or smaller. If greater, only the four bytes beginning at the main storage location defined by the data address of the command, and continuing in ascending order, are used for comparison. If the length count is less

than four, the comparison is performed on the short field beginning at the leftmost (high-order) byte. Thus, if the length count is two, only the cylinder number of the home address participates in the comparison, and this may also lead to an equal result. If the multi-track bit is set and an equal result cannot be obtained, the next emulated 2311 or 2314 track is fetched into the same buffer when the command is repeated and again bytes 1 to 4 of the new home address are compared with the four (or fewer) main storage bytes. This can continue through to the end of the emulated 2311 or 2314 cylinder at which time unit check is set with the end-of-cylinder bit (bit 2 in sense byte 1) if equal is not found.

Search Identifier

The 'search identifier equal', 'search identifier high', and 'search identifier equal or high' commands compare five bytes from main storage with bytes 1 to 5 (that is, cylinder, head, and record number) of a record in the emulated 2311 or 2314 track, beginning at the point designated by the internal pointer and ending at the index marker if no match occurs. If the search criterion (that is, the equal, high, or high or equal condition, whichever comes first) is satisfied, the command ends with channel end, device end and the status modifier bit set. If the search criterion cannot be found, the command ends with channel end and device end, and head switching does not occur (if single-track) or does occur (if multi-track). Repetition of the command causes searching on the same track (if single-track) or on the next track (if multi-track). If the same track is again searched unsuccessfully, the no record found bit is set in sense byte 1. This cannot occur with a multi-track command which can be repeated until the end-of-cylinder indication is given. The feature maintains a track pointer in its buffer so that the starting point for the search operation is defined. Depending on the previous operation, the pointer may indicate the count, key, or data area of any record within the track currently located in the buffer.

The length count in a search identifier command should be five, is allowed to be greater, but should not be smaller. If greater, only the first five main storage bytes (in ascending order of address) are used. If smaller, the search is performed on the short field beginning with byte 1 (the first cylinder byte). This may also lead to an equal or high result as the case may be. However, a write command that follows such a truncated search is rejected because the sequence is invalid.

Search Key

The 'search key equal', 'search key high', and 'search key high or equal' commands can be single- or multi-track (like all other search commands). The logical comparison is made between an area fetched from main storage and an area within the feature buffer (the emulated 2311 or 2314

track). The comparison starts at the buffer location where a key field starts, and stops at the end of the key field (indicated in the count field) or when the CCW count is exhausted, whichever occurs first. If the search criterion is satisfied, the command ends with channel end, device end, and the status modifier bit set. If the equal or high result (as applicable for the command) cannot be found, channel end and device end are set. Repetition of a single-track command causes a search on the same track and, if the index marker is detected a second time, unit check is set and the no record found bit set in sense byte 1. Multi-track search key commands may be repeated until end-of-cylinder is reached.

The length count of the search key command should be equal to the size of the key that was written when the record was formatted, but may be greater. A greater length count has no effect since the compatibility feature uses the key length information in the count area as guidance for the comparison. Notice that record zero (the track descriptor record) does not participate in the search key if the search key command is not chained from a preceding search identifier command. If chained from a search identifier command, the search key command includes record zero.

Search Key and Data

The 'search key and data equal', 'search key and data high', and 'search key and data equal or high' commands, which are available for the 2311 or 2314 as the special File Scan feature, are a standard part of the compatibility features. With these commands, the search is made over both the key and data areas of a record, and the comparison is made under control of a mask field which specifies the bytes to be ignored in the comparison. Those bytes which are to be ignored (not compared) must be filled with 1-bits in the mask. The mask is fetched from the main storage location specified by the data address of the CCW and ascending addresses as specified by the length count of the CCW.

Search key and data commands may be single-track or multi-track and a chain of such commands may therefore end with no record found or end-of-cylinder bits set (sense bytes 1 and 3) if the search criterion cannot be satisfied. If the search criterion is found, the command ends with channel end, device end, and the status modifier bit set.

The length count of search key and data commands (which is actually the size of the control mask) should be equal to the size of a key and data area but may be greater. Greater length counts cannot lead to a comparison of more bytes than are actually contained in the key and data area of any record.

Continue Scan Commands

The continue scan commands allow a search to be continued when a search key and data command is interrupted during an overflow record (overflow

incomplete). At that time, sense byte 5 contains coded information about the command in progress and the state of the comparison up to the point of interruption. This information can be used to determine which of the continue scan commands (listed in Figure 59) is most suitable. There are no chaining requirements associated with the continue scan commands, and they are subject to control of the file mask in the same way as are search key and data commands.

Read Commands

The compatibility features perform read commands by transferring data from the feature buffer to the main storage location designated by the command. Such data has been fetched into the feature buffer by the most recent seek command issued. If, however, the read command is the first command executed and there was no preceding seek command, reading occurs from track 0 of cylinder 0 of the emulated 2311 or 2314 which is addressed. This is because the feature initializes by performing an initial-seek which is chained to a read command, so that a "default track" is available in any case.

The following text describes 2311 and 2314 read commands which can be emulated by the compatibility features.

Read Home Address

The 'read home address' command is performed on the emulated 2311 or 2314 track which is currently in the feature buffer. The first five bytes of that track (the flag byte, cylinder and head number bytes) are transferred from the buffer to the designated main storage location unless the CCW count is less than five. If the count is smaller than five, only the high-order bytes of the home address are transferred. A length count greater than five does not transfer more than five bytes.

Read Count

The 'read count' command reads the eight bytes (cylinder, head, record number, key length and data length) of the record to which the feature pointer currently points into the designated main storage location. The pointer was set by the last previous operation but, for a 'read count' command, can never point to record zero.

The length count of the 'read count' command should be eight but can be greater (without causing more than eight bytes to be read) or smaller (in which case fewer bytes are read).

Read Record Zero

The 'read record zero' command causes record zero (the track descriptor record) to be read. This record is the first one following the home address of the track currently in the feature buffer. This record may be of any size. Consequently, the length count for the 'read record zero'

command should be equal to count area (eight bytes) plus key length plus data length. The DOS support for 2311s and 2314s generally uses a key length of zero and a data length of eight in record zero. However, other lengths may be assigned. For example, initialize disk programs write one record zero that occupies the entire track. This is supported by the compatibility features.

Read Data

The 'read data' command causes the data area of a record to be transferred from the feature buffer to the main storage location designated by the CCW data address. The record from which the data area is retrieved is defined by the internal pointer. This pointer is updated with each operation so as to point to the next sequential record. If the program is written in a methodical way there is no doubt about the record from which reading occurs. If orientation is lost, the 'read data' command should be chained from a search identifier command, to ensure that data is read from the record defined by the identifier. In the same way, a 'read data' command can be chained from a 'read count' command.

Read Key and Data

The 'read key and data' command transfers the key and data areas to main storage in the same way as just described for the 'read data' command. (In fact, if the key length in the count area is zero, the 'read key and data' command is equivalent to a 'read data' command.) The record from which key and data areas are retrieved is defined by the internal pointer or explicitly due to appropriate chaining from a preceding search identifier or 'read count' command.

Read Count, Key, and Data

The 'read count, key, and data' command causes an entire record (except record zero) to be transferred to main storage. The feature transfers the record to which the internal pointer is set or the next sequential one if the pointer is set to record zero. If a specific record is to be read and this record is record N, the program must reorient to record N - 1.

Read Initial Program Load

The 'read IPL' command is normally not issued by the program but is automatically generated by the compatibility features when the 'Program Load' display is on the video screen and the operator has entered one of the dummy 2311 or 2314 device addresses (such as 190, 191, 192, etc.). This causes the feature to calculate the emulated

2311 or 2314 cylinder zero, track zero, after which that track is read from the applicable 3348 into the feature buffer (via the predefined command string). The internal pointer is set to 2311 or 2314 record 1 and the data area of record 1 is subsequently transferred to main storage location 0 and ascending positions.

Write Commands

The compatibility features execute write commands by performing a data transfer from main storage to the feature buffer (current emulated 2311 or 2314 track). A predefined 3340 command string is then modified by the track calculation routine and issued to the 3340 which holds the emulated 2311 or 2314 designated in the 'start I/O' instruction. The write operation is actually a 3340 write of a complete 3340 record (2311 or 2314 track). The 2311/2314 track does not contain gaps or cyclic check bytes but is fitted with the 3340 cyclic check bytes, as is normal for any 3340 record. The emulated 2311 or 2314 data is therefore subject to the same data security and integrity as the 3340 data itself. Channel end and device end are indicated for a 2311 or 2314 write command when the 3340 operation is completed. If a write operation runs into an error (unit check), it is repeated 10 times by the feature and, if not successful, equipment check is set.

Write Home Address

The 'write home address' command transfers five bytes from main storage to the home address area in the feature buffer (2311 or 2314 track beginning). No cyclic check bytes are generated. The length count of a 'write home address' command should be five but may be greater or smaller. If greater, only the five high-order bytes are written. If smaller, the remainder (low-order bytes) is written as zeros. The five bytes thus transferred represent flag byte, cylinder number, and head number in that order. After this transfer, the entire 2311 or 2314 track is written as a 3340 record, then channel end and device end are presented for the command.

The 'write home address' command must be preceded by the 'set file mask' command, otherwise the 'write home address' command is rejected as an invalid sequence.

Write Record Zero

The 'write record zero' command transfers data from main storage to the buffer field that extends from the home address onward. The first eight bytes thus transferred represent the count area (cylinder, head, record number, key length, data length).

Note: The flag byte that precedes the count area is generated by the feature as an all-zeros byte. The only track

that can ever be defective is a (physical) 3340 track and the 3340 handles surface defects by a unique skipping method. Defect skipping is transparent to the compatibility features.

The remaining data (after the count area) is written into the feature buffer under control of the key and data length respectively. No cyclic check bytes are attached. After the record zero is assembled in the buffer, the entire 2311 or 2314 track is written onto the appropriate 3340 record, then channel end and device end are presented for the command.

The 'write record zero' command must be chained from a preceding 'write home address' command or a successful 'search home address' command. If the 'write record zero' command is not chained, the command is rejected because of invalid sequence.

Write Count, Key, Data

The 'write count, key, data' command transfers the data for a complete 2311 or 2314 record from main storage to the feature buffer, after which the entire track (with the new record) is written onto the 3340. The length count in the command should be eight (count area) plus key length plus data length, but may be greater or smaller. If greater, no damage occurs because the data transfer after the eight count area bytes is under control of key and data length. If the length count is smaller, the remainder is filled with zeros. The 'write count, key, data' command can be used to generate an "end of file record". An end of file record is any record which has a data length of zero in its count area, and this fact will be indicated by unit exception.

The 'write count, key, data' command is rejected if it is not chained from one of these preceding commands:

- A successful 'search ID equal' command
- A successful 'search key equal' command
- A 'write record zero' command
- Another 'write count, key, data' command.

Erase

The 'erase' command, unlike the original 2311 or 2314 'erase', does not cause data to be transferred. Instead it moves the index marker (which signals the end of the track) to the end of the previous record, depending on the orientation. This relocation effectively shortens the track length and this is equivalent to the erasure of a record. The new track is then written onto the 3348 Data Module that holds the 2311 or 2314 track.

The 'erase' command must be chained from a preceding 'write count, key, data' or a successful 'search ID equal', or 'search key equal', or a 'write record zero' command, otherwise 'erase' is rejected due to invalid sequence.

Note: A track overrun (bit 1 of sense byte 1) cannot be indicated by an erase operation. The residual count is always set to zero, so an incorrect length indication cannot occur.

Write Data

The 'write data' command only transfers data from main storage into the data area of the record defined by a preceding 'search ID equal' or 'search key equal'. The entire 2311 or 2314 track is then transferred to the 3340. The length count of the 'write data' command should be equal to the data area (defined by the data length in the count area) of the record but may be greater or smaller. If greater, writing stops when the data length limit is reached. If smaller, the remaining data area is filled with zeros.

The 'write data' command must be chained from a preceding 'search ID' or 'search key equal', otherwise the command is rejected due to invalid sequence.

Write Key and Data

The 'write key and data' command transfers data from main storage to the key and data areas of a record. The updated 2311 or 2314 track is then written onto the 3340. The length count of the 'write key and data' CCW should be equal to key plus data length established when the record was formatted, but may be greater or smaller. Greater length counts have no effect because the key, as well as the data area, is written under control of the key length, and the data length, specified in the count area of the record. Smaller length counts cause padding with zeros. To avoid command rejection (due to invalid sequence) the 'write key and data' command must be chained from a preceding successful 'search ID equal' command.

Write Special Count Key, Data

The 'write special count, key, data' command writes a complete record and sets bit 1 of the flag byte to mark the overflow record. This flag indicates that the record continues on the next track.

'Space Count' Command

The 'space count' command is a recovery command and serves no purpose on the emulator. However, with respect to orientation, the command functions as described in the *Component Descriptions* with the following exception:

- The emulator will not use the three bytes of key length and data length indicated by the data address in the CCW. Instead, the emulator will always use the key length and data length from the count field.

Note: An IDA-flag in the CCW will be ignored and no program or protection check will occur in case of an erroneous data address.

'Sense' Command

The execution of a 'sense' command for an emulated 2311 or 2314 is quite different from a 'sense' issued to a control unit. A 'sense' for an emulated 2311 or 2314 moves prearranged sense bytes from the feature buffer to main

storage. The 2311 or 2314 sense information is prepared either:

- By the feature itself, if it detects errors in the user's CCW chain, or
- When the feature receives a unit check from the 3340.

To obtain relevant sense data, the compatibility feature issues a 3340 'sense' whenever a unit check indication is received from the 3340, regardless of whether the 2311 or 2314 program issues a 'sense' or not. The 3340 sense data thus obtained is placed into the feature buffer in the form suitable for a 2311 or 2314. The "edited" sense information is transferred to main storage when a 2311 or 2314 'sense' command is issued. Up to six bytes of sense information may be transferred.

The feature's operating principle makes it clear that automatic sensing is necessary even when such sensing would never have been performed on the original device. An example may illustrate the point:

An emulated 2311 or 2314 seek involves data transfer (i.e. reading of a 3340 record = 2311 or 2314 track) into the feature buffer, that is, an action not normally associated with a seek. Because this data transfer involves a number of 3340 commands, an error can occur on the 3340 on rare (but conceivable) occasions. In that case the feature will perform a 3340 'sense', otherwise the feature would lose control of the situation. The sense information is, in addition, used to construct the appropriate unit and/or channel status for the 2311 or 2314 program.

Consequently, the issuing of a 2311 or 2314 'sense' command will result in representative sense data only in the following circumstances. A 'sense' command must be issued subsequent to the reception of unit check. When not issued after a unit check, the sense data is either zero or may reflect a new situation. This is because the feature resets the sense information in its buffer for all commands, except for a sense command that addresses the same device for which sense data is present. Issuing a 'sense' command for no reason (for example, placing a 'sense' command somewhere into a CCW chain) may not give representative results. DOS never issues a 'sense' other than following a unit check and will therefore always get the correct indications. Programmers who intend to write on the physical IOCS level should keep to the same rule even if they are not interested in the sense data. For details of sense data, see "2311-2314/3340 Feature Sense Information" in this chapter.

'Control No-Op' Command

The 'control no-op' command resets the "no record found"

indication and the internal pointer which the feature maintains in its buffer. The effect of this orientation reset can be used for different purposes. For example, if a 'control no-op' is inserted between a 'read count' command and a 'read data' command, the 'read data' command will no longer read the data of the record to which the count field belongs, but instead read the data of the next record. *Note:* Because the 'control no-op' command resets the no record found indicator, the command must be used with great care. The programmer must avoid an endless loop such as the one shown below:

```
No-op
Search ID
TIC*-16
```

An unsuccessful search (no record found) would cause a branch back to the no-op which resets the no record found indication, etc. A loop of this type would tie-up not only the feature but the entire MIP (hence the 115 system) and such a tie-up cannot be broken by any means other than system reset. Also, there is no indication of such a loop (because it consists of valid operations).

Note: Because a 'control no-op' command causes no access to the 3340, the status information is not necessarily reliable. For example, a 'start I/O' instruction followed by a stand-alone 'control no-op' command causes condition code 1 with channel end and device end to be set, even if the 3340 is ready.

'Transfer-in-Channel' Command

The 'transfer-in-channel' (TIC) command is executed as described in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, with the following exception:

- In the case of program check, due to an invalid branch address, the CSW does not contain the address where the TIC command is located (plus eight), but the address where the branch was supposed to go.

A TIC command must not refer to another TIC nor can it be at the beginning of a chain, otherwise program check is set.

2311-2314/3340 FEATURE STATUS INFORMATION

This section describes the channel status and unit status that is set into the channel status word at the termination or completion of a 2311 or 2314 command.

Channel Status

The following channel status indications are given by the feature.

CSW Bits	Meaning
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	(Not used)
45	Channel control check
46, 47	(Not used)

Program-controlled Interruption (Bit 40)

The program-controlled interruption (PCI) bit appears in the status at the end of a chain in which any CCW had the PCI flag set. This means that the feature never breaks a chain due to PCI.

Incorrect Length (Bit 41)

Incorrect length is indicated when the length count in the CCW does not agree with the number of bytes actually transferred, provided the suppress length indication (SLI) flag is not set. If the SLI flag is set, incorrect length is not indicated but the residual count will show how many bytes were not transferred.

Program Check (Bit 42)

Program check is indicated for all the normal errors defined by *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, and in one special case:

- Invalid CCW address specification
- Invalid CCW address
- Invalid count
- Invalid data address
- Invalid CAW format
- Invalid CCW format
- Invalid sequence (TIC refers to TIC)
- Invalid IDA-word.

The presentation of program check indicates that the command (for which program check is indicated) was not executed even though the feature *does set* channel end and device end for that command.

Note: The feature does not indicate program check for the following errors:

1. *Invalid command code.* Invalid commands are principally indicated by unit check in the status information, and command reject in the sense information. This is because there is no physical channel involved in the execution of 2311 or 2314 CCWs.
2. *Invalid key.* Invalid key is not applicable because the Model 115 has storage protection as a standard feature.

Protection Check (Bit 43)

Protection check is indicated in accordance with *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000.

Channel Control Check (Bit 45)

Channel control check is indicated when the compatibility feature encounters any channel condition which it cannot handle. Together with the setting of CCC the following limited channel logout (location 176–179) is stored:

Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3
08	80	07	00

When working with compatibility mode, a check-stop is entered, otherwise normal processing continues with the next sequential instruction or interrupt.

Unit Status

The following unit status indications are given by the feature.

CSW Bit	Meaning
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

Bit 32 is not used by the feature.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier is set for any search command that succeeds in finding the search criterion (equal, high, or high or equal). The setting of the status modifier causes automatic skipping of the next sequential command and execution of the subsequent command (CCW address plus 16) when command chaining is specified.

The status modifier is set with the busy bit to indicate that the controller is busy.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

Bit 34 is set when the control unit becomes available after it has signaled a control unit busy condition.

Busy (Bit 35)

Busy is set with the status modifier bit to indicate that the controller is busy.

Channel End and Device End (Bits 36 and 37)

Channel end and device end are normally set together for 2311 or 2314 commands (except for one condition which is described in the following text). This is because of the indirect method of command execution which does not allow for any separation between channel and device (which do not physically exist). The presentation of channel end and device end indicates that the feature is free to accept the next instruction or command.

Note: When an operation is terminated without processing any CCW (for example the first CCW of a chain has an invalid op code) *no* channel end and device end are presented. In this case only the channel and unit status are presented (short store). When a check occurs in the middle of a chain, and no data transfer has been initiated for the CCW in error, a full CSW (but without channel end and device end) is stored.

Device end is presented alone when the emulated 2311 or 2314 is transferred from the not-ready to the ready state. Because the operator can only, in fact, make the 3340 ready, eight successive device ends are given for 2311 devices and two successive device ends are given for 2314 devices (one for each emulated volume that may be on the 3348 Data Module). If 3340 programs are running with 2311 or 2314 programs, an extra device end is given for the 3340 itself.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

Unit check is presented for errors or unusual conditions detected during command execution. Unit check indicates that a subsequent 'sense' command will retrieve information about the actual condition which caused the error. A 'sense' command must always be given if unit check is set during execution of a 2311 or 2314 command. For further details of the conditions that can set unit check, see "2311-2314/3340 Feature Sense Information" in this chapter.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when an end-of-file condition is detected during a read record zero, read data, read key and data, read count-key-data, or during a search key-data operation, or during a search ID operation, or during a write key-data, or write data operation. The end-of-file condition results from the fact that the count area involved had a data length of zero. A record without data was written deliberately to mark the end of a logical file.

2311-2314/3340 FEATURE SENSE INFORMATION

The compatibility features generate six sense bytes and keep them in the buffer, ready for transfer to main storage if a 'sense' command is issued. Because the features obtain sense information automatically when the need arises, a 2311 or 2314 'sense' command must be issued following a unit check. If a 'sense' command is not issued following unit check, the pertinent information may not be available at a later time because of the feature's own activity. Indiscriminate use of the 'sense' command should be avoided.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	(Not used [0])
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	Seek check

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set in the following situations:

1. A command is given which is not part of the 2311 and 2314 repertoire.
2. An invalid command sequence is given. For details of invalid command sequences, see the description of bit 3 under "Sense Byte 1".
3. Commands are chained incorrectly.
4. A seek command has an invalid seek address.
5. A command violates the write portion of the file mask, or an invalid file mask is set.
6. The search command that precedes a write command is truncated.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set in the following situations:

1. A 2311 or 2314 command is given to an emulated device that is not ready or is in channel end mode. The not-ready state is in the emulating device (the 3340) which may be stopped, have no data module, or be not up to speed.
2. A valid dummy device address (hex 190 to 1B8) is given, and the 3340 is ready, but the 2311 or 2314 volume is not formatted as an emulated volume and is actually a native 3340 volume.
3. The data module has the insert tab pushed into its handle and is thus write-protected. The operator must then investigate whether writing on that module is allowed, and, if so, switch the drive offline to gain access to the pack to pull out the tab. When the drive is returned online an interruption occurs, which allows the program to continue.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set when the 3340 presents equipment check to the compatibility feature during the execution of an emulated command. A hardware check in the 3340 is responsible. The equipment check bit is also set after the feature has unsuccessfully tried a write operation ten times, or an overrun condition remains after ten retries.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set when a 3340 which is being used for emulated 2311 or 2314 operations indicates an uncorrectable data check.

Seek Check (Bit 7)

The seek check bit is set (together with command reject) when a seek command has a length count of less than six bytes or a data address which points to a location outside physical main storage.

Seek check is also set when a malfunction has occurred in the 3340. In this case, a 'recalibrate' command should be given to orient the 3340 access mechanism.

Sense Byte 1

The bits of sense byte 1 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Meaning
0	(Not used)
1	Track overrun
2	End-of-cylinder
3	Invalid sequence
4	No record found
5	File protected
6	(Not used)
7	Overflow incomplete

Track Overrun (Bit 1)

The track overrun bit is set when a formatting write operation exceeds the remaining track capacity. Note that track overrun will not necessarily occur at the same time as it would for a real 2311 or 2314. This is because the feature does not emulate gaps and hence has a larger track capacity.

End-of-Cylinder (Bit 2)

Bit 2 is set when the end of a cylinder is detected before the command chain is completed. This is typically the case if a chain of multi-track search commands does not find the search criterion before end-of-cylinder is reached. The same applies to overflow records.

Invalid Sequence (Bit 3)

The invalid sequence bit is set when the program attempts to issue a command that, in conjunction with the preceding command, would lead to undefined situations. Command reject is set together with invalid sequence and the command in question is not executed. The following sequences are invalid for the compatibility features.

1. A multi-track search command not preceded by a seek command in the same chain.
2. A 'set file mask' command preceded by a 'set file mask' command in the same chain.
3. A 'write record zero' command not preceded by a successful 'search home address equal' or 'write home address' command.
4. A 'write count, key, data' command not chained from a preceding 'write record zero' or another 'write count, key, data' command. However, a 'read data' or 'read key, data' command may be inserted between a search command and the write command without causing invalid sequence.

5. A 'write data' command not preceded by a successful (not truncated) 'search ID equal' or 'search key equal' command.
6. A 'write key, data' command not preceded by a successful 'search ID equal' command.
7. A 'sense' command appearing in a position other than the beginning of a chain.

No Record Found (Bit 4)

The no record found bit is set only for single-track search commands which (by being repeated on the same track) have encountered the index marker for the second time and the search criterion could not be satisfied.

File Protected (Bit 5)

The file protected bit is set when a command violates the specifications given by a 'set file mask' command. If the violating command is a write command, command reject is also set.

Overflow Incomplete (Bit 7)

The overflow incomplete bit is set when a 'write special count, key, data' command (which can continue on the next track automatically) is unsuccessful or a file scan command is prohibited by the seek portion of the file mask. The following situations cause the feature to set overflow incomplete for overflow commands:

1. Overflow to file-protected boundary (dictated by the file mask). File protected (bit 5) is also set.
2. Overflow over a cylinder boundary. The end-of-cylinder bit is also set.

When the overflow incomplete bit is set, sense byte 5 contains information about the command in progress when the overflow condition occurred.

Sense Byte 2

Sense byte 2 is not used by the compatibility features and is always zero.

Sense Byte 3

The bits in sense byte 3 have the following meanings:

Bit	Meaning for 2311	Meaning for 2314
0	Ready*	(Not used)
1	Online*	Online*
2	(Not used)	(Not used)
3	(Not used)	(Not used)
4	Online*	(Not used)
5	End-of-cylinder	End-of-cylinder
6	(Not used)	(Not used)
7	(Not used)	(Not used)

* These bits do not reflect the status of the 3340 drive but are always forced on for compatibility reasons during emulation.

End-of-Cylinder (Bit 5)

The end-of-cylinder bit is set in the same circumstances as the bit of the same name in sense byte 1.

Sense Byte 4

Sense byte 4 is not used.

Sense Byte 5

Sense byte 5 contains a hexadecimal number which identifies the command in progress when an overflow incomplete condition is detected and sense byte 1 bit 7 is set. When sense byte 1 bit 7 is zero, sense byte 5 is also zero.

*Hexadecimal
value of sense
byte 5*

Meaning

04	Read command was in progress.
05	Write command was in progress.
25	'Search key and data equal' was in progress, and comparison is equal to this point.
45	'Search key and data high' was in progress and comparison is equal to this point.
65	'Search key and data high or equal' was in progress and comparison is equal to this point.
55	'Search key and data' was in progress and comparison is low, or a 'search key and data equal' was in progress and comparison is high.
75	'Search key and data high' or 'search key and data high or equal' was in progress and comparison is high.

2311-2314/3340 FEATURE INPUT/OUTPUT INSTRUCTIONS

The compatibility features execute the 'start I/O', 'test I/O', 'test channel', 'halt I/O', and 'halt device' instructions. The feature does not execute the 'store channel ID' instruction.

Start I/O

The features execute all 'start I/O' instructions which address an emulated 2311 or 2314 via a valid dummy device address (hex 190, 191, and so on). When such a 'start I/O' is received, the feature first checks whether a native or emulated operation is already in progress. Depending on the condition found, one of the following condition codes is set:

<i>Condition Code</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	Feature proceeds with execution
1	Status word stored
2	Feature or 3340 is busy
3	Feature is not operational (no buffer assigned or block multiplexing is on)

Condition Code 0

Condition code 0 is set for a 2311 or 2314 'start I/O' instruction whenever the 3340 is not busy with a 3340 'start I/O', and a feature buffer is available. Condition code 0 thus indicates that the basic prerequisites for 2311 or 2314 command execution are satisfied.

Condition Code 1

Condition code 1 indicates that the CSW has been updated and must be examined.

Condition Code 2

Condition code 2 is set when the 3340 or the feature is busy.

Condition Code 3

Condition code 3 is set when the operator did not assign a feature buffer at IPL time and the feature is consequently not operational. Condition code 3 is also set if the 3340 is not operational (has power off, for example), or if block multiplex mode is set.

Test I/O

The features execute 'test I/O' instructions by addressing the 3340 to obtain appropriate status and, if required, the pertinent sense information. The results are indicated in the condition code as follows:

<i>Condition Code</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	Feature (and 3340) is available
1	CSW stored
2	Feature or 3340 is busy
3	Feature or 3340 is not operational.

Test Channel

The 'test channel' instruction is executed by investigating the state of the 3340 as well as the state of the 2311 or 2314 program execution. The resulting condition codes have the following meanings:

<i>Condition Code</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	Channel is available
1	Interruption is pending in channel
2	Burst mode operation is in progress
3	Channel is not operational.

Halt I/O, Halt Device

These instructions operate as described in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*.

403/3203 Carriage Control Feature

The 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature aids the execution of programs originally written for the IBM 1403 Printer and then transferred to the Model 115 to control an IBM 3203 Printer. The feature excludes the storage dump facility.

The user's programs do not have to be changed or reassembled, provided they do not deliberately force the command reject bit to be set. The feature is provided to overcome the differences in carriage operation between the 1403 and the 3203. (The 1403's carriage is controlled by a carriage tape, whereas the 3203's carriage is controlled by information in a buffer.) The carriage control feature allows the operator to transfer the punched information from the 1403's carriage control tape into the 3203's forms control buffer. This operation is performed on the Model 115's console keyboard.

Switching The Feature On and Off

When the forms control buffer has been loaded from the keyboard, the carriage control feature is active and the behavior of the printer attachment is modified as follows:

1. Sense information is restricted to sense byte 0, equivalent to the single sense byte provided by a channel-attached 1403.
2. The no-channel-found bit (sense byte 0, bit 6) is suppressed when a channel is specified without previously being defined. Instead, the command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is presented.

All other characteristics of the 3203 are unchanged. For instance, the 'sense I/O' command, which is not available for the 1403, can be issued to a 3203 in carriage control mode and the relevant device identification will still be provided.

The carriage control feature ceases to be active when a valid bit pattern is loaded into the forms control buffer as a result of a 'load carriage control buffer' command. In this case the special conditions (1 and 2) noted in the preceding text no longer apply.

Note: If an attempt is made to load an invalid bit pattern by means of a 'load carriage control buffer' command, the feature is not deactivated, but the no-channel-found bit will be set.

The current status of the carriage control feature, that is, whether it is switched on or off, is always available on the diskette. During IMPL, the status recorded on the diskette is loaded into the 3203 attachment. When a new diskette is loaded and IMPL is performed, the status of the carriage control feature will correspond to the status existing when the new diskette was last used. Automatic refreshing of the printer IOP after external damage does not affect the status of the carriage control feature.

Console Operations

The feature uses a number of screen displays which the

* CARRIAGE CONTROL FEATURE -
FUNCTION SELECTION*

I INFORMATION ABOUT CARRIAGE CONTROL FEATURE
F FILL PICTURE INTO BUFFER
S STORE PICTURE ONTO DISKETTE (AND BUFFER)
T TRANSFER PICTURE FROM DISKETTE INTO BUFFER
A ALTER/DISPLAY DISKETTE PICTURES
D DELETE DISKETTE PICTURES
N DISPLAY PICTURE NAMES
C COPY PICTURE FILE ON NEW DISKETTE

_

Figure 60. Carriage Control Feature - Function Selection
Display [19492A]

operator invokes by entering selector character 'F' into the mode selection display (see Figure 49). The screen display shown in Figure 60 then appears.

By selecting one of the eight options shown in Figure 60, the operator can:

- Display brief instructions on how to use the feature (I).
- Load the 3203's forms control buffer from the keyboard (F).
- Store information from the keyboard onto the diskette as a control tape image having a two-character name of any bit pattern and 36 bytes of carriage control data, and load this information optionally into the forms control buffer (S).
- Transfer a displayed control tape image from the console diskette to the forms control buffer (T).
- Display and alter the control tape images, which are stored on the console diskette and may optionally be loaded into the 3203's forms control buffer (A).
- Delete control tape images from the console diskette (D).
- Display the names of all control tape images stored on the console diskette (N).
- Copy control tape images from one diskette to another diskette (C).

A library of up to 50 control tape images, each representing a combination of at least 24 different channel-line locations, can be stored on the console diskette. The operator selects at the keyboard the desired control tape image and transfers it to the 3203 forms control buffer before starting the user's program.

Alternatively, the operator can enter from the keyboard a single control tape image into the 3203's forms control buffer (console command 'FF') without using the diskette. By this method he can specify up to 166 channel-line locations for one form.

Model-Dependent Information

The following functions are characteristics of the Model 115 and are not necessarily common to the entire System/370.

TIMERS

Resolution

The time-of-day clock, CPU timer, and clock comparator each have a resolution of 16 μ s. Bit 47 is updated every 16 μ s which is equivalent to bit 51 being updated every μ s (as described in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000).

Damage

The timing facilities damage condition arises once only during an error state in the CPU timer, TOD clock, or clock comparator: when the error state first occurs. The condition does not continue throughout the error state but it arises whenever an applicable set or store timer instruction is issued while the respective facility is damaged. Because all timers are operated by the same hardware, damage to that hardware includes the interval timer as well.

Updating of CPU Timer

In *System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, it is stated that the CPU timer does not operate when the CPU is stopped. This is true of the CPU timer on the Model 115, except that the timer is decremented in the stopped state during certain manual operations. These operations include program reset, store status, and displaying and altering registers, the PSW, and keys in storage.

INSTRUCTIONS

Start I/O Fast Release

The fast release facility of the 'start I/O fast release' instruction is not implemented in the Model 115. The operation code of this instruction is accepted, however, and a means of suppressing the fast release action is therefore not required. On the Model 115 the 'start I/O fast release' instruction is executed as a 'start I/O' instruction.

Diagnose

The 'diagnose' instruction is executed as a no-operation, that is, it causes no processing action and the next sequential instruction is read out. A privileged operation exception occurs when a 'diagnose' instruction is issued in the problem state.

'Halt Device' on the Byte-Multiplexer Channel

If a 'halt device' instruction cannot be executed over a subchannel because a burst mode operation is in progress

on another device, the 'halt device' instruction is retained in the CPU until the burst mode operation ends. The 'halt device' instruction is then executed.

Note: When a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction is issued to a natively-attached device, incorrect length will always be indicated if the data transfer has not been completed.

'Read Direct' and 'Write Direct'

These instructions are not implemented in the Model 115.

CHANNEL AVAILABLE INTERRUPTION

The byte-multiplexer channel does not provide the channel available interruption. This is because the byte-multiplexer channel has no block-multiplexing capability for which the channel available interruption would be required.

CHECK-STOP CONTROL

The on/off state of the check-stop control bit (bit 0 of control register 14) is not tested because the Model 115 attempts to recover from any condition that would normally cause a check-stop, and only stops on uncorrectable instruction-processing damage or system damage. In these cases, bit 0 of control register 14 is assumed to be set. The operator can independently elect to have a hardstop indication shown on the video screen by selection at the keyboard (see "Check Control" under "Mode Selection" in the "System Control" chapter).

CHECK-RESET FUNCTION

The Model 115 has no check-reset key, but the check-reset function nevertheless exists. All internal parity checks and other checks are automatically reset when a successful retry has overcome the error or when a system reset (normal or clear) is performed.

ERROR LOGGING

Error logging on the Model 115 is not as stated in *System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, because the information is logged not into main storage but onto the console disk file. This information can be processed only by the microprogram and is not directly accessible to software programs.

MULTIPROCESSING

The Model 115 is not designed as a multiprocessing system. Consequently, any implications associated with multiprocessing (as described in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000) do not apply.

AUTOMATIC REFERENCE AND CHANGE RECORDING

All successful references to main storage cause the setting of the reference bit in the protection key associated with the referenced 2K block of storage (see description of protection key display in "Alter/Display" under "Mode Selection" in the "System Control" chapter). The process is automatic and does not depend on the facility that makes the reference (such as the SVP, MIP/IPU, or IOP) nor on the purpose for which the reference is made. This means that all references for internal purposes such as table look-up, PSW-exchange, interruption code storing, register saving, and so on, turn on the reference bit in the same way as direct references by the program. The reference bit is also set when main storage is accessed to display the data at the stop point, as usually occurs when the CPU is stopped. The reference bit is likewise set for all references made for prefetching purposes. (Instruction prefetching does not occur, and address prefetching occurs only during data chaining with indirect data addressing.) Conversely, the reference bit is never turned off by actions other than system reset clear or the execution of the 'reset reference bit' or 'set storage key' instructions.

The change bit is handled like the reference bit and is set for all successful store operations into main storage. There is no situation where a reference or change bit is not set although a reference was made, or where a reference bit is turned off without explicit programming action or the performance of a system reset clear. Fetch or store operations which cause an address check or key mismatch are considered faulty and do not set the reference or change bit.

HANDLING OF INVALID CBC DURING MACHINE-CHECK

The Model 115 does not validate invalid checking block codes (CBCs) automatically during machine-check interruption. Consequently, validation of main storage locations, keys in storage, general registers, floating-point registers, control registers, or the CPU timer or clock comparator requires program action. Programmed validation must be performed as specified in the following text.

Main Storage

Execution of the 'move' (MVC) or 'move long' (MVCL) instruction validates the main storage area containing the first operand when the following conditions are satisfied:

- The first operand field and second operand field in the operation do not overlap.
- The first operand field starts on a boundary of a checking block and is an integral number of checking blocks in length.
- For MVCL, the second operand field, if non-zero in length, starts on a boundary of a checking block and, if it is shorter than the first operand field, is an integral number of checking blocks in length. The smallest checking block in the Model 115 is one byte.

Validation is not affected by an interruption, or by stopping of the CPU during execution of MVCL.

Keys in Storage

Execution of the 'set storage key' instruction validates the key (including reference and change bits).

Registers

General registers are validated by 'branch and link' (BAL, BALR), 'load' (LR), and 'load address' (LA) instructions. 'Load' (L) and 'load multiple' (LM) validate if the operand is on a word boundary, and 'load halfword' (LH) validates if the operand is on a halfword boundary.

Floating-point registers are validated by 'load' (LDR) and, if the operand is on a doubleword boundary, by 'load' (LD) instructions.

Control registers may be validated either singly or in groups by using the 'load control' (LCTL) instruction.

Timers

The CPU timer and clock comparator are validated by 'set CPU timer' (SPT) and 'set clock comparator' (SCKC) instructions, respectively.

The TOD clock is validated by the 'set clock' (SCK) instruction if the TOD CLOCK key is depressed.

UNIT DELETION DUE TO MACHINE-CHECK

Deletion or partial disabling of transparent units does not occur in the Model 115.

The Model 115 has a direct disk attachment as a standard feature, and can also be equipped optionally with a number of other integrated attachments, adapters, and a multiplexer channel. These facilities are described in this chapter, together with the instructions available for performing input/output operations, and the characteristics of those input/output devices which are not controlled over a standard interface. The separate descriptions of I/O devices contain information on commands, status reports, sense information, and error recovery.

For a list of the input/output devices that can be connected to the Model 115 see the *IBM System/370 Input/Output Configurator*, GA22-7002.

Input/Output Operations

Input/output operations are concerned with the transfer of information between main storage and I/O devices. In the Model 115, this information transfer is handled through microprogrammed electronic controllers known as input/output processors. The IOPs are subprocessors of the system and are housed in the main frame.

Because the IOPs have a common design, they can take the processing of I/O instructions only to a certain stage. To provide the unique sequence of signals required by an attached device, specialized circuits termed *front ends* are added to the IOP. An IOP equipped with front ends forms an independent data processing unit capable of servicing a number of I/O devices.

Most front ends are designed for direct attachment of I/O

devices such as card machines or a printer. In this case, the I/O device is serviced over a specialized interface and is thus under the control of an integrated attachment (Figure 61). The multiplexer channel is, however, an exception. Although this channel also consists of a front end serviced by an IOP, it operates over a standard interface, and is therefore a standard System/360 or System/370 channel.

The multiplexer channel in the Model 115 is a true channel, functionally similar to those used in the System/360. The integrated adapters and attachments have the same major characteristics as a channel and can be considered as pseudo-channels. To the operating system, therefore, all I/O devices appear to be channel-attached, and are programmed accordingly.

Operations on all I/O devices begin with a 'start I/O' instruction and are implemented through channel command words. The non-channel-attached devices transmit status information like those which are channel-attached, and request program interruptions for conditions such as channel end and device end.

CHANNEL ORGANIZATION

For programming purposes, the Model 115's facilities for the attachment of I/O devices are considered to consist of three channels (Figure 62). The multiplexer channel is suitable for attaching the System/360 and System/370 control units shown in *System/370 Input/Output Configurator*, GA22-7002. The integrated adapters, integrated attachments, and direct disk attachment require no external control units, but are connected directly to the I/O devices. The channel organization of the Model 115 is described in the following paragraphs.

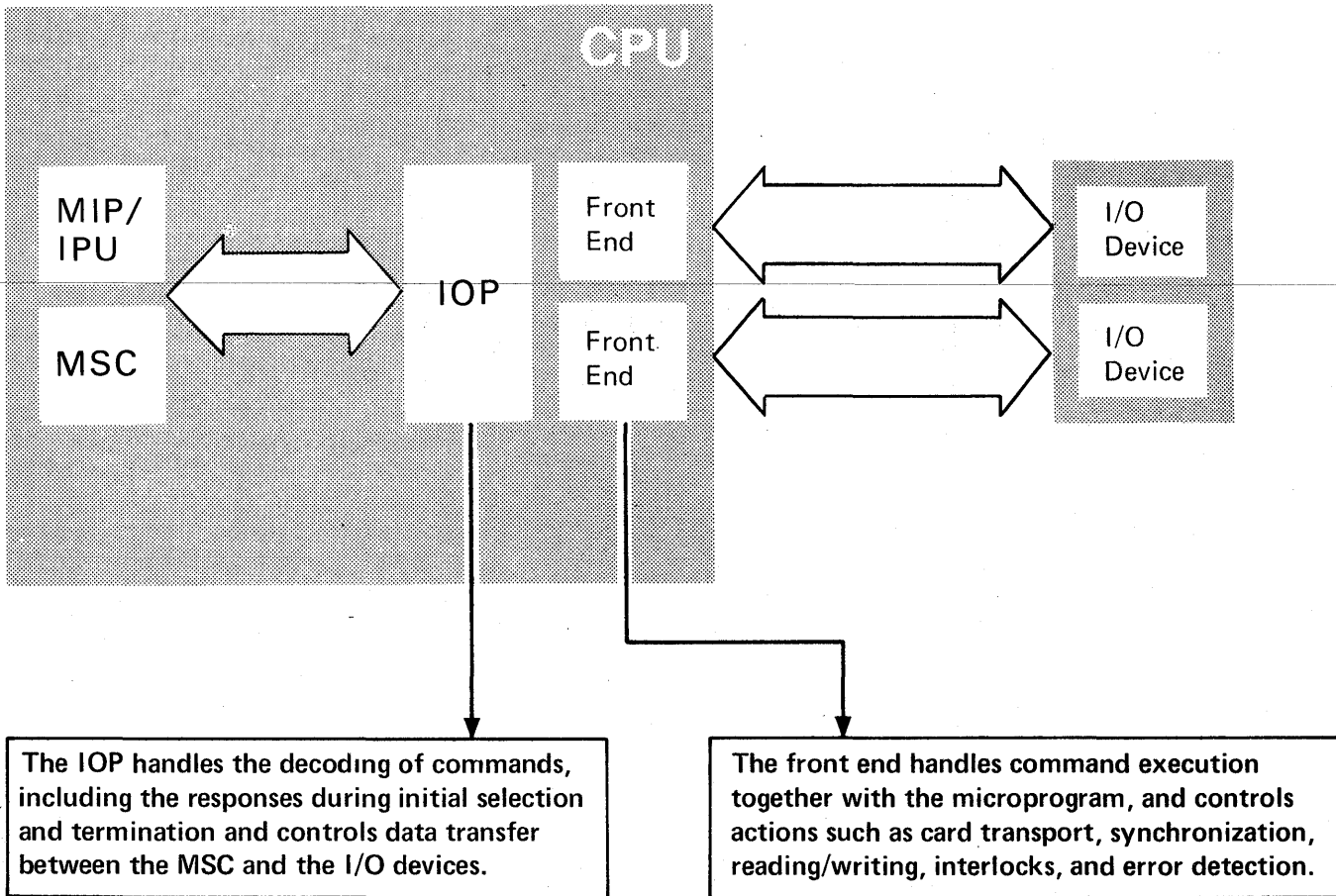
Integrated Adapters and Attachments

An integrated adapter or attachment consists of an IOP and specialized front end circuits. Integrated attachments may share an IOP, or wholly occupy an IOP, depending on the complexity of their tasks. For example, the integrated attachments for the line printer and the card I/O devices all share one IOP.

Integrated adapters, integrated attachments, and a direct disk attachment are available for the following input/output devices:

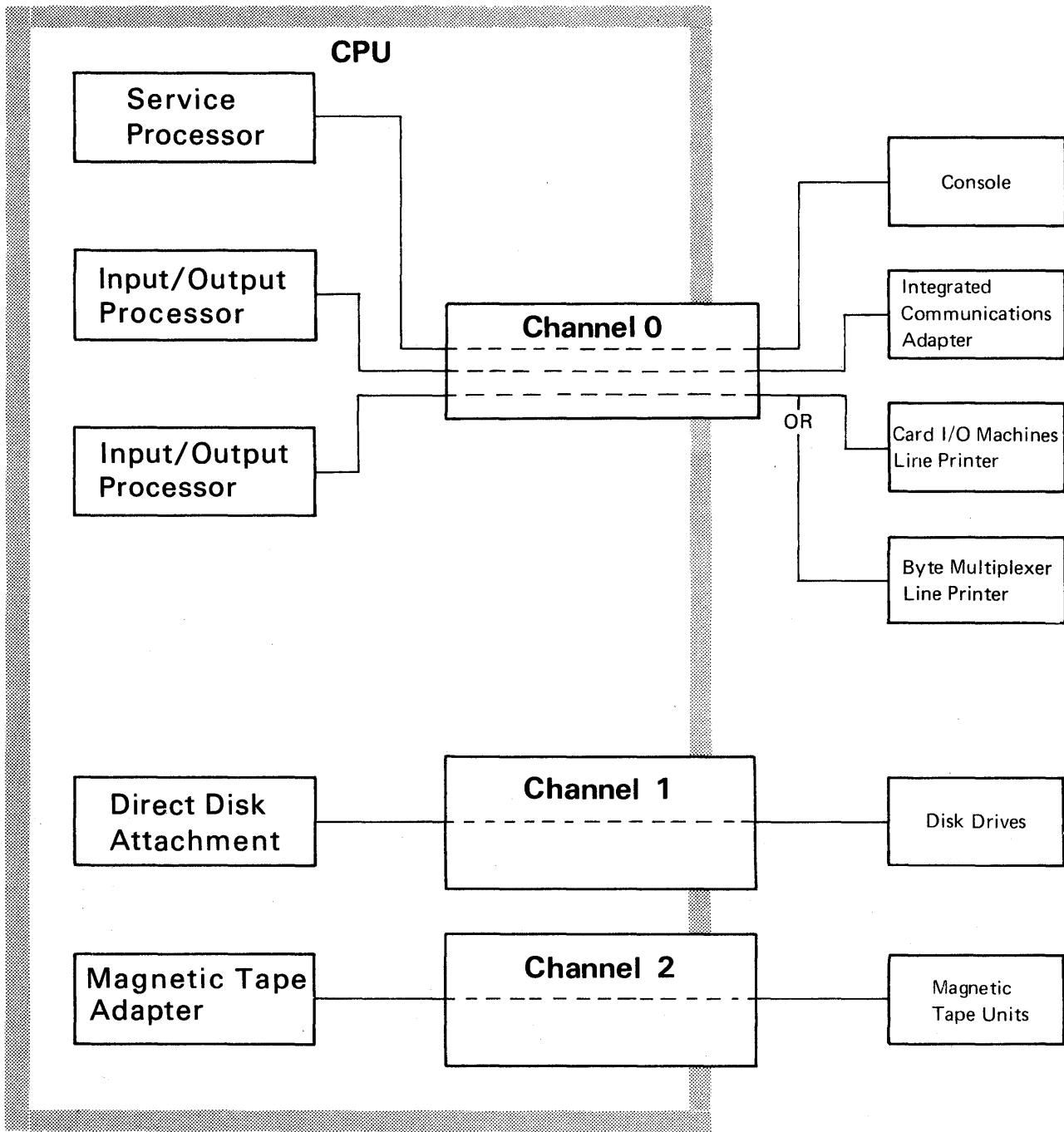
- 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine
- 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit
- 5203 Printer
- 3203 Printer
- 3410 Magnetic Tape Unit and 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control
- 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility

In addition, an integrated communications adapter is available.



Integrated Adapters and Attachments

Figure 61. Integrated Adapters and Attachments [10832B]



Channel Organization

Figure 62. Channel Organization [10833A]

Channel 0

Channel 0 is a pseudo-channel (Figure 63). Its overall behavior is that of a multiplexer channel. The Model 115 subprocessors operating in channel 0 do not behave like subchannels (as might be expected), but like true channels (see Figure 63).

Subprocessor	Functional Behavior
SVP serving operator console and console printer	Selector channel with single device attached
IOP serving integrated communications adapter	Multiplexer channel with a number of subchannels
IOP serving card I/O machines and line printer	Multiplexer channel with three control units, each having one device attached
IOP serving multiplexer channel	Multiplexer channel with a number of subchannels

Figure 63. Channel 0 Definition [10834A]

The I/O devices on channel 0 have unique and fixed addresses (Figure 64). Interruptions are always considered to be pending in the device, not in the control unit or subchannel.

Channel 1

Channel 1 is the direct disk attachment for magnetic disk drives. A standard interface is not available but the behavior is that of a selector channel with a shared control unit attached or, if block multiplexing control is on, channel 1 operates as a block multiplexer channel.

Channel 2

Channel 2 is the magnetic tape adapter for magnetic tape units. It behaves like a selector channel with a shared control unit attached.

Channels 3, 4, and 5

Channels 3, 4, and 5 are not assigned on the Model 115.

Device Selection

Device selection is performed in two major steps. The first step is the selection of the IOP responsible for the addressed device; the second step is selection of the actual I/O device.

Input/output instructions are detected by the machine instruction processor/instruction processing unit in the program instruction stream. The MIP/IPU computes and checks the channel and device addresses, and places the complete address in the I/O communication register, which is located in the main storage controller's local storage. Subsequently, the MIP/IPU activates the select line to the appropriate IOP.

The MIP/IPU has a separate select line to each of the IOPs

in the system. A check ensures that multiple selection cannot take place undetected. At the time the select line is activated, a 1.5 second timeout is started. The selected IOP then fetches the contents of the I/O common register, inspects them, and activates the common response line to the MIP/IPU.

Upon detection of the response, the MIP/IPU resets the timeout, checks the channel address word for validity and places the channel command word address (designated by the CAW) and an abbreviated operation code (for 'start I/O', 'halt I/O', 'halt device' or 'test I/O' instructions) into the I/O communication register. The MIP/IPU then deactivates the select line.

The termination of the select signal causes the IOP to fetch the CCW, solicit the device response, and subsequently to store a condition code into the I/O communication register. The IOP announces the availability of the condition (and status where appropriate) to the MIP/IPU by deactivating the response line. At this moment the MIP/IPU is released for further processing, and the IOP handles data transfer on its own.

In the event of a timeout (no response) or wrong selection (wrong IOP number in the I/O communication register) the MIP/IPU recognizes a channel control check and updates the channel status word (CSW) accordingly. Unusual conditions such as IOP busy or IOP not operational are indicated to the MIP/IPU via direct control lines which are assigned these meanings. The appropriate status updating is then also handled by the MIP/IPU.

Over similar control lines, the MIP/IPU indicates to the selected IOP the current control mode (EC or BC), and also signals the status of the system meter. The IOP thus has all the information required for processing.

Interruption requests are generated by the IOP and sent via the interruption request line to the MIP/IPU. Each IOP has its own separate interruption request line that identifies the requesting IOP. The MIP/IPU handles the interruption task by analyzing the contents of the masks and by exchanging the program status words if appropriate.

Multiplexer Channel

A byte multiplexer channel (channel address 0) with a maximum of 32 subchannels is available as an optional feature, if the Model 115 is not equipped with the integrated card I/O attachment. The byte multiplexer channel has a standard I/O interface with bus and tag line connector for attaching external control units of the shared or nonshared type. High-speed data transfer with data-in and data-out tag lines is not provided on the multiplexer channel. The control units can operate in multiplex mode or burst mode.

In function, the byte multiplexer channel conforms to the definitions given in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000. The byte multiplexer channel is intended for the attachment of a relatively large number of

I/O Device Addresses

I/O device addresses are derived from the contents of the base register referenced by an I/O instruction, and the displacement contained in the instruction. The I/O address is calculated by the MIP/IPU which then selects the appropriate IOP or other subprocessor. The address ranges of attachable I/O devices operating in channel 0 are shown below.

Device Address (hexadecimal)	Devices
00 to 0E	Card I/O machines and line printer
1E or 1F	Video display with matrix printer
20 to 2F	ICA start/stop lines
30 to 34, 36, 38	ICA binary synchronous lines

Note: The above devices operate in channel 0. In all other channels, the device addresses depend on the control units or devices only: the MIP/IPU recognizes only the channel address. The device addresses range from 00 to FF (hex), and are decoded by the control units or their equivalents.

Addressing I/O Devices Operating in Channel 0

Figure 64. Addressing I/O Devices Operating in Channel 0 [19571A]

low-speed I/O devices. When the channel is working in byte multiplexer mode (its normal mode of operation), several I/O devices can execute commands simultaneously by interleaved byte transfers over the I/O interface. However, a control unit capable of forcing burst mode may do so.

The multiplexer channel performs the following functions:

- Interprets I/O instructions,
- Translates I/O instructions into commands and controls at the interface,
- Transfers data between I/O devices and main storage,
- Requests interruptions.

The functions of the byte multiplexer channel are provided by an IOP, supplemented by front end circuitry. In byte multiplexer mode, the maximum channel data rate is 19,000 bytes per second for 3115-0 models, and 25,000 bytes per second for 3115-2 models. In burst mode, the maximum channel data rate is 29,000 bytes per second. When data chaining and channel indirect data addressing are specified in the CCW, the data rates decrease to 13,000 bytes per second for byte multiplexer mode and 19,000 bytes per second for burst mode.

Characteristics

The byte multiplexer channel provides all the functions necessary to process channel programs written according to the definitions in *System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000. The channel can operate in BC mode (when PSW bit 12 is off) or EC mode (when PSW bit 12 is set).

Note: Apart from a few exceptions (which are noted under "Input/Output Control") all I/O instructions can be executed.

Of the extended interface capabilities provided by the extensions to the System/360, the multiplexer channel implements only the I/O Error Alert function. It does not implement High-Speed Transfer, Interface Bus Extension, or Command Retry. These restrictions, however, do not affect the capability of attaching and operating all I/O devices which have data rates compatible with the channel.

Subchannels

Up to 32 subchannels can be provided for the byte multiplexer channel. A subchannel, also called a unit control word (UCW), holds the information necessary for controlling the current operation in the I/O device.

A subchannel may be shared or nonshared. A shared subchannel is used for a control unit that can have several devices attached, only one of which requires the subchannel at any one time. A nonshared subchannel is used for a control unit to which only one device is attached. Of the 32 subchannels available on the Model 115 the first eight can alternatively operate as shared subchannels. Each control unit associated with a shared subchannel may have up to 16 I/O devices attached.

When a subchannel is addressed by an I/O instruction, bit 0 of the address byte (Figure 65) shows whether the subchannel is nonshared (bit 0 = 0) or shared (bit 0 = 1). Bit 0 is not, however, part of the actual address and is ignored for addressing purposes. A nonshared subchannel is addressed by the seven low-order bits of the address byte. Device addresses 40 to 7F (hex) are available, subject to the restrictions noted in Figure 65.

A shared subchannel is addressed in terms of the associated control unit. Device addresses 80 to FF (hex) are available, subject to the restrictions noted in Figure 65. Bit 0 is ignored for addressing purposes, and bits 1, 2, and 3 address the subchannel. Bits 4 through 7 are used to address an I/O device or the shared subchannel. Thus, device addresses 90 through 9F, for example, all address shared subchannel 1. Because shared subchannels 0 through 7 use the same unit control words as nonshared subchannels 0 through 7, shared subchannel addresses must be chosen which do not conflict with nonshared subchannel addresses.

Interruption

Channel end status can be signaled by up to 32 control units and stored in the corresponding subchannels. Over a single interruption line, the MIP/IPU is informed that the multiplexer channel has interruptions waiting. When the MIP/IPU signals its readiness to process an interruption for the multiplexer channel, the microprogram selects one of the waiting interruptions and signals the address of the interrupting device to the MIP/IPU. The channel stores the CSW and releases the MIP/IPU.

Error Detection

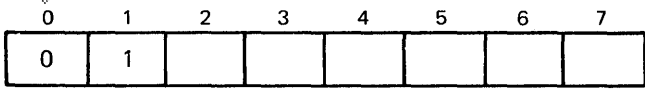
The following types of errors are detected and logged by the multiplexer channel:

1. All *programming errors*.
2. *Protection check*, which occurs when a protected address is encountered during data transfer or chaining.
3. *Channel data check*, which occurs when bad parity is detected during transfer of data to or from main storage.
4. *Channel control check*, which occurs when bad parity is detected during transfer of control information to or from main storage, or from the IOP to the channel front-end registers.
5. *Interface control check*, which can occur when bad parity is detected in an address or status byte being transferred to main storage, or when more than one tag line is activated. Interface control check also occurs when an incorrect address is received by the channel in response to 'address out', or when an address is received from an I/O unit for which no UCW is assigned.

After an interface control check has occurred, an interface disconnect sequence (and/or selective reset, depending on the error) is issued by the channel microprogram in order to disconnect the interface.

Nonshared Subchannel
Bit 0 = 0

Device Addresses: 40 to 7F (hex)



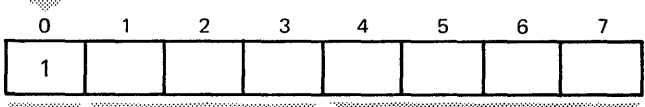
Ignored for address purposes

Subchannel Number

Note: Certain restrictions apply to address assignment. In any one row of the following table, only *one* of the three address assignments can be chosen for devices which are to operate simultaneously. Taking the first row, for instance, if address 40 (hex) is assigned, addresses 60 (hex) and 80 through 8F (hex) should not be assigned.

Shared Subchannel
Bit 0 = 1

Device Addresses: 80 to FF (hex)



Ignored for address purposes

Subchannel Number

Device Number

Nonshared Subchannels (hexadecimal)	Shared Subchannels (hexadecimal)	Shared Subchannels (hexadecimal)
40	60	80 to 8F
41	61	90 to 9F
42	62	A0 to AF
43	63	B0 to BF
44	64	C0 to CF
45	65	D0 to DF
46	66	E0 to EF
47	67	F0 to FF
48	68	
49	69	
4A	6A	
4B	6B	
4C	6C	
4D	6D	
4E	6E	
4F	6F	
50	70	
51	71	
52	72	
53	73	
54	74	
55	75	
56	76	
57	77	
58	78	
59	79	
5A	7A	
5B	7B	
5C	7C	
5D	7D	
5E	7E	
5F	7F	

Address Bytes for Byte-Multiplexer Subchannel

Figure 65. Address Bytes for Byte-Multiplexer Subchannel [10836]

Special Errors

Special errors are caused by the accidental or deliberate programming of endless loops, which cause the channel to be occupied to the point where it cannot respond to selection from the MIP/IPU. Whenever the channel does not respond to selection within 1.5 seconds, the MIP/IPU times out and indicates "channel busy" (condition code 2) to the program. A timeout can be caused by *all loops* that create a data transfer rate *higher than* the channel's capacity. Loops are command-chained CCWs that return to the first CCW via a 'transfer-in-channel' command (with no possibility of breaking the chain). Typical loops that would create such a situation are described in the following text.

Sense - TIC (Back to Sense): Because sense data is commonly obtained from an electronic buffer within the I/O device, the transfer of sense data is actually a high-speed burst operation that may well exceed the channel's capacity. When such a burst operation is programmed as an endless loop (via a TIC), the channel gets tied up and this leads to a channel busy indication when the channel is next selected.

Read or Write - TIC: Reading just one byte (or several bytes out of an electronic buffer) with a TIC back to the read command creates an endless high-speed burst operation which ties up the channel. The same applies to a write of just one byte (or several bytes into an electronic buffer) with a TIC back to the write command. For example, filling a print buffer continuously (via a TIC)

without ever issuing a print command would tie up the channel.

No-op - TIC (Back to No-op): No-ops are commands that cause only a status transfer, and thus have all the characteristics of a high-speed burst. When programmed as a loop via a TIC, they would cause a tie-up as previously described. The same is true for any loops or chains that consist only of immediate commands. Such loops violate programming conventions and are not allowed on the multiplexer channel. Recovery from the permanently busy state is only possible via system reset.

An attempt to end the permanently busy state by using a 'halt I/O' instruction causes a channel control check. This indicates that the channel is tied up beyond control.

Burst Operations: Burst operations which exceed the channel's capacity can be tolerated when they are not programmed as loops and the device is the lowest priority device on the channel. Loops can also be tolerated provided they are not shorter than 100 μ s, and the looping device is the lowest priority device. A loop shorter than 100 μ s means that the elapsed time from initial selection to the TIC-back is less than 100 μ s, regardless of the number of bytes transferred. If such a loop takes longer than 100 μ s and the device is the lowest priority device, the channel can accept selection before execution of the TIC and therefore need not become permanently busy. Consequently, normal TIC usage (such as for polling or selection in teleprocessing) cannot tie up the channel.

Input/Output Control

INPUT/OUTPUT INSTRUCTIONS

The integrated adapters, integrated attachments, direct disk attachment, and multiplexer channel are controlled by the following I/O instructions:

Start I/O
Test I/O
Halt I/O
Halt device
Test channel
Store channel ID,

to which the following rules apply:

1. During execution of an I/O instruction, if an error status (such as a channel data check, a channel control check, or an interface control check) is stored, a limited channel logout is available at storage location 176.
2. For all I/O interruptions that occur in EC mode, the full three-byte address is available at storage location 184.
3. The instructions have the same function in EC and BC mode.
4. When an I/O instruction addresses the block multiplexer channel and condition code 2 is set in advance, notification will subsequently be given, by means of the "channel available" interruption, that the instruction can be repeated.

The following I/O instructions are *not* implemented on the Model 115:

Clear I/O
Start I/O fast release. (If a 'start I/O fast release' instruction is given it is executed as an ordinary 'start I/O'.)

Start I/O

The 'start I/O' instruction is used to initiate operations in I/O devices.

Effect

The B1/D1 field specifies a channel, subchannel, control unit, and I/O device. A CCW (Figure 66) specifying the operation to be performed is sent to the device from the main storage location designated by the channel address word (CAW) residing at location 72.

The command is executed if:

1. The addressed device and subchannel are available.
2. The channel is available or has a pending interruption.
3. No errors or exceptional conditions have been detected.

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

Value	Meaning
0	I/O operation initiated and channel proceeds with execution
1	CSW stored or updated
2	Channel or subchannel busy (see Note)
3	Not operational

Note: In the Model 115, channel busy is set not only by the conditions described for channel busy in the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, but also when the direct disk attachment is addressed while a log operation or inline test is in progress.

Halt I/O

The 'halt I/O' instruction is used either to terminate a burst-mode operation which is occupying an interface or to terminate data transfer to or from a specific I/O device.

Effect

The 'halt I/O' instruction causes no action if the addressed subchannel has a pending interruption while the channel is either available or is in the pending interruption state.

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

Value	Meaning
0	Interruption pending in subchannel (Halt I/O unsuccessful)
1	CSW stored
2	Burst operation terminated (interface cleared)
3	Not operational

Note: Bit 15 must be zero, otherwise the Model 115 interprets the 'halt I/O' as a 'halt device' instruction.

Halt Device

The 'halt device' instruction stops data transfer to or from an I/O device without disturbing burst-mode operations on another device.

Effect

The 'halt device' instruction stops data transfer if the addressed I/O device is operating in burst mode. 'Halt device' has no effect if it addresses a device which is not working. The effect, if any, is reflected in the condition code in conjunction with the CSW.

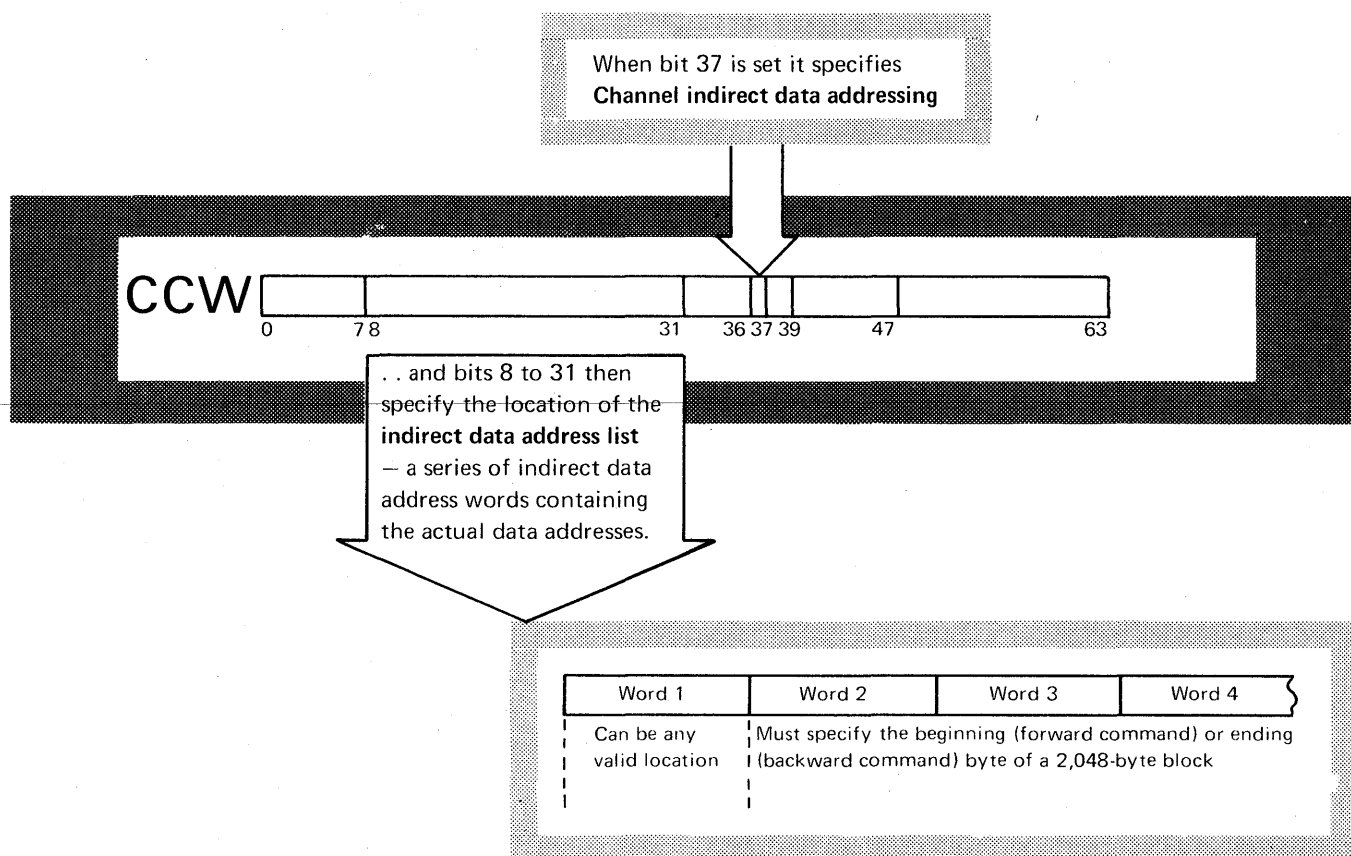
Channel Command Words

The CCWs specify operations to be performed on I/O devices connected to the multiplexer channel or to an integrated adapter or attachment. All I/O devices use the applicable commands from the following:

- Write
- Read
- Read backward
- Control
- Sense
- Transfer in channel.

This also applies to devices previously not available for channel attachment such as the 5425 Multi-

function Card Unit. Each command functions in the same way in BC or EC mode. All flag bits are available for I/O devices connected to the multiplexer channel or to an integrated adapter or attachment, unless otherwise stated in the command descriptions (for further information, see the descriptions of I/O devices later in this chapter). For some operations the use of certain flag bits is not recommended. In teleprocessing, for example, chaining from a 'write' to a 'read' command is necessary for obtaining an acknowledgement. In this situation, skipping or program-controlled interruptions should be avoided.



Note: When the channel has filled or read out a block, the next address word is fetched. Since the channels pre-fetch address words, CCWs must not modify the indirect data address list. If indirect data addressing and DAT are used together, PCI should not be used

Additional Information on CCWs

Figure 66. Additional Information on CCWs [10837]

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

Value	Meaning
0	Subchannel is busy with another device, or an interruption is pending. (The 'halt device' instruction was unsuccessful. The instruction can be repeated successfully after interruption clearance.)
1	CSW stored. (If the unit status field is zero, the device has stopped: if this field contains busy and the status modifier [control unit busy], the device has not yet stopped. 'Halt device' need not be repeated because the channel remembers the condition and stops the device as soon as the control unit signals control unit end [busy condition ended].)
2	Channel working. (The device has not yet stopped. 'Halt device' need not be repeated, because the channel remembers the condition and stops the device as soon as its own busy condition ends.)
3	Not operational. (Manual intervention is required, otherwise 'halt device' cannot succeed. The instruction must be repeated when the operational state has been restored.)

Note: When the device has stopped, the channel is in the interruption pending state.

Test I/O

The 'test I/O' instruction tests the state of the addressed channel, subchannel, and I/O device.

Effect

The B1/D1 field identifies the channel, subchannel, and I/O device to be tested. The test result is reflected in the condition code, or in the condition code and CSW together. The 'test I/O' instruction can be used to clear pending interruptions.

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

Value	Meaning
0	Available
1	CSW stored
2	Channel or subchannel busy
3	Not operational

Test Channel

The 'test channel' instruction can test the state of the multiplexer channel, integrated adapters, integrated attachments, or the direct disk attachment.

Effect

The B1/D1 field identifies the channel to be tested. The result is reflected in the condition code.

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

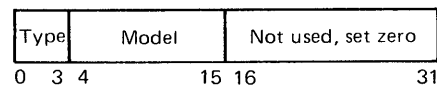
Value	Meaning
0	Channel available
1	Interruption pending in channel
2	Channel operating in burst mode
3	Channel not operational

Store Channel ID

The 'store channel ID' instruction checks the identity (type and model number) of the addressed channel, adapter, or attachment.

Effect

The B1/D1 field specifies the channel that is to identify itself. The identification is stored at main storage location 168 in the following format:



Type (Bits 0 to 3): Bits 0 to 3 identify the present channel characteristics and functional behavior as follows:

Value	Meaning
0000	Selector type
0001	Byte multiplexer
0010	Block multiplexer (see Note)

Note: Only channel 1 has block multiplexing capability. However, channel 1 is identified as block multiplexer only when the block multiplex control bit (bit 0 in control register 0) is on at the time the 'store channel ID' instruction is issued.

Model (Bits 4 to 15): The model number identifies the channel address. (See Figure 26.)

Extended I/O Logout (Bits 16 to 31): Bits 16 to 31 specify the maximum length of an I/O extended logout. For the Model 115, this length is zero because I/O extended logouts are not performed. The error log for channel hardware is recorded on the console file. Error information concerning externally-connected control units and their I/O devices must be obtained via 'sense' commands.

Condition Code

The four values of the condition code have the following meanings assigned:

Value	Meaning
0	Channel ID stored correctly
1	CSW stored
2	Channel activity prevented storage of ID
3	Not operational

INPUT/OUTPUT COMMANDS

A channel, adapter, or attachment can execute six types of commands: write, read, read backward, control, sense, and transfer in channel (TIC). Each command except the TIC starts an I/O operation, as described in the following sections of this chapter and in the chapter on "Teleprocessing Facilities". The TIC command (which has a command code of 1000) allows the chaining of commands which are not located in adjacent doubleword locations in ascending order of address.

The first CCW designated by the CAW may not specify transfer in channel. When this restriction is violated, no I/O operation is initiated, and the program-check condition is generated. The error causes the status portion of the CSW with the program-check indication to be stored during the execution of 'Start I/O'.

To address a CCW on integral boundaries for doublewords, a TIC command must contain zeros in bit positions

29 to 31. Furthermore, a TIC command may not be fetched from a location designated by an immediately preceding TIC command. When either of these errors is detected or when an invalid address is specified in a TIC command, the program-check condition is generated. When the TIC command designates a CCW in a location protected for fetching, the protection-check condition is generated. Detection of these errors during data chaining causes the operation at the I/O device to be terminated, whereas during command chaining they cause an interruption condition to be generated.

The contents of the second half of the CCW, bit positions 32 to 63, are ignored. Similarly, the contents of bit positions 0 to 3 of the CCW are ignored.

Programming Note: Data addresses in CCWs issued to the direct disk attachment are always checked for validity (that is, that the address is less than 256K) even if the address is not used, as is the case in immediate commands.

IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine, Models A1 and A2

This section describes the commands, status reports, sense information, and error recovery procedures for the 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine (MFCM) Models A1 and A2, when under control of the integrated card I/O attachment.

Two models of the 2560 can be attached to the Model 115. The main differences between them are that the Model A1 has five stackers, and can be equipped with the optional Card Print feature; the 2560 Model A2 has four stackers and cannot be equipped with the card print feature.

2560 COMMANDS

Figure 67 shows the commands available for the 2560. Typical situations in the card path during 2560 operations are shown in Figure 68.

Hex	Command Code								Command
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read and feed primary
22	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	Read column binary and feed primary
82	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read and feed secondary
A2	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	Read column binary and feed secondary
05	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Punch primary
25	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	Punch column binary primary
85	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Punch secondary
A5	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	Punch column binary secondary
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Punch and feed primary
21	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Punch column binary and feed primary
81	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Punch and feed secondary
A1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Punch column binary and feed secondary
45	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write card
-7	0	H	H	H	0	1	1	1	Load print head buffer
-3	0	M	M	M	0	0	1	1	Primary staker select
-3	1	M	M	M	0	0	1	1	Secondary staker select
-B	X	M	M	M	1	0	1	1	Punch staker select
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op

Notes:

1. The 'H' positions represent the binary coded print head buffer number.
2. The 'M' positions represent the binary coded staker number.
3. The 'X' position in the 'punch staker select' command may be 0 or 1; the position is ignored.

Figure 67. 2560 Commands [10838]

Read Commands

Read commands are successful only if the 2560 is in the ready state, which means that a card run-in cycle took place before the read command was issued. The run-in cycle is

accomplished manually (via the 2560 START key) and ensures that the primary preread or the secondary preread stations, or both, contain cards. The run-in at the primary card path requires two cycles, one from hopper to input station, the other from input station to preread station. The run-in at the secondary path requires only one cycle, from hopper to preread station. These cycles occur simultaneously and automatically if both primary and secondary hoppers are full when the START key is pressed once.

Read and Feed Primary

The 'read and feed primary' command causes the card in the primary preread station to be moved through the read station, where the holes in the card are read column by column into an intermediate buffer. The data in this buffer is then translated to unpacked EBCDIC code and transferred to main storage while, simultaneously, a feed cycle is performed. The feed cycle moves the card in the primary input station to the primary preread station, and the bottom card (if any) in the primary hopper to the primary input station. Figure 69 shows the timing of a read and feed operation.

The read operation begins at card column 1 and continues until the count in bits 48 to 63 of the CCW is reduced to zero or until the last card column (column 80) is read, whichever occurs first. The information in card column 1 enters the main storage location specified by bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and subsequent columns are transferred to main storage in ascending order of address. Card columns which have either no holes or an invalid hole pattern are stored as EBCDIC blank characters.

Note: A hole pattern is treated as invalid when more than one hole is found in rows 1 to 7 in the same card column, except for cards punched in column binary code.

Channel end (bit 36 in the CSW) is set when the last column (in the case of command chaining, the last column of the last card) has been transferred from the intermediate buffer to main storage. The last card column is either that column which reduces the count to zero or column 80 of the card. Channel end causes an interruption condition. Device end (bit 37 in the CSW) is set when the mechanical parts of the read and feed primary operation are completed. Channel end and device end are normally set separately for a read and feed command. However, if interruptions are disabled, channel end and device end remain pending and are presented together when the interruption is cleared.

Note: Device end is always set 10 ms (-10%) prior to the clutch decision point so that the operating system has sufficient time for testing on error conditions and can thus give a new command while the clutch is still active. The setting of device end is an interruption condition.

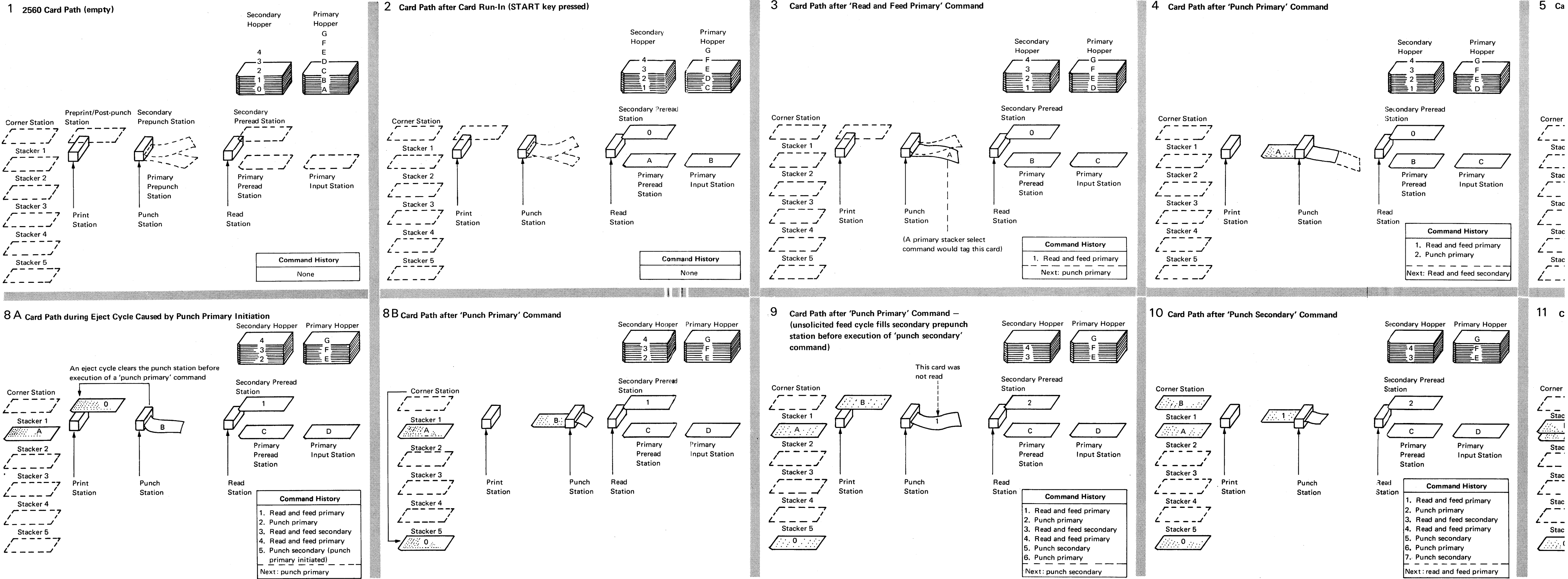
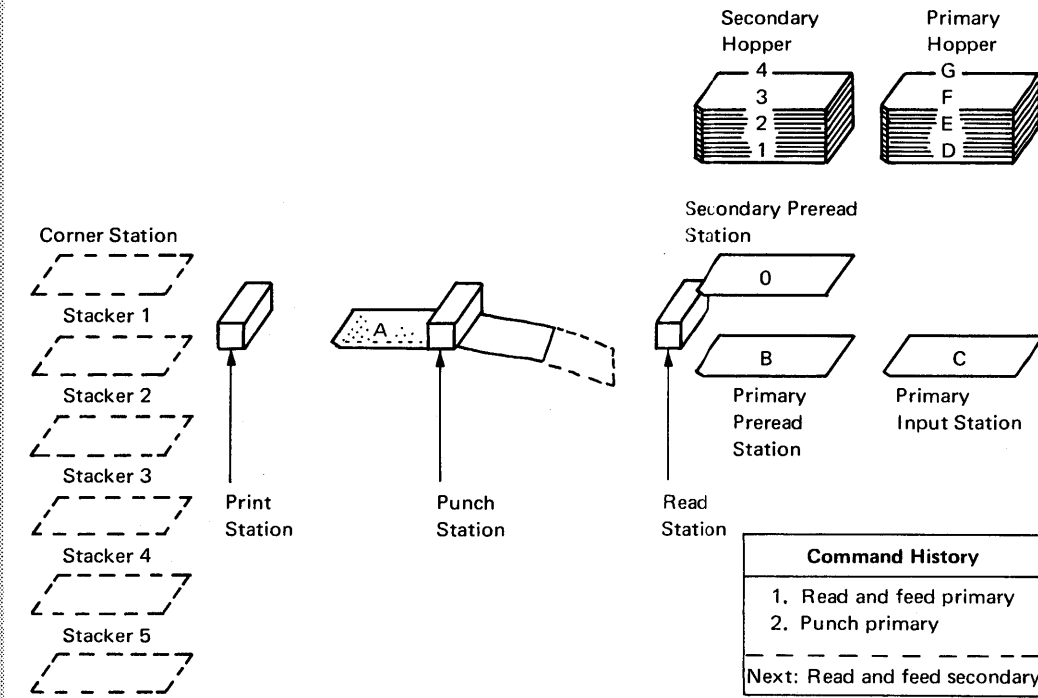
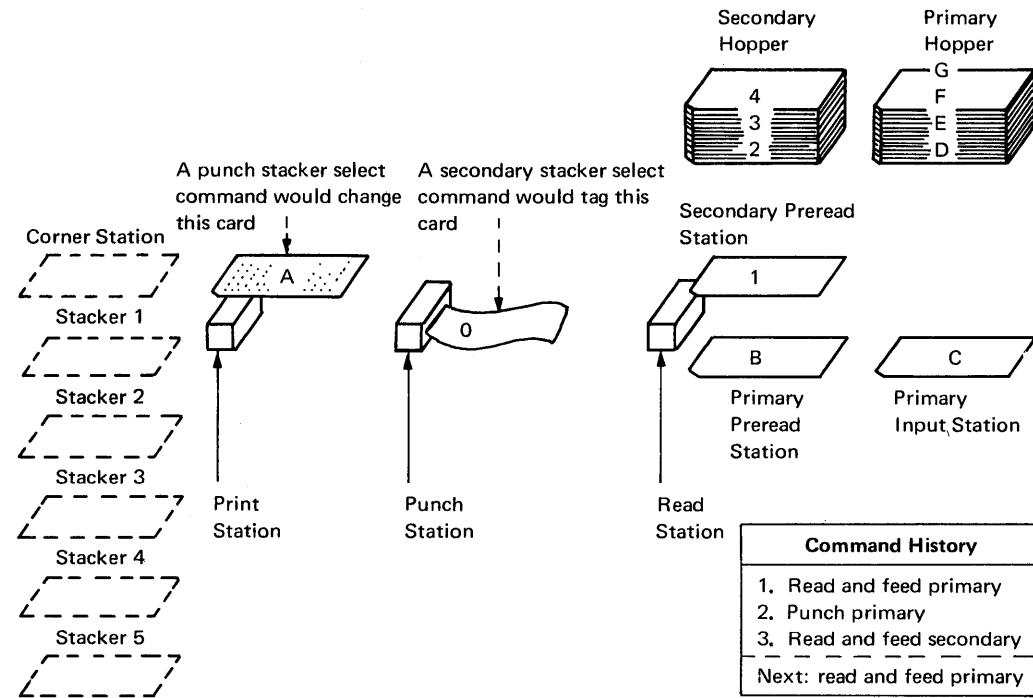


Figure 68. Typical Situations in 2560 Card Path [19572]

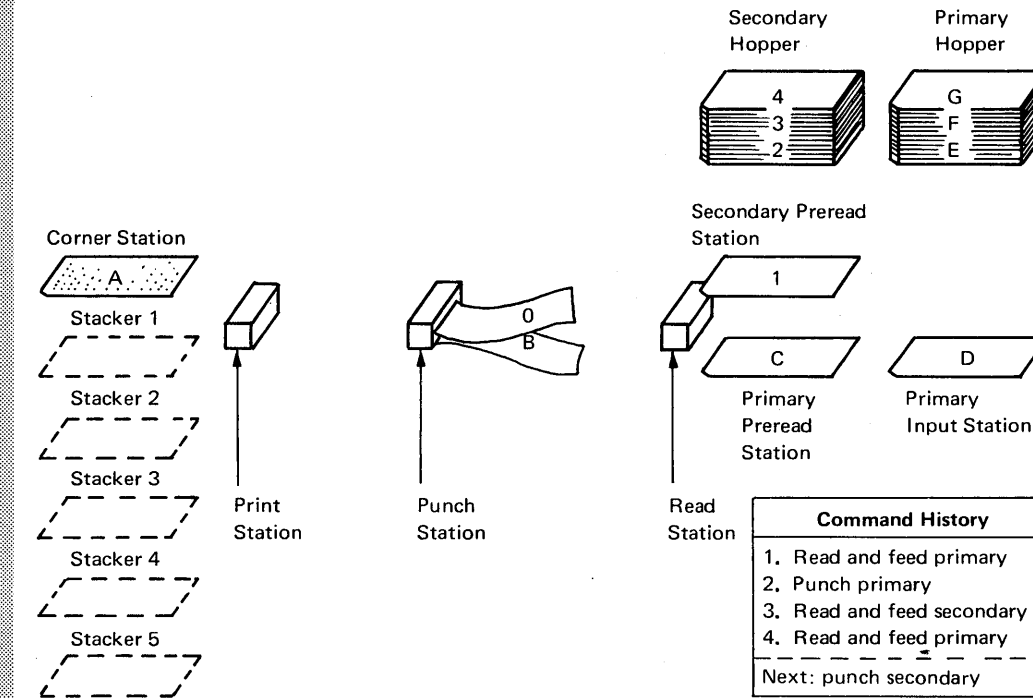
4 Card Path after 'Punch Primary' Command



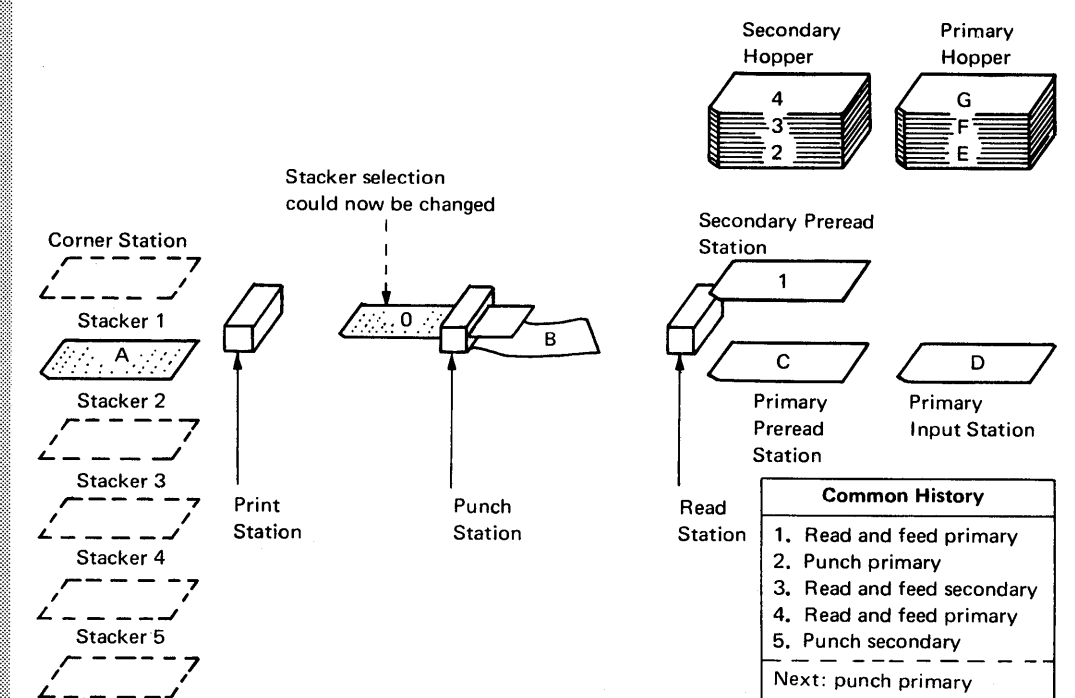
5 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Secondary' Command



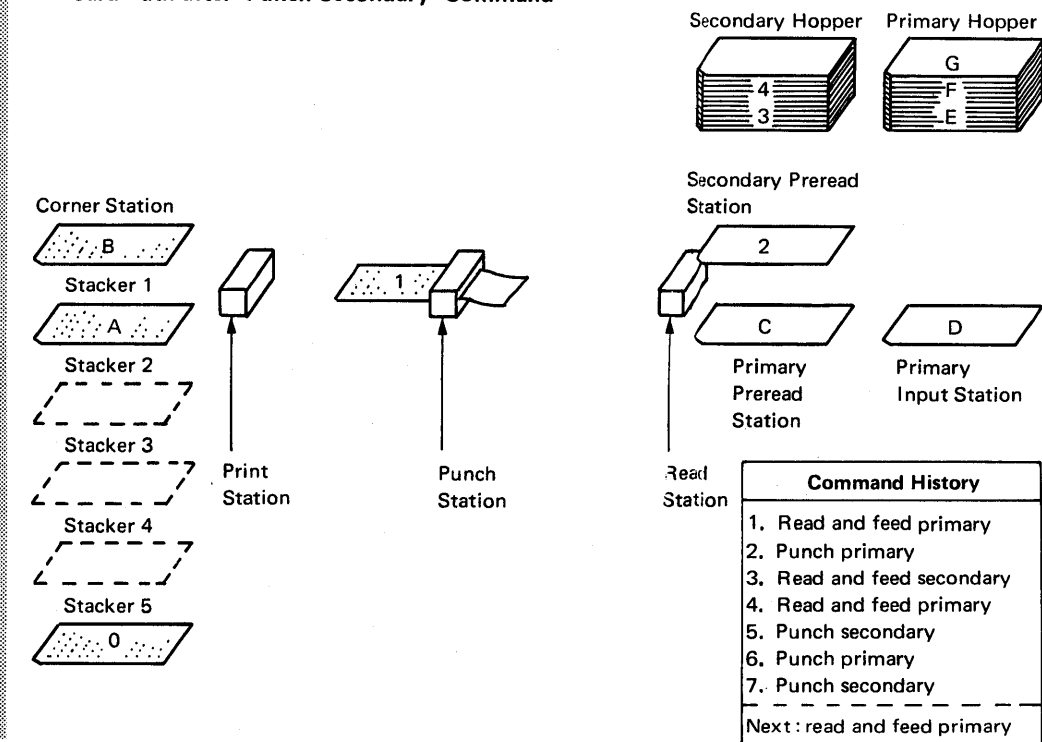
6 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Primary' Command



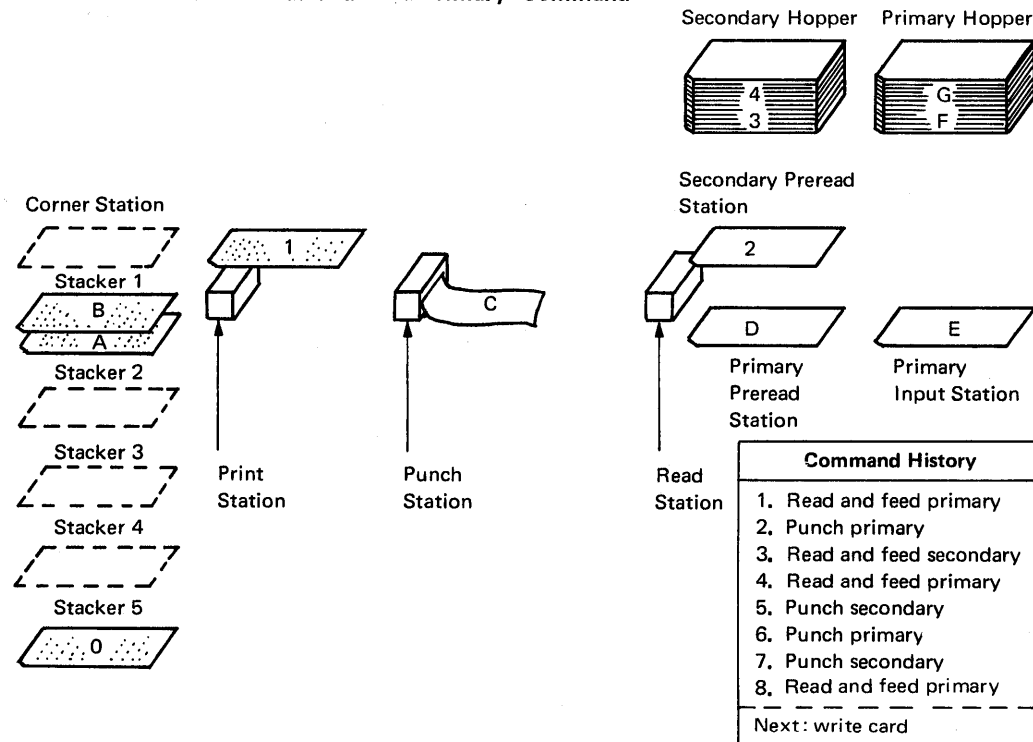
7 Card Path after 'Punch Secondary' Command



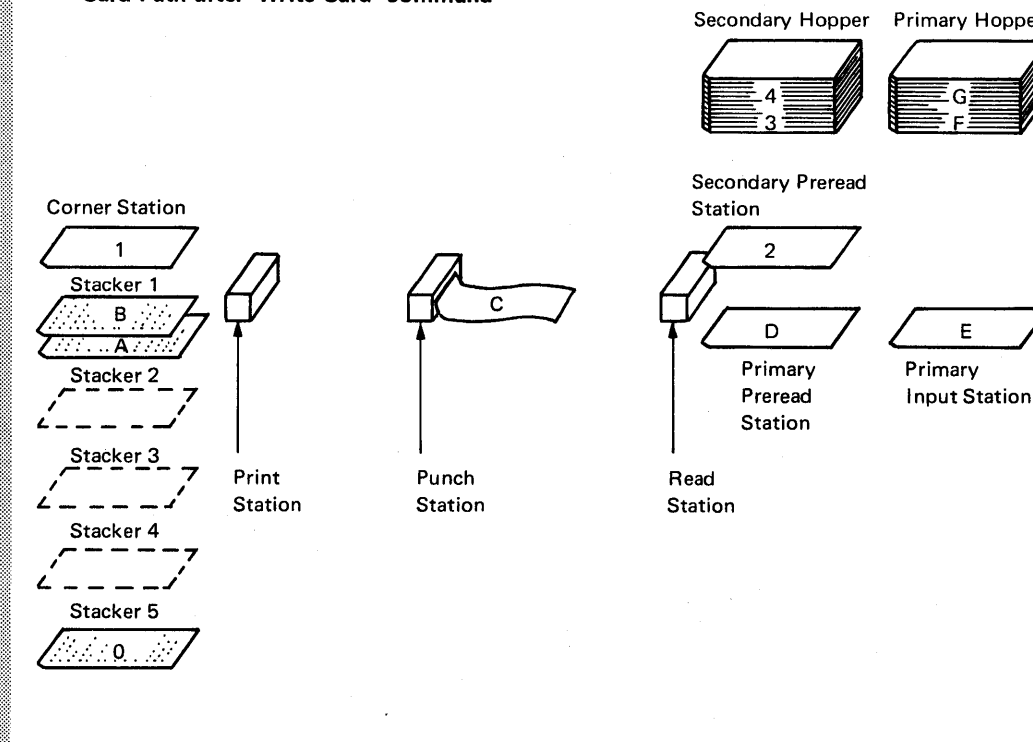
10 Card Path after 'Punch Secondary' Command

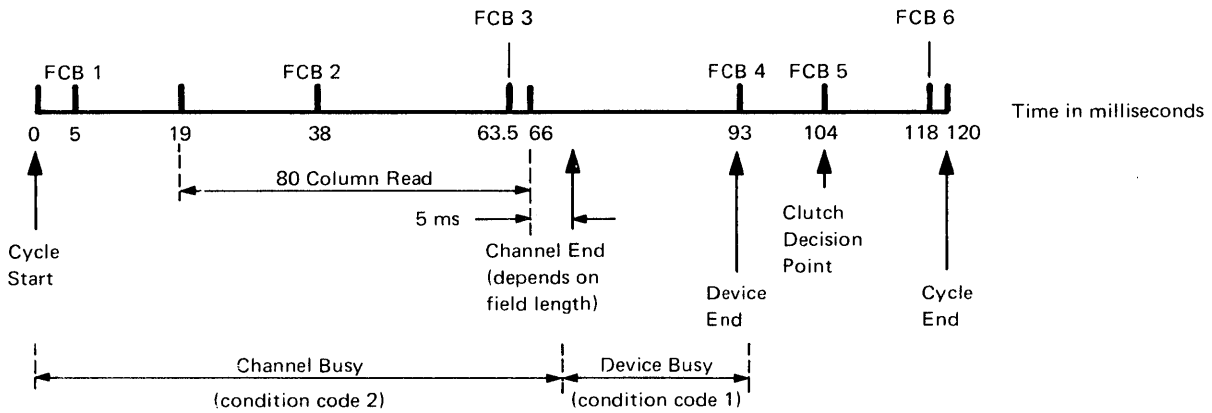


11 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Primary' Command



12 Card Path after 'Write Card' Command





Note: FCB = feed contact breaker.

Figure 69. Read and Feed Timing [19573]

Read Column Binary and Feed Primary

The 'read column binary and feed primary' command is similar to the 'read and feed primary' command except that the contents of the card columns are interpreted as shown in the following table.

Card Row	Column Binary Code	Placed into Bits
12	B	2
11	A	3
0	8	4
1	4	5
2	2	6
3	1	7
4	B	2
5	A	3
6	8	4
7	4	5
8	2	6
9	1	7

Bits 2-7 are grouped as the **First byte**. Bits 2-7 are also grouped as the **Second byte**.

The information in each card column is placed into two adjacent bytes; bits 0 and 1 of each byte are automatically filled with zeros. Consequently, the count in the CCW may be twice as high as for a normal read operation, that is, any count from 1 to 160 may be specified for a 'read column binary and feed primary' command. If an odd count is specified, reading stops when the upper six rows of the card column have been read. Intermixed reading of column binary and EBCDIC columns is not possible.

Read and Feed Secondary

The 'read and feed secondary' command causes the card in the secondary preread station to be moved through the read station, where the holes in the card are read column by column. The next card is then moved from the secondary hopper into the secondary preread station.

The read operation begins at card column 1, the contents of which are transferred to the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Reading continues with subsequent card columns which are transferred in

ascending order of address until either the count in bits 48 to 63 of the CCW is reduced to zero or column 80 of the card has been transferred, whichever occurs first.

Channel end is set when the last card column has been transferred and is an interruption condition. Device end is set when the mechanical parts of the read and feed secondary operation are completed. Device end is set after channel end for a read and feed operation.

Note: Device end is always set approximately 10 ms prior to the clutch decision point. The setting of device end is an interruption condition.

Read Column Binary and Feed Secondary

The 'read column binary and feed secondary' command is similar to the 'read and feed secondary' command except that the contents of the card columns are interpreted as specified for the 'read column binary and feed primary' command.

Processing Special Cards

Special cards can cause read checks because of their perforations or other special characteristics. Read checks that occur in card columns not covered by the length count are always suppressed.

Specific columns or fields can be eliminated by reading a card with more than one command, and such commands can use data chaining, one command having the skip flag bit set. The skip flag suppresses data transfer and the next command causes reading to continue.

Punch Commands

Punch Primary

The 'punch primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the 2560 punch buffer. Data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and continues in ascending order

of address until either the count in bits 48 to 63 of the CCW is reduced to zero or the buffer is full (with a total of 80 characters), whichever occurs first. If the data transfer is error-free, the mechanical part of the command is then executed. If errors have occurred, the mechanical part of the punch operation is suppressed. Figure 70 shows the timing of a punch, or punch and feed, operation.

Note: The punch buffer need not be full, any number of characters from 1 to 80 is valid. However, the first character in the buffer will be punched into card column 1, the next into card column 2, and so on. If unpunched columns are to appear between punched columns, blank characters in EBCDIC code must be placed in the output data at the appropriate locations.

Channel end is set when the punch buffer load operation is completed. The card in the primary prepunch station is then moved into the punch station. If there is no card in the primary prepunch station, an automatic feed cycle is performed, which causes a card to be moved through the read station. This card is not read. If there is no card in the primary prepunch station and no card in the primary preread station, unit check is indicated and the no card available bit (bit 6) is set in sense byte 0. Normally the primary prepunch and primary preread stations cannot both be empty, or a hopper check would occur.

The mechanical part of the punch operation begins with card column 1 which is punched with data (translated into standard card code) from the first punch buffer location. The card is moved through the punch station column by column. Blank columns require the same amount of time as punched columns. For this reason, the information in a

card should be placed as close to card column 1 as possible to obtain maximum throughput. The punch operation continues until the stored count has been reduced to zero, or column 80 has been punched, whichever occurs first. At this time, device end is set. The setting of device end is an interruption condition.

After being punched, the card stops in the punch station with the punch knives over the column following the last one punched.

Notes:

1. Although the card is stopped ready for punch continuation, a new punch command cannot punch into this same card. Instead, a new punch primary command causes a feed cycle that advances all cards (from hopper to corner station) by one station. If the new punch command is a punch secondary, an eject cycle occurs. The eject cycle causes all cards except those located before the punch station to move forward by one station. The eject cycle avoids a jam that would occur if the card in the secondary prepunch station could run into the primary card that is still in the punch station.

The eject cycle is required whenever a 'punch only' command (which leaves the card in the punch station) is followed by a command for the other card path. If the next command is for the same card path, the eject cycle does not occur because the respective prepunch station is empty.

2. For a punch and feed command, device end is set approximately 10 ms prior to the clutch decision point. For a punch command, device end is always set after the last card column has been punched. (See Figure 70.)

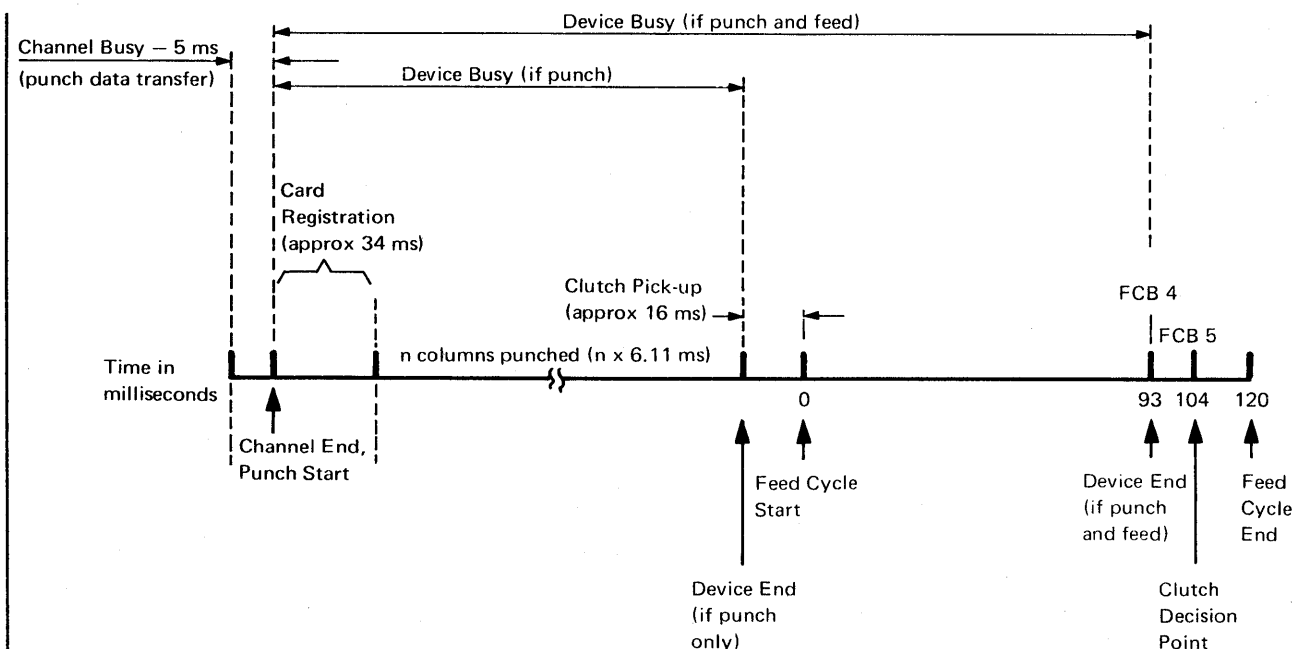


Figure 70. Punch or Punch and Feed Timing [19574]

Punch Column Binary Primary

The 'punch column binary primary' command is similar to the 'punch primary' command except that two column binary characters are punched into one card column. The punch buffer has 160 character positions because punching in column binary is a standard feature of the Model 115. It is not possible to intermix punching of column binary and EBCDIC columns.

Punch Secondary

The 'punch secondary' command is similar in function to the 'punch primary' command except that the card to be punched is taken from the secondary prepunch station.

Punch Column Binary Secondary

The 'punch column binary secondary' command is similar to the 'punch column binary primary' command except that the card to be punched is taken from the secondary prepunch station.

Punch and Feed Primary

The 'punch and feed primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the 2560 punch buffer, starting at the main storage address specified in the CCW and continuing in ascending order of address until either the count is zero or the buffer is full. At this time, channel end is set in the CSW. Next, the card in the primary prepunch station is moved to the punch station and passes through it, column by column. If the primary prepunch station is empty when the command is given, an automatic feed cycle attempts to fill it.

When the last character has been punched, the feed function of the command commences. In this feed cycle, the following movements take place simultaneously:

- The card in the post-print station (or, if there is no post-print station, the card in the dummy print station) goes to the corner station and from there to the stacker.
- The card in the punch station goes to the preprint station.
- The card in the primary pre-read station goes through the read station (without being read) to the primary prepunch station.
- The card in the primary input station goes to the primary pre-read station.
- The bottom card in the primary hopper goes to the primary input station.

After these simultaneous card movements, device end is set for this command.

Punch Column Binary and Feed Primary

The 'punch column binary and feed primary' command causes the same actions as the 'punch and feed primary' command except that column binary characters are punched.

Punch and Feed Secondary

The data transfer and mechanical actions initiated by the 'punch and feed secondary' command are similar to those initiated by the 'punch and feed primary' command, except that all card movements take place in the secondary card path.

Punch Column Binary and Feed Secondary

The 'punch column binary and feed secondary' command is similar to the 'punch column binary and feed primary' command except that it deals with cards in the secondary card path.

Load Commands

Load commands may only be given to a 2560 Model A1 that has the optional card print feature installed.

Load Print Head Buffer

The 'load print head buffer' command provides the means to load either any individual print head buffer or all available print head buffers. Depending on the number of heads installed, either two, four or six print head buffers are available. Command code bits 1, 2, 3 (denoted as H, H, H in Figure 67) have the values 4, 2, 1 assigned and are thus capable of representing any number from 0 to 7. The number thus specified determines the buffer to be loaded and the loading method as follows:

Number 0 (all three bits off) is invalid and causes the 'load print head buffer' command to be rejected.

Any number from 1 to 6 causes the corresponding print head buffer to be loaded, but only this buffer. The maximum byte count for such an operation is 64. If the byte count is less than 64, the remaining buffer positions are not changed and will therefore retain previous data (if any). If the specified buffer is not installed, incorrect length is indicated.

Number 7 causes all six buffers to be loaded sequentially, beginning with buffer 1 and ending with buffer 6 (unless the length count is insufficient). The maximum byte count for such an operation is 384. If the byte count is less than 384, the remaining buffers are filled with blanks. If less than six buffers are installed, the command ends normally when the last available buffer has been loaded (or filled with blanks). The 'load print head buffer' command can thus be used to delete previous contents or to find out how many buffers are installed.

The 'load print head buffer' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the print head buffer(s). The data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and continues in ascending order of address until either the specified buffer or all buffers have been filled or the count in bits 48 to 63 of the CCW is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. At

this time channel end and device end are both set in the CSW. Data thus stored in the print head buffers remains valid until overwritten by another load operation or until power goes off. After power-on, all buffers are filled with blanks (hex 40).

Note: If the 'load print head buffer' command is given at a time when there is no card at the preprint station or punch station, unit check (bit 38 in the CSW) is set and a 'sense' command will then show the no card available bit (bit 6 of sense byte 0) as the cause. A subsequent read and feed, punch, or punch and feed command will then provide a card at the preprint station.

Write Commands

Write commands may only be issued to a 2560 Model A1 that has the optional card print feature installed.

Write Card

The 'write card' command causes a data byte that contains the selected print head to be transferred from main storage, after which the print operation starts. The selected print head prints the contents of the assigned print buffer under control of the length count for the 'write card' command. The timing of a write card operation is shown in Figure 71.

The print head selection byte is fetched from the main storage location addressed by bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. The bits in this byte designate the individual print heads of the machine as follows:

Bit	Print Head
0	1
1	2
2	3
3	4
4	5
5	6
6	(Ignored)
7	(Ignored)

A print head is selected when its corresponding select bit is set. Any combination of print heads is valid except no

selection, when bits 0 to 5 are all zeros. If no print head is selected, the 'write card' command is rejected.

If a print head is selected but its assigned print buffer has not been loaded, the 'write card' command is executed but only blanks are "printed". If a print head is selected which is not installed in the machine, the card is stepped through the print station without printing and no error indication is given. If, however, a 'write card' command is issued to a 2560 without the card print feature, the command is rejected.

After the print head select byte is transferred, the printer control is started and then channel end and device end are both set.

Note: The device end indication for the 'write card' command is deliberately presented at the beginning of the mechanical print operation so that a punch command can be accepted following the 'write card' command. This allows punch operations to fully overlap card print operations. (See Figures 71 and 72.)

After channel end and device end for a 'write card' command have been presented, the 2560 appears busy for write or load commands until the mechanical print operation is completed. This is not, however, indicated by the busy bit (bit 35) in the CSW. Instead, any subsequent 'write card' or 'load print head buffer' command is rejected with unit check set in the CSW and the no card available bit set in sense byte 0. When the 2560 is busy with the execution of a 'write card' command, other commands such as punch, stacker select, or read are accepted but their execution is delayed until the print operation has progressed to a point where the next operation can be initiated (Figure 72). In this way, punch operations can be overlapped with print operations.

If there is no card in the preprint station when a 'write card' command is given, an automatic eject cycle is performed, provided a card is available in the punch station. If there is no card in either the preprint or the punch station (both stations empty), the 'write card' command ends with unit check set and the no card available bit set in sense byte 0.

The mechanical part of the print operation consists of

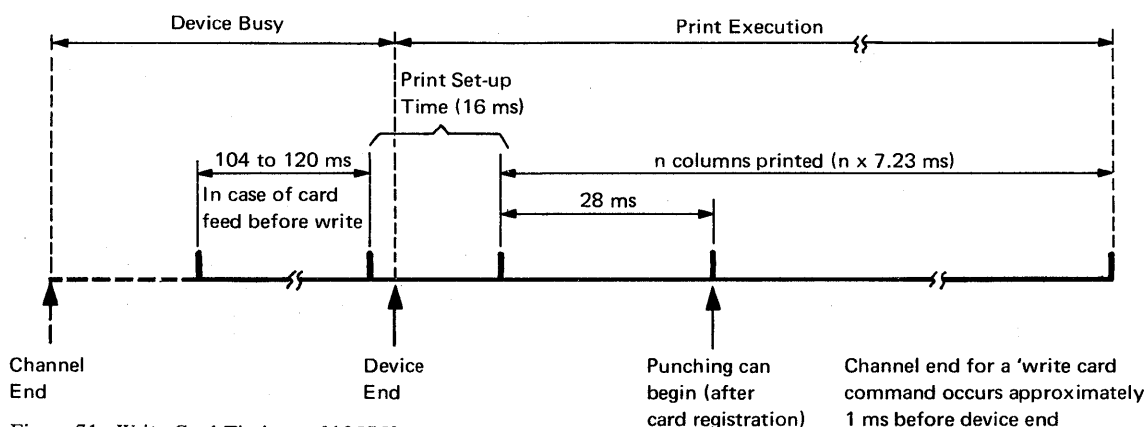


Figure 71. Write Card Timing [19575]

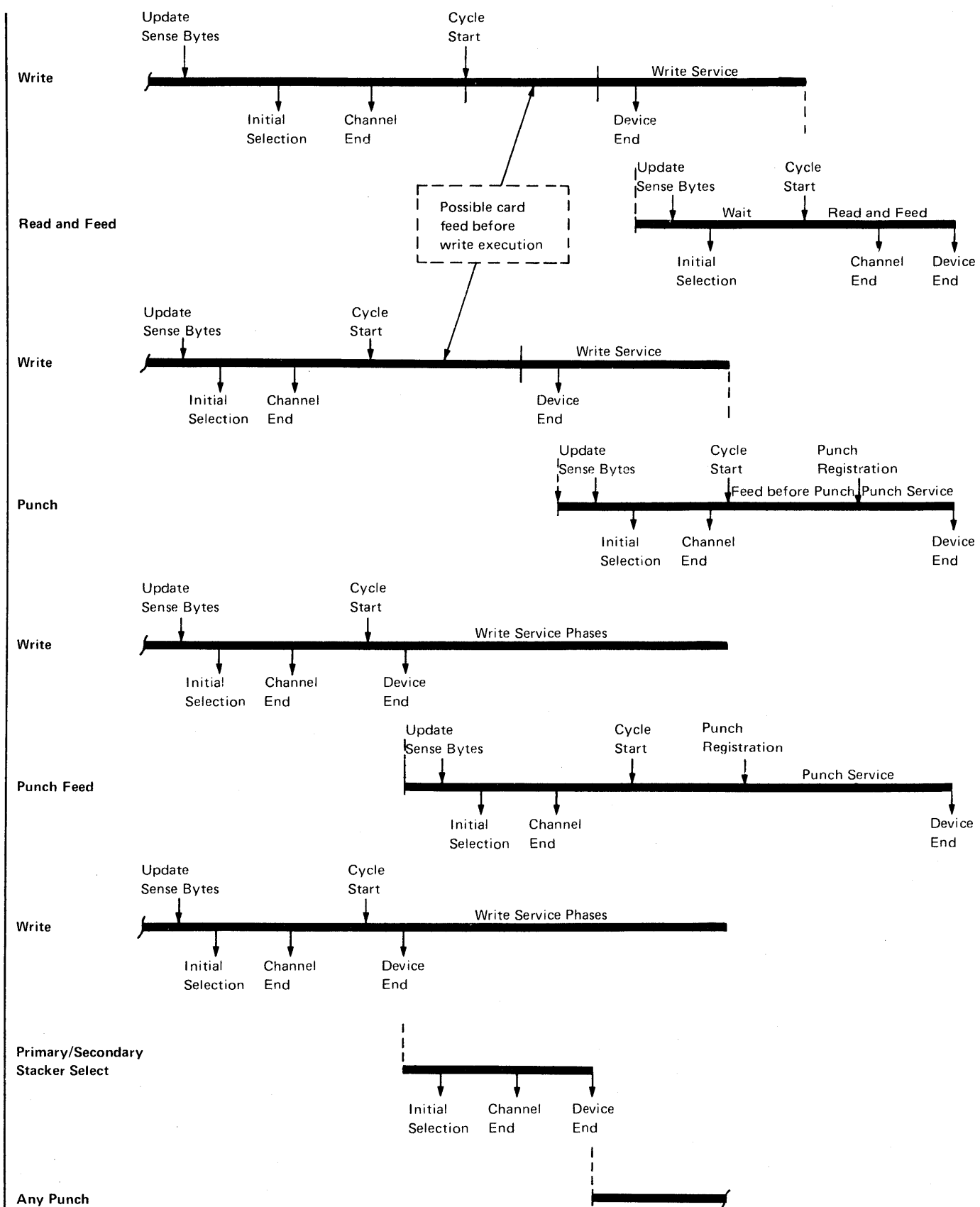


Figure 72. Command Sequence during Write Operation [19576]

moving the card at the preprint station into the print station. The entire card is then moved through the print station, column by column, and the print heads print characters onto its surface.

Note: Since the length count of a 'write card' command controls only the number of characters to be printed, there is no data transfer from main storage (except for the head selection byte) and the length count is not reduced. The 'write card' command is therefore unsuitable for data chaining.

Stacker Select Commands

Note: If a stacker select command selecting stacker 5 is given to a 2560 Model A2, the command will be executed as a stacker select command to stacker 4.

Primary Stacker Select

The 'primary stacker select' command provides a means of directing a card in the primary path to a stacker other than the normal destination. The normal destination for primary cards is stacker 1, which is automatically selected in the absence of a stacker select command.

The 'primary stacker select' command is of the control immediate type; only the command code is transferred to the card I/O front end and channel end is indicated in the initial status. Device end is set when the select information has been set internally.

The command code carries the stacker select information in bits 1, 2 and 3 of the command byte (shown as M, M, M in Figure 67). Bits 1, 2, and 3 have the following binary values assigned:

Bit	Binary Value
1	4
2	2
3	1

Any value from 1 to 5 (decimal) is valid. Any value above 5 causes the command to be rejected. If the 'primary stacker select' command has the value zero, it is treated in the same way as a 'control no-op' command and causes only status presentation.

The 'primary stacker select' command is always assigned to the card located in the primary prepunch station at the time the command is given. Since it cannot be assumed that a card is actually located in the primary prepunch station at this time, it is recommended that the 'primary stacker select' command should be given either *after* a read and feed command for that card or, if reading is not intended, *before* the next punch or punch and feed command is given for the primary card path.

These rules for command placement ensure that stacker selection can be assigned either to a card that is already in the primary prepunch station (as is the case after a read and feed operation) or to a card that will arrive at the primary

prepunch station (as is the case with a punch or punch and feed operation).

Note: A 'primary stacker select' command that is issued either before a read and feed, or after a punch or punch and feed command for a card will not change the normal selection (stacker 1) for that card. A 'primary stacker select' command also has no effect if given immediately after card run-in.

Secondary Stacker Select

The 'secondary stacker select' command provides a means of directing a card in the secondary card path to a stacker other than the normal destination. The normal destination for secondary cards is stacker 5, which is automatically selected in the absence of a stacker select command.

The 'secondary stacker select' command is of the immediate type; only the command code is transferred to the card I/O front end after which channel end is indicated in the initial status. Device end is set when the select information has been set internally.

The stacker select information is contained in bits 1, 2, and 3 of the command byte. Bits 1, 2, and 3 have the following binary values assigned:

Bit	Binary Value
1	4
2	2
3	1

Any value from 1 to 5 (decimal) is valid. Values above 5 cause the command to be rejected.

The 'secondary stacker select' command is always assigned to the card located in the secondary prepunch station at the time the command is given. Since it cannot be expected that a card is actually in the secondary prepunch station when the command is given, it is recommended that the 'secondary stacker select' command should be given either *after* a read and feed command for that card or, if reading is not intended, *before* the next punch, or punch and feed command is given for the secondary path.

These rules ensure that a stacker can be assigned either to the card already in the secondary prepunch station (as a consequence of a read and feed operation, for example), or to a card that will arrive there (as a consequence of a punch or punch and feed operation, for example).

Note: A 'secondary stacker select' command that is given either before a read and feed or after a punch or punch and feed command for a card cannot change the normal destination (stacker 5) for the card. A secondary stacker select command also has no effect if given immediately after card run-in.

Punch Stacker Select

The 'punch stacker select' command provides a means of changing the destination of *any* card whether the card is routing normally or is in a path determined by a

previously-given primary or secondary stacker select command.

The 'punch stacker select' command is always assigned to the card that is either in the punch station or in the preprint station. This command can be given at any time after a read or punch command because the selection is stored and assigned to the next card that enters the print station (after the 'punch stacker select' command is given). Normally, however, the command is given in order to change a previous selection because, for example, of a punch error.

Note: The 'punch stacker select' command must be given prior to a write command. The 'punch stacker select' command should, likewise, be issued prior to the *next* read and feed, or punch, or punch and feed of any type if the destination of a card in the punch station is to be changed.

Stacker selection by the 'punch stacker select' command cannot be altered. The selection information is contained in bits 1, 2, and 3 of the command byte, as for primary and secondary stacker select commands. The command is of the immediate type, and only the command byte is transferred to the card I/O front end. Channel end is indicated in the initial status. Device end is set when the select information has been set internally.

Other Commands

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command causes no action at the 2560. When this command is given, channel end and device end are indicated in the initial status together with any other status indications that may exist at that time.

Sense Command

The 'sense' command retrieves the contents of the seven available sense bytes for the 2560 from the integrated card I/O attachment and transfers them to main storage. A 'sense' command should be issued whenever a 2560 operation ends with unit check set in the CSW. The error indications are placed into main storage in ascending order of the data address (CCW bits 8 to 31) up to a maximum of seven bytes, or until the count is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. The 'sense' command does not reset the error indicators; these are reset by any next command other than 'sense' or 'control no-op', or by any instructions other than 'test I/O', 'halt I/O', or 'halt device'. For a detailed description of the sense bytes and their contents, see "2560 Sense Information" in this section.

Cycle Definitions

The foregoing command descriptions mention two types of cycles: *feed cycles* and *eject cycles*. For the benefit of programmers, these cycles are defined in the following paragraphs.

Feed Cycle

A feed cycle is either part of the command (as in read and feed, punch and feed commands) or is unsolicited. Unsolicited feed cycles occur automatically whenever a gap has developed in the card path. The purpose of an unsolicited feed cycle is to fill an empty card station so that the current command can be executed. Unsolicited feed cycles occur when a punch command of any type finds no card in the prepunch station.

Since a feed cycle always involves the entire card path, all cards from hopper to corner station advance by one station. Unsolicited feed cycles never involve reading or punching. Whether such a feed cycle affects the primary or secondary path depends on the command. Punch commands state the path explicitly (punch *primary*, punch *secondary*) and the stated path is always used by the unsolicited feed cycle.

Example: A punch command finds no card in the associated prepunch station because the previous command may have been a punch "only" command. To allow punching despite the absence of a card, an unsolicited feed cycle occurs to fill the vacated prepunch station. No reading occurs although a card moves through the read station.

Eject Cycle

The eject cycle is an unsolicited cycle that advances all cards in and behind the punch station by one station. Unlike the feed cycle, the eject cycle does not bring a new card from the hopper. The eject cycle occurs automatically for one of two purposes:

1. To clear the punch station when a jam would otherwise occur.
2. To fill the preprint station.

Examples:

1. After a punch only command for the primary path is executed, the card is still in the punch station. If the next command is some type of command for the secondary path, the card in the secondary prepunch station would collide with the card in the punch station. Thus, whenever a punch only command is followed by a command for the other card path, an eject cycle occurs automatically to clear the punch station. The eject cycle does not occur if a punch only command is followed by a command for the same card path, because the prepunch station is then empty.
2. If a write card command finds no card in the preprint station but a card is in the punch station (from a preceding punch only command), an automatic eject cycle occurs. The eject cycle does not occur if the punch station is empty. See also the description of the 'write card' command).

2560 STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the meanings of the status indications given in response to 2560 commands.

Unit Status

The unit status is indicated in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The unit status is directly related to a command that is either issued to or has been completed or terminated by the 2560. The bits are assigned the following meanings:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is not used.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit, when set, indicates that the 2560 is busy executing a previously-initiated command. The busy bit and the device end bit are both set when a 'start I/O' instruction is issued to a 2560 which has an initial device end interruption pending.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit, when set, indicates that the data transfer part of a 2560 command, or the transfer of control information, has been completed. This means that received data is available in the input area or that the output area can be loaded with new data.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit, when set, indicates that the 2560 has completed the mechanical part of an operation and is free to accept and execute another command. In this sense, the setting of device end marks the exact moment at which any type of busy status ends for a previously-initiated operation. For all commands that involve card movement or other clutch-dependent operations, device end is set 10 ms (-10%) prior to the next clutch decision point. If a new command is accepted prior to the clutch decision point, maximum throughput can be obtained.

Note: For a 'write card' command, device end is set so early that a punch command can be executed overlapped with card printing. Another 'write card' command will, however, set unit check with the no card available bit set in sense byte 0. Device end for the previous 'write card' command has already been given.

Device end does not itself indicate which operation has been completed at the 2560. However, if there is a command address stored in the CSW it will point to the next command to be executed. Device end is set once for each command, except during command chaining.

Device end is set alone when the 2560 is manually put into the ready state, for example - when the START key is pressed and the card run-in cycle is completed.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for various errors or other unusual conditions that may have occurred in the 2560 or its controlling front end logic. Since the setting of unit check does not indicate which condition has occurred, a 'sense' command can be issued in order to retrieve exact information. For details of the conditions that can cause unit check to be set, see "2560 Sense Information" in this section.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set only for a read and feed command that has read the last card without a feed check or machine check occurring. Unit exception is set with device end for commands of this type. The card path is still in the ready state when unit exception is set. Read and feed commands as well as stacker select commands can be given to route the last card to an appropriate stacker. Read and feed commands given in these circumstances are accepted, but no data transfer occurs (the residual count will be identical with the length count in the command). For this reason, read commands given after unit exception has been set are known as *dummy* read commands. Unit exception therefore functions as the last card indicator.

Channel Status

The channel status is not specific for the 2560 but is given in conjunction with 2560 commands if these cause unusual conditions or were specified improperly. The channel status is indicated in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW, as follows:

Bit	Designation
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check (not used)
47	Chaining check (not used)

Program-Controlled Interruption (Bit 40)

The program-controlled interruption (PCI) bit, when set, indicates that an interruption was requested because the CCW to which the status applies has the PCI flag bit set. The execution of the 2560 command is not affected by detection of the PCI flag, however. The PCI bit also indicates that the interruption may be expected to take place as soon as possible. The actual time at which the PCI occurs cannot be predicted (masking or other activities can cause delays).

Incorrect Length (Bit 41)

The incorrect length bit is set whenever the number of bytes in the main storage input or output area assigned to a 2560 operation is not equal to the number of bytes offered or requested by the 2560. For example, the maximum number of print positions is 64 and the maximum number of card columns is 80 and these maximum numbers are the checking criteria for incorrect length. Thus if the length count for a 'write card' command is less than 64, incorrect length is indicated and the residual count is zero. If the length count is greater than 64, incorrect length is indicated and the residual count shows the number of bytes not transferred. The incorrect length indication is suppressed when the current CCW has the SLI flag bit set and the CD flag bit off, or the current CCW is an immediate command or is rejected.

Note: The setting of the incorrect length bit is unpredictable when a program check has occurred during the fetching of a CCW.

Program Check (Bit 42)

The program check bit, when set, alerts the program to various error conditions (described in the following text) that may be caused by incorrect specifications or an invalid command sequence.

1. *Invalid CCW Address Specification.* The CAW or the transfer-in-channel command does not designate the CCW on an integral doubleword boundary (the address is not a multiple of eight).
2. *Invalid CCW Address.* The card I/O attachment attempts to fetch a CCW from a location outside main storage.
3. *Invalid Indirect Data Address List (IDAL).* The origin address of the IDAL is not on a word boundary. This case applies only when CCW bit 37 is set.
4. *Invalid Indirect Data Address Word (IDAW).* Bits 0 to 7 of the IDAW are not zero, or the second and subsequent address words do not specify the first or last byte of a 2,048-byte block. This case applies only when CCW bit 37 is set.

5. *Invalid Command Code.* The command code in the first CCW addressed by the CAW or the first CCW of a chain contains four low-order zeros.
6. *Invalid Count.* A CCW (other than for a TIC command) contains the value zero in bits 48 to 63 (the count field).
7. *Invalid Data Address.* The card I/O attachment attempts to fetch data from a location outside addressable main storage. This may occur because either the CCW contains an invalid data address or the main storage controller modifier has updated the address beyond the upper limit.
8. *Invalid CAW Format.* The channel address word does not contain zeros in bit positions 4 to 7.
9. *Invalid CCW Format.* The CCW (other than for a TIC command) does not contain zeros in bit positions 37 to 39.
10. *Invalid Sequence.* The first CCW designated by the CAW is a TIC command, or two TIC commands are issued in succession.

Protection Check (Bit 43)

The protection check bit is set when the CAW key does not match the key of the main storage location addressed by a CCW. Protection check is also set when the addressed main storage location is protected against fetching. 2560 commands for which protection check is set are either not started or terminated.

Channel Data Check (Bit 44)

The channel data check bit is set when a parity error is detected in the data or sense information transferred between main storage and channel. Command codes, CCW or data addresses, or status reports do not set channel data check. The setting of channel data check does not terminate the operation, but chaining is suppressed. The card I/O front end forces correct parity on all data it sends or receives.

Note: If channel data check is set, a limited channel logout may be available at storage location 176.

Channel Control Check (Bit 45)

The channel control check bit is set for parity errors in the CCW address, the data address, or the CCW itself. Errors which set channel control check are severe, causing the current operation either to be not started or to be terminated immediately. Such an error usually involves the IOP or the MSC or both. The CSW in which the channel control check bit is set cannot be considered reliable.

Note: If channel control check is set, a limited channel logout may be available at storage location 176.

Interface Control Check (Bit 46)

The interface control check bit is set when a status report has invalid parity or when the 2560 is unable to respond to selection before the timeout in the MIP elapses.

Note: If interface control check is set, a limited channel logout may be available at storage location 176.

Chaining Check (Bit 47)

The chaining check bit is not used for 2560 operations.

2560 SENSE INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the contents of the sense bytes available for the 2560. The 2560 provides up to seven bytes of sense information, which may be transferred to main storage by use of the 'sense' command. The fact that a 'sense' command is required is indicated by the setting of unit check in the CSW.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus-out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Feed check/machine check
6	No card available
7	(Not used)

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when either an unassigned command, or a command that requires a feature that is not installed, is given. Command reject is also set when a prerequisite condition is not met. The following conditions cause command rejection:

1. A stacker select command with an invalid stacker number (greater than 5) is given.
2. A 'write card' command is given specifying an all zeros head-selection (no selection).
3. A 'load print head buffer' command is given which specifies buffer number zero or a non-existent buffer.
4. A 'load print head buffer' command is given to a 2560 that has no card print feature installed.
5. A 'write card' command is given to a 2560 that has no card print feature installed.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit, when set, indicates that operator intervention at the 2560 is required because of

one of the following conditions, any of which will cause the 2560 to lose the ready state.

1. The selected feed path (primary or secondary) is not ready or the 2560's STOP key has been pressed.
2. One of the machine covers is open (cover interlock).
3. A card is jammed in either hopper.
4. The hand wheel is engaged or the bell crank is inserted.
5. The print interlock arm is not locked, due to improper head alignment.
6. A hopper is empty.
7. A stacker is full.
8. The chip box is full or has been removed from the 2560.
9. A feed check or punch pusher check has occurred.
10. A machine check has occurred.

Bus-Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus-out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set for "soft" errors that occurred during the execution of a command. In general, the equipment check bit is set when a feed check or machine check occurs during data transfer.

For read commands, equipment check is set when the read comparison performed in the 2560 produces an unequal result. This means that a card hole could not be read safely or a fiber optic check or read end check has occurred.

For punch commands, equipment check is set when the punch echo data shows missing or multiple punches.

In either case, the operation continues to its normal end after equipment check has been detected. Detailed information on the first failing card column is available in sense byte 6 (see "Sense Byte 6" in this section).

Equipment check is a program-resettable error. Reset occurs when the next command (of any type except a 'sense' command) is given to the 2560.

Note: If a punch circuit breaker fails during a punch command, the punch operation is not continued because punching would be unreliable. In such cases, no failing column is indicated in sense byte 6, but the 2560's PUNCH CHECK light is on.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit, when set, indicates that an invalid card code was detected in a card column during a read operation or that invalid parity was detected during loading of the punch or print buffer. The consequences of a data check are different for read and for write operations, as follows:

Data check during read: the error column is transferred to main storage as a blank character and the operation continues to normal completion (all specified columns are read).

Data check during punch buffer or print buffer loading: the load operation continues to completion and unit check is set at the same time as channel end. The mechanical portion of the punch or print operation is, however, not started.

Data check is also set if a feed check or a machine check occurs while the machine is busy executing a command, because the data transferred is not reliable.

Feed Check/Machine Check (Bit 5)

The feed check/machine check bit is used to interpret data check and/or intervention required indications. A card is wrongly positioned due to a mechanical malfunction, the 2560 went through an extra clutch cycle, or the read emitter drum was not written or was not erased. The error is in any case considered severe, so that the operation in progress is stopped. Recovery requires a non-process run-out and subsequent restart of the operation. Details about the location of the individual cards in the machine are available in sense byte 2, and details about jams or misfeeds are available in sense byte 1.

No Card Available (Bit 6)

The no card available bit is set if no card was available at the preprint station or in the punch station at the time a 'write card' or a 'load print head buffer' command was given. The no card available bit is also set if a punch command is given when both the prepunch and pre-read stations are empty.

Bit 7

Bit 7 is not used.

Sense Byte 1

Sense byte 1 contains detailed information about obstructions (jams, misfeeds, and so on) that caused a feed check. The individual bits are set to show where the card path was obstructed and have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Cover interlock
1	Jam bar check
2	Corner station check
3	Cell 8 to 9 feed check
4	Print station feed check
5	Punch station feed check
6	Read station feed check
7	Input station feed check

Note: All checks indicated by sense byte 1 may be reset by pressing the 2560's NPRO (non-process runout) key. The checks cause the 2560 to lose its ready state; they cannot, therefore, be reset by a new command.

Cover Interlock (Bit 0)

The cover interlock check bit, when set, indicates an open machine cover. The cover-open condition can be indicated at channel end or device end time.

Jam Bar Check (Bit 1)

The jam bar check bit, when set, indicates that a card jammed above the stackers or at the pocket entry. This check can be set at channel end or device end time.

Corner Station Check (Bit 2)

The corner station check bit, when set, indicates that a card was not ejected from the corner. This check can be set at channel end or device end time, or be presented for the next command.

Cell 8 to 9 Feed Check (Bit 3)

The cell 8 to 9 feed check bit, when set, indicates that a card was obstructed or did not leave the area after the print station so that it did not arrive at the corner station. This check is set at channel end time.

Print Station Feed Check (Bit 4)

The print station feed check bit, when set, indicates that a card was not fed from the preprint station through the print station. This check is set at device end time.

Punch Station Feed Check (Bit 5)

The punch station feed check bit, when set, indicates that a card was not ejected out of the punch station into the preprint station. This check is set at device end time.

Read Station Feed Check (Bit 6)

The read station feed check bit, when set, indicates that a card was not fed through the read station, was already in the read station at the start of the cycle, or is still in the read station at the end of the cycle. This check is set at device end time.

Input Station Feed Check (Bit 7)

The input station feed check bit, when set, indicates that a card did not leave the input station. This check is set at device end time.

Sense Byte 2

Sense byte 2 contains information on the location of individual cards in the 2560 at the beginning of the cycle in which a feed check or machine check was detected. The

bits in sense byte 2 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Secondary select
1	Card in punch station
2	Preprint SC 7 exposed
3	Prepunch SC 5 exposed
4	Prepunch SC 4 exposed
5	Preread SC 3 exposed
6	Preread SC 2 exposed
7	Input station SC 1 exposed

Secondary Select (Bit 0)

The secondary select bit, when set, means that the secondary card path was selected during execution of the previous command. If the secondary select bit is at zero, the primary path was selected. If neither path was selected, the state of the secondary select bit is unpredictable.

Card in Punch Station (Bit 1)

The card in punch station bit, when set, means that a card is in the punch station.

Preprint SC 7 Exposed (Bit 2)

The preprint SC 7 exposed bit, when set, means that there is no card in the preprint position. When the solar cell (SC) in this position is covered by a card, the bit is at zero.

Bits 3 to 7

Bits 3 to 7 are operated by solar cells in the same way as bit 2. The odd-numbered solar cells (1, 3, 5) sense cards in the primary card path; the even-numbered solar cells sense cards in the secondary path.

Sense Bytes 3, 4, and 5

Sense bytes 3, 4, and 5 contain the stacker select information for all cards throughout the 2560. The contents of these three sense bytes represent a replica of the stacker select registers so that the origin and destination of the last stacked card, the card to be stacked, and so on can be determined for error recovery or restart procedures.

The information in sense bytes 3, 4, and 5 should be examined whenever feed checks or machine checks occur or when other errors require new job set-up. The information enables cards in the stacker to be identified after a runout and to be placed into the correct original hopper for a restart.

Sense Byte 3

Sense byte 3 contains the stacker selections assigned to cards at the primary and secondary prepunch stations, as shown in the following table.

Bit	Meaning	Card Location
0	primary card 0	Primary prepunch station
1	binary value 4	
2	binary value 2	
3	binary value 1	Secondary prepunch station
4	secondary card 1	
5	binary value 4	
6	binary value 2	
7	binary value 1	

Bit 0 is permanently at zero to identify the stacker select number in bits 1 to 3 as belonging to the card in the primary path. This identification is carried along unchanged as the stacker select values are shifted through the stations so that the hopper from which a card originated can be found after the card paths have merged. Bit 4 identifies cards in the secondary path by being permanently set. Bits 5 to 7 represent the stacker number for the secondary card.

Sense Byte 4

Sense byte 4 contains the stacker select numbers for two successive card stations. Bits 0 to 3 represent the stacker designation and the origin of the card in the punch or preprint station, bits 4 to 7 show the designation and origin of the card at the print station, as shown in the following table:

Bit	Meaning	Card Location
0	primary (0)/secondary (1)	Punch or preprint station
1	binary value 4	
2	binary value 2	
3	binary value 1	After print station
4	primary (0)/secondary (1)	
5	binary value 4	
6	binary value 2	
7	binary value 1	

Bits 0 and 4 are either 0 or 1 depending on whether the card originated in the primary or secondary path. The stacker select number is that which was transferred from the previous station or may be a number that was introduced by a 'punch stacker select' command. The stacker select number assigned to a card that has passed the print station is the final stacker selection for that card and cannot be altered.

Sense Byte 5

Sense byte 5 contains, in bits 0 to 3, the final stacker selection that is placed into the select magnets. Bits 4 to 7 hold the stacker number of the card that was just stacked. The origin of each card is also given, as shown in the following table.

Bit	Meaning	Card Location
0	primary (0)/secondary (1)	} Corner station (to be stacked)
1	4	
2	2	
3	1	
4	primary (0)/secondary (1)	} Stacker pocket (was just stacked)
5	4	
6	2	
7	1	

Sense Byte 6

The information in sense byte 6 can identify the first card column in which an invalid card code or column compare check was detected during a read operation, or the first card column in which missing or extra punches were detected during punch operations. Sense byte 6 also indicates that additional invalid information was detected (if this is the case). The bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Multi data check
1	Binary value 64
2	Binary value 32
3	Binary value 16
4	Binary value 8
5	Binary value 4
6	Binary value 2
7	Binary value 1

Multi Data Check (Bit 0)

The multi data check bit is set if additional invalid data was detected after the first invalid card column was found. This means that the entire card must be inspected.

Bits 1 to 7

Bits 1 to 7 identify the card column in which the first (possibly the only) error was detected. The column count thus allows pin-point correction. For normal or column binary cards, the count may be any number from 1 to 80.

2560 ERROR RECOVERY

The following paragraphs describe the minimum action the operating system and/or the operator should take to deal with errors or unusual conditions in the 2560 or its front end. Errors or other unusual conditions exist whenever the unit or channel status contains any indication other than channel end, device end, or busy.

Unit Check in CSW

When a unit check occurs, the operating system should at least analyze sense byte 0, but preferably the remaining sense bytes as well. Sense byte 0 will show the major causes of the unit check. The following text describes the suggested recovery procedures for conditions which are indicated by the contents of sense byte 0.

Command Reject (Sense Byte 0, Bit 0)

The most likely reason for the command reject bit being set is a programming error (for a detailed list of such errors, see "2560 Sense Information", "Sense Byte 0"). If the command was rejected due to such an error, the job in progress should be cancelled and the program corrected.

Intervention Required (Sense Byte 0, Bit 1)

If the intervention required bit is set, the operating system should provide a message that advises the operator to observe the indicator lights on the 2560 console and to proceed as described below.

ATTENTION Light On: This indication can be caused by any of the following conditions:

1. Any stacker is full.
2. The chip box is full.
3. The covers are open.
4. The print interlock arm is not locked (especially likely after repositioning of a print head).
5. The hand wheel is engaged.

Any of these conditions must be corrected and the 2560 START key must then be pressed.

PRIMARY HOPPER CHECK or SECONDARY HOPPER CHECK Light On:

The operator should remove the cards from the appropriate hopper, repair or replace the bottom card, then reinsert the card deck and press the 2560's START key.

MACHINE CHECK Light: The operator should remove the cards from either or both hoppers and press the 2560's NPRO (non-process runout) key. The operation in progress was not completed and, therefore, requires a restart (new set-up). Sense byte 2 contains a record of the original positions of the cards in the machine; sense byte 1 shows the type of check responsible for the intervention required bit being set; sense bytes 3, 4, and 5 show the stacker select numbers assigned to the cards. The operating system can, therefore, assist the operator in the restart procedure required for the job.

FEED CHECK Light: If a feed check is the cause for the intervention required bit being set, the operating system should provide a message (based on the information in sense byte 1) that tells the operator the area in which a check occurred. The cards must be run out of the machine and a restart must be set up.

Note: After power-on reset, the 2560's FEED CHECK light comes on automatically. This does not indicate an error. The FEED CHECK light is on to remind the operator to press the NPRO key prior to inserting any cards. This precaution ensures proper operating conditions after initial power-on.

Loss of SECONDARY READY or PRIMARY READY Lights: The operator has probably pressed the 2560's STOP key by accident. He should then press the START key to continue. The READY light also goes off when a hopper is empty. In this case, the operator may either reload the empty hopper or simply press the START key; the respective ready light will then go on.

Equipment Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 3)

If the equipment check bit is set, the operating system should direct the card that has been read or punched into a stacker that has not been assigned for the job in progress. This is because the data read from or punched into that card is unreliable. Whether the entire job must be restarted or not depends on the application program. A message should be issued to the operator advising him to visually check the card and the first failing column (recorded in sense byte 6) and to continue or abandon the job as appropriate. Usually the READ CHECK or PUNCH CHECK light on the 2560's operator panel will be on.

Data Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 4)

If the data check bit is set, the operating system should analyze the contents of sense byte 6 to find out whether more than one card column is affected and, if not, which column contains the invalid code. For a read operation, the error may be corrected by replacing the affected card by a duplicate card in which the error has been corrected. The operator should therefore run the cards out and restart. However, because the invalid card column has been read into main storage, as a 'blank', it may also be possible to effect on-line correction.

If data check is accompanied by a feed check or machine check, the operating system should ignore the data check and provide a message advising the operator to restart the program.

If data check is set during a punch operation, recovery should be effected by re-issuing the command. This is possible because punching has not actually started and the card has not yet moved. If the repeated command causes another data check, a hardware error is likely. A print operation that causes data check can be retried in the same way.

Feed Check/Machine Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 5)

If the feed check/machine check bit is set, the operating

system should sense the card position image in sense byte 2 and examine the feed failure indications in sense byte 1 to obtain the correct reconfiguration data for a restart. In addition, the stacker select information recorded in sense bytes 3, 4, and 5 should be used to identify the origin of the cards. A message should then be issued to the operator advising him to run out all cards from the 2560, then set up for restart as appropriate. If repeated feed or machine checks occur, the CE must be notified.

No Card Available (Sense Byte 0, Bit 6)

If the no card available bit is set, the operating system should issue a read and feed, punch or punch and feed command to fill the empty punch or preprint station. The failing command can then be repeated successfully.

Channel Data Check in the CSW

If channel data check is set in the CSW, a read operation may have placed incorrect data into main storage. The data has correct parity but may be unreliable. Meanwhile, the buffer load part of a punch or print operation has been completed, but the mechanical part of the operation has not been started. The operating system should therefore retry punch or print operations without issuing any other command because the card is still in the correct physical position in the machine.

Note: If channel data check is found, the operating system should always check whether a limited channel logout exists at storage location 176. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

Channel Control Check in the CSW

If channel control check is set in the CSW, the operating system should issue an appropriate message to advise the operator to set up the program at a logical point (after it has attempted to retry the operation). Channel control check is usually a severe error associated with parity errors in data addresses, CCW addresses or the contents of the CCW itself. If the error persists, the CE should be notified. *Note:* If channel control check is found, the operating system should always check whether a limited channel logout exists at storage location 176. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

IBM 3203 Printer, Models 1 and 2

This section describes the commands, status reports, sense information, and error recovery procedures which apply when the 3203 Printer, Model 1 or 2, is under control of the integrated printer attachment.

3203 COMMANDS

Write Commands

Write commands cause data to be transferred from main storage to the print line buffer; the data transfer is followed by the electro-mechanical print operation, including any carriage motion. The data transfer begins at the storage location designated by the data address (CCW bits 8 to 31) and proceeds in ascending order of address. The data transfer ends either when the print line buffer is filled or when the length count (CCW bits 48 to 63) has been reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. To correspond with the print line width, the count should be 132 (decimal). If the output area contains more characters than appropriate for the print line width or if the count is less than the print line width, incorrect length (bit 41 in the CSW) is indicated unless the SLI flag is on and the CD flag is off in the current CCW. Channel end (bit 36 in the CSW) is indicated when the data transfer from main storage to the print line buffer has been completed. Device end (bit 37 in the CSW) is indicated when the mechanical print operation and any carriage operations have been carried out. Channel end and device end are interruption conditions (but only for the last command if chaining is in progress).

The printer attachment accepts the write commands shown in Figure 73.

Carriage Control Commands

Carriage control commands consist of space and skip commands and the 'load carriage control buffer' command. For space and skip commands, the command code is transferred to the printer attachment, then channel end is indicated in the initial status and the carriage operation is started. Device end is indicated when the mechanical operation is completed at the 3203. Device end is an interruption condition for space and skip commands, unless command chaining is in progress.

Figure 74 shows the space and skip commands available for the 3203.

Carriage Control Buffer Structure

The 3203's carriage is not controlled by paper tape (the method used in the IBM 1403 Printer and other IBM high-speed line printers). Instead, the 3203 employs a 192-byte carriage control buffer.

Each carriage control buffer byte represents one line on the forms sheet; byte 1 represents the first line of a sheet, byte 192 represents the last line of a sheet (assuming the largest possible sheet, which is 24 inches from fold to fold).

Command Code		Command
Hex	CCW Bits	
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	
01	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	Write without spacing
09	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	Write and space 1 after printing
11	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	Write and space 2 after printing
19	0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1	Write and space 3 after printing
89	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 1 after printing
91	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 2 after printing
99	1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 3 after printing
A1	1 0 1 0 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 4 after printing
A9	1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 5 after printing
B1	1 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 6 after printing
B9	1 0 1 1 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 7 after printing
C1	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 8 after printing
C9	1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 9 after printing
D1	1 1 0 1 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 10 after printing
D9	1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 11 after printing
E1	1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1	Write and skip to channel 12 after printing

Notes:

1. If a write and skip command specifies a channel for which no code exists in the buffer, the carriage does not move and the command ends with unit check set and the no channel found bit (bit 6) set in sense byte 0. An exception is when the 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature is active; in this case the no channel found bit is suppressed, and the command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is presented instead.
2. If a write and skip command orders the carriage to go to the channel at which it is currently located, the form moves until that channel is detected the next time.

Figure 73. 3203 Write Commands [10839A]

Each byte may be loaded with a number ranging from 0 to 12 (corresponding to the channel numbers punched in the familiar carriage control paper tape, used on the IBM 1403 Printer and others). The zero represents no channel designation ("no punch"). To designate the actual length of a form (specified on tape-controlled carriages by cutting the control tape to size) an end-of-sheet specification can be set into any byte of the buffer. The buffer byte codes are shown in Figure 75.

The end-of-sheet specification causes the counter (which monitors the position of the carriage) in the printer

Command Code		Command
CCW Bits		
Hex	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	
0B	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1	Space 1
13	0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1	Space 2
1B	0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1	Space 3
8B	1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 1
93	1 0 0 1 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 2
9B	1 0 0 1 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 3
A3	1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 4
AB	1 0 1 0 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 5
B3	1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 6
BB	1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 7
C3	1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 8
CB	1 1 0 0 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 9
D3	1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 10
DB	1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1	Skip to channel 11
E3	1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1	Skip to channel 12
5B	0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1	Advance to end of sheet

Notes:

1. If a skip command specifies a channel for which no code exists in the buffer, the carriage does not move and the command ends with unit check set in the CSW and the no channel found bit (bit 6) set in sense byte 0. An exception is when the 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature is active; in this case the no channel found bit is suppressed, and the command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is presented instead.
2. If a skip command orders the carriage to go to the channel at which it is already located, and the preceding command moved the carriage or loaded the forms buffer, the carriage does not move and channel end and device end are presented. If the preceding command was a write without space, the carriage moves until the specified channel is detected next time.

Figure 74. 3203 - Carriage Control Space and Skip Commands [10840B]

attachment to wrap around when end-of-sheet is recognized. For information about correct end-of-sheet code placement see "Assigning the End-of-Sheet Code".

Assigning the End-of-Sheet Code: The end-of-sheet code must be set into the buffer byte that represents the last printable line of a given sheet. The last printable line of a sheet is determined by multiplying the sheet length (in inches) by the desired line spacing, which can be either six lines or eight lines per inch.

For example: A 12-inch sheet multiplied by eight lines per inch results in 96 printable lines per sheet. The end-of-sheet code must be assigned to line 96 (buffer byte 96). A 12-inch sheet used with six lines per inch spacing results in 72 printable lines per sheet, so the end-of-sheet code must be assigned to line 72. Correct end-of-sheet code assignment ensures that the carriage control buffer remains in synchronism with the form. If the end-of-sheet code is not assigned to the last printable line of a sheet, the control counter wraps around to zero too early or too late. Wrapping too early may cause information for the next sheet to be printed on the last lines of the previous sheet.

Buffer Byte Code Bits		Meaning
Hex	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	
00	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		No channel (no punch)
01	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	Channel 1
02	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	Channel 2
03	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1	Channel 3
04	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0	Channel 4
05	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1	Channel 5
06	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0	Channel 6
07	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1	Channel 7
08	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0	Channel 8
09	0 0 0 0 1 0 0 1	Channel 9
0A	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0	Channel 10
0B	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1	Channel 11
0C	0 0 0 0 1 1 0 0	Channel 12
0D..FF	0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0	End-of-sheet

Note: Any codes not specified in this table are treated as end-of-sheet codes.

Figure 75. 3203 - Carriage Control Buffer Byte Codes [10841A]

There is no error indication to show that the counter is not synchronized with the form.

Note: The end-of-sheet code must not be assigned to the same print line as another channel code. The last line can still, however, be printed if the 'advance to end of sheet' command is given: this command can be used to skip to the last printable line if printing on that line is required.

Load Carriage Control Buffer

The 'load carriage control buffer' command code is:

Hex	CCW Bits
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
63	0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1

The 'load carriage control buffer' command transfers data from main storage to the carriage control buffer. The load operation begins at the address specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and proceeds in ascending order of address. The buffer is loaded in ascending order of position until the buffer is filled, or the end-of-sheet code is detected, or the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is exhausted, whichever occurs first. At that time channel end is presented and the carriage line counter is reset to "first line". First line means that the current carriage position is assumed to represent the first line of the sheet. Device end is presented when the new data is stored in the microprogram code ready for automatic reloading at the next IMPL.

If there is no channel 1 code or no end-of-sheet code, or if both codes are missing from the loaded data, the unit check bit and the no channel found bit (sense byte 0) are set when the load command has been executed. The previously-used forms-control data remains in the forms control buffer.

If the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is installed in the system, the 3203's carriage control buffer can be loaded via the console keyboard by the operator.

Advance to End of Sheet

The 'advance to end of sheet' command causes the carriage to advance the forms to the last line, that is, until the end-of-sheet code is detected in the forms control buffer. If the forms are already positioned at the last line, they do not move. Channel end is presented at initial selection, and device end is presented when the mechanical operation is completed.

Programming Note: This command eliminates the need for manual adjustment of the carriage when reloading the forms control buffer. It enables the carriage to be moved by program control into a defined position before the 'load carriage control buffer' command is given. A skip to channel 1 following the load operation will then synchronize the form with the newly-loaded control information.

UCS Commands

Universal character set (UCS) commands are always available because the UCS feature is a standard feature of the 3203.

Figure 76 shows the UCS commands available for the 3203.

Hex	Command Code								Command
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
F3	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	Load UCS Buffer with folding
FB	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	Load UCS without folding
73	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	Block data check
7B	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	Allow data check

Note: The 'gate load' command (hex 'EB') is not used on the 3203. If this command is given it is treated as no-operation

Figure 76. 3203 UCS Commands [10842A]

Load UCS Buffer with Folding

The 'load UCS buffer with folding' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the UCS buffer. The data transferred represents the chain image. During transfer, the EBCDIC codes of the first, second, and third quadrants of the standard EBCDIC table are "folded" into the fourth quadrant of this table so that four different EBCDIC codes cause one and the same character to be printed. Because the quadrants of the EBCDIC table are identified by bits 0 and 1 of a byte, folding is technically accomplished by suppressing bits 0 and 1 during code comparison so that, effectively, the quadrant specification is ignored.

The data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and proceeds in ascending order of address until the 240-byte UCS buffer is filled or the length count (bits 48 to 63 of the CCW) has been reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. If the length

count is less than 240, the remaining positions are filled with zeros. At the end of the data transfer channel end is set and device end follows when the new buffer data has been recorded on the diskette. The UCS buffer remains loaded until it is reloaded or power goes off.

Load UCS Buffer without Folding

The 'load UCS buffer without folding' command is identical to the 'load UCS buffer with folding' command except that folding does not occur. Only one EBCDIC code corresponds to each print character.

Note: Dualing of the HN train with the AN train is carried out on the 3203 as described in *IBM 3203 Printer Component Description and Operator's Guide, GA33-1515*.

Block Data Check

The 'block data check' command provides the means to suppress data checks that can occur if, for example, the print line buffer contains a character bit pattern that is not available in the UCS buffer.

The 'block data check' command is always available because the 3203 is equipped with the UCS feature. The command causes neither data transfer nor any mechanical operation. Only the command code is transferred, and channel end and device end are both set in the initial status. When 'block data check' is given, data checks are suppressed until an 'allow data check' command is given, power goes off, or a power-on reset occurs.

Note: The 'block data check' command for the 3203 is not subject to any restriction in use. It can be given at any time, and can be included anywhere in a command chain.

Allow Data Check

The 'allow data check' resets the effect of a previously-issued 'block data check' command. The 'allow data check' command need only be given to reset a 'block data check' command; if neither command is given, data checks are allowed.

The 'allow data check' command causes neither data transfer nor any mechanical operation. Only the command code is transferred and both channel end and device end are set in the initial status.

Note: The 'allow data check' command can be given at any time, and can be included in a command chain.

Automatic UCS Buffer Initialization/Reloading

The UCS buffer is automatically loaded from the microcode at IMPL. At the first loading this data is the 48-character set recorded at the IBM plant. Any load UCS buffer command overwrites this initial data and the new buffer data is at the same time stored on the diskette. At the next IMPL, or after processor damage, the UCS buffer is automatically reloaded with the last pattern used.

'Control No-op' Command

The 'control no-op' command (command code 00000011) performs no function in the 3203. When this command is given, channel end, device end, and any other status conditions that exist at the time are indicated in the initial status.

Sense Commands

A 'sense' command and a 'sense I/O' command are available.

Sense

The 'sense' command is usually given when unit check has been set in the CSW, and provides a means of transferring up to six bytes of sense information from the printer attachment to main storage. When the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is active, however, only one sense byte is available. The sense bytes contain information about errors or unusual conditions in the printer or its controlling front end; the operating system analyzes this information before taking appropriate action to recover from the error(s). The 'sense' command code is:

Hex	CCW Bits
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
04	00000100

The sense information is stored into the main storage location specified by CCW bits 8 to 31, in ascending order of address. The number of sense bytes to be transferred is specified in CCW bits 48 to 63. Channel end and device end are both set when the transfer of sense information to main storage is completed.

For details of the information that can be obtained by use of the 'sense' command, see "3203 Sense Information" in this section.

Sense I/O

The 'sense I/O' command is given to obtain seven bytes of identification data. It is treated as a read command, that is, it resets the basic sense information. The command is accepted even if the printer is not ready or is in 1403/3203 carriage control mode. The seven identification bytes contain the following information:

Byte	Contents
0	Always hex 'FF', indicating correct execution of the command
1,2	Type number of system to which the 3203 is natively attached, for example 3115 or 3125
3	Always hex '00'
4,5	Printer machine number (3203)
6	Printer model number (01 or 02)

The 'sense I/O' command code is:

Hex	CCW Bits
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
E4	11100100

The identification bytes are stored into the main storage location specified by CCW bits 8 to 31, in ascending order of address. Channel end and device end are both set when the transfer of information to main storage is completed.

3203 STATUS INFORMATION

The following text gives the meanings of the status indications which are given in response to 3203 commands.

Unit Status

The unit status is indicated in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The unit status is directly related to a command that has been given to, completed by, or terminated by the 3203. The bits are assigned the following meanings:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is not used.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit, when set, indicates that the printer and its controlling front end logic are occupied with executing some previously-initiated operation.

When busy is set with another status condition, such as channel end or device end, it means that this status was pending.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit, when set, indicates that the data transfer part of a 3203 command, or the transfer of the command code, is completed.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit, when set, indicates that the 3203 has completed the mechanical portion (if any) of an operation. Device end thus signals that the printer is free to accept and execute a new command. Device end is set alone when the printer is manually transferred from the not-ready to the ready state (when the printer's START key is pressed).

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for various errors or other unusual conditions that may have occurred in the 3203 and/or its controlling front end logic. Because the setting of unit check does not define the error condition, a 'sense' command should be issued to the 3203. The contents of the sense bytes will show the actual cause of unit check being set. For details of the conditions that can cause unit check to be set, see "3203 Sense Information" in this section.

The setting of unit check breaks command chaining.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit, when set, indicates that the channel 12 code has been detected during a movement of the forms.

Channel Status

The channel status information is recorded in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW; the bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check (not used)
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the 3203 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter, or integrated attachment. For a description of the channel status bits, see *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000.

Note: A set PCI flag bit in the first CCW after a 'start I/O' instruction is not recognized if the 'start I/O' instruction finds the 3203 is not available.

3203 SENSE INFORMATION

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Train buffer parity check
6	No channel found
7	Channel 9

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit, when set, indicates that the current command was rejected because it was not assigned to the 3203. A read command being issued causes command rejection. The command reject bit is also set when the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is active in the system and a skip or write and skip command is given, but this command specifies a channel which has not been previously loaded into the forms control buffer: in this case, the no channel found bit (sense byte 0, bit 6) is suppressed. The fact that the current command has been rejected is indicated by *unit check* being set in the initial status. Setting of unit check causes chaining (if specified) to be suppressed.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit, when set, indicates that operator intervention is necessary because the 3203 has lost the ready state. The ready state is lost in the following situations:

1. When the 3203's STOP key is pressed.
2. When the train gate is open (cartridge not properly seated) or the locking lever is not closed. (The INTERLOCK light is on and bit 2 of sense byte 3 is set.)
3. When a forms jam has occurred or the supply of forms has run out. (The FORMS light is on and bit 1 of sense byte 2 is set.)
4. The stacker is full or a stacker jam has occurred. (The STACKER light is on and bit 2 of sense byte 3 is set.)
5. When any of the following checks occur. (The CHECK light is on.)

Device ready check (bit 7 of sense byte 2)

SS-ring check (bit 3 of sense byte 2)

Train buffer address register check (bit 4 of sense byte 2)

Hammer shift check (bit 5 of sense byte 2)

Carriage inhibit check (bit 3 of sense byte 3)

Carriage move check (bit 7 of sense byte 3)

Carriage step check one (bit 6 of sense byte 3)

Carriage step check 2 (bit 1 of sense byte 3)

Coil protect check (bit 2 of sense byte 2).

The coil protect check is the result of a hammer reset failure check (no bit is set in the sense bytes), which occurs when a fired hammer or a shift coil was not reset in time. The coil protect check can also be caused by an 'any-hammer-or-shift-coil-on' check (bit 6 of sense byte 2 is set).

The setting of the intervention required bit causes *unit check* to be set in the CSW at the initiation of a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction or at device end time, depending on when the condition arises. Intervention required is reset when the printer is restored to the ready state.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

This bit indicates a program-resettable error that occurred in the 3203 or the front end logic. The error is reset the next time the printer is selected for a 'start I/O', 'halt I/O', or 'halt device' instruction. The equipment check bit is reset by all commands except 'sense' and 'control no-op', provided the printer is ready.

The equipment check bit is set by one or more of the nine error conditions which are represented by the bits of sense bytes 4 and 5. For details of these conditions, see "Sense Byte 4" and "Sense Byte 5" in this section.

The detection of an equipment check causes unit check to be set at the time device end (with or without channel end) is set.

Note: Setting of the equipment check bit does not cause the 3203 to lose the ready state.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit can only be set when data checks are not prevented by a 'block data check' command. Data check will then be set if the print line buffer contains a character pattern for which no matching pattern is found in the UCS buffer during a UCS print operation. This is usually due to a wrong program being used, or to a pattern in the UCS buffer which is not suitable for the job, or to a wrong train being installed.

The fact that data check is set is indicated by unit check being set in the CSW at device end time.

Train Buffer Parity Check (Bit 5)

The train buffer parity check bit is set to indicate a chain buffer parity error. The presence of a train buffer parity check causes unit check to be set at channel end time.

No Channel Found (Bit 6)

The no channel found bit is set when a skip command or a write and skip command did not find the channel code (in the forms control buffer) to which the carriage was to advance. An exception is when the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is active: in this case, the no channel found bit is suppressed, and the command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is presented instead. The no channel found bit is also set if no channel 1 code or no end-of-sheet code is transferred from main storage when a 'load carriage control buffer' command is given. The setting of the no channel found bit causes unit check to be set at device end time.

Channel 9 (Bit 7)

The channel 9 bit, when set, indicates that a channel 9 code was detected in the carriage control buffer during the execution of a space command or a write and space command. The same situation when caused by a manual

space or any of the skip commands does not set the channel 9 bit. The setting of the channel 9 bit causes unit check to be set at device end time.

Sense Bytes 1 to 5

Note: Sense bytes 1 through 5 are suppressed when the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is active.

Sense Byte 1

Sense byte 1 is not used.

Sense Byte 2

The bits in sense byte 2 represent eight conditions, any of which can cause the 3203 to lose its ready state. The setting of one of these bits causes the intervention required bit to be set in sense byte 0. The bits in sense byte 2 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Interlock (chain gate open)
1	Forms check (jam)
2	Coil protect check
3	Subscan ring check
4	Train buffer address register check
5	Hammer unit shift check (applies to 3203 Model 1 only)
6	Any-hammer-or-shift-coil-on check
7	Device ready check

Interlock (Bit 0)

The interlock bit is set to indicate that a chain gate is open, or that the lock lever is not closed.

Forms Check (Bit 1)

The forms check bit, when set, indicates a paper jam or the end of forms. The bit is also set when the CARRIAGE RESTORE key is pressed and no channel 1 code is found in the carriage control buffer. This can only occur in the case of an attachment malfunction.

Coil Protect Check (Bit 2)

The coil protect check bit, when set, indicates that power was removed from the hammer and shift coil circuits to prevent damage to the hammer or shift coils.

Subscan Ring Check (Bit 3)

The subscan ring check bit is set if there is an error in the subscan ring counter (hardware) or a drum emitter failure.

Train Buffer Address Register Check (Bit 4)

This bit is set to indicate that there is a loss of synchronism between the train position and train buffer addressing at home pulse time (at this time, both should be in step).

Hammer Unit Shift Check (Bit 5)

The hammer unit shift check bit, when set, indicates a shift failure due to a malfunction of the linear motor. This bit is only used for a 3203 Model 1.

Any-Hammer-or-Shift-Coil-On Check (Bit 6)

The any-hammer-or-shift-coil-on check bit is set to show that protection of the hammer and shift coils is no longer possible because of a failure in the coil protect monitoring circuits. This bit can also mean that the 'any-hammer-on' latch was not turned off, because a hammer failed to fire thus setting bit 1 of sense byte 4.

Device Ready Check (Bit 7)

The device ready check bit, when set, indicates that the ready state could not be achieved because the train motor was not up to speed in time or line-printing was not finished in time.

Sense Byte 3

The bits in sense byte 3 represent three types of error associated with carriage control. The setting of one of these bits causes the intervention required bit to be set in sense byte 0. The bits in sense byte 3 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used)
1	Carriage step check 2
2	Stacker full or jam
3	Carriage inhibit check
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	Carriage step check 1
7	Carriage move check

Carriage Step Check 2 (Bit 1)

The carriage step check 2 bit, when set, indicates either a missing feedback pulse or an additional check pulse from the carriage mechanism.

Stacker Full or Jam (Bit 2)

The stacker full or jam bit, when set, indicates that the stacker is filled to capacity or is jammed.

Carriage Inhibit Check (Bit 3)

The carriage inhibit check bit, when set, indicates that the inhibit pulses which should be sent to a halted carriage are failing, or that the 'inhibit' line is damaged.

Carriage Step Check 1 (Bit 6)

The carriage step check 1 bit, when set, indicates additional feedback pulses or missing check pulses from the carriage mechanism, so that phase propagation for the stepper motor is defective.

Carriage Move Check (Bit 7)

The carriage move check bit, when set, indicates that the carriage failed to move or moved too slowly. The bit also indicates missing or additional feedback pulses.

Sense Byte 4

The bits in sense byte 4 represent eight error conditions, seven of which can cause the equipment check bit to be set in sense byte 0. A train buffer parity check (bit 5) will cause bit 5 in sense byte 0 to be set. An equipment check or a train buffer parity check caused by a condition in sense byte 4 is a program-correctable error.

Bit	Designation
0	Hammer reset failure check
1	No fire check
2	Misfire check
3	Print data buffer parity check
4	Check bit buffer parity check
5	Train buffer parity check
6	Buffer address register check
7	Clock check

Hammer Reset Failure Check (Bit 0)

This bit, when set, indicates that a hammer driver failed to reset when addressed for resetting or that a shift coil was not reset in time.

No Fire Check (Bit 1)

The no fire check bit, when set, indicates that a hammer failed to fire when addressed for firing.

Misfire Check (Bit 2)

The misfire check bit, when set, indicates that a hammer fired without being addressed.

Buffer Parity Checks (Bits 3, 4, and 5)

The buffer parity check bits for the print data buffer, check bit buffer and train buffer are set to indicate parity errors in the buffers concerned.

Buffer Address Register Check (Bit 6)

The buffer address register check bit is set when an addressing error causes a subscan to seem excessively long.

Clock Check (Bit 7)

The clock check bit is set when extra clock steps (possibly due to "noise") are detected.

Sense Byte 5

Bit 0 in sense byte 5 represents one further error condition (in addition to those in sense byte 4) which, when set, causes the equipment check bit to be set in sense byte 0. This equipment check is a program-correctable error.

Bit	Designation
0	Open coil check
1	(Not used)
2	(Not used)
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Open Coil Check (Bit 0)

The open coil check bit, when set, indicates that a lack of continuity was detected through one of the hammer coils during buffer loading.

3203 ERROR RECOVERY

The following text describes the minimum action the operating system should take to deal with errors or other unusual conditions that may occur. Errors and other unusual conditions are usually indicated by the setting of unit check or any of the other status bits (except an end condition or busy) in the CSW.

Unit Check in CSW

When a command ends with unit check set in the CSW, the operating system should issue a 'sense' command and subsequently inspect at least sense byte 0 to find the reason for the unit check. The following text describes the suggested error recovery procedures for errors shown by bits set in sense byte 0.

Command Reject (Sense Byte 0, Bit 0)

A likely cause of command reject being set is that a 'read' command has been issued. The operating system should trace back the program and provide a message advising the system programmer to correct the error.

Note: If the 1403/3203 carriage control feature is active, the command reject bit will be set when a skip or write and skip command is given which specifies a channel not previously loaded into the forms control buffer.

Intervention Required (Sense Byte 0, Bit 1)

If the intervention required bit is set, the printer has lost its ready state and manual intervention is required. The operating system should analyze sense bytes 2 and 3 because these bytes contain error information not necessarily indicated by the 3203's indicator lights. If sense bytes 2 and 3 show the cause of the error, an appropriate message should then be issued to the operator advising him of the error and requesting him to press the printer's START key (to restore the ready state).

If the error is not obvious from the information in sense bytes 2 and 3, the message should advise the operator to check for the end of forms and to inspect the indicator

lights on the 3203 operator panel. These lights, as described below, can suggest the reason for the printer losing its ready state.

INTERLOCK Light On: The operator should close the train gate and make certain the lock lever is fully engaged. If this does not correct the error, the CE should be notified.

FORMS Light On: The operator should check whether new forms must be inserted or whether a forms jam has occurred. In the case of end of forms, the printer continues printing until the end-of-sheet code is found in the carriage control buffer. The operator must then insert new forms and press the 3203's START key. If the end of forms has not been reached, the operator should check for a jam. If there is no obvious jam, the positioning of the forms should be checked to ensure that overprinting does not occur.

CHECK Light On: An error has occurred either in the 3203 or in the front end. Errors in the printer can be conditions such as a forms jam, a chain sync check, any-hammer-on check, a carriage sync check, and so on.

Hardware malfunctions of this type may be overcome by pressing the 3203's START key. If possible, the operator should check that the condition which turned on the light did not cause incorrect printing or incorrect forms movement. In the case of repeated hardware errors, CE attention is required.

Errors in the printer front end may be checks such as subscan-ring check, train buffer address register check, coil protect check, and so on. In any such case, the operating system should issue an appropriate message (based on the information in sense bytes 2 and 3) which advises the operator to restore the ready state by pressing the printer START key. The program should repeat the last operation or restart at a logical point. If errors that cause the CHECK light to go on persist, the CE should be notified.

In the case of a carriage step check, the operator should check whether manual carriage operations (single space, restore) can be performed. If they can be performed, the operation should be set up again, otherwise the CE should be notified.

STACKER Light On: The operator should remove the printed forms from the stacker, or clear the stacker jam. The stacker should then be re-adjusted, the START key pressed and operation continued. If the STACKER light comes on when the stacker is not full and no stacker jam has occurred, the CE should be notified.

Equipment Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 3)

If the equipment check bit is set, the operating system should analyze the data provided by sense bytes 4 and 5, and issue a message to the operator advising him of the condition. The program should then retry the last command or display the last print line on the video display. Equipment check conditions are not usually so severe that a

retry would be ineffective. However, if equipment check persists, the CE should be notified.

Data Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 4)

If the data check bit is set, the print pattern sent to the 3203 does not match the pattern in the UCS buffer. In this case, either incorrect print data was offered or the UCS buffer is incorrectly loaded for the job. If the UCS buffer has to be loaded with a new pattern, the operator must check that the appropriate train cartridge is installed in the 3203.

Train Buffer Parity Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 5)

If the train buffer parity check bit is set, the operating system should display the last line to be printed and repeat the operation. If the error persists, the CE should be notified.

No Channel Found (Sense Byte 0, Bit 6)

If the no channel found bit is set, the carriage control buffer has been loaded with information that is not appropriate for the current program, or an attempt has been made to load invalid data (that is, data from which the channel 1 code or the end-of-sheet code is missing) into the forms control buffer under program control. The operating system should either reload the carriage buffer or issue a message that indicates what type of control information should be loaded. The operator may also be advised to check the forms on the printer to determine which control program is required.

Channel 9 (Sense Byte 0, Bit 7)

If the channel 9 bit is set, the operating system should take the appropriate action, depending on the use and meaning of channel 9. Setting of the channel 9 bit may indicate a programming error such as the wrong carriage control information for the current program.

Unit Exception in CSW

If the unit exception bit is set, a channel 12 code was detected during spacing and interpretation depends on the meaning which the programmer has assigned to channel 12. For example, if channel 12 is used to signal the approaching end of a sheet, and the printed information is not yet complete, the program should branch back to a routine that advances the paper to the beginning of a new sheet (for example, skips to channel 1, which is generally used to indicate the first print line of a new sheet).

Channel Data Check in CSW

The channel data check bit is usually set as a result of a parity error in the data transferred (such as in a buffer load operation) between main storage and the printer attachment. The output at the printer is unreliable and the operating system should either retry the operation or use the video screen to display the contents of the output area as it should have been printed. Retry should in any case be attempted. Repeated channel data checks require CE attention.

Note: If channel data check is set, the operating system should analyze storage location 176, which contains the limited channel logout. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

Channel Control Check in CSW

If the channel control check bit is set, the operation was either terminated or not started due to a severe error in the Model 115's main storage controller or internal bus system. Retry should be attempted and, if unsuccessful, the CE should be notified.

Note: If channel control check is set, the operating system should analyze storage location 176, which contains the limited channel logout. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

IBM 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility, Models A2, B1, and B2

This section describes the commands, data formats, status reports, sense information, and error recovery procedures for the 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility, Models A2, B1, and B2, when under control of the direct disk attachment. A 3340 installation used with the 3115-0 models can consist of two, three, or four disk drives. The prerequisite Model A2 contains two disk drives and a control unit. One or two more drives can be added by attaching a 3340 Model B1 (one drive) or a 3340 Model B2 (two drives). All attachable models of the 3340 can be fitted with the 3340 fixed-head feature.

A 3340 installation used with the 3115-2 models can consist of up to eight drives. The prerequisite Model A2 contains two disk drives and a control unit. Six further drives, consisting of any combination of the B models (Model B1 has one drive and Model B2 has two drives) may be attached. All attachable models of the 3340 can be fitted with the 3340 fixed-head feature.

The characteristics of the IBM 3348 Data Modules used on the 3340 are shown in Figure 77.

	Model of Data Module	
	3348-35	3348-70 and 3348-70F
Cylinders per data module	348	696
Tracks per cylinder	12	12
Bytes per track	8,368	8,368
Bytes per cylinder	100,416	100,416
Bytes per module	34,944,768	69,989,952

Figure 77. Characteristics of 3348 Data Modules [10843D]

The 3348 Data Modules listed in Figure 77 can be used on any 3340 except that the 3348-70F module is only permissible when the direct disk attachment and the 3340 drives are equipped with the 3340 fixed-head feature. Standard modules (35 or 70 megabytes) can operate on a system equipped with the 3340 fixed-head feature, and so can a mixture of modules (3348-35, 3348-70, and 3348-70F). It is possible to change the drive capacity by changing the data module. The online storage capacity of a 3340 installation can thus vary from approximately 70 megabytes (2 drives with 3348-35 data modules) to approximately 280 megabytes (4 drives with 3348-70 data modules) for 3115-0 and 560 megabytes (8 drives) for 3115-2.

The 3348-70F data module has the same number of data tracks, alternate tracks, and CE-tracks as the 3348-70 module. The difference between the 3348-70 module and the 3348-70F module is that the 3348-70F module has the logical cylinders 1 through 5 located under fixed read/write

heads. The fixed heads provide a maximum area of 502,080 bytes of storage per module, free of any seek-access time. The area is best used for data sets or portions of data sets which have high activity and therefore fully exploit the zero seek time of cylinders 1 through 5.

The data modules are initialized at the IBM plant. During a surface analysis the home addresses, and the eight-byte track descriptions in each record zero, are written. If a skippable defect is found on a track, the corresponding skip displacement bytes (see Figure 80) are written in the home address. During subsequent operations these bytes are used by the control unit to skip the defect. If the data areas of the modules become defective during service, an IBM utility program can be used to flag defective tracks and assign alternate tracks.

All 3340 models have an average access time of 25 ms (0 ms for cylinders 1 through 5 when a 3348-70F is mounted), an average rotational delay of 10.1 ms, and a nominal read/write rate of 885,000 bytes per second.

3340 COMMANDS

Figure 78 shows the commands which are available for the 3340.

Note: Contrary to the rules stated in *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000, the direct disk attachment checks the validity of data addresses in all CCWs, even if (as in immediate commands) the data address is not used. Data addresses of 256K and higher cause a program check.

Read Commands

Read commands are used to transfer information from the disk drives to main storage. 'Read data', 'read key and data', and 'read count key and data' commands can be executed in a special record overflow mode. All read commands except 'read initial program load' can be executed in a special multi-track mode (see Figure 78).

Record overflow mode allows the processing of records which extend from one track to the next. Such records are known as overflow records. To indicate this overflow, the 'write special count, key and data' command is provided, which formats an overflow record segment with bit 4 set in the flag byte (see Figures 80 and 81). Whenever a read or *non-formatting* write command processes the data field of a flagged record, the operation is not terminated at the end of the data field but continues at the data field of record one on the following track. If this record is also flagged, the operation again continues onto the next track. If the advancing read/write head encounters an unusual condition or is inhibited by the file mask, the operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is set.

The second special mode in which read commands (except 'read initial program load') can be executed is multi-track mode. Multi-track mode can be set only when read or search commands are given. It is switched on when bit 0 of the CCW is set, causing the control unit to select automatically the read/write head with the next sequential number. This switching of heads takes place at the index point if bit 0 is set and if the data transfer specified in the command has not been initiated.

Read Data

The 'read data' command causes the contents of the data area of a record (see Figure 80) to be transferred to main storage. The data to be read is either:

1. The data area of the record following the next count area (excluding record zero — the track description record) encountered on the track, or
2. The data area of the record encountered when a 'read data' command is chained from a 'read count' or search command (other than 'search home address').

A parity bit is added to each byte of data sent to the direct disk attachment and the validity of the information read is verified. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented. If data overrun or data check is detected, the disk attachment retries the command, and if the retry is unsuccessful, channel end, device end, and unit check are set. The data in the key area is not checked during a 'read data' command.

Command Code				Operation	Type
Single Track		Multi-track			
Hex	CCW Bits 01234567	Hex	CCW Bits 01234567		
06	00001110	86	10000110	Read data	Read
0E	00001110	8E	10001110	Read key and data	
1E	00011110	9E	10011110	Read count, key and data	
16	00010110	96	10010110	Read record zero	
12	00010010	92	10010010	Read count	
1A	00011010	9A	10011010	Read home address	
02	00000010			Read initial program load	
22	00100010			Read sector (not used on Model 115)	
05	00000101			Write data	Write
0D	00001101			Write key and data	
1D	00011101			Write count, key and data	
01	00000001			Write special count, key and data	
15	00010101			Write record zero	
19	00011001			Write home address	
11	00010001			Erase	
39	00111001	B9	10111001	Search home address equal	Search
31	00110001	B1	10110001	Search identifier equal	
51	01010001	D1	11010001	Search identifier high	
71	01110001	F1	11110001	Search identifier equal or high	
29	00101001	A9	10101001	Search key equal	
49	01001001	C9	11001001	Search key high	
69	01101001	E9	11101001	Search key equal or high	
04	00000100			Sense I/O	Sense
A4	10010100			Read buffered log*	
B4	10110100			Sense drive reserve **	
94	10010100			Sense drive release **	
03	00000011			No-operation	Control
07	00000111			Seek	
0B	00001011			Seek cylinder	
1B	00011011			Seek head	
0F	00001111			Space count	
13	00010011			Recalibrate	
17	00010111			Restore	
1F	00011111			Set file mask	
23	00100011			Set sector (not used on Model 115)	

* The 'read buffered log' command does not reset the buffered log information. This is done by the "save usage counters" manual operation.

** Available only when the string switch feature (3115-2 only) is installed.

Figure 78. 3340 Commands [10844A]

A 'read data' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by any other command.

Read Key and Data

The 'read key and data' command causes the contents of the key and data areas of a record to be transferred to main storage. The key and data to be read are either:

1. The key and data areas of the record following the next count area (excluding record zero) to be encountered on the track, or
2. The key and data areas of a record encountered, when a 'read key and data' command is chained from a 'read count' command or from a search identifier command.

If the key length is zero, the 'read key and data' command is executed like a 'read data' command.

A parity bit is added to each byte of data sent to the direct disk attachment and the validity of the information read is verified. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented. If a data overrun, command overrun, or data check is detected, the disk attachment retries the command, and if the retry is unsuccessful, channel end, device end, and unit check are set.

A 'read key and data' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by any other command.

Read Count, Key and Data

The 'read count, key and data' command causes all areas (that is, count, key and data) of the next following record, excluding record zero, to be transferred to main storage. A parity bit is added to each byte of data sent to the disk attachment and the validity of the information is verified. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented. A 'read count, key and data' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by any other command.

Read Record Zero

Record zero is the track description record. A 'read record zero' command causes the count, key, and data areas of record zero to be transferred to main storage. The attachment searches for the index point, counts over gap one, the home address, and gap two, and transfers the data from record zero. A 'read record zero' command chained from a 'search home address' or 'read home address' command is executed immediately and does not cause a search for the index point. After data transfer begins, the 'read record zero' command is processed in the same way as a 'read count, key and data' command.

A 'read record zero' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Read Count

A 'read count' command causes the eight bytes of the next following count area (excluding record zero) to be transferred to main storage. A parity bit is added to each byte of data sent to the disk attachment, and the validity of the information is verified. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented. If data overrun, command overrun, or data check is detected, the attachment retries the command, and if the retry is unsuccessful, channel end, device end, and unit check are set.

A 'read count' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Read Home Address

The 'read home address' command causes five bytes of the home address area, consisting of a one-byte flag, a two-byte cylinder number, and a two-byte head number, to be transferred to main storage. A parity bit is added to each byte of data sent to the disk attachment, and the validity of the information is verified. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented. If data overrun or data check is detected, the disk attachment retries the command, and if the retry is unsuccessful, channel end, device end, and unit check are set.

A 'read home address' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Read Initial Program Load

The 'read IPL' command causes the disk attachment to seek cylinder zero and head zero, and read the data area of record one. After data transfer begins, the command is executed in the same way as a 'read data' command. A 'read IPL' command must not be preceded by a 'set file mask' command or a 'space count' command in a chain, otherwise the 'read IPL' command is rejected, and unit check is set in the initial status.

Read Sector

The 'read sector' command causes one byte to be transferred from the disk attachment to main storage. As the rotational position sensing feature is not used on the Model 115, the value 00 (hexadecimal) is transferred to main storage.

Non-formatting Write Commands

Non-formatting write commands cause data to be transferred from main storage to a disk drive. They are used to update existing records, including overflow records.

Note: Data chaining is possible only in gaps, for example in the gap following the count field or the key field. Attempts to chain data when the head is over a field will cause an overrun and an indication of incorrect length. Violation of this rule can cause an invalid track format.

Write Data

The 'write data' command is normally given for updating the data area of a record. The command causes the specified data to be transferred from main storage to a disk drive. The data transfer continues until the length count specified in the count area of the record has reached zero. The data is then verified, and the next command in the chain is read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented.

If the 'write data' command is not chained from a 'search identifier equal' command, or a 'search key equal' command in which the comparison of all bytes of the search field on the track gives an equal result, the command is rejected and unit check is set.

If the CCW count is less than specified in the data area length field of the count area, zeros are written in the remainder of the data area.

Write Key and Data

The 'write key and data' command is normally given for writing on the key and data areas of a record. The

command is executed like a 'write data' command except that the key area is also updated. If the key area length specified in the count field is zero, the 'write key and data' command has the same effect as the 'write data' command.

If the 'write key and data' command is not chained from a 'search identifier equal' command in which the comparison of all five bytes of the search field gives an equal result, the command is rejected.

Formatting Write Commands

Formatting write commands cause data to be transferred from main storage to a disk drive. The commands are used to initialize tracks and records, and define the lengths of the areas in each record.

Certain clearly defined conditions must exist when formatting write commands are given, otherwise the commands are not executed. These conditions, some of which apply to command chaining, are stated in the following command descriptions.

After the last formatting write command in a chain has been executed, the remainder of the track is erased. If a command of another type is chained from a formatting write command, it is executed after the erasure has taken place. If data overrun occurs during a formatting write operation, the disk attachment writes valid zeros from the time of its detection to the end of the record.

Before reading the following descriptions of formatting write commands, it may be useful to refer to the disk record format shown in Figure 80.

Write Home Address

The 'write home address' command causes seven bytes (the two skip displacement bytes, the flag byte, two cylinder number bytes and two head number bytes) to be transferred from main storage to a disk drive. The first three bytes are generated by the disk attachment. If the 'write home address' command is chained from a successful 'search home address' command that has a CCW count of four or more, the 'write home address' command is executed. If not, bit 6 of the flag byte (byte 3) must be set, thus indicating that the track is defective: if bit 6 is zero the command is not executed, and channel end, device end, and unit check are set in the final status. The command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is also set.

If bit 6 of the flag byte is set, the skip displacement bytes are examined. If they have a bit configuration which indicates a defect in the normal home address area, a gap G1 of 235 bytes is written. If both skip displacement bytes contain all zeros, however, a gap G1 of 107 bytes is written. If the skip displacement bytes show a defect in the count area of the normal record zero, bit 0 of the flag byte in the home address is set before the 'write home address' command is executed.

If the file mask prerequisites are satisfied, the disk attachment selects the index point, writes gap G1, the two physical address bytes, the seven bytes transferred from main storage, and seven detection code bytes. The next command in the chain is then read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented.

If the byte count in bits 48 to 63 of the CCW is less than three, the 'write home address' command is rejected. If the byte count is more than two but less than seven, the disk attachment provides valid zeros until seven bytes have been written. If the byte count is greater than seven, only the first seven bytes are written.

Write Record Zero

The 'write record zero' command causes data (the track description record) to be transferred from main storage and written on a disk, following the home address area. The first eight bytes from main storage are written in the count area. (The flag byte, the physical address bytes and the skip displacement bytes do not come from main storage but are generated by the disk attachment.) The rest of the data from main storage is written in the key area and the data area, as specified by the respective length counts in the count area. The detection code is written at the end of each field. After such a code has been written for the data area, the disk attachment reads out the next command, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented.

The amount of data transferred from main storage to the disk drive never exceeds eight bytes plus the number of bytes specified in the key length and the data length. If the CCW count is less than this total, the disk attachment writes valid zeros in the remainder of the record.

The 'write record zero' command is rejected if it is not chained from a 'write home address' command or a 'search home address' command whose argument was equal to the four bytes (the two cylinder number bytes and the two head number bytes) of the home address area.

Write Count, Key and Data

The 'write count, key and data' command causes a complete record (the count area, key area, and data area) to be transferred from main storage to a disk drive. The first eight bytes from main storage (the flag byte is generated by the disk attachment) are written in the count area. The rest of the data from main storage is written in the key area and the data area, as specified by the respective length counts in the count area. The detection code bytes are written at the end of each area. After writing such bytes for the data area, the disk attachment reads out the next command, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented.

The data transferred from main storage to the disk drive never exceeds eight bytes plus the number of bytes

specified in the key length and the data length: if the CCW count is less than this total, the disk attachment writes valid zeros in the remainder of the record.

The 'write count, key and data' command must be chained from a 'write record zero' command, a 'write count, key and data' command, or from a 'search identifier equal' or 'search key equal' command in which the comparison of all bytes of the search field on the track gives an equal result. (A 'read data' command or a 'read key and data' command may be inserted between the search command and the 'write count, key and data' command.) If these rules are not followed, the command is rejected.

Write Special Count, Key and Data

The 'write special count, key and data' command has the same effect as the 'write count, key and data' command, except that the disk attachment sets flag bit 4 to indicate an overflow record segment. The command is used to format overflow record segments.

If any write command except 'write home address' is chained to a 'write special count, key and data' command the command reject bit will be set.

Erase

The 'erase' command has the same effect as the 'write count, key and data' command, except that the disk attachment erases the rest of the track.

Data is transferred from main storage but is not written on the disk. If any write command except 'write home address' is chained to an 'erase' command, the command reject bit is set.

Search Commands

Search commands are issued to find information previously written on the disk storage drive. During search operations, the main storage controller works in write mode, and the disk drive works in read mode. The disk attachment compares the information coming from main storage with that coming from the disk drive.

Each search command operates on one record only: for a subsequent record the search command must be reissued. When the search condition is satisfied, the disk attachment sets an internal status modifier bit, which causes the next command to be skipped. Thus, the successful search operation is used to continue with the channel program.

The following command chain is an example of this procedure:

<i>Command Chain</i>	<i>Function</i>
Search key equal	Compares the key with the search argument.
Transfer in channel * - 8	Returns to the search command if searching was unsuccessful.
Read data	Reads the data area if the status modifier was set by a successful search operation.

The 'transfer in channel' command causes the search operation to be repeated until it is successful. After the successful search, the 'transfer in channel' command is skipped and the 'read data' command is executed.

If a search command is the last in a chain and a successful comparison occurs at the first attempt, channel end, device end, and the status modifier are present in the ending status. If the comparison is unsuccessful, only channel end and device end are present.

If a search command is *not* the last in a chain, and a successful comparison occurs, the following command is skipped. If the skipped command is the last in a chain, only channel end and device end are present in the ending status. If the comparison is unsuccessful, the next command is executed.

Search commands may be executed in either single-track or multi-track mode, depending on the state of bit 0 in the CCW (Figure 78).

Search Home Address Equal

The 'search home address equal' command causes the disk attachment to search until the index point is found, then to compare the four bytes of the home address (cylinder and head) coming from main storage with the equivalent four bytes coming from the disk drive. The flag byte is not transferred or compared during a 'search home address equal' command.

If the length count in the CCW exceeds four bytes, the search operation is completed when the four bytes have been received by the disk attachment. A successful comparison causes the next command to be skipped. If the length count in the CCW is less than four bytes, the comparison between the data coming from main storage and the data coming from the drive continues only for the number of bytes specified. If the search conditions of this short field are satisfied, the next command is skipped.

If a bus out parity error is detected during the search operation, unit check, channel end and device end are generated.

A 'search home address equal' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Search Identifier Equal

The 'search identifier equal' command causes a comparison to be made to establish if the five bytes of data coming from main storage are equal to the five-byte identifier (cylinder, head and record numbers) coming from the disk drive. The identifier searched is from the next record on the track, record zero included.

If the multi-track bit (CCW bit 1) is zero, only one track is searched. As long as the chained command is reissued, the search continues until the search condition has been satisfied. If this does not occur before two index points have been sensed, unit check and the no record found bit

(sense byte 1, bit 4) are set, and the channel end and device end signals are generated.

If the multi-track bit is set, the head number is incremented by one each time the index point is sensed and, so long as the command is repeated, the search continues until the head number has reached 12. This condition causes unit check and the end of cylinder bit (sense byte 1, bit 2) to be set.

If the length count in the CCW exceeds five bytes, the search operation ends when five bytes have been compared. A successful comparison causes the next command to be skipped. If the length count in the CCW is less than five bytes, the comparison between the data coming from main storage and the data coming from the disk drive continues only for the number of bytes specified. If the search conditions of this short field are satisfied, the next command is skipped.

If a bus out parity error is detected during the search operation, unit check, channel end and device end are generated.

A 'search identifier equal' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Search Identifier High

The 'search identifier high' command has a similar effect to the 'search identifier equal' command except that the criterion of comparison is whether the identifier received from the disk drive is higher than the identifier received from main storage.

Search Identifier Equal or High

The 'search identifier equal or high' command has a similar effect to the 'search identifier equal' command except that the comparison determines whether the identifier received from the disk drive is equal to or higher than the identifier received from main storage.

Search Key Equal

The 'search key equal' command causes a comparison to be made, to establish if the bytes of data coming from main storage are equal to the key area bytes coming from the disk drive. The key searched is that of the next record, excluding record zero, unless the 'search key equal' command is chained from a 'read count' command or a 'search identifier' command. In these cases, the key searched is the one in the record whose identifier was read or searched. The 'search key equal' command is executed on the Key of record zero only if an immediately preceding search identifier command was executed on the count of record zero. If the comparison is successful, the next command is skipped. If the comparison is unsuccessful or the record has no key, the next command is executed.

If the multi-track bit is zero, only one track is searched. As long as the chained command is reissued, the search

continues until the search condition has been satisfied. If this does not occur before two index points have been sensed, unit check and the no record found bit (sense byte 1, bit 4) are set, and the channel end and device end signals are generated.

If the multi-track bit is set, the head number is incremented by one each time the index point is sensed, and, so long as the command is repeated, the search continues until the head number has reached 12. This condition causes unit check and the end of cylinder bit (sense byte 1, bit 2) to be set.

If the length count in the CCW exceeds the key length on the record, the search operation ends when the key has been completely read. A successful comparison causes the next command to be skipped. If the length count in the CCW is less than the key length on the record, the comparison of the data coming from main storage with the data coming from the disk drive continues until the number of bytes specified in the CCW has been compared. If the search conditions of this short field are satisfied, the next command is skipped.

When a 'search key equal' command is issued for a record with a key length of zero, the result of the comparison is never equal. If a 'search key equal' command is issued for such a record and a 'read data' command follows in the chain, the data field to be read is that of the next record encountered.

If a bus out parity error is detected during the search operation, unit check, channel end and device end are generated.

A 'search key equal' command is executed whether or not it is preceded by another command.

Search Key High

The 'search key high' command has a similar effect to the 'search key equal' command except that the comparison determines whether the key received from the disk drive is higher than the key in main storage.

Search Key Equal or High

The 'search key equal or high' command has a similar effect to the 'search key equal' command except that the comparison determines whether the key received from the disk drive is equal to or higher than the key in main storage.

Sense Commands

Sense I/O

The 'sense I/O' command causes 24 bytes of sense information to be transferred from the disk attachment to main storage. The bytes identify the error or unusual condition which caused the last unit check. When the unit check bit is set in the CSW for a disk storage device, all other disk storage devices on the system will respond to further addressing with control unit busy.

After the sense information has been transferred to main storage, the next command in the chain is read out, or, if the chain has been completely executed, channel end and device end are presented.

Sense information is reset to zero whenever an initial status byte of zero is given in response to an instruction other than 'test I/O' or a command other than 'no-operation'.

Read Buffered Log

The 'read buffered log' command causes 24 bytes of usage and error statistics to be transferred from the disk attachment to main storage and to the SVP. The statistics refer to the device addressed by the 'start I/O' instruction and the drive identified by sense byte 4. The statistics are reinitialized after the data has been transferred.

If the byte count in the CCW is less than 24, only the specified number of bytes is transferred to main storage. If the byte count in the CCW is greater than 24, only 24 bytes are transferred to main storage.

Sense Drive Reserve, Sense Drive Release

'Sense drive reserve' and 'sense drive release' are commands which are only available on 3115-2 models with the 3340 String Switch feature installed. The two commands allow the CPU which issues them to reserve a specific disk drive for its own activities, then to release it. Once a drive is reserved by one CPU, selection attempts by the other CPU will be answered with device busy until the reserving CPU issues a 'sense drive release' command. Only the reserving CPU can release the string. The 'sense drive reserve' command and the 'sense drive release' command each deliver 24 sense bytes to the issuing CPU.

Note: The 'sense drive reserve' and 'sense drive release' commands are not supported by DOS/VS. If DOS/VS users wish to use these commands to "lock out" one CPU or the other from access to a drive (or several drives), they must write their own support programs. If users do not wish to use the 'sense drive reserve' and 'sense drive release' commands, they can nevertheless avoid uncontrolled updating of the same file by two CPUs by proper job control, device assignment, use of the data module write inhibit switches, and so on.

Control Commands

Control commands do not cause a transfer of data between a disk drive and main storage. In certain control operations, however, a few bytes may be transferred between main storage and the disk attachment.

No-Operation

The 'no-operation' command causes no action at the disk drives. It is processed as an immediate command.

The 'no-operation' command should be used with care, otherwise results are unreliable. If a 'no-operation' is chained, a record may be partly or wholly skipped. For

example, if a 'no-operation' command is given between 'read count' and 'read data' commands, the data area of one record is skipped, and the data area of the following record is read.

Seek

The 'seek' command causes the seek address to be transferred from main storage to the disk attachment. The attachment checks the file mask (see "Set File Mask") and if the command cannot be executed it is rejected. If the command can be executed, the attachment selects the disk drive, moves the access mechanism to the specified cylinder and selects a read/write head. If the seek address specifies a cylinder with a fixed read/write head (cylinders 1 to 5 of a 3348-70F module) the access mechanism does not move: the fixed head is merely selected.

Six address bytes are required. If the length count in the CCW exceeds six, only six bytes are transferred. If the count is less than six, or if the seek address is invalid, the command is rejected, and channel end, device end, and unit check are set in the CSW.

When the seek address has been transferred, the access mechanism is moved, if necessary. If no mechanical motion is required, however, and the command is last in the chain, device end is presented. If mechanical motion is required, and the command is last in the chain, channel end is set in the initial status and device end is set when the mechanical motion is complete.

Seek Cylinder

The 'seek cylinder' command has the same characteristics as the 'seek' command.

Seek Head

The 'seek head' command causes the seek address to be transferred from main storage to the disk attachment. The disk attachment selects the head on the specified disk drive. The cylinder address bytes are checked for validity and no access motion is initiated.

Six address bytes are required (Figure 79). If the length count is less than six, or if the seek address is invalid, the command is rejected, and channel end, device end, and unit check are set in the CSW. If the 'seek head' command is last in a chain, channel end and device end are presented when the seek address has been transferred.

Space Count

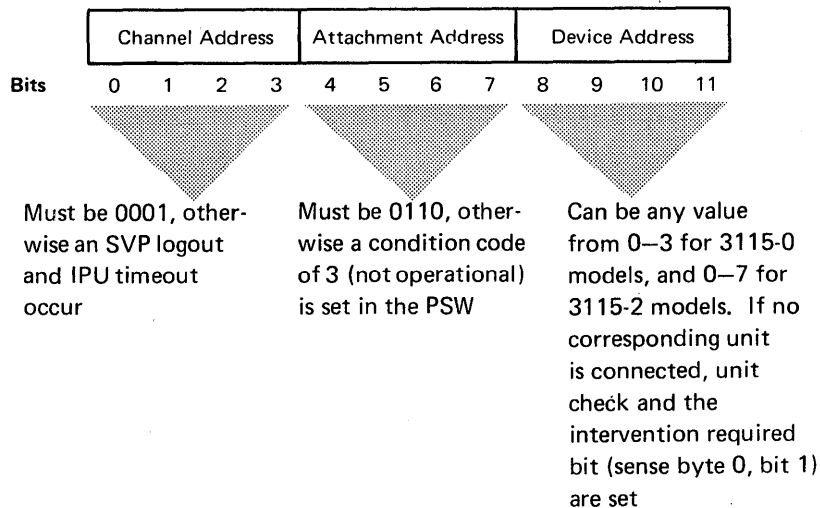
The 'space count' command is used to bypass a defective area of track in order to recover the following data. The command can have two different effects, depending on its position in a chain.

If the 'space count' command is *not chained* from a read, search, write or another 'space count' command, it causes the disk attachment to:

1. Search for index point.
2. Count over gap one, the home address, and gap two.

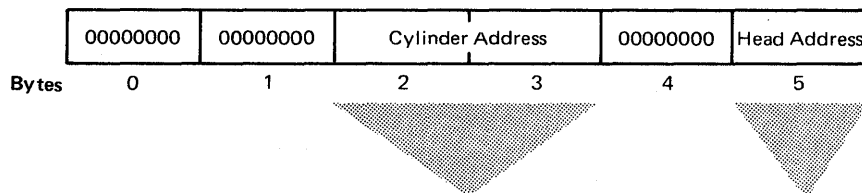
Device Addresses

This illustration shows the format of a 12-bit address used in addressing disk storage devices.



Seek Addresses

This illustration shows the format of the 6-byte seek address read out by a seek command to select a track on a disk drive within a 3340 facility. The seek command is rejected if the format is violated.



35-megabyte data module:

	<i>0–349</i>	<i>0–11</i>
Data tracks	0–347	0–11
Alternate track	348	0–11
CE track	349	0–11

70-megabyte data module:

	<i>0–696</i>	<i>0–11</i>
Data tracks	0–692	0–11
Alternate track	693–694	0–11
CE track	695–696	0–11

3340 Disk Addressing

Figure 79. 3340 Disk Addressing [10845A]

3. Space over the count area of record zero, while three bytes of data are fetched from storage.
4. Set an 'end of count area' internal indicator.
5. Read out the next command in the chain.

Thus, the 'space count' command can be used to recover or bypass a defective count area on record zero. When the 'space count' command is followed by a 'read key and data' command, the disk attachment reads the key and data areas of record zero. If the track contains only the home address, the disk attachment sets data check (sense byte 0, bit 4).

When the 'space count' command is followed by a 'read count, key and data' command, the disk attachment reads record one. If the track contains only the home address, or only the home address and record zero, the disk attachment sets the no record found bit (sense byte 1, bit 4).

If the 'space count' command is chained from a read, search, write or another 'space count' command, it causes the disk attachment to:

1. Find the beginning of the next count area (including that of record zero).
2. Space over the count area, while three bytes of data are fetched from main storage.
3. Set an 'end of count' internal indicator.
4. Read out the next command in the chain.

Thus, the 'space count' command can be used to bypass a bad count area. As an example, if record N has a defective count area, the following sequence may be used to recover its key and data areas, provided record N is not record zero, and provided the key length and data length are known and are supplied by the 'space count' command:

- Read home address
- Search identifier (record N - 1)
- TIC* - 8
- Space count
- Read key and data.

If the key length and data length supplied by the 'space count' command are incorrect, however, unpredictable results (data check, no record found) can occur.

The first byte of data fetched from main storage by a 'space count' command is used as the key length, and the last two bytes are used as the data length. If the length count in the CCW exceeds three, only three bytes are transferred. If the count is less than three, the number of bytes specified in the CCW is transferred, and a value of zero is assumed for the remainder.

If the 'space count' command is chained from any formatting write or an 'erase' command, the command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is set. This bit is also set if a write, 'erase' or 'set file mask' command is issued in the same chain following the 'space count' command, or if the index point is detected before the 'space count' command has been completely executed.

Recalibrate

The 'recalibrate' command causes the disk drive to seek

cylinder zero and head zero. A 'recalibrate' command is permitted by the same file protection mask as a seek command.

The 'recalibrate' command is not an immediate command: it normally presents an initial status byte of zero if it is the first command in a chain. Because there is no data transfer, the SLI bit must be set.

The disk attachment presents channel end in the ending status. If the 'recalibrate' command is last in the chain, device end is set in the CSW when the operation is completed.

Restore

The 'restore' command does not cause any operation in the disk attachment or the disk drives: it is provided for compatibility with other IBM direct access storage devices. If this command is first in a chain, the disk attachment presents an initial status of zero. If it is last in a chain, channel end and device end are set in the CSW when the final status is reported.

The 'restore' command is not an immediate command. Because there is no data transfer the SLI bit must be set.

Set File Mask

The 'set file mask' command causes one byte of data to be transferred from main storage to the disk attachment. This byte specifies which write and seek command can be executed. Bits 0 and 1 permit or inhibit write commands as shown in the following table:

Bit 0	Bit 1	Meaning
0	0	All write commands except 'write home address' and 'write record zero' are permitted.
0	1	All write commands are inhibited.
1	0	All write commands except formatting write commands are permitted.
1	1	All write commands are permitted.

Bits 3 and 4 permit or inhibit seek commands as shown in the following table:

Bit 3	Bit 4	Meaning
0	0	All seek commands are permitted.
0	1	Only the 'seek cylinder' and 'seek head' commands are permitted.
1	0	Only the 'seek head' command is permitted.
1	1	All seek commands and head switching are inhibited.

Bit 5 has the following meanings:

Bit 5	Meaning
0	Inhibit diagnostic write commands
1	Allow diagnostic write commands and permit seek commands to CE tracks

Bits 2 and 6 of the mask must be zero, otherwise the 'set file mask' command is rejected.

A 'set file mask' command can be located anywhere within a chain. When the command chain has been completely executed, all bits in the file mask are reset.

If a 'set file mask' command is issued more than once in a command chain, unit check is presented in the initial status and command reject (sense byte 0, bit 0) is set. If a write command is issued in violation of the file mask, unit check and command reject are set. If a seek command is issued in violation of the file mask, unit check and the file protected bit (sense byte 1, bit 5) are set. If a multi-track or overflow operation violates the seek portion of the file mask, unit check and the file protected bit are set.

A system reset causes the file mask to be set to zero, which means that the 'write home address' and 'write record zero' commands are inhibited.

Set Sector

The 'set sector' command causes one byte of information to be transferred to the disk attachment. As the rotational position sensing feature is not used on the Model 115, the 'set sector command' causes no operation to be performed and track orientation is lost. Channel end and device end are set together in the final status.

Block Multiplexing

When the disk subsystem is operated in block multiplexing mode, up to four command chains (one for each attached disk drive) can be executed in the attachment at the same time. To enable block multiplexing, bit 0 of control register 0 must be set.

Block multiplexing permits data transfer to overlap with the mechanical motion of disk devices without causing an excessive number of CPU interruptions. It allows command sequences which involve long time-independent delays to be used without making the channel busy. The disk attachment stores the information necessary to control a temporarily "disconnected" command chain for each drive in the disk subsystem. A chain is disconnected if, after the issue of a seek command, a delay occurs because the addressed drive is busy. The disk attachment is available during access motion.

If a unit check is detected during command chaining, the control unit is busy and the only disk drive available is the one addressed when the error occurred.

3340 STRING SWITCH (FOR 3115-2 MODELS)

In a 3340 disk subsystem, the term "string" means the disk drives controlled by a single 3340 Model A2 (that is, the drives in any B1 or B2 models attached to the Model A2, plus the drives in the Model A2 itself). The 3340 string switch is an electronic device which allows the whole string of 3340 drives to be accessed by both the host 3115-2 and another CPU.

The possibility of two CPUs having access to the same files can provide flexibility and backup in data base

applications. In some circumstances, too, the string switch feature can give substantial savings because two CPUs can share the same disk subsystem.

A string switch installed in a 3115-2's disk subsystem only allows another CPU to have access to the 3115-2's disk drives. It does not allow the 3115-2 to have access to the disk subsystem of the other CPU.

The string switch is field-installable and is plugged into the 3340 Model A2. The feature includes cables for the second interface. Note that the switch may *only* be plugged into the Model A2, and not into Models B1 or B2.

Note: A 3340 subsystem with the string switch feature installed can only work in 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 compatibility mode if the string switch is disabled.

String Switch Operation

The string switch provides electronic switching between three states: neutral, connection to interface 1, and connection to interface 2. Neutral is the normal state and prevails when neither CPU has issued an I/O command. When the string switch is at neutral, the whole string of disk drives is ready for one CPU or the other to request access by issuing a 'start I/O'. When one of the CPUs issues an SIO, the switch makes a connection to that CPU's interface.

When one CPU is connected to the disk drives, the other CPU receives device busy status (bit 35 set in the CSW); not channel busy or control unit busy. If both CPUs simultaneously attempt to select the same disk drive (or two different drives), the string switch resolves the contention by connecting one CPU while the other receives device busy status.

The string switch connects to an interface in one of two ways: a "short connection" or a "long connection". The short connection is used for status interrogation and/or resetting. The long connection is used for data transfer.

When the string switch connects to one of the two interfaces, it initially makes a short connection. The disk controller (in the Model A2) then evaluates the status and, if satisfied, orders the string switch to make a long connection by sending it the appropriate tag sequence, depending on the command. At the end of an operation, the disk controller sends the appropriate tag sequence to return the string switch to the neutral state.

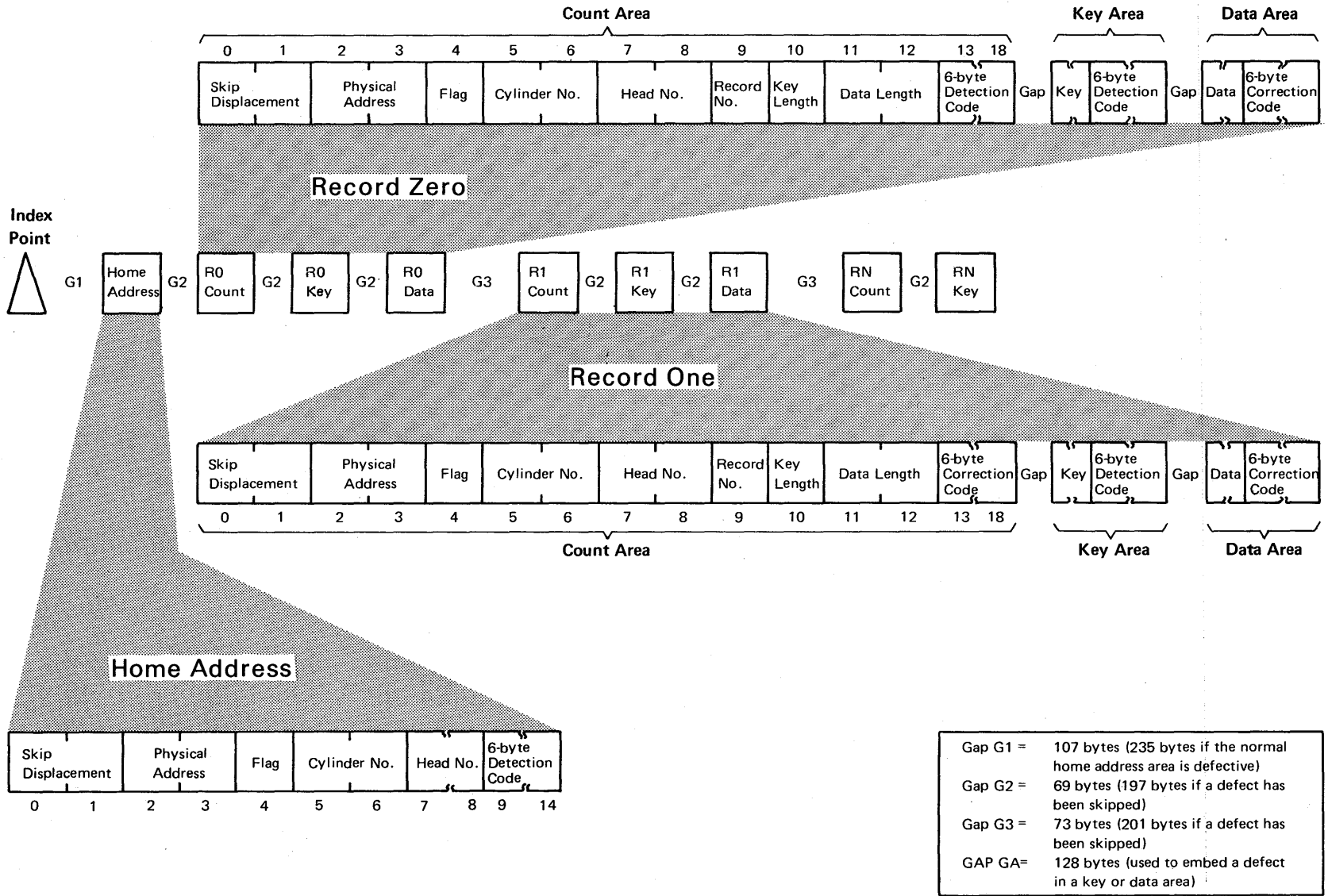
Interruption conditions are routed to the interface to which the drive is connected, and occasionally to both interfaces, depending on the interfaces' "need to know", as described in the following text.

Ready Interruption: When a drive is made ready by the operator, such as occurs initially after power-on or following a pack change, device end from that drive is routed to both interfaces. The same applies when the operator presses the attention key on a drive.

If the drive has been reserved by one interface, the other interface receives device end (due to 'ready', a pack change, or 'attention') only after the drive has been released. (See

Figure 80. 3340 Record Formats [10846]

3340 Record Formats



“Sense Drive Reserve, Sense Drive Release” earlier in this section.)

End-of-Busy Interruption: When one interface issues a ‘start I/O’ instruction and receives a response of device busy, device end is routed to that interface when the busy condition ends. For example: if interface 1 is executing a read command on drive 160, and interface 2 addresses drive 161, interface 2 receives device busy. The device end for drive 161 is routed to interface 2 when the read operation is completed on interface 1. If a reserved drive is addressed by the other interface, device end is given only after the drive has been released. If an interface does not address a drive while the drive is busy, the ending of the busy condition is indicated only to the interface which was operating on that drive.

The fixed-head feature may be installed in all shared drives.

Effect of String Switch on DOS/VS

The string switch has no effect on DOS/VS except the ‘device busy’ which is given to one CPU (in response to an SIO instruction) when the other CPU has access to the string. However, in order to provide CEs with a unique error display format for each CPU, installation of a string switch requires that the recovery management support (RMS) of DOS/VS is active. RMS is activated by specifying SUPVR macro parameters CHAN = YES or RMS = YES during DOS/VS supervisor generation.

The sharing of the disk subsystem between two CPUs does not affect the operating system used by the second CPU (except as noted in the last paragraph). The channel, control unit, and device addresses of the shared drives remain the same as they would be for a dedicated subsystem.

The string switch enables the 3340 subsystem to be switched between the 3115-2’s DDA and any of the following:

- The DDA of another 3115-2 or 3125-2 Processing Unit.
- The 3330/3340 series IFA of a System/370 Model 135.
- The IBM 3345 Storage and Control Frame Model 3, 4, or 5 of a System/370 Model 145.
- The integrated storage control of a System/370 Model 158 or Model 168.
- The IBM 3830 Storage Control Model 2, attached to a selector or block multiplexer channel on the second CPU.

All forms of disk control are valid to the string switch.

The ‘sense drive reserve’ and ‘sense drive release’ commands are valid, independent of support from the operating system.

3340 TRACK AND RECORD FORMATS

Each addressable track begins at an index point and ends at the next index point. All tracks have the same basic format; home address, track description record, and one or more data records. Figure 80 shows the format of a 3340 disk track and its records. Figure 81 describes the sub-areas of a record.

Home Address

Each track has one nine-byte home address and six detection code bytes. The contents of the home address bytes define the physical location of the track.

The home address (and the standard record zero) is written at the IBM plant before the data module is sent to the user. If a skippable defect is found on the track, the appropriate entry is made in the skip displacement bytes. The control unit then skips the defect during subsequent operations.

Physical Address

The physical address is generated by the disk attachment, as defined in Figure 81.

Flag Byte

The flag byte bits provide the following information about defective recording areas.

Bit 0: When set, bit 0 indicates that the skip displacement bytes show a defect causing the count field of record zero to be displaced.

Bits 1 to 5: Bits 1 to 5 are not used, and are always zeros.

Bits 6 and 7: When set, bits 6 and 7 mark defective recording areas in the following way:

Bit 6	Bit 7	
0	0	Normal track
0	1	Alternate track
1	0	Defective track
1	1	Defective track

Cylinder Number and Head Number Bytes

The four-byte sub-area identifying the cylinder and head number (bytes 5 to 8) corresponds to the physical seek address of the track. The usual practice is for the operating system to copy this four-byte area from the home address into bytes 5 to 8 (cylinder and head) of the count area of each record during formatting.

Record Zero

Record zero can be used as a normal data record but it is usually reserved for use by the operating system. Record

zero differs from all other records in the following ways:

- Every addressable track contains only one record zero.
- Record zero is always the first record on a track after the home address.
- 'Read count', 'read count, key and data', and 'write count, key and data' commands do not operate on record zero. Special commands are available for reading and writing record zero only.
- The 'read key and data' command operates on record zero only if preceded in a command chain by a 'space count' command or by a search identifier command which has successfully searched for record zero.
- The 'read data' command operates on record zero only if preceded in a command chain by a 'space count' command, or by a search identifier or search key command which has successfully searched for record zero.
- Search key commands operate on record zero only if preceded in a command chain by a 'space count' command, or by a search identifier command which has successfully searched for record zero.
- The 'write data' command and the 'write key and data' command operate on record zero only if preceded by a search identifier command which has successfully searched for record zero.

Track Capacity

The number of records that can be written onto a track varies according to their length. The following equations,

Area	Sub-Area	Byte Length	Function
Count Area	Skip Displacement	2	Generated by disk storage control. In automatic surface defect handling, these bytes represent the displacement from the beginning of the G2 gap, which immediately follows the count area, up to the defect. If the count field is beyond the defect, or if automatic surface defect handling is not being used, the bytes are zero
	Physical Address	2	Generated by the disk attachment for seek verification. Byte 1, bits 0–7 Low order portion of the track cylinder address Byte 2, bit 0 Unused (zero) bit 1 High-cylinder address bit (binary 256) bit 2 Unused (zero) bits 4–7 Physical head address
	Flag Byte	1	Generated by the disk attachment. Bits 0, 1, 2 Automatic surface defect handling: Bit 0 Defect in next count field Bit 1 Defect in key field of this record Bit 2 Defect in data field of this record Bit 3 Unused (zero) Bit 4 Overflow record flag. Indicates that the logical record continues on next track. This bit is set in each segment of an overflow record except the last one Bit 5 Unused (zero) Bits 6–7 These bits mark defective recording areas, as follows: Bit 6 Bit 7 0 0 Normal track 0 1 Alternate track 1 0 Defective track 1 1 Defective track
	Identifier	5	Uniquely identifies a record regardless of its content. There are usually four track address bytes and one record number
	Key Area Length	1	Defines the length of the key area on the record. If the contents are zero, the key area and the following gap are omitted from the record
	Data Area Length	2	Defines the length of the data area. If the contents are zero it indicates the end-of-file record
	Detection Code Bytes	6	Used for error detection and correction when reading the count area
	Key Area	Key	As defined in KL of count area, plus 6 detection code bytes	Identifies the information in the data area. Once formatting has been done, the contents of this area, but not its length, can be altered. If the key is changed, the data area must be re-written
Detection Code Bytes		6	Used for error detection and correction when reading the key area
Data Area	Data	As defined by DL in count area, plus 6 detection code bytes	Stores the unit of user information defined by the key area. Once formatting has been done, the contents can be altered but not the length. A data area can be rewritten without affecting any other area in the record
	Correction Code Bytes	6	Used for error detection and correction when reading data area

Figure 81. 3340 Disk Record Sub-Areas [10847]

which also include the home address and the standard record zero (KL = 0, DL = 8), apply for the calculation of disk track loading:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Track capacity} &= 8,535 \text{ bytes} \\ \text{Bytes per record} &= C + \text{KL} + \text{DL} \\ \text{Number of equal length} & \\ \text{records per track} &= \frac{8,535}{C + \text{KL} + \text{DL}} \end{aligned}$$

where C = 167 if key length (KL) is zero,
and C = 242 if key length (KL) is not zero.

The number of records (n) with different key and data lengths that can be written on a track must satisfy the following equation, in which a standard record zero has already been considered:

$$8,535 - \sum_{i=1}^n [C + \text{KL}(i) + \text{DL}(i)] \geq 0$$

where C = 167 if key length (KL) is zero,
and C = 242 if key length (KL) is not zero.

When record zero is not standard, the following formula should be used:

$$8706 > [\text{KL}(0) + \text{DL}(0) + C - 4 + \sum_{i=1}^n [\text{KL}(i) + \text{DL}(i) + C]$$

3340 STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the meanings of the status indications given in response to 3340 commands.

Unit Status

The unit status information is recorded in CSW bits 32 to 39. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is set when a search high, search equal, or search equal or high command has been executed

and the search condition has been satisfied. If the status modifier bit is set together with the busy bit, the control unit is busy.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is set when a previously presented control unit busy condition has been terminated. The bit is also set together with the unit check bit when a unit check condition is detected after device end has been set.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set when the addressed 3340 is busy executing a previously-initiated command. The busy bit is also set if a command or an instruction (except 'test I/O') is issued to a 3340 for which status has not been cleared. If the busy bit is set together with the status modifier bit, the control unit is busy.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit is set when the channel is available for further use. If command chaining is used, the channel end bit is set only for the last command in the chain.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit is set when the 3340 is free to execute another command. The device end bit is set together with the channel end bit after the satisfactory completion of a command chain which did not require mechanical motion.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set when an error or unusual condition is detected in the disk subsystem. A system interruption occurs and information about the condition causing the unit check is available in the sense bytes, and can be retrieved by a 'sense I/O' command. For details of the conditions that can set unit check, see "3340 Sense Information" in this section.

Channel end and device end are always presented with unit check unless the unit check bit is set during initial selection.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when an end-of-file record has been detected during execution of a 'read initial program load', 'read record zero', 'read count, key and data', 'read key and data', 'read data', 'write key and data', or 'write data' command. The unit exception bit is not set for 'read count', 'write count, key and data', or search key and search identifier commands. Unit exception status is generated when a data length of zero is detected in the count area of the end-of-file record. The key field, if any, is transferred when specified by the command.

Channel Status

The channel status is given in response to 3340 commands if these cause unusual conditions or were improperly specified. The channel status is indicated in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW, as follows:

Bit	Designation
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits (except the PCI bit) have the same standard functions for the 3340 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*.

The following additional information on the PCI bit applies specifically to the 3340.

Program-Controlled Interruption (Bit 40)

The program-controlled interruption bit is set to indicate that the PCI flag bit was set in the CCW to which the status refers. The timing of the program-controlled interruption depends on the type of command given. For control commands, the interruption is signaled to the MIP/IPU when the control information has been transferred. For commands which are only given during orientation, the time when the interruption is requested depends on the amount of data to be handled.

If more than 256 bytes are to be transferred, the interruption is requested from the MIP/IPU during the data transfer. The interruption is dropped, however, if the MIP/IPU does not respond to the disk attachment during the transfer of the last 255 bytes. If the field is shorter than 256 bytes, the program-controlled interruption is not requested and the PCI bit is carried over to the new command.

Channel Control Check

The channel control check bit is set when the disk attachment detects an error while fetching a CCW or when incorrect tag lines were raised to the MSC during data transfer. The bit is also set when the attachment has a permanent internal error.

Interface Control Check

The interface control check bit is set when a disk drive permanently signals an error alert to the disk attachment. This occurs when the interface to the device is damaged.

3340 SENSE INFORMATION

There are 24 bytes of sense information available for the disk attachment and the 3340. The sense bytes are used for the following purposes:

- To identify the causes of the most recent unit check.
- To provide secondary information which the system may need for error recovery.
- To provide further information which may aid the customer engineer to diagnose a malfunction in the disk subsystem.
- To record usage information which indicates the number of bytes read and the number of times the access mechanism has moved to each logical address.

Sense information is made available to the program when a 'sense I/O' command is issued. The sense information also appears on the SVP log when a logout is made for a fault in the disk subsystem.

Sense bytes 0 to 2 are only generated when the unit check bit has been set in the CSW. These bytes provide general information on the error condition and indicate the action necessary for recovery. Sense bytes 0 to 2 also define the format of sense bytes 4 to 7 (which hold more detailed information about the error condition).

The following paragraphs describe the contents of the 24 sense bytes provided for the 3340.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	(Not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Track condition check
7	Seek check

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set by any of the following conditions, which are defined more specifically in sense byte 7:

1. An invalid command, or a command associated with an uninstalled feature, is given.
2. Commands are given in an invalid sequence.
3. An invalid or incomplete argument is transferred as a result of a control command.
4. No home address is recorded on the track.
5. A write command is given which violates the file mask.
6. A write command is given when the write inhibit switch on the 3340 operator panel is in the READ position. The write inhibited bit (sense byte 1, bit 6) will also be set.

7. The flag byte transferred as a result of a 'write home address' command indicates that the home address area is to be moved down the track, but this flag byte does not show that the track is defective.
8. A formatting write command other than 'write home address' or 'write record zero' is attempted on a defective or alternate track.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set when the addressed 3340 is not connected to the system or is not available for use, possibly because the motor is not running or a cover is open. Bit 1 is also set when a fixed-head data module (3348-70F) is installed on a drive that is not equipped with the fixed-head feature.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set when an unusual hardware condition has been detected in the disk attachment, the control unit or a disk drive. The conditions which set equipment check are defined in sense bytes 7 to 23.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set when a data error has been detected in the information transmitted from a 3340. If the correctable bit (sense byte 2, bit 1) is also set, the data error is correctable and sense bytes 15 to 21 provide the information which the system needs to correct the error. If the data error is uncorrectable, sense byte 7 identifies the condition specifically.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set when a data byte is not received from the MSC in time to be written onto the data module, or was not received from the data module in time to be transferred to the MSC. When an overrun is detected, data transfer is stopped immediately.

If the overrun bit is set during a read operation, the data bytes from the disk drive are lost. In write operations, the lost portion of the record area is made up by valid zeros.

Track Condition Check (Bit 6)

The track condition check bit is set in any of the following situations.

1. Any single-track command other than 'search home address', 'read home address', or 'read record zero' is executed on a defective track.
2. The read/write mechanism switches to a defective track during execution of any multi-track or overflow command other than 'search home address', 'read home address', or 'read record zero'.
3. When, during any multi-track operation (including 'read home address', 'read record zero', or 'search home address'), or during any overflow operation, an attempt is made to continue processing from an alternate or defective track, whose status is known to the disk

storage control. The storage control is aware of alternate or defective status only if some single-track read or search command has been executed on the track in the current command chain, and no control command other than no-operation has been executed since the single-track read or search command.

If a track condition interruption occurs, no read/write head switching is performed.

Seek Check (Bit 7)

The seek check bit is set when a disk drive has been unable to complete a seek operation because an equipment failure prevented the access mechanism from reaching the correct position.

Sense Byte 1

The bits in sense byte 1 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Permanent error (not used)
1	Invalid track format
2	End of cylinder
3	Bus-out parity (not used)
4	No record found
5	File protected
6	Write inhibited
7	Operation incomplete

Invalid Track Format (Bit 1)

The invalid track format bit is set when an attempt is made to write data in excess of track capacity. The bit is also set during a read or search operation when the index point is detected in the gap following a count field or key field.

Setting of the invalid track format bit indicates a programming error or the detection of an expected program condition.

End of Cylinder (Bit 2)

The end of cylinder bit is set when one of the following conditions occurs:

1. There is an attempt to continue beyond the addressable cylinder boundary during a multi-track read or search operation.
2. There is an attempt to continue beyond the addressable cylinder boundary during an overflow operation. The operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is also set.

Setting of the end of cylinder bit indicates a programming error or the detection of an expected program condition.

No Record Found (Bit 4)

The no record found bit is set when the two index points have been detected during the execution of a command chain without an intervening read operation in the home address area or data area, or without an intervening write, 'sense I/O', or control command. Exceptions to this rule are

the 'read home address' and 'read record zero' commands, which cause a search for the index point prior to execution. Before the no record found bit is set, the disk attachment always verifies that the access mechanism is properly positioned.

Setting of the no record found bit indicates a programming error or the detection of an expected program condition.

File Protected (Bit 5)

The file protected bit is set when one of the following violations occurs:

1. A seek command has violated the file mask.
2. A multi-track read or multi-track search operation has violated the file mask.
3. An overflow operation has violated the seek portion of the file mask. The operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is also set.

Setting of the file protected bit indicates a programming error or the detection of an expected program condition.

Write Inhibited (Bit 6)

The write inhibited bit is set when a write command has been issued to a disk drive which has its write protect switch on. The command reject bit (sense byte 0, bit 0) is also set.

Operation Incomplete (Bit 7)

The operation incomplete bit is set when one of the following conditions arises during the processing of an overflow segment:

1. The overflow violates a file-protected boundary. The file-protected bit (sense byte 1, bit 5) is also set.
2. The overflow violates a cylinder boundary. The end of cylinder bit (sense byte 1, bit 2) is also set.
3. A correctable data check is detected in a data field other than the last segment. The data check bit (sense byte 0, bit 4) and the correctable bit (sense byte 2, bit 1) are also set.
4. A defective or alternate track condition is detected after data transfer has begun. The track condition check bit (sense byte 0, bit 6) is also set.

Note: Sense byte 3 contains the restart command and sense bytes 7 to 23 provide information which further defines the error.

Sense Byte 2

The bits in sense byte 2 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used)
1	Correctable
2	(Not used)
3	Environmental data present
4	(Not used)
5	Fixed-head data module
6	Data module size
7	Data module size

Correctable (Bit 1)

The correctable bit is set when a data check (bit 4 set in sense byte 0) is correctable. Sense bytes 15 to 22 further identify the error.

Environmental Data Present (Bit 3)

The environmental data present bit is set to indicate that the sense data contains usage/error counter information. This bit is set in response to a 'read buffered log' command but *not* in response to a 'sense I/O' command.

Fixed-Head Data Module (Bit 5)

This bit is set when the sense data comes from a fixed-head data module.

Data Module Size (Bits 6 and 7)

The data module size bits define the capacity of the selected 3348 Data Module as follows:

Bit 6	Bit 7	Meaning
0	0	Invalid
0	1	35 megabytes
1	0	70 megabytes
1	1	Invalid

Sense Byte 3

Sense byte 3 contains the restart command which is generated when the operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is set. The restart command assists in identifying the operation which was in progress when the interruption, caused by the incomplete operation, occurred.

The restart command and the CSW provide information which can be used by the system recovery program to construct a new CCW, which is issued to the disk attachment to continue the operation at the point of interruption.

When the operation incomplete bit is set, the restart command is set to 06 (hexadecimal) if a basic read operation was in progress, or to 05 (hexadecimal) if a basic write operation was in progress. Sense byte 3 contains all zeros when the operation incomplete bit is off.

Sense Byte 4

Sense byte 4 identifies, in the following way, the physical drive and storage control that were addressed by a 'sense I/O' command.

Bit	Identity
0	Drive A
1	Drive B
2	Drive C
3	Drive D

Each of these physical drives may have been given any of the four 12-bit logical device addresses, so sense byte 4 allows the SVP to relate a disk module to its assigned address during logging. The sense information is thus identified with a physical drive.

Sense Byte 5

Sense byte 5 identifies the eight low-order bits of the cylinder address in the most recent seek argument, as follows:

Bit		
0	128	} Cylinder number (low)
1	64	
2	32	
3	16	
4	8	
5	4	
6	2	
7	1	

Sense Byte 6

Sense byte 6 identifies the three high-order bits of the cylinder address and the four read/write head address bits in the most recent seek address, as follows:

Bit		
0	1024 Cylinder	} Cylinder number (high)
1	512 Cylinder	
2	256 Cylinder	
3	0 (not used)	} Head
4	8	
5	4	
6	2	
7	1	

Sense Byte 7

Sense byte 7 has two functions. Firstly, it specifies the format of sense byte 8 to 23. Secondly, it provides message tables which give additional information on errors.

Figure 82 shows how bits 0 to 3 of sense byte 7 specify the format of sense bytes 8 to 23.

Bits	Format of Sense Bytes 8 to 23
0 1 2 3	
0 0 0 0	Format 0: Programming or system check
0 0 0 1	Format 1: Device and control unit equipment check
0 0 1 0	Format 2: Disk attachment equipment check
0 0 1 1	Format 3: (Not used)
0 1 0 0	Format 4: Data checks not providing displacement information
0 1 0 1	Format 5: Data checks providing displacement information
0 1 1 0	Format 6: Usage/error statistics
0 1 1 1	Format 7: Unsuccessful setting/resetting of check circuits

Figure 82. 3340 – How Sense Byte 7 Specifies the Format of Sense Bytes 8 to 23 [10848A]

For each of the formats shown in Figure 82 a unique message table is provided which defines the error condition more specifically. The error tables are formed by bits 4 to 7 of sense byte 7.

Sense Bytes 8 to 23

Sense bytes 8 to 23 define the various kinds of checks that can affect the 3340 disk subsystem. These bytes also provide usage/error statistics. The 16 bytes do not have unique assignments but their information content varies according to the format specified by bits 0 to 3 of sense byte 7. The seven formats available are listed in the tables below, under "Formats".

The error definitions given in sense bytes 8 to 23 may be of programming checks, system checks, equipment checks, or data checks, depending on the format. The usage/error statistics provide accumulated counts of significant events during subsystem operation, such as the number of bytes read and searched, and the number of access motions initiated by the channel.

The information provided by sense bytes 8 to 23 is mainly for the use of the customer engineer. For a full description, see the *IBM 3340 Component Summary*, GA26-1619.

Formats

Format 0 (Programming or System Check)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0	No message
1	Invalid command
2	Invalid sequence
3	CCW count less than required
4	Invalid argument
5	(Not used)
6	Defective track
7	Alternate track
8-9	(Not used)
A	Diskette error on inline test
B	Command overrun
C	Data overrun
D	Index detected in gaps of records
E	MSC responded with incorrect retried CCW
F	(Not used)

Format 1 (Device and Control Unit Equipment Check)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0	No message
1	Set program-error
2	Microprogram-detected errors
3	Set TSF error
4	Sync out timing error
5	Unexpected file status on initial selection (intervention required)
6	Reserved
7	Transmit head error
8	Transmit difference error
9	File status not as expected during read IPL
A	Seek verification check on physical address
B	Seek incomplete sector non-compare
C	No interrupt from drive
D	Defect skipping - reorientation check
E	Fixed-head module on unfeatured drive, or invalid module size
F	(Not used)

Format 2 (Disk Attachment Equipment Check)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0	No message
1	DDA error (microprogram trap B)
2	File bus in P check
3	Undefined microprogram trap B
4	File MSC control, file channel control error detected
5	Undefined timeout (hardware)
6	No response from MSC on IOP requests
7	No 'last byte xfered' indication
8	No 'start field' indication
9*	No chaining done

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
A*	No "CCW-0-OK" indication received
B	'Recycle' does not drop at end of field
C	Transfer control error detected
D	(Not used)
E	(Not used)
F	Search logic test error

* Messages 9 and A will appear in the DDA log. No sense bytes are presented on a channel control check or interface control check.

Format 3 (Not Used in This DDA)

Format 4 (Data Check Not Providing Displacement Information)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0	Home address field data check
1	Count field data check
2	Key field data check
3	Data field-ECC uncorrectable
4	HA field - no sync byte found
5	Count field - no sync byte found
6	Key field - no sync byte found
7	Data field - no sync byte found
8-F	(Not used)

Format 5 (Data Checks Providing Displacement Information)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0-2	(Not used)
3	Data Field - Correctable
4-F	(Not used)

Format 6 (Usage/Error Statistics)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
0*	Read buffered log
1	File attention at reset time
2	Usage counter overflow
3	File attention during 'start I/O'
4	(Not used)
5	File attention during idle
6	(Not used)
7	Counter offload from command decode
8	Save usage counters
9	Counter offload from sense command
A-F	(Not used)

* Message 0 will appear for a 'read buffered log' command only. All other messages are for SVP logs and will not be seen by the system.

Format 7 (Unsuccessful Setting/Resetting Check Circuits)

Message (hex) bits 4-7	Meaning
1	Unsuccessful check reset
2	Unsuccessful forcing of checks
3	Trap-B not working
4-F*	(Not used)

* Format 7 messages 1 to F are used as an extension of format 2 errors

3340 ERROR RECOVERY

The following text describes the minimum action the operating system should take to deal with errors or unusual conditions in the disk subsystem. Errors are usually indicated by the setting of unit check or any of the channel status bits except the PCI bit.

Unit Check in CSW

If unit check is set, the operating system should issue a 'sense I/O' command to retrieve the contents of at least sense bytes 0 to 2. The following paragraphs describe the suggested recovery procedures for conditions represented by these three bytes.

Command Reject (Sense Byte 0, Bit 0)

If the command reject bit is set, an invalid command or command sequence has been given, or the file mask has been violated. The operating system should provide a message for the operator, giving details of the erroneous command.

If the write inhibited bit (sense byte 1, bit 6) is set at the same time as command reject, a write command has been issued to a disk drive in the write inhibited state. A message to this effect should be transmitted to the operator.

Intervention Required (Sense Byte 0, Bit 1)

If the intervention required bit is set, the addressed disk drive is offline or a fixed-head data module has been installed on a drive that is not equipped with the fixed-head feature. The operating system should notify the operator by means of a message.

Equipment Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 3)

The setting of the equipment check bit indicates an unusual condition in the hardware of the disk subsystem. The operating system should repeat the operation. If the error persists after ten retries, the operating system should retrieve sense bytes 7 to 23, analyze them, and place a message on the video screen for the operator.

Data Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 4)

If the data check bit is set, a data error has been detected in the information transmitted from the disk drive. The operating system should examine the correctable bit (sense byte 2, bit 1) and, if it is set, perform the error correction function. If the correctable bit is not set, the operation should be retried and, if it is not successful after ten attempts, the operating system should notify the operator.

If a command chain has not been completely executed, the operating system should examine bit 3 of the next CCW (other than a transfer-in-channel command), and if this bit is set, revert to the user's command chain by issuing the following commands:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(The cylinder bytes and high-order head byte are obtained from the user's program. The low-order head byte is obtained from sense byte 6, bits 3 to 7.)
Set file mask	(Same as the original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
Search identifier	
equal	(Identifier in sense bytes 8 to 12)
TIC *-8	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

If, however, bit 3 of the next CCW is zero, re-entry to the user's command chain is as follows:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(As described in preceding paragraph)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
Search identifier	
equal	(Identifier in sense bytes 8 to 12)
TIC *-8	
Read count	(Skip bit set)
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

If, in addition to the data check bit and the uncorrectable bit, the operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is also set, re-entry into the user's command chain is as follows:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(With seek argument incremented by one)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
Search identifier	
equal	(Record one)
TIC *-8	
Restart CCW 2	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

Overrun (Sense Byte 0, Bit 5)

When the overrun bit is set, the operating system should retry the operation. If the overrun bit is still set after ten retries, a message should be transmitted to the operator.

Track Condition Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 6)

If the track condition check bit has been set because of operations attempted *on a defective track*, the operating system should first retrieve the address of the alternate track from the identifier field of the record zero count area. After this new track address has been found by search operations, the original command chain can be resumed.

If the track condition check bit has been set because an operation continued *from an alternate track*, the operating system should update by one the seek argument of the defective track, using the track address in the identifier field of the record zero count area. The operation should then be resumed at this new address.

If the operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is also set, the 3340 has switched *from* an alternate track, or *to* a defective track, during overflow record processing. In the case of a defective track, the operating system should issue the following command chain:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(Address of alternate track)
Set file mask	(No seek command allowed)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
Search identifier equal	(Record 1)
TIC *-8	
Restart CCW 1	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

In the case of an alternate track, the operating system should issue the following command chain:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(Address of defective track plus one)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
Search identifier equal	(Record 1)
TIC *-8	
Restart CCW 1	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

Seek Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 7)

If the seek check bit has been set, a seek operation is incomplete or an incorrect physical address was read out from the home address or the count area. The operating system should issue a 'recalibrate' command, seek the original track address and repeat the operation. If the error persists after ten retries, the operating system should transmit a message to the operator.

Invalid Track Format (Sense Byte 1, Bit 1)

If the invalid track format bit is set, an attempt was made to write data in excess of track capacity. The bit is also set when, during a read or search operation, the index point is detected in the gap following the count field or the key

field. This situation indicates that there has been writing during improper chaining. The operating system should transmit a message to this effect to the operator.

End of Cylinder (Sense Byte 1, Bit 2)

If the end-of-cylinder bit is set, a cylinder boundary has been detected during a multi-track operation. The operating system should increment the cylinder address in the current seek argument by one and reset the head address. Operation can be continued by executing the following command chain.

Command	Remarks
Seek	(Cylinder address plus one)
Set file mask	(Same as the original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
TIC	(Command address in CSW minus eight)

If the operation incomplete bit (sense byte 1, bit 7) is also set, a cylinder boundary has been detected during an overflow operation. The command chain can be continued by executing the following sequence of commands:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(Cylinder address plus one, head address reset)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
TIC *-8	
Restart CCW 1	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

No Record Found (Sense Byte 1, Bit 4)

When the no record found bit is set, the operating system should transmit a message to the operator to inform him that a programming error has been made.

File Protected (Sense Byte 1, Bit 5)

If the file protected bit is set, a seek command, a multi-track read, or multi-track search operation has violated the file mask.

In the case of a seek command, the operation can be continued by executing the following command chain:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(User's argument)
Set file mask	(Same as the original)
Read home address	(Skip bit set)
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

In the case of a multi-track read or multi-track search operation, the following command chain should be used:

Command	Remarks
Seek	(Increment original seek argument by one)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Read home address	(skip bit set)
TIC	(Command address in CSW minus eight)

If the operation incomplete bit (byte 1, bit 7) is also set, the file violation occurred during an overflow operation, and re-entry to the command chain is as follows:

<i>Command</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Seek	(Increment original seek argument by one)
Set file mask	(Same as original)
Search identifier equal	(Record one)
Search identifier equal	(Record zero)
TIC *-8	
Restart CCW 1	
TIC	(Command address in CSW)

Environmental Data Present (Sense Byte 2, Bit 3)

If the environmental data present bit is set, statistical usage information is available and requires transfer to the SVP. The operation should be repeated once and, if the error persists, the operating system should transmit a message to the operator.

IBM 3410 Magnetic Tape Unit, Models 1, 2, and 3; IBM 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control, Models 1, 2, and 3

This section describes the commands, status reports, and sense information for tape subsystems comprising 3410 Magnetic Tape Units, Models 1, 2 or 3; and a 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control, Model 1, 2, or 3; operating under control of the magnetic tape adapter. Note that in any one subsystem, model numbers cannot be intermixed.

3410/3411 COMMANDS

Commands for the 3410s and 3411, which comprise the tape subsystem, are processed by the control unit, which is located within the 3411. For this reason, the enable/disable switch on the 3411 must be set to the ENABLE (on-line) position, otherwise the tape units will not respond to addressing by the program.

Note: The 3410 and 3411 are capable of command chaining but not of data chaining. If data chaining is specified, the command ends with program check (bit 42) set in the CSW.

Figure 83 shows the commands which are available for the 3410 and 3411.

Hex	Command Code CCW Bits							Command	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read forward
0C	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	Read backward
07	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	Rewind
0F	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	Rewind-unload
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	Erase gap
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	Write tape mark
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Backspace block
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Backspace file
37	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	Forwardspace block
3F	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	Forwardspace file
—	0	0	M	M	M	0	1	1	Set mode 1 200 bpi
—	0	1	M	M	M	0	1	1	Set mode 1 556 bpi
—	1	0	M	M	M	0	1	1	Set mode 1 800 bpi
C3	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	Set mode 2 1600 bpi-PE
CB	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set mode 2 800 bpi-NRZI
97	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	Data security erase
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	Request track in error
4B	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set diagnose
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set diagnostic mode
8B	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Loop write-to-read
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense

Note: The M positions are modifiers for parity, data converter, and translator.

Figure 83. 3410/3411 Commands [10849A]

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the selected tape unit where the data is written (recorded) on magnetic tape. The data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 and continues in ascending order of address (as the tape moves forward) until the length count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. When the length count is reduced to zero, channel end and device end (bits 36 and 37 in the CSW) are both presented. If the operation runs into the end-of-tape area, channel end, device end, and unit exception (bit 39 in the CSW) are set and the TAPE INDICATE light is turned on at the tape unit.

A write operation may begin at the load point (a reflective marker attached to the tape at the beginning of the reel) or later, and previously-written information may be overwritten without error indication. The recording density and the recording method employed for a 'write' command depend on whether or not optional features are installed.

If no features are installed, data is written at a density of 1600 bits per inch (bpi), the parity is odd, and the recording method is phase-encoded (PE).

If the Dual Density Tape Unit feature is installed, the density may be either 1600 bpi (PE) or 800 bpi written using the non-return-to-zero change on ones (NRZI) method, whichever was specified by a previously-given set mode 2 command. The set mode 2 command takes effect when the tape is positioned at the load point. The mode setting is retained as long as the tape is away from the load point and is reset when the tape returns to the load point. If no set mode 2 command was given, the data is written at a density of 1600 bpi (PE). The parity is odd in each case.

If the Seven Track feature is installed, the density may be either 200, 556, or 800 bpi, depending on the set mode 1 command given immediately before the 'write' command. The seven track feature allows the density to be changed for each write operation regardless of whether the tape is at the load point. In addition to setting the density, the set mode 1 command can specify odd or even parity and data conversion or data translation. The recording method is NRZI. If no set mode 1 command is given, the density is 800 bpi with odd parity and the data converter is turned on.

The recording operation initiated by a 'write' command includes an automatic reading of each byte after it has been written. This automatic reading is performed by the second gap in the read/write head and is transparent to the program. If the parity of the byte is incorrect or the

recorded amplitude is too low, an appropriate error indication is given.

When the tape is positioned at the load point and a 'write' command is given, the control unit provides format identification automatically, as follows:

1. If the density is specified at 1600 bpi, the phase-encoded identification burst is written first, then this burst is checked and an interblock gap is created. (Interblock gaps are created to separate blocks of written data.) Data recording then follows.
2. If the density is specified at 800, 556 or 200 bpi, an erased area is created first, then data recording follows.

The presence or absence of the identification burst enables automatic density adjustment for subsequent read operations. When the write operation is completed, the tape stops after a nominal runout time which creates an interblock gap.

Read Forward

The 'read forward' command causes the magnetic tape at the selected tape unit to move forward; the recorded data is read and transferred to main storage. The data is stored into the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. Data transfer continues in ascending order of main storage address until either the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or an interblock gap is found, whichever occurs first. The magnetic tape is, however, moved until the interblock gap is found regardless of how many bytes of data are transferred. This ensures that the read/write head is located in the interblock gap at command completion, ready for the next command. When the interblock gap is detected, channel end and device end are both presented. If a tape mark (a block of coded data) is detected during the read operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end.

The format used for the read operation depends on whether or not optional features are installed.

If no features are installed, the density and mode for a read command can only be 1600 bpi (PE) as specified by the PE identification burst written behind the load point. The identification burst is checked for as the tape leaves the load point and applies until the tape returns to the load point. If the burst is not found, the read operation stops before the first data block, and unit check (bit 38 in the CSW) is set.

If the Dual Density Tape Unit feature is installed, the presence of the PE burst sets the reading density to 1600 bpi and the mode to PE. Absence of the PE burst sets the reading density to 800 bpi and the mode to NRZI. This occurs automatically so that no set mode 2 command is required for read operations.

If the Seven Track feature is installed, a set mode 1 command must be issued before the 'read forward' command. This allows the specified density and parity to be used during the read operation and enables data

conversion or translation to be performed if necessary. Once a set mode 1 command has been given, there is no need to give another if reading continues on the same tape unit. This is because the mode is stored and applies until it is changed.

Read Backward

The 'read backward' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward; the recorded data is read and transferred to main storage starting at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Data transfer continues in *descending* order of address until either the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or the interblock gap is found, whichever occurs first. The tape moves until the interblock gap is found, regardless of how many bytes are transferred. When the gap is found, channel end and device end are both presented. If a tape mark is detected during the read operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end. The density and mode in which the recorded data is read are determined as described for the 'read forward' command. If, during a read backward operation, the tape runs into the load point, the unit check bit in sense byte 0 is set.

Note: A read backward operation with data conversion cannot be performed. If data converter on is specified, the 'read backward' command suppresses data conversion and reads the data without conversion. No error indication is given.

Rewind

The 'rewind' command causes the selected tape unit to rewind the tape to the load point so that the tape is at its beginning and the unit is ready. If the tape is positioned away from the load point, command acceptance is indicated by condition code 0 in response to the 'start I/O' instruction. The channel then becomes busy for 300 ms and then channel end is presented. (If the tape subsystem is addressed before channel end is presented, the response to a 'start I/O' is condition code 2 – channel busy.)

The tape unit rewinds until the load point is detected, then stops and moves the tape forward again to a position just beyond the load point. Device end is then presented and the tape unit is ready. If the tape is already at the load point when the 'rewind' command is given, channel end and device end are both presented in the initial status, and condition code 1 is given in response to the 'start I/O'.

Rewind Unload

The 'rewind unload' command causes the selected tape unit to rewind the tape to the load point, then to unload the tape so that it can be removed from the drive. Channel end, device end, and unit check are indicated 300 ms after the command is accepted. (The unit check status, together with the ready reset bit in sense byte 7, indicates that the tape unit is no longer ready.) The 300 ms delay (during which

the channel is busy) occurs whether or not the tape is already at the load point. The tape drive then rewinds the tape until the load point reflective marker is detected. The tape unit releases the vacuum upon detection of the load point, after which it is no longer in the ready state, and the tape can be removed.

Application Note: When the 2311/3340 or 2314/3340 compatibility feature is installed in the system, old DOS releases (such as release 26) can be used as the 115's operating system. However, old releases of DOS may not provide the magnetic tape unit support necessary to handle correctly a unit check for the 3410/3411 'rewind unload' command. Appendix D in this manual describes an installation procedure, for old DOS releases, which corrects this problem.

Erase Gap

The 'erase gap' command causes the selected tape unit to move its tape forward and to erase information on the tape (if any). The results of this command depend on the mode to which the tape unit is set, and the position of the tape, at the time the command is given.

In PE mode, an 'erase gap' command given when the tape is at the load point causes writing of the PE identification burst, after which an erased area approximately 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) long is created. An 'erase gap' command given when the tape is away from the load point erases an area about 4.2 in. (106,7 mm) long. Successive 'erase gap' commands each add about 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) of erased area.

In NRZI mode, an 'erase gap' command given when the tape is at the load point erases an area about 6.5 in. (165,1 mm) long; no identification burst is written. An 'erase gap' command given when the tape is away from the load point erases an area about 4.2 in. (106,7 mm). Successive 'erase gap' commands each add another 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) of erased area.

For the 'erase gap' command, channel end and device end are both presented when the erase operation is completed at the tape unit. If the erase gap operation runs into the end-of-tape (EOT) area, channel end and device end are accompanied by unit exception and control unit end (bit 34 in the CSW). The TAPE INDICATE light is turned on.

Write Tape Mark

The 'write tape mark' command causes the tape unit to move its tape forward and to write a tape mark. (A tape mark is a special block of bytes which defines the boundary of a file.) No data is transferred from main storage because the tape mark is generated by the tape control unit. Channel end and device end are both presented when the write operation is completed at the tape unit. Tape mark writing is checked by the control unit and up to 15 automatic retry attempts are executed if the tape mark cannot be written successfully.

The tape mark is not recognized as data. The tape marks written differ, depending on the mode in which the tape unit operates.

In PE mode, the tape mark consists of approximately 75 bytes, and is preceded by an interblock gap of about 0.6 in. (15,2 mm).

In NRZI nine track mode, the tape mark consists of one byte followed by seven erased bytes followed by a longitudinal redundancy check (LRC) byte. The tape mark is preceded by a 0.6 in. (15,2 mm) interblock gap.

In NRZI seven track mode, the tape mark consists of one byte followed by three erased bytes followed by the LRC byte. The tape mark is preceded by a 0.75 in. (19 mm) interblock gap.

Note: If a write tape mark operation runs into the end-of-tape area, unit exception and control unit end accompany the channel end and device end status. The tape unit's TAPE INDICATE light is turned on.

Backspace Block

The 'backspace block' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward until the next interblock gap or the load point is found, whichever comes first. This backward tape movement does not involve a data transfer to main storage. Channel end and device end are presented when the tape motion is completed. If a tape mark is encountered during the backspace operation, unit exception is always presented.

Backspace File

The 'backspace file' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward, either to the interblock gap located beyond the next tape mark or to the load point, whichever comes first. No data is transferred. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed.

Forwardspace Block

The 'forwardspace block' command moves the tape at the selected tape unit forward to the next interblock gap; no data is transferred. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed. If the forwardspace block operation runs into the end-of-tape area, the TAPE INDICATE light on the tape unit is turned on (no status indications other than channel end and device end). If a tape mark is detected during the forwardspace block operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end.

Forwardspace File

The 'forwardspace file' command moves the tape at the selected tape unit forward to the interblock gap that follows the next tape mark. No data is transferred to main storage. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed. If the forwardspace file operation runs into the end-of-tape area, the TAPE INDICATE light is turned on but no status indication is given other than channel end and device end.

Set Mode 2 Commands

On 9-track tape units, the set mode 2 commands can only be used if the dual density tape unit feature is installed. After initial power-on or system reset, all tape units are automatically set to write at 1600 bpi in phase-encoded mode. The set mode 2 commands enable the density to be set to 800 bpi NRZI, or reset to 1600 bpi PE.

Notes:

1. Set mode 2 commands apply to the entire length of tape on a reel; it is impossible to change mode and density half-way through a reel.
2. Set mode 2 commands do not affect read operations, which are self-adjusting.

The set mode 2 commands are of the immediate type, and channel end and device end are both presented in the initial status when the command code has been transferred. If a set mode 2 command is issued in the absence of the dual density feature, the command is equivalent to a 'control no-op'.

Set Mode 2 800 BPI – NRZI: When the 'set mode 2 800 bpi – NRZI' command is given, all tape units that have their tape positioned at the load point change to 800 bpi in NRZI mode for any subsequent write-type operations (such as 'write', 'erase gap', or 'write tape mark').

Those tape units which have their tape positioned away from the load point when the 'set mode 2 800 bpi – NRZI' command is given are not affected by the command. However, the command is stored in the 3411's control unit and takes effect as soon as a tape unit returns its tape to the load point. At this time, the drive resets to 1600 bpi but then changes to the mode stored in the control unit.

Set Mode 2 1600 BPI – PE: To reset from the 800 bpi – NRZI mode back to 1600 bpi PE, the 'set mode 2 1600 bpi – PE' command must be given. This command has an immediate effect on only those tape units with tape at the load point. Those with tape positioned away from the load point will change to the new mode on return to the load point (unless another set mode 2 command has been given before the tape has returned to the load point).

Set Mode 1 Commands

Set mode 1 commands are provided for controlling the

Command Code (hex)	Mode Details			
	Density	Parity	Translator	Converter
13	200	Odd	Off	On
23	200	Even	Off	Off
2B	200	Even	On	Off
33	200	Odd	Off	Off
3B	200	Odd	On	Off
53	556	Odd	Off	On
63	556	Even	Off	Off
6B	556	Even	On	Off
73	556	Odd	Off	Off
7B	556	Odd	On	Off
93	800	Odd	Off	On
A3	800	Even	Off	Off
AB	800	Even	On	Off
B3	800	Odd	Off	Off
BB	800	Odd	On	Off

Figure 84. Command Codes for Set Mode 1 Commands [19577]

seven track feature; they have no effect on tape units equipped with nine-track read/write heads. Set mode 1 commands apply to all tape units equipped with seven-track read/write heads and are effective for read and write operations regardless of the position of the tape. Figure 84 shows the modes that can be set by the various command codes.

When one of the commands listed in Figure 84 is given, it takes effect immediately and the mode that it sets remains effective until another set mode 1 command is given or system reset occurs. (System reset sets 800 bpi, add parity, and data converter on.) Channel end and device end are presented in the initial status. If a set mode 1 command is given to a tape subsystem with no seven track feature installed, the command is equivalent to a no-op.

The translator function can translate eight-bit EBCDIC bytes to six-bit BCD characters, and vice versa. The data converter allows writing and reading of nine-track data on seven-track tape without loss of data. This is accomplished by converting three eight-bit bytes into four six-bit tape characters, and vice versa.

Data Security Erase

The 'data security erase' command causes the selected tape unit to move its tape forward and erase the information on the tape until the EOT reflective marker is found. Channel end is indicated when the command code is accepted, device end is indicated when the EOT marker is found.

The 'data security erase' command is executed only when it is chained to an immediately preceding 'erase gap' command. Under all other circumstances (such as when it is issued as a stand-alone or when chained to another command), it is rejected.

Note: The 'data security erase' command erases data only from the point at which the command is given until the

EOT marker is reached. If the area beyond the EOT marker is to be erased, successive, 'erase gap' commands must be used.

Request Track in Error

The 'request track in error' command causes sense byte 2 (the "track-in-error" byte) to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the control unit. Sense byte 2 has been brought into main storage via the last 'sense' command given to the tape subsystem. Sense byte 2 shows which track has failed (if any). The control unit uses this byte as an aid to recovering the next data block that is read. Channel end and device end are both set when the transfer of sense byte 2 is completed.

Set Diagnostic Mode

The 'set diagnostic mode' command is a control command which alters the function of all write-type commands that are chained to it. The diagnostic mode is reset when the chain ends. The 'set diagnostic mode' command causes an artificial signal-loss which is designed to test the read and write error detection circuits. Only write-type commands are affected, as follows:

In PE mode, whenever write data contains successive one-bits in any track, writing in that track is inhibited until the last one-bit is reached.

In NRZI mode, no bits are written in track P.

Either of these situations sets data check unless the error detection circuits are damaged.

ERP Loop Write-to-Read

This is a special write-type command designed to aid in error recovery procedures. The command operates like a normal 'write' command except that no data is written on tape and the tape does not move. Instead, write data bypasses the write head and is routed from the write circuits (which normally feed the head) to the read circuits (which normally pick up data from tape through the read head). The purpose of this operation is to distinguish between read or write circuit failure and head or tape failure. This is possible because write data is checked at the read circuits for phase error (PE only), VRC (in PE and NRZI) and skew (in NRZI only) just as happens in a normal write operation. If no errors occur during execution of the 'ERP loop write-to-read' command, but errors are experienced during normal writing, the failure is in the head or the recording medium.

Note: If the 'ERP loop write-to-read' command is performed while the tape unit is in write status, the tape does not move, but the write head transfers an undefined byte onto the tape. The same operation performed while the tape unit is in read status or file-protected does not affect the tape.

Set Diagnose

The 'set diagnose' command is for use by IBM test

programs only. Improper use of this command may cause loss of vital data on tape.

Sense Command

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the 3411's control unit to the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. The information is transferred in ascending order of this address until either all nine sense bytes have been transferred or the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. Then channel end and device end are both presented. For details of the contents of the sense bytes, see "3410/3411 Sense Information" in this section.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command causes no action at the tape unit except that channel end, device end, and any other status conditions which may be present are stored at initial selection.

3410/3411 STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the status reports, and the circumstances under which the reports are given, for the 3411 and 3410s which comprise the tape subsystem.

Unit Status

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is set together with the busy bit (indicating that the control unit is busy) when the control unit has an interruption pending for a drive other than the drive addressed.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is set when the control unit had an interruption pending and this condition is cleared by the addressing of the appropriate tape unit. Control unit end is also presented when an unusual condition (such as the detection of the end-of-tape area) occurs, or a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction is executed.

The setting of the control unit and bit indicates that the control unit is free.

Busy (Bit 35)

When the busy bit is set, the addressed tape unit is busy executing a previously-issued command such as 'rewind' or 'data security erase'. The busy bit is also set together with the status modifier bit if the control unit has an interruption pending for a tape unit other than the unit addressed.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit is set when the data transfer portion of a command is completed or, if only the command code is transferred, when the command code transfer is completed. The setting of channel end indicates that the channel is available for another command.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit is set when an operation is completed at a tape unit. The setting of device end may coincide with channel end (with write, read, and read backward operations etc) or may occur later (as with rewind and data security erase operations). Device end is set alone when a tape unit is manually put into the ready state. If the tape unit is addressed when it is not ready, device end is presented as soon as the unit is made ready. If the tape unit has not been addressed previously, this "ready device end" is stored and presented the next time the unit is addressed.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for various errors or unusual conditions. If unit check is set, a subsequent 'sense' command shows the exact cause (for details, see "3410/3411 Sense Information"). Typical cases that cause the setting of unit check are backward commands that either run into the load point or are initiated when the tape is already at the load point. Unit check is also set when a 'rewind unload' command has been accepted, and indicates that the addressed tape unit is no longer ready.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when a write-type command (such as 'write', 'write tape mark', or 'erase gap') runs into the EOT marker. This situation also turns on the tape unit's TAPE INDICATE light. The light is turned off by a backward command that again senses the EOT marker. Unit exception is also set when a 'read', 'read backward', 'forwardspace block' or 'backwardspace block' command detects a tape mark before the next interblock gap is found.

Channel Status

The channel status is recorded in CSW bits 40 to 47; the bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
40	Program controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the 3410 and 3411 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter, or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*.

3410/3411 SENSE INFORMATION

The 3411 and 3410 tape units comprising the tape subsystem provide up to nine bytes of sense information. The following paragraphs describe the information that can be obtained from the contents of the nine sense bytes.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Word count zero
7	Data converter check

Note: Whenever any of the bits in sense byte 0 are set, unit check is set in the CSW.

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when an unassigned command is given, or a 'write', 'write tape mark', 'erase gap', or 'data security erase' command is given to a tape unit that is "file protected" (enable ring not installed). Command reject is also set in response to a 'data security erase' command that is *not chained* to a preceding 'erase gap' command.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set if the selected tape unit is not ready or non-existent.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set in the following situations:

1. A tape mark cannot be written properly.
2. No readback data was detected by the read/write head.
3. An internal error occurs during tape motion.
4. The addressed tape unit does not accept a command.
5. A tape positioning or tachometer error occurs.
6. The tape velocity is incorrect.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set in the following situations:

1. "Noise" is detected during an NRZI read operation.
2. Uncorrectable parity errors occur.
3. Two or more tracks have an envelope or phase error.
4. Excessive skew is detected.
5. The end velocity of a read operation is incorrect.
6. The end of a record is detected too early or too late.
7. A signal is detected during a data security erase operation.

For a description of "envelope errors" and "skew", see the details of the corresponding bits under "Sense Byte 3".

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set when the main storage controller fails to send or accept data during data transfer (in which case the data transfer operation stops). The tape moves on to its normal stopping point.

Word Count Zero (Bit 6)

The word count zero bit is set if the first byte of write-type data is being fetched and the tape control unit detects an MSC error.

Data Converter Check (Bit 7)

The data converter check bit, when set, indicates that the last main storage byte of a read operation contains two, four, or six 0-bits that must be eliminated to reconstruct the original tape character. Figure 85 shows the conditions for setting the data converter check bit.

Mode of current operation		Status of data	Number of characters being processed	Bit structure of character(s)	Data converter check bit	Recovery actions
Data converter on	Read	Data written with data converter off (unconverted data)	Multiple of four characters	All bit structures	Off	None
			Multiple of four characters, with one character left over	All bit structures	On	Remove bits 6 and 7 from last storage byte
			Multiple of four characters, with two characters left over	Such that the two characters can be packed into one main storage byte	Off	None
				Bit 8, 4, 2, or 1 of the second character is set	On	Remove bits 4, 5, 6, and 7 from last storage byte
			Multiple of four characters, with three characters left over	Such that the three characters can be packed into two main storage bytes	Off	None
	Bit 2 or 1 of the third character is set	On		Remove bits 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 from last storage byte		
		Data written with data converter on (converted data)	Always a multiple of four characters	All bit structures	Off	None
Write	Converted data	Always a multiple of four characters	Does not affect data converter check bit	Off	None	
Data converter off	Read	Converted or unconverted data	Does not affect operation	Does not affect data converter check bit	Off	None
	Write	Unconverted data	Does not affect operation	Does not affect data converter check bit	Off	None

Figure 85. Conditions of Setting Data Converter Bit [19578]

Sense Byte 1

The bits in sense byte 1 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Noise
1	Tape unit status A
2	Tape unit status B
3	7-track TU
4	At load point
5	Write status
6	File protected
7	Not capable

Noise (Bit 0)

The noise bit is set when a data check occurs during PE operations. It is also set when data is detected during the last portion of a write delay during an NRZI write operation. Noise sets data check in sense byte 0 and, consequently, unit check in the CSW.

Tape Unit Status Bits

Tape unit status bits A and B together give the following information:

Status A	Status B	Meaning
0	0	Non-existent drive
0	1	Not ready
1	0	Ready and not busy
1	1	Ready and busy

Tape Status A (Bit 1): The tape unit status A bit is set when a tape unit has been selected and is ready.

Tape Status B (Bit 2): The tape unit status B bit is set when the selected tape unit is not ready (for example, START key not pressed) or could not be made ready because it was rewinding.

7-Track TU (Bit 3)

The 7-track TU bit is set when the selected tape unit has a 7-track read/write head installed. It requires, therefore, 7-track tape and appropriate set mode commands.

At Load Point (Bit 4)

The at load point bit is set whenever the selected tape unit is at the load point. The setting of this bit shows, for example, why a 'read backward' command cannot be executed. The at load point bit is reset to zero when the tape leaves the load point.

Write Status (Bit 5)

The write status bit is set when the selected tape unit is in write status, and is zero if the tape unit is in read status.

File Protected (Bit 6)

The file protected bit is set when the selected tape unit is ready but the "write enable" plastic ring is not mounted on the hub of the tape reel. File protected is also set when the tape unit is not ready.

Not Capable (Bit 7)

The not capable bit is set when the tape installation has no features installed (the tape units operate at 1600 bpi, PE only) and the PE-identification burst was not detected at the load point. The absence of the identification burst indicates that the tape on the selected tape unit is in NRZI mode, and thus cannot be used. Setting of the not capable bit sets unit check in the CSW.

Sense Byte 2

The bits in sense byte 2 contain information that is used only by the control unit itself, not the program. This is because the bits represent the track-in-error information. For PE read operations, each bit that is set represents a track that has a phase error or is dead. (A dead track is one that is damaged, or has never been written on.) For PE write operations, each bit that is set represents a track that has an envelope check (see "Sense Byte 3") or phase error.

During NRZI read operations, the bits in sense byte 2 represent the cyclic redundancy check (CRC) information. During NRZI write operations, sense byte 2 is not used and contains the code 03 (hex).

Sense byte 2 is made available to the tape control unit when the 'request track in error' command is given.

Sense Byte 3

The bits in sense byte 3 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Vertical redundancy check
1	Multiple track error (PE) or longitudinal redundancy (NRZI)
2	Skew
3	End data check (PE) or cyclic redundancy check (NRZI)
4	Envelope check (PE only)
5	1600 bpi
6	Backward
7	C-compare (not used)

Vertical Redundancy Check (Bit 0)

The vertical redundancy check (VRC) bit is set if a parity error which cannot be corrected occurs during a read or read backward operation. The VRC bit is also set when the automatic read-back during write operations reveals a parity error. This sets data check in sense byte 0 and consequently unit check in the CSW.

Multiple Track Error (Bit 1)

The multiple track error bit is set only for PE operations if two or more tracks have an envelope dropout (recorded bits with poor amplitude) and/or a phase error in the same data block. Setting of the multiple track error bit sets data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Longitudinal Redundancy Check (Bit 1)

The LRC bit is set for NRZI write operations if the LRC byte has bad parity, or in read operations if the LRC register does not contain all zeros. Setting of the LRC bit sets data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Skew (Bit 2)

The skew bit is set when the data bits are not properly aligned during any read- or write-type operation. Setting of the skew bit causes data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW to be set but only when skew is detected during PE read or read backward operations or during NRZI write operations.

End Data Check (Bit 3)

The end data check bit is set only during PE read or write operations when a preamble and at least one data byte is sensed but the postamble is not found before the interblock gap is reached. (The preamble and postamble are 41-byte information fields that frame each data block.) Setting of the end data check bit sets data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Cyclic Redundancy Check (Bit 3)

The cyclic redundancy check (CRC) bit is set only for NRZI operations if a CRC error is detected during read, read backward, or write operations (when the second gap reads back bad CRC parity). Setting of the CRC bit sets data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Envelope Check (Bit 4)

The envelope check bit is set only for PE operations when the signal amplitude drops below an acceptable level during read, read backward, or write operations. It is also set when a phase error is detected. For write operations, setting of the envelope check bit always causes the setting of data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW. For read operations, data check and unit check are only set if the envelope check results in an uncorrectable error.

1600 BPI (Bit 5)

The 1600 bpi bit is set when the selected tape unit is set to 1600 bpi density. When the selected 3410 is in NRZI mode, the 1600 bpi bit is zero.

Backward (Bit 6)

The backward bit is set when the selected tape unit is in backward status. After a backward-type operation, the tape unit remains in backward status until a forward command (such as 'write') is given.

C-Compare (Bit 7)

The C-compare bit is not used.

Sense Byte 4

The bits in sense byte 4 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Tape unit positioning check
1	Tape unit reject
2	End of tape
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	Diagnostic track check
6	Tape unit check
7	Illegal command

Tape Unit Positioning Check (Bit 0)

The tape unit positioning check bit is set when an error causes a situation where the position of the tape cannot be determined and correction cannot be made successfully. This bit is set, for example, if a read operation goes beyond an interblock gap and forward or backward spacing fails to find an interblock gap. Setting of the tape unit positioning check bit sets the equipment check bit in sense byte 0 and, consequently, unit check in the CSW.

Tape Unit Reject (Bit 1)

The tape unit reject bit is set when a command cannot be set into the selected tape unit or the tape unit loses its ready state (even momentarily) during any tape motion operation except rewind or rewind unload. The setting of the tape unit reject bit sets equipment check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

End of Tape (Bit 2)

The end of tape bit is set when the tape is located at or beyond the EOT marker. This bit is turned off only when the tape is moved backward past the reflective marker. If the end of tape situation occurs during a write, write tape mark, or erase gap operation, unit exception is set in the CSW.

Diagnostic Track Check (Bit 5)

The diagnostic track check bit is set if the error recovery procedure program issues a loop write-to-read diagnostic

command which detects a dead track or a phase error. Since this error may have been provoked by the diagnostic operation, bit 5 explains why data check and unit check are set.

Tape Unit Check (Bit 6)

The tape unit check bit is set when the selected tape unit has an internal error such as a lamp failure or vacuum failure in one of the vacuum columns. This bit is also set when a momentary loss of the ready state occurs during the execution of commands, for example, when the cover is opened or when the ready state is lost due to a 'rewind unload' command.

Illegal Command (Bit 7)

The illegal command bit is set when an unassigned command has been issued to the tape subsystem. Setting of this bit sets command reject in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Sense Byte 5

The bits in sense byte 5 have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	New subsystem
1	New subsystem
2	Write tape mark check
3	PE identification burst
4	PE compare (not used)
5	Tachometer check
6	False end mark
7	Reserved for RPQ

New Subsystem (Bits 0 and 1)

The new subsystem bits together give the following meanings:

<i>Bit 0</i>	<i>Bit 1</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	1	A 3410/3411 magnetic tape subsystem is attached
0	0	A 3410/3411 magnetic tape subsystem is <i>not</i> attached
1	0	
1	1	

This information is needed because the sense information provided by the 3410 and 3411 is different from that provided by other magnetic tape units.

Write Tape Mark Check (Bit 2)

The write tape mark check bit is set when a tape mark cannot be written and read back without error. Up to 15 retry attempts are performed automatically and if these are unsuccessful, equipment check is set in sense byte 0 and unit check set in the CSW.

PE Identification Burst (Bit 3)

The PE identification burst bit is set when the identification burst cannot be written error-free. The setting of this bit causes unit check to be set in the CSW.

PE-Compare (Bit 4)

The PE-compare bit is not used.

Tachometer Check (Bit 5)

The tachometer check bit is set when the tape speed is too low or too high. The setting of this bit causes equipment check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW to be set.

False End Mark (Bit 6)

The false end mark bit is set only for PE operations when the postamble is incorrect. Either the "all ones byte" (part of the postamble) is detected prematurely or, if the all ones byte is detected in time, too few zeros follow it. Setting of the false end mark bit sets data check in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

Reserved for RPQ (Bit 7)

The reserved for RPQ bit is set when a feature provided in response to an RPQ (request for price quotation) is installed.

Sense Byte 6

The bits in sense byte 6 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	7-track unit
1	Short gap mode
2	Dual density
3	Alternate density
4 to 7	Tape unit model

7-Track Unit (Bit 0)

The 7-track unit bit is set when the selected tape unit has a 7-track read/write head. It requires, therefore, a 7-track tape and appropriate set mode commands. (This bit has the same function as bit 3 in sense byte 1.)

Short Gap Mode (Bit 1)

The short gap mode bit is set when the selected tape unit has adjusted to short gaps. This can occur only during read operations and acts as a warning that the tape was written on an improperly adjusted drive.

Dual Density (Bit 2)

The dual density bit is set when the selected tape unit is equipped with the dual density feature, that is, it is capable of operating in 1600 bpi (PE) or 800 bpi (NRZI).

Alternate Density (Bit 3)

The alternate density bit is set when the selected tape unit is operating in 800 bpi – NRZI mode.

Tape Unit Model (Bits 4 to 7)

Bits 4 to 7 identify the magnetic tape unit models as follows:

<i>Bit 4</i>	<i>Bit 5</i>	<i>Bit 6</i>	<i>Bit 7</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
0	0	0	0	3410 and 3411 Model 1
0	0	0	1	3410 and 3411 Model 2
0	0	1	0	3410 and 3411 Model 3

Sense Byte 7

The bits in sense byte 7 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Lamp check
1	Left column check
2	Right column check
3	Ready reset
4	Data security erase
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Lamp Check (Bit 0)

The lamp check bit is set when any of the photo-sensing light circuits (for example, load point, end of tape) are defective. A lamp check condition also sets the tape unit check bit in sense byte 4 and, consequently, sets unit check in the CSW.

Left Column Check (Bit 1)

The left column check bit is set when a loss of vacuum occurs in the left column of the tape unit after a tape has been loaded. This also sets the tape unit check bit in sense byte 4 and unit check in the CSW.

Right Column Check (Bit 2)

The right column check bit is set when a loss of vacuum occurs in the right column of the tape unit after a tape has been loaded. This also sets tape unit check in sense byte 4 and unit check in the CSW.

Ready Reset (Bit 3)

The ready reset bit is set when a tape unit lost the ready state either because a rewind/unload operation ended or because the cover was opened during tape motion or because the RESET key was pressed. In these cases, tape unit check is also set.

Data Security Erase (Bit 4)

The data security erase bit is set when a data security erase operation is in progress. This bit is turned off when the EOT reflective marker is detected (operation is completed). The setting of the data security erase bit does not indicate an error.

Sense Byte 8

The bits in sense byte 8 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	(Not used)
1	Feedthrough
2	(Not used)
3	End velocity check
4	No read-back data
5	Start velocity check
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Feedthrough (Bit 1)

The feedthrough bit is set when the second gap of the read/write head senses data during the writing of the preamble. This is the correct mode of operation, and thus the feedthrough bit is not an error indication. (This bit is used as a diagnostic aid by IBM customer engineers.)

End Velocity Check (Bit 3)

The end velocity check bit is set when the tachometer velocity is incorrect at the end of a write operation. Setting of the end velocity check bit sets the data check bit in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

No Read-Back Data (Bit 4)

The no read-back data bit is set only for write operations when data is not read back (by the second gap in the read/write head) within a specified time. This situation also sets equipment check, hence unit check in the CSW.

Start Velocity Check (Bit 5)

The start velocity check bit is set when the tachometer velocity is still incorrect, at the start of a write operation, after successive retries have been performed. This sets the data check bit in sense byte 0 and unit check in the CSW.

3410/3411 ERROR RECOVERY

For details of error recovery procedures, see *IBM 3410/3411 Magnetic Tape Subsystems Component Description*, GA32-0022.

Note: The magnetic tape unit support provided by the older DOS releases does not use all the sense bytes: this reduces the maintainability of the tape units.

IBM 3803 Tape Control, Model 3; IBM 3420 Magnetic Tape Units, Models 3 or 5

This section describes the commands, status reports, and sense information for magnetic tape subsystems comprising a 3803 Tape Control, Model 3, and 3420 Magnetic Tape Units, Models 3 and/or 5, operating under control of the magnetic tape adapter. A subsystem can include up to eight 3420 tape units, and any combination of Model 3 and Model 5 units can be intermixed in the same subsystem.

The basic 3803-3 is designed to serve 3420 tape units reading and writing at 1600 bpi PE on nine-track tape (that is, 3420s equipped with the Single Density feature). Features are also available to enable the subsystem to read and write in NRZI mode on seven-track or nine-track tape.

When the 3803-3 has the Seven Track NRZI feature installed, it can serve 3420 tape units reading and writing at 556 or 800 bpi NRZI in the seven-track format. Each 3420 served must be equipped with a Seven Track feature.

When the 3803-3 has the Nine Track NRZI feature installed, it can serve 3420 tape units reading and writing at 800 bpi NRZI or 1600 bpi PE in the nine-track format. Each 3420 served must be equipped with either the Dual Density feature or the single density feature (which allows reading/writing at 1600 bpi PE only).

Note: The basic 3803 Tape Control Model 3 may be equipped with either the nine track NRZI feature or the seven track NRZI feature, but not both. Similarly, the 3420 Magnetic Tape Units, Models 3 and/or 5, within a subsystem may be equipped with the single density feature or the dual density feature or the seven track feature. Only one of these features can be installed on each tape unit.

Note on support by operating system: The 3803-3 is supported for use on a Model 115 by DOS Release 32 and above.

3803-3/3420 SUBSYSTEM COMMANDS

Commands for the 3420 Magnetic Tape Units are processed by the 3803-3 Tape Control. For this reason, the 3803-3's enable/disable switch must be set to the ENABLE (online) position, otherwise the tape units will not respond to addressing by the program.

Note: The 3420s are capable of command chaining but not capable of data chaining. If data chaining is specified, the command ends with program check (bit 42) set in the CSW.

Figure 85.1 shows the commands which are available for the 3420s and 3803-3.

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the selected tape unit where the data is written (recorded) on magnetic tape. The data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 and continues in ascending order of address (as the tape moves forward) until the length count in CCW bits 48

Hex	Command Code CCW Bits							Command	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read forward
0C	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	Read backward
07	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	Rewind
08	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Transfer in channel
0F	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	Rewind-unload
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	Erase gap
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	Write tape mark
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Backspace block
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Backspace file
37	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	Forwardspace block
3F	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	Forwardspace file
-	0	1	M	M	M	0	1	1	Set mode 1 556 bpi
-	1	0	M	M	M	0	1	1	Set mode 1 800 bpi
C3	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	Set mode 2 1600 bpi-PE
CB	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set mode 2 800 bpi-NRZI
97	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	Data security erase
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	Request track in error
4B	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set diagnose
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Set diagnostic mode
8B	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Loop write-to-read
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
E4	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	Sense I/O type

Note: The M positions are modifiers for parity, data converter, and translator.

Figure 85.1 3803/3420 Commands [20489A]

to 63 is reduced to zero. When the length count is reduced to zero, channel end and device end (bits 36 and 37 in the CSW) are both presented. If the operation runs into the end-of-tape area, channel end, device end, and unit exception (bit 39 in the CSW) are set and the TAPE INDICATE light is turned on at the tape unit.

A write operation may begin at the load point (a reflective marker attached to the tape at the beginning of the reel) or later, and previously-written information may be overwritten without error indication. The recording density and the recording method employed for a 'write' command depend on whether or not optional features are installed.

If no features are installed in the 3803, data is written at a density of 1600 bits per inch (bpi), the parity is odd, and the recording method is phase-encoded (PE), provided that the attached 3420s are equipped with the single density or dual density feature.

If the 3803 has the nine track NRZI feature installed, the density may be either 1600 bpi (PE) or 800 bpi written using the non-return-to-zero inverted (NRZI) method, whichever was specified by a previously-given set mode 2 command, provided that the attached 3420s

are equipped with the dual density feature. The set mode 2 command takes effect when the tape is positioned at the load point. The mode setting is retained as long as the tape is away from the load point and is reset when the tape returns to the load point. If no set mode 2 command was given, or if the attached 3420s are equipped with the single density feature, the data is written at a density of 1600 bpi (PE). The parity is odd in each case.

If the 3803 has the seven track NRZI feature installed (and the attached 3420s are equipped with the seven track feature), the density may be either 556 or 800 bpi, depending on the set mode 1 command given immediately before the 'write' command. The seven track features allow the density to be changed for each write operation regardless of whether the tape is at the load point. In addition to setting the density, the set mode 1 command can specify odd or even parity and data conversion or data translation. The recording method is NRZI. If no set mode 1 command is given the density is 800 bpi with odd parity and the data converter is turned on.

The recording operation initiated by a 'write' command includes an automatic reading of each byte after it has been written. The automatic reading is performed by the second gap in the read/write head and is transparent to the program. If the parity of the byte is incorrect or the recorded amplitude is too low, an appropriate error indication is given.

When the tape is positioned at the load point and a 'write' command is given, the control unit provides format identification automatically, as follows:

1. If the density is specified at 1600 bpi, the phase-encoded identification burst is written first, then this burst is checked and an interblock gap is created. (Interblock gaps are created to separate blocks of written data.) Data recording then follows.
2. If the density is specified at 800 or 556 bpi, an erased area is created first, then data recording follows.

The presence or absence of the identification burst enables automatic density adjustment for subsequent read operations. When the write operation is completed, the tape stops after a nominal runout time which creates an interblock gap.

Read Forward

The 'read forward' command causes the magnetic tape at the selected tape unit to move forward; the recorded data is read and transferred to main storage. The data is stored into the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. Data transfer continues in ascending order of main storage address until either the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or an interblock gap is found, whichever occurs first. The magnetic tape is, however, moved until the

interblock gap is found regardless of how many bytes of data are transferred. This ensures that the read/write head is located in the interblock gap at command completion, ready for the next command. When the interblock gap is detected, channel end and device end are both presented. If a tape mark (a block of coded data) is detected during the read operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end.

The format used for the read operation depends on whether or not optional features are installed.

If no features are installed in the 3803 (and the attached 3420s are equipped with the single density or dual density feature), the density and mode for a read command can only be 1600 bpi (PE) as specified by the PE identification burst written behind the load point. The identification burst is checked for as the tape leaves the load point and applies until the tape returns to the load point. If the burst is not found, the read operation stops before the first data block, and unit check (bit 38 in the CSW) is set.

If the 3803 has the nine track NRZI feature installed (and the attached 3420s are equipped with the dual density feature), the presence of the PE burst sets the reading density to 1600 bpi and the mode to PE. Absence of the PE burst sets the reading density to 800 bpi and the mode to NRZI. This occurs automatically so that no set mode 2 command is required for read operations.

If the 3803 has the seven track NRZI feature installed (and the attached 3420s are equipped with the seven track feature), a set mode 1 command must be issued before the 'read forward' command. This allows the specified density and parity to be used during the read operation and enables data conversion or translation to be performed if necessary. Once a set mode 1 command has been given, there is no need to give another if reading continues on the same tape unit. This is because the mode is stored and applies until it is changed.

Read Backward

The 'read backward' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward; the recorded data is read and transferred to main storage starting at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Data transfer continues in *descending* order of address until either the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or the interblock gap is found, whichever occurs first. The tape moves until the interblock gap is found, regardless of how many bytes are transferred. When the gap is found, channel end and device end are both presented. If a tape mark is detected during the read operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end. The density and mode in which the recorded data is read are determined as described for the 'read forward' command.

If, during a read backward operation, the tape runs into the load point, the unit check bit in sense byte 0 is set.

Note: A read backward operation with data conversion cannot be performed. If data converter on is specified, the 'read backward' command suppresses data conversion and reads the data without conversion. No error indication is given.

Rewind

The 'rewind' command causes the selected tape unit to rewind the tape to the load point so that the tape is at its beginning and the unit is ready. If the tape is positioned away from the load point, command acceptance is indicated by condition code 0 in response to the 'start I/O' instruction. The channel then becomes busy for 300 ms and then channel end is presented. (If the tape subsystem is addressed before channel end is presented, the response to a 'start I/O' is condition code 2 — channel busy.)

The tape unit rewinds until the load point is detected, then stops just beyond the load point. Device end is then presented and the tape unit is ready. If the tape is already at the load point when the 'rewind' command is given, channel end and device end are both presented in the initial status, and condition code 1 is given in response to the 'start I/O'.

Transfer in Channel

The transfer in channel command allows the chaining of CCWs which are not located in adjacent main storage locations.

Rewind Unload

The 'rewind unload' command causes the selected tape unit to rewind the tape to the load point, then to unload the tape so that it can be removed from the drive. Channel end, device end, and unit check are indicated 300 ms after the command is accepted. (The unit check status indicates that the tape unit is no longer ready.) The 300 ms delay (during which the channel is busy) occurs whether or not the tape is already at the load point. The tape drive then rewinds the tape until the load point reflective marker is detected. The tape unit releases the vacuum upon detection of the load point, after which it is no longer in the ready state, and the tape is unloaded.

Erase Gap

The 'erase gap' command causes the selected tape unit to move its tape forward and to erase information on the tape (if any). The results of this command depend on the mode

to which the tape unit is set, and the position of the tape, at the time the command is given.

In PE mode, an 'erase gap' command given when the tape is at the load point causes writing of the PE identification burst, after which an erased area approximately 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) long is created. An 'erase gap' command given when the tape is away from the load point erases an area about 4.2 in. (106,7 mm) long. Successive 'erase gap' commands each add about 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) of erased area.

In NRZI mode, an 'erase gap' command given when the tape is at the load point erases an area about 6.5 in. (165,1 mm) long; no identification burst is written. An 'erase gap' command given when the tape is away from the load point erases an area about 4.2 in. (106,7 mm). Successive 'erase gap' commands each add another 3.6 in. (91,44 mm) of erased area.

For the 'erase gap' command, channel end and device end are both presented when the erase operation is completed at the tape unit. If the erase gap operation runs into the end-of-tape (EOT) area, channel end and device end are accompanied by unit exception and control unit end (bit 34 in the CSW). The TAPE INDICATE light is turned on.

Write Tape Mark

The 'write tape mark' command causes the tape unit to move its tape forward and to write a tape mark. (A tape mark is a special block of bytes which defines the boundary of a file.) No data is transferred from main storage because the tape mark is generated by the tape control unit. Channel end and device end are both presented when the write operation is completed at the tape unit. Tape mark writing is checked by the control unit and up to 15 automatic retry attempts are executed if the tape mark cannot be written successfully.

The tape mark is not recognized as data. The tape marks written differ, depending on the mode in which the tape unit operates.

In PE mode, the tape mark consists of approximately 75 bytes, and is preceded by an interblock gap of about 0.6 in. (15,2 mm).

In NRZI nine track mode, the tape mark consists of one byte followed by seven erased bytes followed by a longitudinal redundancy check (LRC) byte. The tape mark is preceded by a 3.2 in. (81,3 mm) interblock gap.

In NRZI seven track mode, the tape mark consists of one byte followed by three erased bytes followed by the LRC byte. The tape mark is preceded by a 3.2 in. (81,3 mm) interblock gap.

Note: If a write tape mark operation runs into the end-of-tape area, unit exception and control unit end

accompany the channel end and device end status. The tape unit's TAPE INDICATE light is turned on.

Backspace Block

The 'backspace block' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward until the next interblock gap or the load point is found, whichever comes first. This backward tape movement does not involve a data transfer to main storage. Channel end and device end are presented when the tape motion is completed. If a tape mark is encountered during the backspace operation, unit exception is always presented.

Backspace File

The 'backspace file' command causes the tape at the selected tape unit to move backward, either to the interblock gap located beyond the next tape mark or to the load point, whichever comes first. No data is transferred. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed.

Forwardspace Block

The 'forwardspace block' command moves the tape at the selected tape unit forward to the next interblock gap; no data is transferred. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed. If the forwardspace block operation runs into the end-of-tape area, the TAPE INDICATE light on the tape unit is turned on (no status indications other than channel end and device end). If a tape mark is detected during the forwardspace file operation, unit exception is presented in addition to channel end and device end.

Forwardspace File

The 'forwardspace file' command moves the tape at the selected tape unit forward to the interblock gap that follows the next tape mark. No data is transferred to main storage. Channel end and device end are both set when tape motion is completed. If the forwardspace file operation runs into the end-of-tape area, the TAPE INDICATE light is turned on but no status indication is given other than channel end and device end.

Set Mode 2 Commands

The set mode 2 commands can only be used if the 3803 has the nine track NRZI feature installed (and the attached 3420s are equipped with the dual density feature). After initial power-on or system reset, all tape units are automatically set to write at 1600 bpi in phase-encoded mode. The set mode 2 commands enable the density to be set to 800 bpi NRZI, or reset to 1600 bpi PE.

Notes:

1. Set mode 2 commands apply to the entire length of tape on a reel; it is impossible to change mode and density half-way through a reel.

2. Set mode 2 commands do not affect read operations, which are self-adjusting.

The set mode 2 commands are of the immediate type, and channel end and device end are both presented in the initial status when the command code has been transferred. If a set mode 2 command is issued in the absence of the dual density feature, the command is equivalent to a 'control no-op'.

Set Mode 2 800 BPI – NRZI: When the 'set mode 2 800 bpi – NRZI' command is given, the selected tape unit that has its tape positioned at the load point changes to 800 bpi in NRZI mode for any subsequent write-type operations (such as 'write', 'erase gap', or 'write tape mark').

Selected tape units which have their tape positioned away from the load point when the 'set mode 2 800 bpi – NRZI' command is given are not affected by the command. However, the command is stored in the 3803 and takes effect as soon as a tape unit returns its tape to the load point. At this time, the drive resets to 1600 bpi but then changes to the mode stored in the 3803.

Set Mode 2 1600 BPI – PE: To reset from the 800 bpi – NRZI mode back to 1600 bpi PE, the 'set mode 2 1600 bpi – PE' command must be given. This command has an immediate effect on only those selected tape units with tape at the load point. Those with tape positioned away from the load point will change to the new mode on return to the load point (unless another set mode 2 command has been given before the tape has returned to the load point).

Set Mode 1 Commands

Set mode 1 commands are provided for controlling the seven track feature; they have no effect on tape units equipped with nine-track read/write heads. Set mode 1 commands apply to all tape units equipped with seven-track read/write heads and are effective for read and write operations regardless of the position of the tape. Figure 85.2 shows the modes that can be set by the various command codes.

Command Code (hex)	Mode Details			
	Density	Parity	Translator	Converter
53	556	Odd	Off	On
63	556	Even	Off	Off
6B	556	Even	On	Off
73	556	Odd	Off	Off
7B	556	Odd	On	Off
93	800	Odd	Off	On
A3	800	Even	Off	Off
AB	800	Even	On	Off
B3	800	Odd	Off	Off
BB	800	Odd	On	Off

Figure 85.2. Command Codes for Set Mode 1 Commands [20490]

When one of the commands listed in Figure 85.2 is given, it takes effect immediately and the mode that it sets remains effective until another set mode 1 command is given. Channel end and device end are presented in the initial status. If a set mode 1 command is given to a tape subsystem with no seven track feature installed, the command is equivalent to a no-op.

The translator function can translate eight-bit EBCDIC bytes to six-bit BCD characters, and vice versa. The data converter allows writing and reading of nine-track data on seven-track tape without loss of data. This is accomplished by converting three eight-bit bytes into four six-bit tape characters, and vice versa.

Data Security Erase

The 'data security erase' command causes the selected tape unit to move its tape forward and erase the information on the tape until the EOT reflective marker is found. Channel end is indicated when the command code is accepted, device end is indicated when the EOT marker is found.

The 'data security erase' command is executed only when it is chained to an immediately preceding 'erase gap' command. Under all other circumstances (such as when it is issued as a stand-alone or when chained to another command), it is rejected.

Note: The 'data security erase' command erases data only from the point at which the command is given until the EOT marker is reached. If the area beyond the EOT marker is to be erased, successive 'erase gap' commands must be used.

Request Track in Error

The 'request track in error' command causes sense byte 2 (the "track-in-error" byte) to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the control unit. Sense byte 2 has been brought into main storage via the last 'sense' command given to the tape subsystem. Sense byte 2 shows which track has failed (if any). The control unit uses this byte as an aid to recovering the next data block that is read. Channel end and device end are both set when the transfer of sense byte 2 is completed.

Set Diagnostic Mode

The 'set diagnostic mode' command is a control command which alters the function of all write-type commands that are chained to it. The diagnostic mode is reset when the chain ends. The 'set diagnostic mode' command causes an artificial signal-loss which is designed to test the read and write error detection circuits. Only write-type commands are affected, as follows:

In PE mode, whenever write data contains successive one-bits in any track, writing in that track is inhibited until the last one-bit is reached.

In NRZI mode, no bits are written in track P.

Either of these situations sets data check unless the error detection circuits are damaged.

ERP Loop Write-to-Read

This is a special write-type command designed to aid in error recovery procedures. The command operates like a normal 'write' command except that no data is written on tape and the tape does not move. Instead, write data bypasses the write head and is routed from the write circuits (which normally feed the head) to the read circuits (which normally pick up data from tape through the read head). The purpose of this operation is to distinguish between read or write circuit failure and head or tape failure. This is possible because write data is checked at the read circuits for phase error (PE only), VRC (in PE and NRZI) and skew (in NRZI only) just as happens in a normal write operation. If no errors occur during execution of the 'ERP loop write-to-read' command, but errors are experienced during normal writing, the failure is in the head or the recording medium.

Note: If the 'ERP loop write-to read' command is performed while the tape unit is in write status, the tape does not move, but the write head transfers an undefined byte onto the tape. The same operation performed while the tape unit is in read status or file-protected does not affect the tape.

Set Diagnose

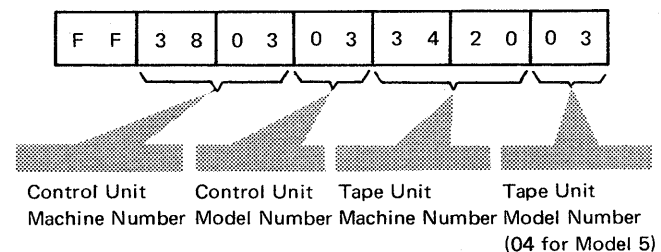
The 'set diagnose' command is for use by IBM test programs only. Improper use of this command may cause loss of vital data on tape.

Sense Command

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the 3803 to the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. The information is transferred in ascending order of this address until either all 24 sense bytes have been transferred or the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. Then channel end and device end are both presented. For more information about the sense bytes, see "3803/3420 Subsystem Sense Information" in this section.

Sense I/O Type

When the 'sense I/O type' command is given, it causes seven bytes of machine-identifying information to be transferred from the 3803 to main storage, starting at the location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. The seven bytes identify the machine and model numbers of the control unit and addressed tape unit, as follows:



Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command causes no action at the tape unit except that channel end, device end, and any other status conditions which may be present are stored at initial selection.

3803-3/3420 SUBSYSTEM STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the status reports, and the circumstances under which the reports are given, for the 3803 and 3420s which comprise the tape subsystem.

Unit Status

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit, when set at the same time as control unit end (bit 34), indicates control unit busy.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is set when the tape subsystem has been addressed at a time when the 3803 was busy executing an operation. Control unit end is also set when the control unit detects an unusual condition after channel end has been presented in the initial status; this can occur only for 'rewind' or 'data security erase' commands. Control unit end is also presented for a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction.

Busy (Bit 35)

When the busy bit is set, the addressed tape unit is busy executing a previously-issued command such as 'rewind' or 'data security erase'. The busy bit is also set if the addressed tape unit has an interruption condition pending.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit is set when the data transfer portion of a command is completed or, if only the command code is transferred, when the command code transfer is completed. The setting of channel end indicates that the channel is available for another command.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit is set when an operation is completed at a tape unit. The setting of device end may coincide with channel end (with write, read, and read backward operations, etc) or may occur later (as with rewind and data security erase operations). Device end is set alone when a tape unit is manually put into the ready state, as when a new tape has been loaded and the tape unit's START key is subsequently pressed, provided that the tape unit has been previously interrogated.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for various errors or unusual conditions. If unit check is set, a subsequent 'sense' command shows the exact cause (for details, see "3803-3/3420 Subsystem Sense Information"). Typical cases that cause the setting of unit check are backward commands that either run into the load point or are initiated when the tape is already at the load point. Unit check is also set when a 'rewind unload' command has been accepted, and indicates that the addressed tape unit is no longer ready.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when a write-type command (such as 'write', 'write tape mark', or 'erase gap') runs into the EOT marker. This situation also turns on the tape unit's TAPE INDICATE light. The light is turned off by a backward command that again senses the EOT marker. Unit exception is also set when a 'read', 'read backward', 'forwardspace block' or 'backwardspace block' command detects a tape mark before the next interblock gap is found.

Channel Status

The channel status is recorded in CSW bits 40 to 47; the bits have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
40	Program controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check
47	Chaining check

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the 3803/3420 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see the *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000.

3803-3/3420 SUBSYSTEM SENSE INFORMATION

The 3803 Tape Control and 3420 Magnetic Tape Units comprising the 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem provide up to 24 bytes of sense information.

Sense Bytes 0 to 8

Figure 85.3 shows the meanings assigned to the bits in sense bytes 0 to 8. The individual bits are not described more fully in this section because their functions are similar to those of the corresponding sense bits for the 3410/3411 magnetic tape subsystem. For a more detailed description of a bit shown in Figure 85.3, therefore, refer to the bit of the same (or similar) name under "3410/3411 Sense Information" in the section "IBM 3410 Magnetic Tape Unit, Models 1, 2, and 3; IBM 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control, Models 1, 2, and 3". Alternatively, see *IBM 3803/3420 Magnetic Tape Subsystems, Component Description*, GA32-0020.

Sense Bytes 9 to 23

The information in sense bytes 9 to 23 is mainly for the use

of the customer engineer, and is not described in this manual. For a full description, see *IBM 3803/3420 Magnetic Tape Subsystems, Component Description*, GA32-0020.

Differences in Sense Information between 3803 Model 1 and 3803 Model 3

The sense information described in the *Component Description* manual is for a 3803 Tape Control Model 1. The sense information for a 3803 Model 3 is identical except for two sense bits.

P Compare Error (Sense Byte 9, Bit 4): This bit is set when parity from the ABI parity generator does not match the parity of data from the data buffer. This can occur if there is a logic failure between the PE error correction circuits and the ABI parity generator.

Buffer Error (Sense Byte 11, Bit 6): This bit, when set, indicates an error in the buffer control logic, which could either cause a data byte to be sent twice to the MTA or could cause a data byte not to be transferred.

Sense Byte	Bit Number and Designation							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0	Command reject ¹	Intervention required ^{1,2}	Bus out check ¹	Equipment check ¹	Data check ¹	Overrun ¹	Word count zero ¹	Data converter check ¹
1	Noise ³	Tape unit status A ²	Tape unit status B ²	7-Track tape unit	Load point ²	Write status ²	File protected ²	Not capable tape unit ¹
2	Track in error							
3	Read/Write VRC ³	Multiple track error or LRC error ³	Skew error ³	End data check or CRC ³	Envelope check or ECC ³	1600 bpi set in tape unit	Backward	P inverted or C compare ³
4	ALU hardware error ^{2,4}	Reject tape unit ⁵	Tape indicate	Write trigger VRC ³	Microprogram-detected error	Loop write-to-read	Tape unit check ²	Reserved for RPQ
5	New subsystem		Write tape-mark check ³	PE ID burst check ¹	Start read check ³	Partial record ³	Excessive postamble or tape mark ³	Reserved for RPQ
6	7-Track tape unit	Write current failure ²	Dual density	NRZI density	Tape unit model identification: 0011 = Model 3, 0100 = Model 5			
7	Lamp failure ²	Tape bottom left ²	Tape bottom right ²	Reset key ² or door interlock	Data security erase	Erase head failure ²	Air bearing pressure ²	Load failure ²
8	IBG drop while writing ³	Feedthrough check ³	Reserved	Early begin readback check ³	Early end readback check ³	Slow begin readback check ³	Slow end readback check ³	Velocity retry or restart

Notes

1. This bit sets unit check (CSW bit 38).
2. The state of this bit may change between consecutive 'sense' commands.
3. This bit sets data check (sense byte 0, bit 4).
4. This bit sets bus out check or equipment check (sense byte 0, bit 2 or 3).
5. This bit sets equipment check.

Figure 85.3. Sense Bytes 0 to 8 [20491]

This page is intentionally left blank

IBM 5203 Printer Model 3

This section describes the character sets, commands, status reports, sense information, and error recovery procedures for the 5203 Printer Model 3, when operating under control of the integrated printer attachment.

5203 CHARACTER SETS

The AN and HN trains, equipped with five sets of 48 characters, are standard. Whether the AN or HN set is printed depends solely on the train mounted on the printer. Other trains may be used if the Universal Character Set (UCS) optional feature is installed. The LC train cannot be installed.

Dualing

The AN and HN trains are identical except for four character positions. On the AN train these four positions contain:

▣ % @ #

whereas the HN train has:

) (' =

This means, for example, that the HN train has the graphic) where the AN train has ▣. This graphic) is printed if the corresponding EBCDIC code hexadecimal '4C' (see Figure 86) is sent to a printer equipped with the HN train, whereas the lozenge ▣ would be printed if the printer were equipped with the AN train. This relationship is called dualing (pairing). All possible combinations are shown in Figures 86 and 87.

AN Train

EBCDIC Code		Primary Assignment on AN Train	Assignment for Dualing on HN Train
Hex	Binary		
4C	01001100	▣)
6C	01101100	%	(
7C	01111100	@	'
7B	01111011	#	=

HN Train

EBCDIC Code		Primary Assignment on HN Train	Assignment for Dualing on AN Train
Hex	Binary		
5D	01011101)	▣
4D	01001101	(%
7D	01111101	'	@
7E	01111110	=	#

Figure 86. EBCDIC Codes of Graphics Dualled on the 5203 [19579]

Apart from the exception stated in Figure 87, the codes outside the bold lines of Figure 87 are considered to be undefined. Undefined codes generally cause an unspecified

graphic to be printed. This graphic may be different from the one printed, displayed or otherwise recorded by another output device. IBM reserve the right to change such undefined graphics printed by the 5203 from an undefined code.

5203 COMMANDS

Write Commands

Write commands cause data to be transferred from main storage to the print line buffer; the data transfer is followed by the electro-mechanical print operation, including any carriage motion. The data transfer begins at the storage location designated by the data address (CCW bits 8 to 31) and proceeds in ascending order of address. The data transfer ends either when the print line buffer is filled or when the length count (CCW bits 48 to 63) has been reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. The count should be decimal 120 or 132, depending on the print line width. If the output area contains more characters than appropriate for the print line width or if the count is less than the print line width, incorrect length (bit 41 in the CSW) is indicated unless the SLI flag is on and the CD flag is off in the current CCW. Channel end (bit 36 in the CSW) is indicated when the data transfer from main storage to the print line buffer has been completed. Device end (bit 37 in the CSW) is indicated when the mechanical print operation and any carriage operations have been carried out. Channel end and device end are interruption conditions (but only for the last command if chaining is in progress).

The printer attachment accepts the write commands shown in Figure 88.

Carriage Control Commands

Carriage control commands consist of space and skip commands and the 'load carriage control buffer' command. For space and skip commands, the command code is transferred to the printer attachment, then channel end is indicated in the initial status and the carriage operation is started. Device end is indicated when the mechanical operation is completed at the 5203. Device end is an interruption condition for space and skip commands, unless command chaining is in progress.

Figure 89 shows the space and skip commands available for the 5203.

Carriage Control Buffer Structure

The 5203's carriage is not controlled by paper tape (the method used in the IBM 1403 Printer and other IBM high-speed line printers). Instead, the 5203 employs a 112-byte carriage control buffer.

Each carriage control buffer byte represents one line on

Bit Positions

4567	00				01				10				11			
	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11
0000					Blank	&	-						&	-		0
0001							/		a	j			A	J		1
0010									b	k	s		B	K	S	2
0011									c	l	t		C	L	T	3
0100									d	m	u		D	M	U	4
0101									e	n	v		E	N	V	5
0110									f	o	w		F	O	W	6
0111									g	p	x		G	P	X	7
1000									h	q	y		H	Q	Y	8
1001									i	r	z		I	R	Z	9
1010																
1011						S	,	#								
1100					A	*	%	@								
1101					H	H	H	H								
1110					+			=								
1111								#								

Notes:

1. A and H refer to graphics printed from the 48 AN or 48 HN set, respectively.
2. Graphics enclosed in the heavy lines correspond to most commonly expected bit patterns.
3. The lower-case alphabetic graphics shown will print as the corresponding upper-case graphics on the 48 AN or 48 HN arrangements when a lower-case bit pattern is sent to a 5203 with a 48 AN or 48 HN arrangement.

Figure 87. Characters Printed from EBCDIC for a 48 AN or 48 HN Train [19580]

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write without spacing
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Write and space 1 after printing
11	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	Write and space 2 after printing
19	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	Write and space 3 after printing
89	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 1 after printing
91	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 2 after printing
99	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 3 after printing
A1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 4 after printing
A9	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 5 after printing
B1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 6 after printing
B9	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 7 after printing
C1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 8 after printing
C9	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 9 after printing
D1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 10 after printing
D9	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 11 after printing
E1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	Write and skip to channel 12 after printing

Notes:

1. If a write and skip command specifies a channel for which no code exists in the buffer, the carriage does not move and the command ends with unit check set in the CSW and the no channel found bit 6 in sense byte 0.
2. If a write and skip command orders the carriage to go to the channel at which it is currently located, the form moves until that channel is detected the next time.

Figure 88. 5203 Write Commands [10850]

the forms sheet; byte 1 represents the first line of a sheet, byte 112 represents the last line of a sheet (assuming the largest possible sheet, which is 14 inches from fold to fold). Each byte may be loaded with a number ranging from 0 to 12 (corresponding to the channel numbers punched in the familiar carriage control paper tape, used on the IBM 1403 Printer and others). The zero represents no channel designation ("no punch"). To designate the actual length of a form (specified on tape-controlled carriages by cutting the control tape to size) an end-of-sheet specification can be set into any byte of the buffer. The buffer byte codes are shown in Figure 90.

The end-of-sheet specification causes the counter (which monitors the position of the carriage) in the printer attachment to wrap around when end-of-sheet is recognized. For information about correct end-of-sheet code placement see the next paragraph.

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Space 1
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	Space 2
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	Space 3
8B	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 1
93	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 2
9B	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 3
A3	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 4
AB	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 5
B3	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 6
BB	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 7
C3	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 8
CB	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 9
D3	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 10
DB	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	Skip to channel 11
E3	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	Skip to channel 12
5B	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	Advance to end of sheet

Notes:

1. If a skip command specifies a channel for which no code exists in the buffer, the carriage does not move and the command ends with unit check set in the CSW and the no channel found bit (bit 6) set in sense byte 0.
2. If a skip command orders the carriage to go to the channel at which it is already located, and the preceding command moved the carriage, the carriage does not move and channel end and device end are presented. If the preceding command was a write without space or a forms buffer load command, the carriage moves until the specified channel is detected next time.

Figure 89. 5203 – Carriage Control Space and Skip Commands [10840A]

Hex	Buffer Byte Code Bits							Meaning	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
00	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	No channel (no punch)
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Channel 1
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Channel 2
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Channel 3
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Channel 4
05	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Channel 5
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Channel 6
07	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	Channel 7
08	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Channel 8
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Channel 9
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Channel 10
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Channel 11
0C	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	Channel 12
10	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	End of sheet

Note: All codes not specified in this table are interpreted as end-of-sheet codes

Figure 90. 5203 – Carriage Control Buffer Byte Codes [10841B]

Assigning the End-of-Sheet Code: The end-of-sheet code must be set into the buffer byte that represents the last printable line of a given sheet. The last printable line of a sheet is determined by multiplying the sheet length (in inches) by the desired line spacing, which can be either six lines or eight lines per inch.

For example: A 12-inch sheet multiplied by eight lines per inch results in 96 printable lines per sheet. The end-of-sheet code must be assigned to line 96 (buffer byte 96). A 12-inch sheet used with six lines per inch spacing results in 72 printable lines per sheet, so the end-of-sheet code must be assigned to line 72. Correct end-of-sheet code assignment ensures that the carriage control buffer remains in synchronism with the form. If the end-of-sheet code is not assigned to the last printable line of a sheet, the control counter wraps around to zero too early (or too late), causing information for the next sheet to be printed on the last lines of the previous sheet. There is no error indication to show that the counter is not synchronised with the form.

Load Carriage Control Buffer

The 'load carriage control buffer' command code is:

Hex	CCW Bits
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
63	0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1

Data is transferred from main storage to the carriage control buffer, starting at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and proceeding in ascending order of address. The buffer is loaded in ascending order of position and this continues until the end-of-sheet code is detected, the buffer is filled, or the CCW count is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first.

The 5203 requires a channel 1 code and an end-of-sheet code in each pattern loaded into the forms control buffer. If either, or both, code is missing, the command is terminated and unit check is set at channel end time. Sense byte 0, bit 6 (no channel found) is also set. Subsequent carriage control will follow the pattern defined in the last valid forms buffer load command.

Note: The end-of-sheet code is required to avoid loss of synchronization between the forms and the forms control and to end the ready status in the case of an end-of-forms indication. The channel 1 code is required to support the CARRIAGE RESTORE key (which advances the forms to channel 1).

If the count in the 'load carriage control buffer' CCW is either greater than 112 or less than 112 (decimal), incorrect length is indicated unless the SLI flag bit is on and the CD flag bit is off in the CCW.

Channel end is presented when the data transfer from main storage is completed. At that time, the carriage line counter is reset to "first line", which means that the current carriage position is assumed to represent the first line of the sheet. Device end is presented when the new data has been stored on the diskette.

Advance to End-of-Sheet

The 'advance to end-of-sheet' command causes the carriage to advance the forms to the last line, i.e., until the end-of-sheet code is detected in the forms control buffer. If

the forms are already positioned at the last line, they do not move. Channel end is presented at initial selection, and device end is presented when the mechanical operation is complete.

Programming Note: The 'advance to end-of-sheet' command eliminates the need for manual adjustment of the carriage when reloading the forms control buffer. It moves the carriage into a defined position under program control before a 'load carriage control buffer' command is issued. A skip to channel 1 following the load operation will then synchronize the form with the newly-loaded control information.

UCS Commands

Universal character set (UCS) commands are only valid when the UCS feature is installed in the 5203 attachment. If these commands are given in the absence of a UCS feature, the commands are rejected and bit 0 is set in sense byte 0.

Figure 91 shows the UCS commands available for the 5203.

Command Code		Command
Hex	CCW Bits	
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	
F3	1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1	Load UCS buffer with folding
FB	1 1 1 1 1 0 1 1	Load UCS without folding
73	0 1 1 1 0 0 1 1	Block data check
7B	0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1	Allow data check

Note: The 'gate load' command (hex 'EB') is not used on the 5203. If this command is given, it is treated as no-operation.

Figure 91. 5203 UCS Commands [10854A]

Load UCS Buffer with Folding

The 'load UCS buffer with folding' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the UCS buffer. The data transferred represents the chain image. During transfer, the EBCDIC codes of the first, second, and third quadrants of the standard EBCDIC table are "folded" into the fourth quadrant of this table so that four different EBCDIC codes cause one and the same character to be printed. Because the quadrants of the EBCDIC table are identified by bits 0 and 1 of a byte, folding is technically accomplished by suppressing bits 0 and 1 during code comparison so that, effectively, the quadrant specification is ignored.

The data transfer begins at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and proceeds in ascending order of address until the 240-byte UCS buffer is filled or the length count (bits 48 to 63 of the CCW) has been reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. At the end of the data transfer channel end is set, and device end follows

when the new image has been recorded on the diskette. The UCS buffer remains loaded until it is reloaded or power goes off.

Load UCS Buffer without Folding

The 'load UCS buffer without folding' command is identical to the 'load UCS buffer with folding' command except that folding does not occur. Only one EBCDIC code corresponds to each print character.

Block Data Check

The 'block data check' command provides the means to suppress data checks that can occur if, for example, the print line buffer contains a character bit pattern that is not available in the UCS buffer.

The 'block data check' command causes neither data transfer nor any mechanical operation. Only the command code is transferred, and channel end and device end are both set in the initial status. When 'block data check' is given, data checks are suppressed until an 'allow data check' command is given, power goes off, or a power-on reset occurs.

Note: The 'block data check' command for the 5203 is not subject to any restriction in use. It can be given at any time, and can be included in a command chain. Its blocking function is, however, effective only in UCS operations.

Allow Data Check

The 'allow data check' resets the effect of a previously-issued 'block data check' command. The 'allow data check' command need only be given to reset a 'block data check' command; if neither command is given, data checks are allowed.

The 'allow data check' command causes neither data transfer nor any mechanical operation. Only the command code is transferred and both channel end and device end are set in the initial status.

Note: The 'allow data check' command can be given at any time, and can be included in a command chain.

Automatic UCS Buffer Initialization/Reloading

The UCS buffer is automatically loaded with a standard AN 48-character set, which is recorded on the console diskette at the IBM factory, enabling the 5203 to operate even if no chain image is loaded. Any load UCS buffer command overwrites the initial value and the new pattern is at the same time recorded on the diskette. In case of processor damage, the UCS buffer is automatically reloaded from the diskette so that the pattern last used is available.

Control No-Op Command

The 'control no-op' command (command code 00000011) performs no function in the 5203. When this command is given, channel end, device end, and any other status

conditions that exist at the time are indicated in the initial status.

Read Commands

No 'read' command is available for the 5203. A 'read' command issued to the printer is rejected.

Sense Command

The 'sense' command is usually given when unit check has been set in the CSW, and provides a means of transferring up to six bytes of sense information from the printer attachment to main storage. The sense bytes contain information about errors or unusual conditions in the printer or its controlling front end; the operating system analyzes this information before taking appropriate action to recover from the error(s). The 'sense' command code is:

Hex	CCW Bits
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
04	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0

The sense information is stored into the main storage location specified by CCW bits 8 to 31, in ascending order of address. The number of sense bytes to be transferred is specified in CCW bits 48 to 63. Channel end and device end are both set when the transfer of sense information to main storage is completed.

For details of the information that can be obtained by use of the 'sense' command, see "5203 Sense Information" in this section.

5203 STATUS INFORMATION

The following text gives the meanings of the status indications which are given in response to 5203 commands.

Unit Status

The unit status is indicated in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The unit status is directly related to a command that has been given to, completed by, or terminated by the 5203. The bits are assigned the following meanings:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is not used.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit, when set, indicates that the printer and its controlling front end logic are occupied with executing some previously-initiated operation. If busy is set together with channel end or device end, it indicates a pending status.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit, when set, indicates that the data transfer part of a 5203 command, or the transfer of the command code, is completed.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit, when set, indicates that the 5203 has completed the mechanical portion (if any) of an operation. Device end thus signals that the printer is free to accept and execute a new command. Device end is set alone when the printer is manually transferred from the not-ready to the ready state (when the printer's START key is pressed).

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for various errors or other unusual conditions that may have occurred in the 5203 and/or its controlling front end logic. Because the setting of unit check does not define the error condition, a 'sense' command should be issued to the 5203. The contents of the sense bytes will show the actual cause of unit check being set. For details of the conditions that can cause unit check to be set, see "5203 Sense Information" in this section.

The setting of unit check breaks command chaining.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

Unit exception is set when the channel 12 code is detected during a command-initiated carriage motion (not during a manual space or skip operation). Depending on the meaning assigned to channel 12 by the programmer, unit exception can thus indicate situations such as an impending page overflow.

Channel Status

The channel status information is recorded in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW; the bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check (not used)
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the 5203 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter, or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-function Card Machine, Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation*, GA22-7000.

Note: A set PCI flag bit in the first CCW after a 'start I/O' instruction is not recognized if the 'start I/O' instruction finds the 5203 is not available.

5203 SENSE INFORMATION

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Chain buffer parity check
6	No channel found
7	Channel 9

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit, when set, indicates that the current command was rejected because it was not assigned to the 5203 or the respective feature is not installed. A read command being issued causes command rejection. The fact that the current command has been rejected is indicated by *unit check* being set in the initial status. Setting of unit check causes chaining (if specified) to be suppressed.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit, when set, indicates that operator intervention is necessary because the 5203 has lost the ready state. The ready state is lost in the following situations:

1. The 5203's STOP key is pressed.
2. The train cartridge is not properly seated or has been removed.
3. The rear unit is open or the forms chute points upward (in the load position).
4. A forms jam has occurred (switching on the CHECK light).
5. The forms have run out (switching on the FORMS light).
6. A carriage sync check has occurred (switching on the CHECK light).

7. A chain sync check has occurred (switching on the CHECK light).
8. An overheat condition (thermal overload) occurred in the hammer unit or the 5203's electronics gate.
9. A hammer driver could not be reset, or the CE hammer-on check switch was accidentally operated, causing the coil protect bit (bit 2, sense byte 2) to be set.
10. The hammer bar right home position could not be detected or the shift clutch failed.
11. The check circuitry is defective, setting the any-hammer-on check bit, and also forcing the coil protect check bit, in sense byte 2.
12. An error occurred in the subscan counter, setting the subscan ring check bit in sense byte 2.
13. A chain buffer address register check has occurred.

The setting of the intervention required bit causes *unit check* to be set in the CSW at the initiation of a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction or at device end time, depending on when the condition arises. Intervention required is reset when the printer is restored to the ready state.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

This bit indicates a program-resettable error that occurred in the 5203 or the front end logic. The error is reset the next time the printer is selected for a 'start I/O', 'halt I/O', or 'halt device' instruction.

The equipment check bit is set by one or more of the nine error conditions which are represented by the bits of sense bytes 4 and 5. For details of these conditions, see "Sense Byte 4" and "Sense Byte 5" in this section.

The detection of an equipment check causes unit check to be set at the time device end (with or without channel end) is set.

Note: Setting of the equipment check bit does not cause the 5203 to lose the ready state.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit can only be set when data checks are not prevented by a 'block data check' command. Data check will then be set if the print line buffer contains a character pattern for which no matching pattern is found in the UCS buffer during a UCS print operation. This is usually due to a wrong print train being mounted.

The fact that data check is set is indicated by unit check being set in the CSW at device end time.

Chain Buffer Parity Check (Bit 5)

The chain buffer parity check bit is set to indicate a chain buffer parity error. The presence of a chain buffer parity check causes unit check to be set at channel end time.

No Channel Found (Bit 6)

The no channel found bit is set when a skip command or a write and skip command did not find the channel code (in the carriage control buffer) to which the carriage was to advance. The bit is also set if no channel 1 code or no end-of-sheet code is transferred from main storage when a 'load carriage control buffer' command is given. The setting of the no channel found bit causes unit check to be set at device end time.

Channel 9 (Bit 7)

The channel 9 bit, when set, indicates that a channel 9 code was detected in the carriage control buffer during the execution of a space command or a write and space command. The same situation when caused by a manual space or any of the skip commands does not set the channel 9 bit. The setting of the channel 9 bit causes unit check to be set at device end time.

Sense Byte 1

Sense byte 1 is not used.

Sense Byte 2

The bits in sense byte 2 represent eight conditions, any of which can cause the 5203 to lose its ready state. The setting of one of these bits causes the intervention required bit to be set in sense byte 0. The bits in sense byte 2 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Interlock (chain gate open)
1	Forms check (jam)
2	Coil protect check
3	Subscan ring check
4	Chain buffer address register check
5	Hammer unit shift check
6	Any-hammer-on check
7	Thermal overload

Interlock (Bit 0)

The interlock bit is set to indicate that the 5203's rear unit is open (in the upward position), or the forms chute is in the load position.

Forms Check (Bit 1)

The forms check bit, when set, indicates a paper jam.

Coil Protect Check (Bit 2)

The coil protect check bit, when set, indicates that power was removed from the hammer circuits to prevent damage to the hammer coils.

Subscan Ring Check (Bit 3)

The subscan ring check bit is set if there is an error in the subscan ring counter (hardware) or a drum emitter failure.

Chain Buffer Address Register Check (Bit 4)

This bit is set to indicate that there is a loss of synchronism between the chain position and chain buffer addressing at home pulse time (at this time, both should be in step).

Hammer Unit Shift Check (Bit 5)

The hammer unit shift check bit, when set, indicates a failure in a shift clutch, clutch photo emitter, or hammer bar right home switch.

Any-Hammer-On Check (Bit 6)

The any-hammer-on check bit is set to show that protection of the hammer coils is no longer possible because of a failure in the coil protect monitoring circuits or because the CE any-hammer-on test switch was operated. This bit can also mean that the 'any-hammer-on' latch was not turned off, because a hammer failed to fire.

Thermal Overload (Bit 7)

The thermal overload bit, when set, shows that hammer power was removed due to overheating in the hammer unit or the 5203's electronics gate.

Sense Byte 3

Sense byte 3 is unused except for bit 6, carriage sync check. Like the bits in sense byte 2, bit 6, when set, causes the 5203 to lose its ready state and the intervention required bit to be set in sense byte 0.

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used)
1	(Not used)
2	(Not used)
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	Carriage sync check
7	(Not used)

Carriage Sync Check (Bit 6)

The carriage sync check bit, when set, indicates a failure in the carriage clutch or the carriage emitter.

Sense Byte 4

The bits in sense byte 4 represent eight error conditions, any one of which can cause the equipment check bit to be set in sense byte 0. An equipment check caused by a condition in sense byte 4 is a program-resettable error.

Bit	Designation
0	Hammer reset failure check
1	No fire check
2	Misfire check
3	Print data buffer parity check
4	Check bit buffer parity check
5	Chain buffer parity check
6	Buffer address register check
7	Clock check

Hammer Reset Failure Check (Bit 0)

This bit, when set, indicates that a hammer driver failed to reset when addressed for resetting.

No Fire Check (Bit 1)

The no fire check bit, when set, indicates that a hammer failed to fire when addressed for firing.

Misfire Check (Bit 2)

The misfire check bit, when set, indicates that a hammer fired without being addressed.

Buffer Parity Checks (Bits 3, 4, and 5)

The buffer parity check bits for the print data buffer, check bit buffer and chain buffer are set to indicate parity errors in the buffers concerned.

Buffer Address Register Check (Bit 6)

The buffer address register check bit is set when an addressing error causes a subscan to seem excessively long.

Clock Check (Bit 7)

The clock check bit is set when extra clock steps (possibly due to "noise") are detected.

Sense Byte 5

Bit 0 in sense byte 5 represents one further error condition (in addition to those in sense byte 4) which, when set, causes the equipment check bit to be set in sense byte 0. This equipment check is a program-resettable error.

Bit	Designation
0	Open coil check
1	(Not used)
2	(Not used)
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Open Coil Check (Bit 0)

The open coil check bit, when set, indicates that a hammer coil has burnt out.

5203 ERROR RECOVERY

The following text describes the minimum action the operating system should take to deal with errors or other unusual conditions that may occur. Errors and other unusual conditions are usually indicated by the setting of unit check or any of the other status bits (except an end condition or busy) in the CSW.

Unit Check in CSW

When a command ends with unit check set in the CSW, the operating system should issue a 'sense' command and subsequently inspect at least sense byte 0 to find the reason for the unit check. The following text describes the suggested error recovery procedures for errors shown by bits set in sense byte 0.

Command Reject (Sense Byte 0, Bit 0)

The most likely causes of a command being rejected are that it requires the UCS feature, which is not installed, or that an unassigned command, such as a read command, has been issued. In the first case, the operating system should issue a message advising the operator to run the program on a printer with the UCS feature. In the second case, the operating system should trace back the program and provide a message advising the system programmer to correct the error.

Intervention Required (Sense Byte 0, Bit 1)

If the intervention required bit is set, the printer has lost its ready state and manual intervention is required. The operating system should analyze sense bytes 2 and 3 because these bytes contain error information not indicated by the 5203's indicator lights. If sense bytes 2 and 3 show the cause of the error, an appropriate message should then be issued to the operator advising him of the error and requesting him to press the printer's START key (to restore the ready state).

If the error is not obvious from the information in sense bytes 2 and 3, the message should advise the operator to check the indicator lights on the 5203 operator panel. These lights, as described below, can suggest the reason for the printer losing its ready state.

INTERLOCK Light On: The operator should make certain that the train cartridge is properly mounted, the rear unit is closed, and the forms chute is in the feed position (downward).

FORMS Light On: The operator should check whether new forms must be inserted. In case of end-of-forms, the FORMS light is turned on but the 5203 does not lose its ready state and continues printing until the end-of-sheet code is found in the carriage control buffer. The operator must then insert new forms and press the 5203's START key. (The end-of-forms feelers must be set into their cutouts, otherwise the FORMS light remains on.)

CHECK Light On: An error has occurred either in the 5203 or in the front end. Errors in the printer can be conditions such as a forms jam, a thermal overload (hammer unit or electronics gate), a chain sync check, any-hammer-on check, a carriage sync check, and so on.

Hardware malfunctions of this type may be overcome by pressing the 5203's START key. However, in case of repeated hardware errors, CE attention is required.

Equipment Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 3)

If the equipment check bit is set, the operating system should analyze the data provided by sense bytes 4 and 5, and issue a message to the operator advising him of the condition. The program should then retry the last command or display the last print line on the video display. Equipment check conditions are not usually so severe that a retry would be ineffective. However, if equipment check persists, the CE should be notified.

Data Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 4)

If the data check bit is set, the print pattern sent to the 5203 cannot be printed with the train cartridge currently fitted. In this case, the train cartridge should be changed and the job should be repeated.

Chain Buffer Parity Check (Sense Byte 0, Bit 5)

If the chain buffer parity check bit is set, the operating system should display the last line to be printed and repeat the operation. If the error persists, the CE should be notified. Reloading of the UCS buffer is not required because the hardware reloads the buffer automatically.

No Channel Found (Sense Byte 0, Bit 6)

If the no channel found bit is set, the carriage control buffer has been loaded with information that is not appropriate for the current program. The operating system should either reload the carriage buffer or issue a message that indicates what type of control information should be loaded. The operator may also be advised to check the forms on the printer to determine which control program is required.

Channel 9 (Sense Byte 0, Bit 7)

If the channel 9 bit is set, the operating system should take the appropriate action, depending on the use and meaning of channel 9. Setting of the channel 9 bit may indicate a programming error such as the wrong carriage control information for the current program.

Unit Exception in CSW

If the unit exception bit is set, a channel 12 code was detected during spacing and interpretation depends on the meaning which the programmer has assigned to channel 12.

Channel Data Check in CSW

The channel data check bit is usually set as a result of a parity error in the data transferred (such as in a buffer load operation) between main storage and the printer attachment. The error is not severe because the parity has been corrected. The output at the printer is, however, unreliable and the operating system should either retry the operation or use the video screen to display the contents of the output area as it should have been printed. Retry should in any case be attempted. Repeated channel data checks require CE attention.

Note: If channel data check is set, the operating system should analyze storage location 176, which contains the

limited channel logout. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

Channel Control Check in CSW

If the channel control check bit is set, the operation was either terminated or not started due to a severe error in the Model 115's main storage controller or internal bus system. Retry should be attempted and, if unsuccessful, the CE should be notified.

Note: If channel control check is set, the operating system should analyze storage location 176, which contains the limited channel logout. This logout shows how far the operation progressed and/or how it was terminated.

IBM 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit, Models A1 and A2

This section describes the commands, status reports, sense information, and error recovery procedures for the 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit, Models A1 and A2, when under control of the integrated card I/O attachment.

5425 COMMANDS

Figure 92 shows the commands which are available for the 5425. Typical situations in the card path during 5425 operations are shown in Figure 93.

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Read and feed primary
82	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Read and feed secondary
22	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Read IPL mode and feed primary
A2	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	Read IPL mode and feed secondary
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write punch and feed primary
81	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write punch and feed secondary
05	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write punch primary
85	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write punch secondary
41	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write print and feed primary
C1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write print and feed secondary
45	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write print primary
C5	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Write print secondary
--	0	M	M	M	0	F	1	1	Control primary
--	1	M	M	M	0	F	1	1	Control secondary
0F	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	Set ERP mode
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Reset ERP mode

Notes:

1. The 'F' bit of a 'control primary' or 'control secondary' command represents card feeding. If it is set, the 5425 can perform a feed cycle.
2. The 'M' bits of a 'control primary' or 'control secondary' command represent a binary coded stacker number.

Bit Setting

1 2 3

Meaning

0 0 0 : Autoselect. (If a 'control primary' command has bits 1, 2, 3 and 5 at 0, a no-op is performed. If the same bits are at 0 in a 'control secondary' command, the command is invalid and is rejected.)

0 0 1 : Stacker 1

0 1 0 : Stacker 2

0 1 1 : Stacker 3

1 0 0 : Stacker 4

All other codes are invalid.

Figure 92. 5425 Commands [10855A]

Sense

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the integrated card I/O attachment to main storage. A 'sense' command may be given at any time, but should always be given when unit check (bit 38) is set in the CSW. The sense bytes are transferred to main storage starting at the storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Data transfer continues in ascending order of this address until either the maximum of eleven sense bytes are stored or the length count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero, whichever occurs first. Channel end and device end (bits 36 and 37 in the CSW) are presented together when the transfer is completed.

The error indicators in the sense bytes are reset by the next command other than a 'sense' or 'no-op', or the next instruction other than 'test I/O', 'halt I/O', or 'halt device', provided the 5425 is not busy. For a detailed description of the sense bytes and their contents, see "5425 Sense Information" in this section.

Read Commands

Read and Feed Primary

The 'read and feed primary' command causes a card in the primary wait station to be fed through the punch and print stations into a stacker; a new card from the primary hopper is fed through the read station into the vacated primary wait station. Punching, printing, and stacker selection of the card fed from the primary wait station depend upon preceding write and control commands.

The data on the card fed through the read station is read by column groups (1, 33, 65; 2, 34, 66; and so on) into a 96-byte read buffer. All 96 columns are read, checked, and translated from 8-bit 96-column card code to EBCDIC. The translation tables are shown in Figures 94 and 95.

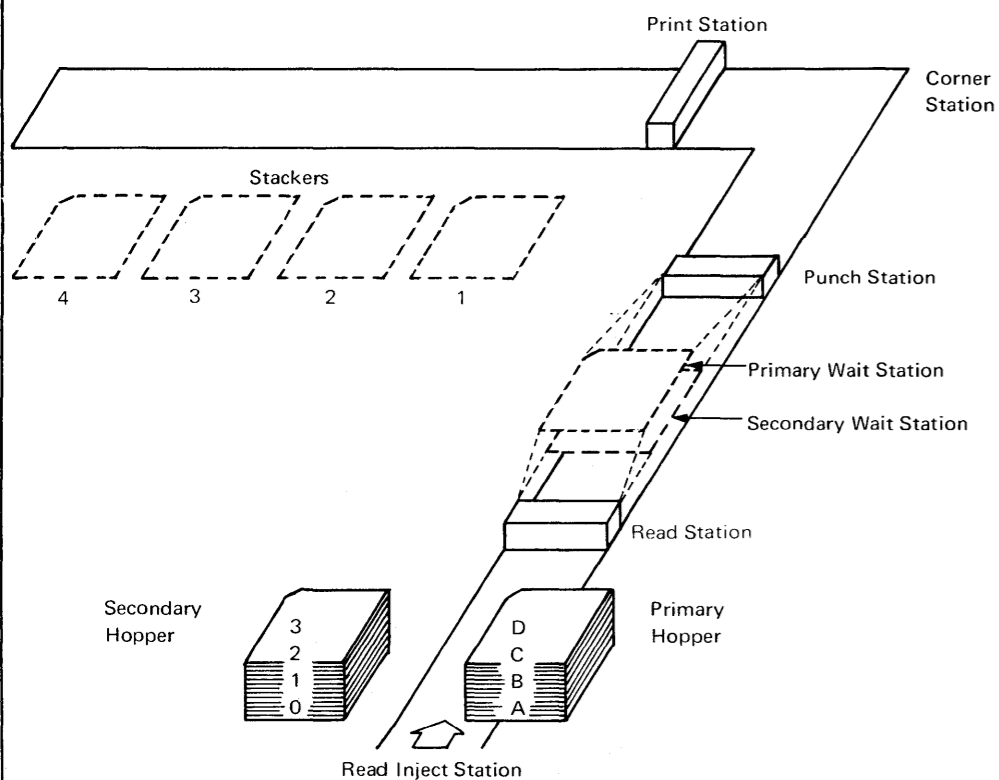
After all 96 columns of data have been read into the read buffer, the data is transferred to main storage in ascending order of columns (1, 2, 3, 4, and so on). The data is stored in ascending order of address starting at the storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Transfer continues until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or 96 bytes have been transferred, whichever occurs first.

Channel end is set when data transfer from the read buffer to main storage is completed. Device end is set when the mechanical operation has reached an appropriate point in its cycle (see description of the device end bit under "Unit Status" in "5425 Status Information"). Channel end and device end are normally set separately for the 'read and feed primary' command.

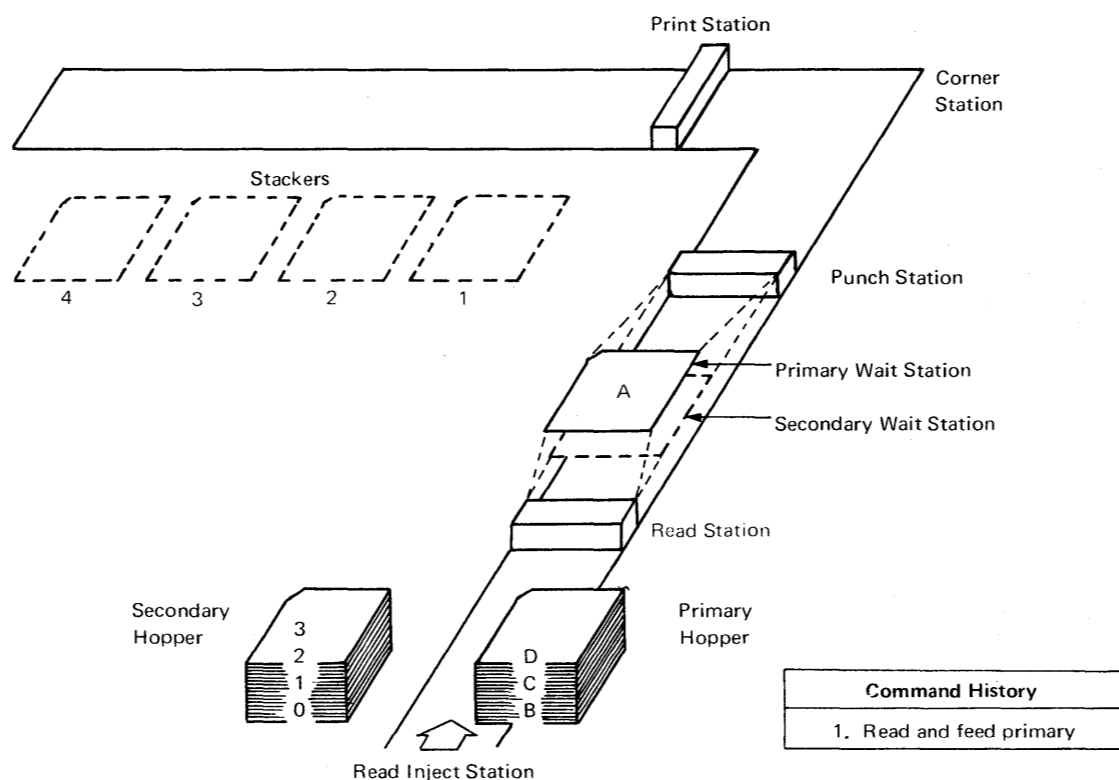
Read and Feed Secondary

The 'read and feed secondary' command causes a card in the secondary wait station to be fed through the punch and

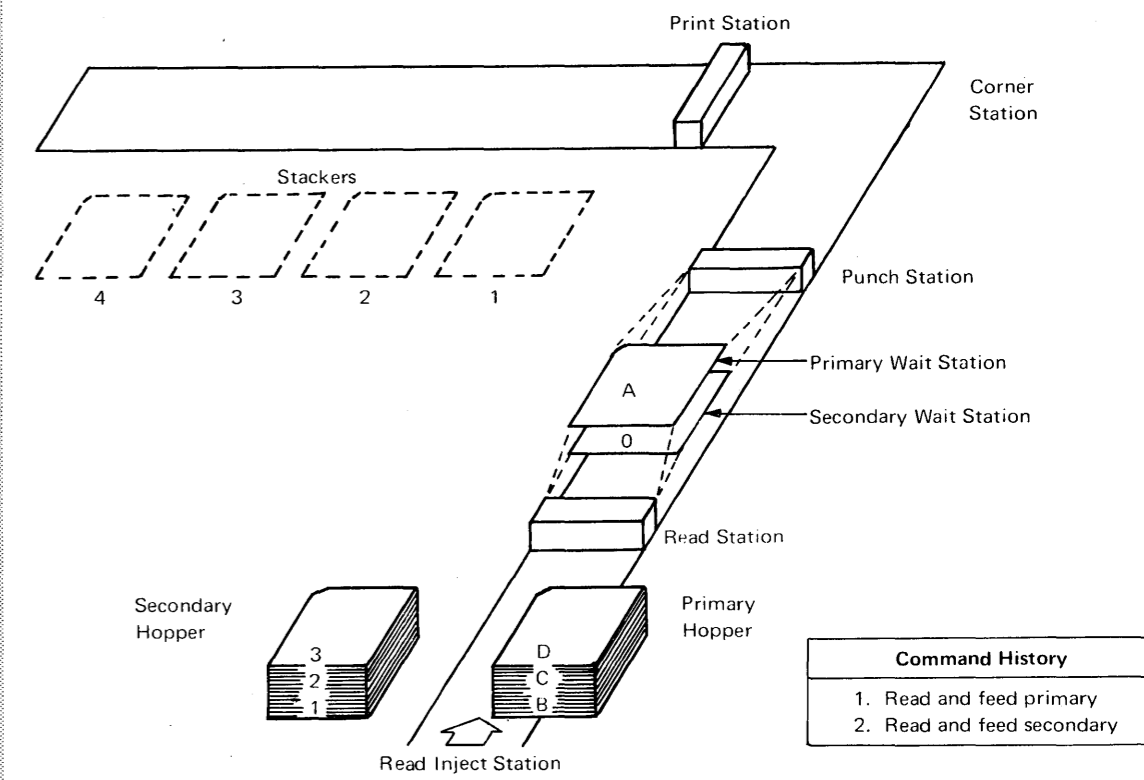
1 5425 Card Path (empty)



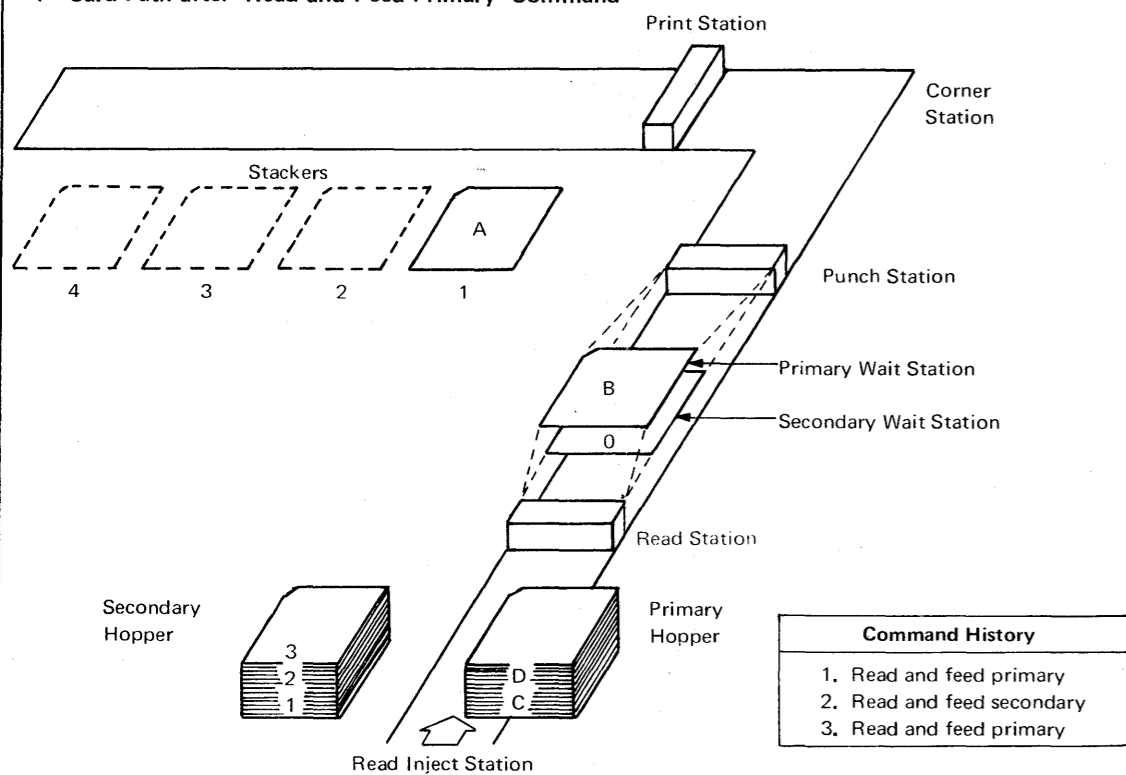
2 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Primary' Command



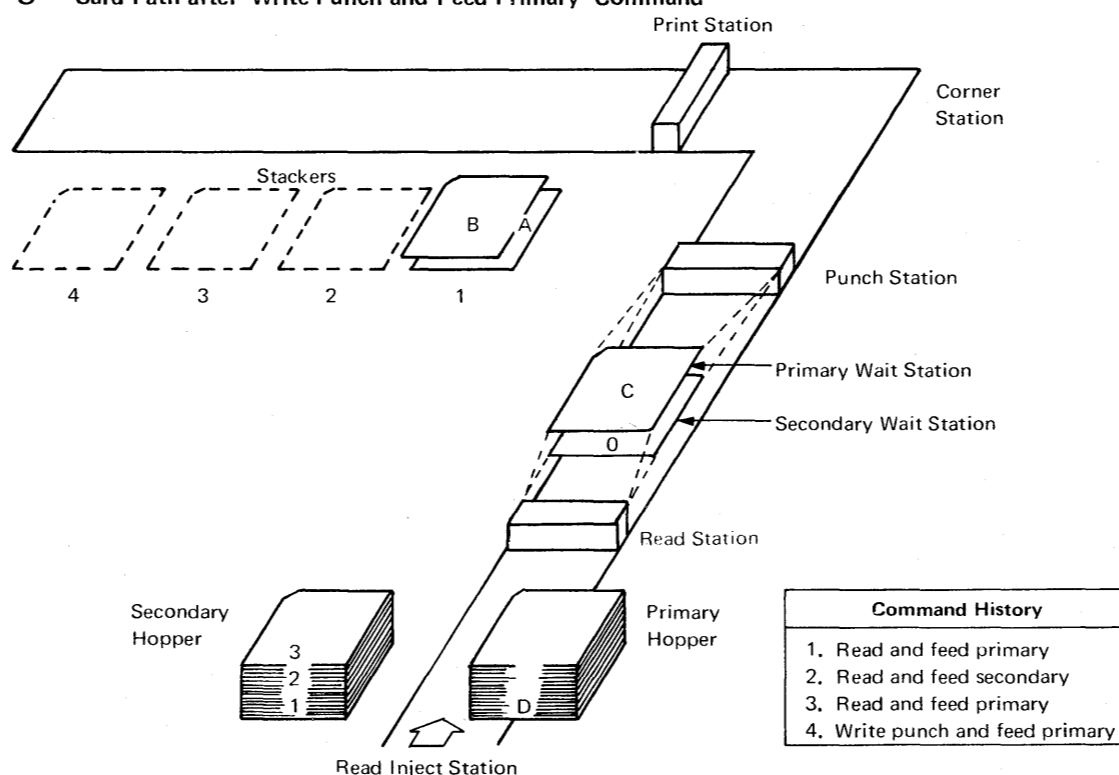
3 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Secondary' Command



4 Card Path after 'Read and Feed Primary' Command



5 Card Path after 'Write Punch and Feed Primary' Command



6 Card Path after 'Write Print and Feed Secondary' Command

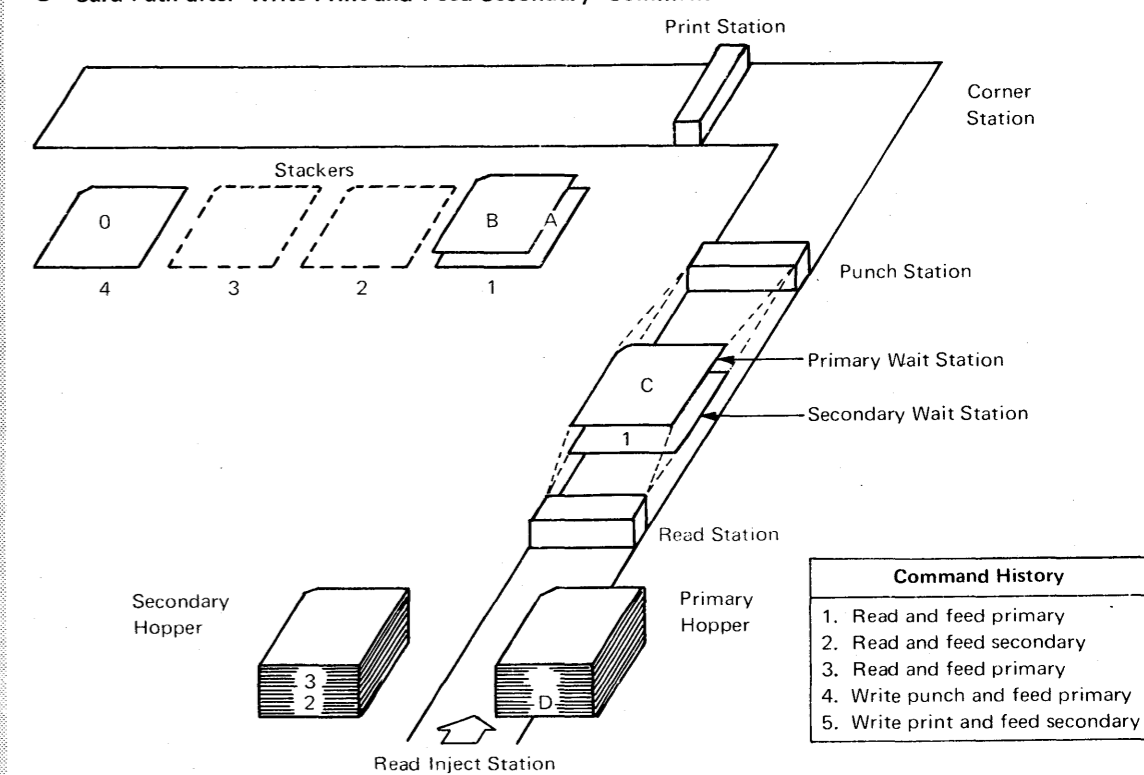


Figure 93. Typical Situations in 5425 Card Path [19581]

		00				01				10				11				Bit Positions 0, 1	
		00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	Bit Positions 2, 3	
Second Hexadecimal Digit		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	First Hexadecimal Digit	
Bit Positions 4, 5, 6, 7		D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	C	C	C	C	B	B			Zone Punches	
		C	C	C	C	B	B			B	B			A	A			Digit Punches	
		B	B			A	A			A	A								
		A		A															
0000	0	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯		
				⑰			⑱				⑲					⑳			
0001	1													A	J		1	1	
0010	2													B	K	S	2	2	
0011	3													C	L	T	3	21	
0100	4													D	M	U	4	4	
0101	5													E	N	V	5	41	
0110	6													F	O	W	6	42	
0111	7													G	P	X	7	421	
1000	8													H	Q	Y	8	8	
1001	9													I	R	Z	9	81	
				⑳				㉑											
1010	A					¢	!		:										82
1011	B					.	\$	.	#										821
1100	C					<	*	%	@										84
1101	D					(	)	-	'										841
1110	E					+	;	>	=										842
1111	F					|	¬	?	"										8421
		A	B	C	C	A	B	A		A	B	C	C	A	B	B	A		
		B	C							B	C			D	D				
		C								C	D	D	D						

EBCDIC Bit Positions: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
 96-Column Card Code Bit Positions: D C B A 8 4 2 1

Card Hole Exception Patterns

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------|-------|---|
| ① C | ⑦ B | ⑬ D | ⑲ DCA1 |
| ② CA82 | ⑧ DA | ⑭ BA | ⑳ DA1 |
| ③ CB | ⑨ DC | ⑮ DB | ㉑ DCBA |
| ④ DCA | ⑩ CBA | ⑯ A | ㉒ DBA |
| ⑤ NO PUNCHES | ⑪ DCB | ⑰ CA1 | Graphic for minus zero --- }
(position D0 (hex)) |
| ⑥ A82 | ⑫ CA | ⑱ A1 | |

Figure 94. 96-column Card Code Superimposed on EBCDIC [19582]

		00				01				10				11				Bit Positions 0, 1	
		00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	Bit Positions 2, 3	
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	First Hexadecimal Digit	
Digit Punches																		Zone Punches	
Second Hexadecimal Digit			11				11	11	11		11	11	11		11			Zone Punches	
Bit Positions 4, 5, 6, 7			0				0	0	0		0	0	0		0			Digit Punches	
		9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9										
0000	0 8-1	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧					⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫		
		NUL	DLE	DS		SP	&	-	コ	テ	ハ	ム	リ	{	}	¥	0	8-1	
0001	1 1							⑬								⑭			
		SOH	DC1	SOS				ウ	/	サ	a	j	~	ル	A	J		1 1	
0010	2 2	STX	DC2	FS	SYN	°	エ	イ	ツ	b	k	s	レ	B	K	S	2 2		
0011	3 3	ETX	TM			Γ	オ	ウ	ス	c	l	t	ロ	C	L	T	3 3		
0100	4 4	PF	RES	BYP	PN	∟	ヤ	エ	ヤ	d	m	u	ワ	D	M	U	4 4		
0101	5 5	HT	NL	LF	RS	'	ユ	オ	ソ	e	n	v	ソ	E	N	V	5 5		
0110	6 6	LC	BS	ETB	UC	.	ヨ	カ	タ	f	o	w	"	F	O	W	6 6		
0111	7 7	DEL	IL	ESC	EOT	ヲ	ツ	キ	チ	g	p	x	°	G	P	X	7 7		
1000	8 8		CAN			ア	-	ク	ツ	h	q	y		H	Q	Y	8 8		
1001	9 8-1	RLF	EM			イ	ア	ク	`	i	r	z		I	R	Z	9 9		
1010	A 8-2	SMM	CC	SM		¢	!	!	:	ト	ヒ	ナ							8-2
1011	B 8-3	VT	CU1	CU2	CU3	.	\$	,	=	ナ	フ	ネ							8-3
1100	C 8-4	FF	IFS		DC4	<	*	%	@	ニ	ハ	セ							8-4
1101	D 8-5	CR	IGS	ENQ	NAK	(	)	-	'	ヌ	ホ	ユ							8-5
1110	E 8-6	SO	IRS	ACK		+	;	>	=	ネ	マ	ヨ							8-6
1111	F 8-7	SI	IUS	BEL	SUB	|	∟	?	"	ノ	ミ	ラ							EO 8-7
Zone Punches		12				12				12	12		12	12	12		12		
			11				11				11	11	11		11	11	11		
				0				0		0		0	0	0		0	0		
		9	9	9	9									9	9	9	9		

Card Hole Patterns

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------|------------|
| ① 12-0-9-8-1 | ⑤ No punches | ⑨ 12-0 | ⑬ 0-1 |
| ② 12-11-9-8-1 | ⑥ 12 | ⑩ 11-0 | ⑭ 11-0-9-1 |
| ③ 11-0-9-8-1 | ⑦ 11 | ⑪ 0-8-2 | ⑮ 12-11 |
| ④ 12-11-0-9-8-1 | ⑧ 12-11-0 | ⑫ 0 | |

Figure 95. Revised Katakana [19583]

print stations into a stacker, and a card from the secondary hopper to be fed through the read station into the vacated secondary wait station. Punching, printing and stacker selection of the card fed from the secondary wait station depend on preceding write and control commands. The data on the card fed through the read station is read into the read buffer, transferred to main storage, and channel end and device end are set in the same way as for a 'read and feed primary' command.

Read IPL Mode and Feed Primary

The 'read IPL mode and feed primary' command causes the same action as the 'read and feed primary' command except that the data from the read station is converted into 96-column card read IPL mode format before being translated to EBCDIC and stored in the read buffer. The contents of a card read in read IPL mode are interpreted as follows for columns 1 through 64:

<i>Normal Format</i>	<i>Interpreted As</i>
T1 D	T1 D
T2 D	T2 D
T3 D	T3 D
T1 C	T1 C
T2 C	T2 C
T3 C	T3 C
T1 B	T1 B
T1 A	T1 A
T1 8	T1 8
T1 4	T1 4
T1 2	T1 2
T1 1	T1 1
T2 B	T2 B
T2 A	T2 A
T2 8	T2 8
T2 4	T2 4
T2 2	T2 2
T2 1	T2 1
T3 B	- -
T3 A	- -
T3 8	T1 D
T3 4	T1 C
T3 2	T2 D
T3 1	T2 C

The table shows how the tier 3 bits (columns 65 through 96) are OR'ed with the normal C and D bits of columns 1 through 64 so that a six-bit System/3 card can be assembled to give an eight-bit code for the first 64 columns. If the CCW length count is greater than 64, any bytes in excess of 64 stored in main storage will be meaningless.

Read IPL Mode and Feed Secondary

The 'read IPL mode and feed secondary' command causes the same action as the 'read and feed secondary' command except that the data from the read station is converted into 96-column card read IPL mode format before it is translated to EBCDIC and stored in the read buffer.

Write Commands

Write Punch and Feed Primary

The 'write punch and feed primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the 5425's 96-byte punch buffer and then initiates a feed cycle (if the data transfer was error-free). During the feed cycle a card in the primary wait station is fed through the punch station, where it is punched and checked, and then through the print station into a stacker. A card from the primary hopper is fed through the read station into the vacated primary wait station. Printing and stacker selection of the card fed from the wait station depend upon preceding write (print), and control commands.

The data transfer from main storage to the punch buffer starts at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and continues in ascending order of address until the CCW count (bits 48 to 63) is reduced to zero or 96 bytes have been transferred, whichever occurs first. The data is stored in the punch buffer in EBCDIC. If the CCW count is less than 96, the remaining positions of the punch buffer will be automatically filled with blanks. Channel end is set when the punch buffer is full.

The data from the punch buffer is translated to 96-column card code while the card is being punched and checked by column groups (1, 33, 65; 2, 34, 66; and so on). After being punched, the card is moved from the punch station through the print station and into a stacker. Device end is indicated at an appropriate point in the punch eject cycle (see description of the device end bit under "Unit Status" in "5425 Status Information"). Channel end and device end are normally set separately for the 'write punch and feed primary' command.

Data from the card fed from the primary hopper through the read station is not read into the read buffer.

Write Punch and Feed Secondary

The 'write punch and feed secondary' command is similar to the 'write punch and feed primary' command except that a card from the secondary wait station is punched and a card from the secondary hopper is fed through the read station to the vacated secondary wait station.

Write Punch Primary

The 'write punch primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the punch buffer in the same way as for a 'write punch and feed primary' command. No card motion takes place. Channel end and device end are set when the punch buffer is full.

Write Punch Secondary

The 'write punch secondary' command causes the same action as the 'write punch primary' command.

Note: When bit 0 of the CCW for a read, write or control command specifies the primary or secondary feed path, all

following read, write, and control commands must specify the same card path until a command is accepted that causes card motion.

Write Print and Feed Primary

The 'write print and feed primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to one of two 128-byte print buffers, and then initiates a feed cycle if the data transfer was error free. During the feed cycle, a card in the primary wait station is fed through the punch station and then into the print station where up to four 32-character lines are printed. The card is then stacked. Punching and stacker selection of this card during the feed cycle depend on preceding write punch, and control commands. A card from the primary hopper is fed through the read station into the vacated primary wait station.

The data transfer from main storage to a print buffer starts at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW and continues in ascending order of this address until the CCW count is reduced to zero or 128 bytes have been transferred, whichever occurs first. The data is stored in the print buffer in EBCDIC.

If the CCW count is less than or equal to 96, any remaining positions up to 96 in the print buffer are automatically filled with blanks and the 5425 prints the data on the card in three lines. If the count is greater than 96 but less than or equal to 128, any remaining positions up to 128 in print buffer are automatically filled with blanks and the 5425 prints the data on the card in four lines. Channel end is set when the print buffer is full.

The 128-byte print buffers are required because the data in a print buffer is printed one card feed cycle after the print buffer is filled. The buffer is filled while the card is in the wait station. One card cycle feeds the card from the wait station through the punch station; a second cycle feeds the card into the print station to be printed. A second write print and feed command must be given during this second card cycle to maintain specified throughput. This means that print data for the second card must be transferred from main storage to a second print buffer before the data in the first buffer is printed on the first card.

Print buffer selection is controlled by the card I/O attachment and is transparent to the CCW. Device end is set at a point in the mechanical cycle when the punch buffer and at least one print buffer are free to be loaded from main storage.

Data from the card fed from the primary hopper through the read station is not read into the read buffer.

Write Print and Feed Secondary

The 'write print and feed secondary' command causes the same action as the 'write print and feed primary' command except that a card from the secondary wait station is

printed and a card from the secondary hopper is fed through the read station to the vacated secondary wait station.

Write Print Primary

The 'write print primary' command causes data to be transferred from main storage to the print buffer in the same way as for a 'write print and feed primary' command. No card motion is initiated. Channel end and device end are set together when the print buffer is full.

Write Print Secondary

The 'write print secondary' command causes the same action as the 'write print primary' command.

Note: When bit 0 of the CCW for a read, write, or control command specifies the primary or secondary feed path, all following read, write, and control commands must specify the same card path until a command is accepted that causes card motion.

Control Commands

Control Primary

The 'control primary' command controls stacker selection and may initiate a feed cycle in the primary card path without data transfer to or from main storage. The normal destination for a card in the primary feed path is stacker 1 (autoselection) if no other stacker has been specified by a 'control primary' command. The stacker select specification of the 'control primary' command (bits 1, 2, and 3 of the CCW) applies to the card in the primary wait station. Once any command that initiates a primary feed cycle is accepted, the stacker specification for that feed cycle cannot be changed.

If bit 5 in the CCW of a 'control primary' command is off, the command causes no card motion and channel end is indicated in the initial status byte, followed by a device end indication. If the stacker select bits are also off, the command is then equivalent to a 'no-op'. If bit 5 is set, the command initiates a primary feed cycle. Channel end is set in the initial status and device end is indicated when the mechanical operation has reached an appropriate point in its cycle (see description of the device end bit under "Unit Status" in "5425 Status Information"). If a previous 'write punch primary' and/or 'write print primary' command was given, punching and/or printing will be performed during the feed cycle. The data from the card fed from the primary hopper through the read station is not read into the read buffer.

Control Secondary

The 'control secondary' command controls stacker selection and may initiate a feed cycle in the secondary

card path without data transfer to or from main storage. The normal destination for a card in the secondary feed path is stacker 4 (autoselection) if no other stacker has been specified by a 'control secondary' command. The stacker select specification of the 'control secondary' command (bits 1, 2, and 3 of the CCW) applies to the card in the secondary wait station. Once any command that initiates a secondary feed cycle is accepted, the stacker specification for that feed cycle cannot be changed.

If bits 1, 2, 3 and 5 of the CCW for a 'control secondary' command are zero, the command is invalid and, therefore, rejected. If bit 5 is set, the command initiates a secondary feed cycle. Channel end is set in the initial status and device end is set when the mechanical operation has reached an appropriate point in its cycle (see description of the device end bit under "Unit Status" in "5425 Status Information"). If a previous 'write punch secondary' and/or 'write print secondary' command was given, punching and/or printing will be performed during the feed cycle. The data from the card fed from the secondary hopper through the read station is not read into the read buffer.

Set ERP Mode

The 'set ERP (error recovery procedures) mode' command sets an ERP flag bit in the card I/O attachment. This is done by inverting the print buffer bit so that it points to the buffer used by the previous print command. Subsequent print commands step the buffer bit as in normal operation. The flag conditions the attachment to operate in ERP mode. In ERP mode, normal write commands enable the 5425 to punch and print data that remains in the punch and two print buffers as a result of previous write commands. The ERP flag, when set, prevents the buffers from being filled with new data by normal write commands.

Once ERP mode is set, it can be reset only by issuing a 'reset ERP' command or by a system reset operation. Pressing the NPRO key does not reset ERP mode. Any pending commands which have not yet been executed by a feed cycle are cancelled when the 'set ERP mode' command is issued. Cancelled commands can be executed in ERP mode but are deleted from the command history table, and must be re-issued.

The 'set ERP mode' command causes no card motion. Channel end is indicated in the initial status, with device end following.

Application Note: Because write and print commands do not transfer data in ERP mode, they cannot be used for data chaining when ERP mode is on. If this is attempted, errors will occur because the length count is not reduced.

Reset ERP Mode

The 'reset ERP mode' command resets the ERP flag, allowing normal execution of subsequent write commands, but causes no card motion. Channel end is indicated in the initial status, with device end following.

5425 STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the meanings of the status indications given in response to 5425 commands.

Unit Status

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 through 39 of the CSW. The unit status is directly related to a command that is either issued to or has been completed or terminated by the 5425. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception (not used)

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is not used.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is only set in the initial status and, when set, indicates that the 5425 is either busy executing a previously-given command or has outstanding status pending. The 5425 is busy from the time it accepts a command until device end status is presented for that command.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit, when set, indicates that data transfer is complete or that no data transfer will occur. For 'sense', read, or write commands, the 5425 presents channel end status after data transfer to or from main storage. This means that received data is available in the input area of main storage or that the output area of main storage can be loaded with new data. For control commands, channel end is presented in the initial status.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit, when set, indicates that the 5425 either has completed a current operation or has made a transition from the not-ready to the ready state. Device end indicates that the 5425 is available to accept a new command.

For commands causing a mechanical operation, the 5425 presents device end at an appropriate point in its

mechanical cycle. This point depends upon the mechanical operation performed but always occurs after the 5425 is finished with the buffer(s) used for that operation. For multi-function operations, device end is set after the read, punch, and print buffers are free, whichever occurs last. Device end is always set at least 20 ms before any feed decision point. For commands that do not cause a mechanical operation, device end is set with or immediately after channel end.

The 5425 sets device end whenever it has made a transition from the not-ready to the ready state. This will occur whenever either the primary or secondary card feed paths are made ready by the operator.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set for several errors or other unusual conditions that can occur in the 5425 or its controlling front end logic. When unit check is set, it indicates that the 5425 requires program and/or operator intervention. The exact cause of the setting of unit check is indicated by the contents of the sense bytes, which can be retrieved and transferred to main storage by a 'sense' command. For details of the conditions which can set unit check, see "5425 Sense Information". Unit check is presented with either the initial status, channel end or device end.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is not used.

Note: For other card I/O devices, the unit exception bit acts as a last card indicator. For the 5425, end of file must be indicated by a card punched with a slash and an asterisk.

Channel Status

The channel status is given in conjunction with 5425 commands if the commands cause unusual conditions or are specified improperly. The channel status is indicated in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW; the bits have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the 5425 as for any other device attached via a channel, integrated adapter, or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*.

5425 SENSE INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the contents of the eleven bytes of sense information provided for the 5425.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus-out check
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun (not used)
6	No card available
7	(Not used)

Note: Except for intervention required, the sense indicators in byte 0 are reset by the next command or instruction accepted by the 5425 other than a 'sense', 'no-op', 'halt I/O', 'halt device' or 'test I/O'.

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when either an unassigned command or an invalid command sequence is given to the 5425. An invalid command sequence is a sequence of intermixed primary and secondary commands. When bit 0 of the CCW for a read, write or control command specifies the primary or secondary feed path, all following read, write and control commands must specify the same card path until a command is accepted that causes card motion. Command reject is also set when a control command for the *secondary* card path has bit 5 of the CCW set at zero, that is, when the command is in effect a 'no-op'. The 'set ERP mode' and 'reset ERP mode' commands apply to both card paths and cannot cause a command reject. The setting of command reject causes unit check to be set in the initial status.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit, when set, indicates that operator intervention is required at the 5425 because of one of the following conditions:

1. The selected feed path (primary or secondary) is not ready for a command that initiates card motion for that path.
2. The 5425's STOP key has been pressed.
3. The 5425's cover is open.
4. A stacker is full.
5. The chip box is full or has been removed.
6. A hopper check has occurred (see "Sense Byte 1", Hopper Check).
7. A feed check has occurred (see "Sense Byte 1").
8. An emitter check has occurred.

The setting of intervention required causes unit check to be set in the initial status or at device end time.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit, when set, indicates one of the following error conditions (none of which are considered severe):

1. Read check during an optical read operation.
2. Punch check during a mechanical punch operation.
3. Print data check during a mechanical print operation.
4. Print clutch check during a mechanical print operation.

For a more detailed description of these conditions, see "Sense Byte 1".

The operation during which equipment check is set continues to its normal ending point. Equipment check causes unit check to be set at channel end time for a read check, and at device end time for a punch check, print data check, or clutch check.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is not used.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is not used. The 5425 is fully buffered and cannot overrun.

No Card Available (Bit 6)

The no card available bit, when set, indicates that a write punch, write punch and feed, write print, or write print and feed command was issued to a card feed path whose wait station is empty. The setting of no card available causes unit check to be set in the initial status.

Sense Byte 1

The bits in sense byte 1 act as check condition indicators which are used for error recovery procedures. Some of the bits in sense byte 1 are also summary indicators of more detailed conditions represented by the bits in sense bytes 3, 4, and 5. The bits in sense byte 1 have the following meanings assigned:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Read check
1	Punch check
2	(Not used)
3	Print data check
4	Print clutch check
5	Hopper check
6	Feed check
7	(Not used)

Read Check (Bit 0)

The read check bit is set if, during a read operation, an optical read comparison shows an unequal result at the end of read sample time. The setting of read check causes equipment check to be set in sense byte 0 and unit check is presented at channel end time. The conditions which can set read check are described in "Sense Byte 4" and "Sense Byte 5".

Punch Check (Bit 1)

The punch check bit is set if the punch unit checking data (derived from the piezoelectric crystal punch checking system) does not match the data in the punch buffer at punch check sample time. The setting of punch check causes equipment check to be set in sense byte 0 and unit check is presented at device end time. The conditions which can set punch check are described in "Sense Byte 4" and "Sense Byte 5".

Print Data Check (Bit 3)

The print data check bit is set when the print wheels lose synchronization with the card I/O attachment's print character counter. The setting of print data check causes equipment check to be set in sense byte 0. Unit check is presented at device end time.

Print Clutch Check (Bit 4)

The print clutch check bit is set when a print stepper clutch malfunction is detected, and indicates an error in positioning the lines of print on the card. The setting of print clutch check sets equipment check in sense byte 0. Unit check is presented in the initial status or at device end time.

Hopper Check (Bit 5)

The hopper check bit is set when a card has failed to feed out of the hopper. The setting of hopper check causes the setting of intervention required in sense byte 0 and the presentation of unit check at device end time.

Feed Check (Bit 6)

The feed check bit is set when one or more cards are mispositioned. The setting of feed check sets intervention required in sense byte 0 and unit check is presented in the initial status or at device end time. Feed check is a summary indicator for the conditions represented in sense byte 3.

Sense Byte 2

Sense byte 2 contains information about the location of cards in the 5425 transport at the time the command before the 'sense' command was executed. The bits of sense

byte 2, when set, do not cause status indications. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used)
1	(Not used)
2	Card in primary wait station
3	Card in secondary wait station
4	NPRO allowed
5	Hopper cycle not complete
6	Card in transport counter bit 2
7	Card in transport counter bit 1

Card in Primary Wait Station (Bit 2)

The card in primary wait station bit is set when a card leaves the read station to enter the primary wait station. It is reset to 0 when the card leaves the wait station to enter the punch station. If a card is manually removed from the wait station, the bit is not reset.

Note: The 5425 has no card sensors in its wait stations.

Card in Secondary Wait Station (Bit 3)

The card in secondary wait station bit is set when a card leaves the read station and enters the secondary wait station. It is reset when the card leaves the wait station to enter the punch station. If a card is manually removed from the wait station, the bit is not reset.

NPRO Allowed (Bit 4)

The non-process-runout allowed bit is on whenever the NPRO key is operational. During certain jams, however, some cells in the feed path may be covered by wrongly-positioned cards. In such cases, the NPRO allowed bit is off to indicate that the card path must be cleared by manual intervention before NPRO can be performed.

Hopper Cycle Not Complete (Bit 5)

The hopper cycle not complete bit is set when a command causing a feed cycle is accepted, and is reset when a card has left the hopper for that feed cycle.

Card in Transport Counter Bits 2 and 1 (Bits 6 and 7)

The card in transport counter is incremented when a card leaves the wait station and is decremented when a card is assigned a stacker selection. The counter indicates the number of cards between the wait stations and the stackers. When the transport has come to a complete stop following a feed check, the value of the counter is equal to, or (at most) one greater than, the actual number of cards between the wait stations and the stacker transport but not including cards in the wait stations themselves.

Sense Byte 3

Sense byte 3 contains a hexadecimal number whose value can represent any one of 22 feed checks and emitter checks in the 5425. It is used for error logging and analysis. All

checks represented in this byte are 5425 hardstops. All the check conditions (except stacker jam, gear emitter check, and fire CB check) are activated, via a fiber optic bundle, by photo-electric cells in the card path. The state of these cells, in conjunction with timing circuits, enables checks to be recognized when cards are not in their correct positions in the card path. Checks are reset by depression of the NPRO key. Any one of these checks will set the feed check bit in sense byte 1. The checks also light a numbered feed check light on the 5425 operator panel. Values of sense byte 3, check names, and operator panel light numbers are shown in Figure 96.

Hexadecimal Value of Sense Byte 3	Check Name	Operator Panel Light
01	Hopper eject check	1
02	Read inject check	2
03	Read station check	3
04	Read eject check	4
05	Early wait eject check	5
06	Wait eject check	6
07	Punch inject check	7
08	Punch registration check 1	8
09	Punch station check	9
0A	Punch registration check 2	10
0B	Punch transport check	11
0C	Punch eject check	12
0D	Corner station check	13
0E	Corner eject check	14
0F	Print inject check	15
10	Print station check	16
11	Print eject check	17
12	Stacker transport check	18
13	Stacker jam	19
14	Gear emitter check	20
15	Fire CB check	20
16	Cover open check	20

Note: The panel lights marked "A" and "B" are not used, but they light up when the LAMP TEST switch is operated.

Figure 96. 5425 – Checks in Sense Byte 3 [10856A]

Hopper Eject Check (01 Hex): The hopper eject check indicates that a card covered the hopper cell late.

Read Inject Check (02 Hex): The read inject check indicates that a card arrived late at the read station.

Read Station Check (03 Hex): The read station check indicates that a card covered the read station cell when no card was expected.

Read Eject Check (04 Hex): The read eject check indicates that a card was late in uncovering the read station cell.

Early Wait Eject Check (05 Hex): The early wait eject check indicates that a card covered the prepunch cell when no card was expected.

Wait Eject Check (06 Hex): The wait eject check indicates that a card was late covering the prepunch cell during a non-punch operation.

Punch Inject Check (07 Hex): The punch inject check indicates that a card was late covering the prepunch cell during a punch operation.

Punch Registration Check 1 (08 Hex): This check indicates that a card was early uncovering the prepunch cell during a punch operation.

Punch Station Check (09 Hex): The punch station check indicates that a card was late uncovering the prepunch cell during a non-punch operation.

Punch Registration Check 2 (0A Hex): This check indicates that a card was late uncovering the prepunch cell during a punch operation.

Punch Transport Check (0B Hex): The punch transport check indicates that a card was late covering the corner cell during a non-punch operation.

Punch Eject Check (0C Hex): The punch eject check indicates that a card was late covering the corner cell during a punch operation.

Corner Station Check (0D Hex): The corner station check indicates that a card was early uncovering the corner cell.

Corner Eject Check (0E Hex): The corner eject check indicates that a card was late uncovering the corner cell during a non-print operation.

Print Inject Cell (0F Hex): The print inject check indicates that a card was late uncovering the corner cell during a print operation.

Print Station Check (10 Hex): The print station check indicates that a card was late covering the post-print cell during a non-print operation.

Print Eject Check (11 Hex): The print eject check indicates that a card was early or late covering the post-print cell during a print operation.

Stacker Transport Check (12 Hex): The stacker transport check indicates that a card was late uncovering the post-print cell.

Stacker Jam (13 Hex): This check indicates a stacker jam.

Gear Emitter Check (14 Hex): The gear emitter check indicates that the gear emitter is missing pulses. This condition may require CE attention.

Fire CB Check (15 Hex): The fire CB check indicates that the print fire emitter is missing pulses. This condition may require CE attention.

Cover Open Check (16 Hex): The cover open check indicates that the cover was opened after a command was issued, that is, while cards were in motion, and the motor stopped at random. In such cases, the card path must be cleared by the operator because the NPRO key is probably not operational.

Sense Byte 4

Sense byte 4 defines the card column group and tier where the error was detected which caused the first read check or punch check of a card cycle. If more than one read check or more than one punch check occurs during a card cycle, a multiple check indicator in sense byte 4 will be set. The read check (bit 0) and punch check (bit 1) bits in sense byte 1 show whether sense byte 4 contains read check or punch check information. In the unusual case where a read check and a punch check occur during the same card cycle, bits 0 and 1 will both be set in sense byte 1, which means that the contents of sense byte 4 will be undefined.

Figure 97 shows how sense byte 4 defines whether a single error or multiple errors occurred and, if a single error, the tier and column group in which the error was detected.

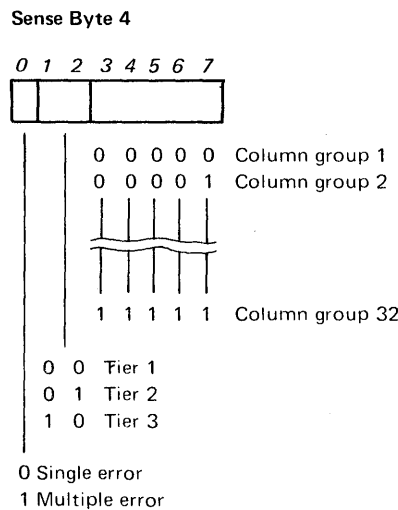


Figure 97. 5425 – Functions of Sense Byte 4 [10857]

Sense Byte 5

Sense byte 5 specifies the row or rows for the tier and column identified in sense byte 4 in which a read check or punch check error occurred. Thus, sense bytes 4 and 5 together define the position of the error which caused the first read check or punch check during a card cycle down to one or more of the 24 read cells or punches or their associated circuits. The bits in sense byte 5 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	D row miscompare
1	C row miscompare
2	B row miscompare
3	A row miscompare
4	8 row miscompare
5	4 row miscompare
6	2 row miscompare
7	1 row miscompare

Sense Bytes 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10

Sense bytes 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 form a table of the five most recent command strings. When a new last command string appears in sense byte 6, the previous contents of sense byte 6 are shifted down to sense byte 7, the previous contents of sense byte 7 are shifted down to sense byte 8, and so on. (A command string starts with the first command following any command causing a feed and ends with the next command causing a feed.)

The bits in sense byte 6 refer to the most recent command string. This command string may not have been carried out completely because of an error condition occurring after acceptance of a command causing one feed but before acceptance of a command causing the next feed. Sense byte 6 contains information about the last command accepted. The bit assignment is the same in each of the bytes (6 to 10).

Bit	Designation
0	Secondary
1	Print four lines
2	Stacker select M2
3	Stacker select M3
4	Punch
5	Feed command sample
6	Print
7	Read

Secondary (Bit 0)

If the secondary bit is set, it indicates that the command string applies to the secondary card feed path. If the secondary bit is off, it indicates that the command string applies to the primary card feed path.

Print Four Lines (Bit 1)

The print four lines bit, when set, indicates that four lines were to be printed during the feed operation.

Stacker Select M2 and Stacker Select M3 (Bits 2 and 3)

The stacker select bits indicate the stacker specification for the feed operation in a binary code:

M2	M3	Stacker
0	1	1
1	0	2
1	1	3
0	0	4

Punch (Bit 4)

The punch bit, when set, indicates that the punch buffer was filled and punching was specified to occur during the feed operation.

Feed Command Sample (Bit 5)

The feed command sample bit, when set, indicates that a feed operation for the command string was initiated.

Print (Bit 6)

The print bit, when set, indicates that a print buffer was filled and printing was specified to occur during the feed operation.

Read (Bit 7)

The read bit, when set, indicates that reading was specified to occur during the feed operation.

5425 ERROR RECOVERY

The following paragraphs describe the action which the operating system should take when errors or unusual conditions which cause an interruption occur in the 5425. The reason for the interruption is shown in the CSW. Any status information other than channel end, device end, and busy indicates an error or unusual condition.

Unit Check in CSW

Any errors detected in the 5425 at initial selection, or when channel end or device end is reported, cause the unit check bit to be set in the CSW. The following sense bytes should be examined:

- Sense bytes 0 and 1 for details of the error condition.
- Sense byte 2 for information on the position of cards in the paths.
- Sense bytes 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10 for a command table of the five most recent command strings.

In addition, the punch buffer and the two print buffers contain data from the last write punch command and the last two write print commands. If a 'set ERP mode' command is given, the ensuing commands can retry this data.

When a unit check is detected, the operating system should invoke an error recovery routine to examine the sense information and display a message defining the operator's procedure. After the operator has responded, the error recovery routine should generate and issue a set of commands, then branch back to the next CCW.

The following paragraphs describe how the program can recover from certain types of errors which are indicated by the setting of certain bits in the sense bytes.

Feed Check (Sense Byte 1, Bit 6)

If a feed check occurs, the operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error condition, the most recent feed used (primary or secondary), the number of cards in the paths, and the stacker that may have a wrongly stacked card. A message should be displayed which defines the error, the feed in which it occurred, the number of cards to be repositioned, and a stacker number. When the operator has responded, the operating system should generate a sequence of commands which repositions the cards and reads, punches, prints, and stacks them

according to the information obtained from sense byte 2 and the command history table in sense bytes 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10. At the next device end interruption these commands should be executed and the program should exit from the error recovery procedure.

Punch Check (Sense Byte 1, Bit 1)

If a punch check occurs, the operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error conditions, the feed most recently used, and the stacker which has erroneously received a card. This information should be displayed to the operator, who will respond to it. At the next device end interruption, a 'sense' command should be given and the relevant card in wait station bit (sense byte 2, bits 2 and 3) examined. If the card in wait station bit is set, a sequence of commands should be given to retry punching and printing of the card in the wait station. If the relevant card in wait station bit is zero, two command sequences should be given, one to fill the wait station, the other to retry punching.

Read Check (Sense Byte 1, Bit 0)

If a read check occurs, the operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error conditions and the feed in which the error occurred. This information should be displayed to the operator, who will respond to it. At the next device end interruption, the failing command should be retried.

Print Data Check (Sense Byte 1, Bit 4)

If a print data check occurs, the operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error condition, which should then be displayed for the operator to take action. At the next device end interruption, the next command should be given. The print operation is not repeated.

Hopper Check

A hopper check is indicated when, after unit check has been presented at device end time, bit 1 of sense byte 0 and bit 5 of sense byte 1 are both found to be set. The operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error condition and the feed in which the error occurred. This information should then be displayed for the operator to take action.

If bit 7 of sense byte 6 is set, indicating that a read operation was specified, the failing command should be retried. If reading was not specified, a control command should be given to fill the wait station. The next command should then be given.

No Card Available (Sense Byte 0, Bit 6)

The no card available condition is indicated when, after unit check has been presented in the initial status, bit 6 of sense byte 0 is found to be set, but all the check bits in sense byte 1 are zeros. The operating system should analyze the sense bytes to determine the error condition, and the failing command should be examined to determine which feed was in error. A control command should then be given to fill the wait station, and the failing command retried. No message is displayed.

Not-Ready Condition

The not-ready condition is indicated when, after unit check has been presented in the initial status, the intervention required bit (bit 1 of sense byte 0) is found to be set, but all the check bits in sense byte 1 are zeros.

The operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine which of the following conditions has arisen:

- Specified feed not ready
- Hopper empty
- Stacker full
- Chip box full or out
- Cover open
- STOP key has been pressed.

A suitable message should be provided for the operator, and, when he has corrected the condition, the failing command should be given again at the next device end interruption.

Invalid Command or Command Sequence

An invalid command or command sequence is indicated when, after unit check has been presented in the initial status, the command reject bit (bit 0 of sense byte 0) is found to be set, but all the check bits in sense byte 1 are zeros. The operating system should examine the sense bytes to determine the error condition. A suitable message should be displayed for the operator, who should be instructed to terminate the job.

Model 115 Console

The Model 115 console consists of a group of three devices: the video display, the keyboard and the optional IBM 5213 Printer Model 1. For addressing purposes these devices are considered to be one unit (they have a single device address). Two different command sets are, however, available. The basic command set is command set 1; the operator can also select command set 2, but it does not support channel indirect data addressing.

Command set 1 operates the video display. For commands in this set, the 5213 printer can be installed, optionally, as a slave device to the video display. The keyboard and the printer are transparent to the program.

Command set 2 operates the printer. For commands in this set, use of the printer is mandatory. The keyboard is transparent to the program but functionally associated with the printer. The video display is also transparent to the program and is always used as a slave device to the printer.

Command set 2 is identical to the commands for the IBM 1052 Printer-Keyboards.

Whichever command set is used, the video display and the keyboard function together as the system console (the console is a hardware function, and its operations thus have priority over programmed operations). The commands in both sets are executed by the service processor, which operates all parts of the console. The valid text and control characters are defined in Figure 99.

This section first describes the commands, status reports, sense information and error recovery procedures for the video display (command set 1); then describes the same items for the 5213 printer (command set 2).

Note: Through the remainder of this section the 5213 Printer will be referred to as the console printer.

VIDEO DISPLAY COMMANDS

Command Descriptions

The commands for the video display unit also apply to the optional console printer which operates as a slave device (without identity of its own) in parallel with the video display, if so specified in the program.

The commands are executed by the SVP which operates the hardware front end sections associated with the circuitry of the video display, the keyboard, and the console printer. A transient area in the SVP's control storage serves as a communication area. The data transfer between main storage and the SVP transient area during a 'write', 'erase write', or 'read modified' command is performed in blocks of 128 bytes; the residual length count in the CSW is always reduced by 128.

The commands available for the video display are shown in Figure 98.

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
05	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Erase/write
0F	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	Erase all unprotected
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Read modified
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op

Figure 98. Video Display Commands [10858]

Write

The 'write' command provides a means of placing a message on the screen of the video display (and to have this message printed if so desired) without erasing or modifying other messages that may already be displayed on the screen.

The 'write' command causes data transfer in two alternating stages. First, data is transferred from main storage in ascending order of address to the SVP transient area. The data is then transferred from the transient area to the display buffer. This is repeated until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is zero or the display buffer is full, whichever occurs first. At that time channel end and device end are indicated if there is no printing. If the message is printed, channel end and device end are indicated when the mechanical print operation is completed.

The transient area serves as a buffer which allows examination of the control characters that are interspersed in the data stream. These control characters determine the location of the text and the cursor on the screen, and they also determine which portions, if any, of the message are to be printed. (For details, see "Video Display Control Characters".)

As the control characters arrive in the transient area, they are examined and the result of this examination controls the data transfer from the transient area to the display buffer. None of the control characters (except attribute characters) are transferred to the display buffer. Each attribute character occupies a display buffer position but is not visible on the screen. The attribute character describes the extent and characteristics of the associated field (such as whether a field is retrievable, can be printed, or is protected from overwriting).



The screen portion available to the program consists of 12 lines of 56 characters each, allowing a total of 672 bytes (minus the invisible attribute characters) to be displayed. To accommodate the total possible length of a write data stream (text and control characters), a length count of up to 2,048 bytes is valid for a 'write' command. Incorrect length is, however, indicated whenever the display buffer is full before the count is reduced to zero (unless the SLI bit is on).

Valid Video Display Characters

Bit Positions 4, 5, 6, 7	Second Hexadecimal Digit	Valid Video Display Characters																Bit Positions 0, 1 (see Note)	Bit Positions 2, 3	First Hexadecimal Digit
		00				01				10				11						
		00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11	00	01	10	11			
0000	0	NUL	DLE			SP	&	-										0		
0001	1	SOH	DC1				/			a	j			A	J			1		
0010	2	STX	DC2		SYN					b	k	s		B	K	S		2		
0011	3	ETX	DC3							c	l	t		C	L	T		3		
0100	4									d	m	u		D	M	U		4		
0101	5	HT	NL							e	n	v		E	N	V		5		
0110	6			ETB						f	o	w		F	O	W		6		
0111	7			ESC	EOT					g	p	x		G	P	X		7		
1000	8									h	q	y		H	Q	Y		8		
1001	9		EM							i	r	z		I	R	Z		9		
1010	A					ç	!	β	:											
1011	B					.	\$,	#											
1100	C		IFS		DC4	<	*	%	@											
1101	D		IGS	ENO	NAK	()	-	'											
1110	E		IRS			+	;	>	=											
1111	F		IUS		SUB	|	↵	?	"											

Note: Only the characters in the framed fields are displayable and printable. The lower case graphics are delivered to main storage when the keyboard is in lower case mode (neither SHIFT key nor SHIFT LOCK key pressed) but the upper case characters are displayed.

Legend

-  = Used in German only.
 -  = Valid control character (all others are treated as data).
- Control characters: DC1 = set buffer address, DC3 = insert cursor, IGS = start field.

U.S.A. and Non-U.S.A. Special Characters

Country	Characters						
	Hex codes						
	5B	7B	7C	5A	7F	4A	6A
U.S.A.	\$	#	@	!	"	ç	
Germany	Ü	Ä	Ö	ü	ä	ö	β
France	\$	#	@	!	"	ç	
Denmark/Norway	Å	Æ	Ø	å	æ	ø	
Finland/Sweden	Å	Ä	Ö	å	ä	ö	
Italy	\$	ì	ò	è	ù	à	
Spain	Pts	Ñ	@	!	ñ	ç	
Spanish-speaking countries	\$	Ñ	@	!	ñ	ç	
Portugal	Ç	Õ	Ã	ç	õ	ã	
U.K.	£	#	@	!	"	\$	

Without Shift Key Using Shift Key

Legend


-  These characters are included in the table for reference only. They are not displayed on the screen because only the upper case graphic exists.

Figure 99. Video Display Control Characters and Display Characters [19584]

Note: If the operator presses the MODE SEL key while the optional console printer is printing, the full message will be on the display screen but the text printed by the printer may be incomplete (and, if so, will be marked by an asterisk). This situation sets the unit exception bit in the CSW.

Erase/Write

The 'erase/write' command provides a means of clearing the video display screen, and replacing the previously-displayed message or messages with new ones. (The new message can also be printed on the console printer, if available.)

The 'erase/write' command first clears the entire display buffer (even if the contents include protected fields). Then the alternating data transfer from main storage to the transient area, and on to the display buffer, occurs. As the control characters appear in the transient area, they are examined to determine the details of the transfer to the display buffer. At the completion of the last transfer action (or at completion of the print operation) channel end and device end are both presented. The maximum length count for an 'erase/write' command is 2,048 bytes. The screen displays the new message or messages and any screen portion not occupied remains dark. If no new cursor position has been specified, the cursor is located in screen position zero (uppermost line, leftmost position).

Notes:

1. The mandatory attribute character at buffer location zero is erased when the 'erase/write' command clears the buffer contents before writing. This will cause a unit check unless the programmer either:
 - a. Ensures that the "set buffer address order" (which follows the write control character) specifies buffer location zero, *or*
 - b. Uses neither a set buffer address order nor an "insert cursor order" (this will set the attribute character into buffer location zero).For more information on attribute characters, the set buffer address order, the write control character and the insert cursor order, see "Video Display Control Characters".
2. If the operator presses the MODE SEL key or the ILT key while the optional console printer is printing, the full message will be on the display screen but the text printed by the printer may be incomplete (and, if so, will be marked by an asterisk). This situation sets the unit exception bit in the CSW.

Erase All Unprotected

The 'erase all unprotected' command provides a means of clearing certain positions on the screen to provide space for the operator to respond to the operating system or request action by putting a message on the screen.

The 'erase all unprotected' command is of the immediate type, and only the command code is transferred from main

storage to the SVP. Channel end and device end are both indicated in the initial status on completion of the command code transfer.

The SVP then resets to zero the modified data tags of all unprotected fields in the display buffer and clears these fields and the associated positions on the screen. The keyboard is unlocked and the cursor is placed at the beginning of the first cleared field. The cursor thus indicates to the operator where his input can be entered on the screen. The attention identifier (if any) is also reset to zero by the command. If the entire buffer is protected, the data in the buffer is not reset, and neither are the modified data tags. The keyboard is unlocked, however, the attention identifier is reset, and the cursor is repositioned to buffer address zero. For details, see "Video Display Control Characters".

Read Modified

The 'read modified' command provides a means of transferring all modified data from the display buffer to main storage. Modified data is any data that the operator has introduced into the display buffer via the keyboard. As data is keyed in, the 'attribute' character of the field into which the operator writes is automatically altered by the setting of the modified data tag bit. The program can also specify messages as modified data by assigning an attribute character with the modified data tag bit set to the written field. Modified fields written by the program are not distinguished from those written by the operator, they are treated alike.

A 'read modified' command can be given at any time, but is usually given after an attention interruption has occurred. The attention interruption occurs whenever the operator has pressed the ENTER, REQ, or the CNCL (cancel) key on the keyboard. To indicate the reason for the attention interruption, the SVP generates an attention identifier byte; this byte is the first byte of information retrieved by a 'read modified' command. If the REQ, or CNCL key was pressed, a subsequent 'read modified' command retrieves only the attention identifier without further information. This situation is termed a "short read".

If the ENTER key was pressed, the attention identifier will indicate this and subsequently the SVP microprogram searches the display buffer for set modified data tag bits to identify (and retrieve) modified fields. The same action is performed if the 'read modified' command was given for reasons other than an attention interruption. In this case, the attention identifier indicates that the command was unsolicited (the operator did not press the ENTER, REQ, or CNCL key). In either case, the search of the display buffer begins at buffer location zero and ends at buffer location 672, which is the last position on the screen. The length count of a 'read modified' command must not exceed 2,048 bytes, otherwise incorrect length is indicated.

If no modified fields are found, the attention identifier

byte and the buffer address of the cursor (two bytes) are transferred to main storage. These three bytes are termed the “read heading”.

If modified fields are found, a “modified data stream” is assembled in the transient area. This stream consists of the read heading and the following information for each modified field:

- Buffer address order, code 11 (hex)
- Buffer address
- Text data.

The modified data stream does not, however, contain empty buffer positions or attribute characters.

The modified data stream is then transferred from the transient area to main storage. The transfer begins at the main storage location addressed by CCW bits 8 to 31 and continues in ascending order of address until either the count (CCW bits 48 to 63) has been reduced to zero or the modified data stream ends. At that time, channel end and device end are both set in the CSW. In all other cases, channel end and device end are indicated earlier, when the attention identifier (alone) or the read heading has been transferred.

For further information on the control characters that may accompany the text fields, see “Video Display Control Characters”.

Notes:

1. A ‘read modified’ command which follows a solicited ‘read modified’ command is also considered a solicited command.
2. The length count of a ‘read modified’ command must not exceed 2,048 bytes, otherwise incorrect length is indicated.

Sense

The ‘sense’ command provides a means of transferring information about errors or unusual conditions to main storage for inspection. A typical use of the ‘sense’ command is to retrieve the cause or causes of a unit check so that the appropriate recovery action can be initiated. The command causes the sense byte to be stored at the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. Incorrect length is indicated whenever the count of a ‘sense’ command is more or less than one. The incorrect length indication is suppressed if the SLI flag bit (CCW bit 34) is set. For a detailed description of the sense bytes and their contents, see “Video Display Sense Information”.

Control No-Op

The ‘control no-op’ command performs no function at the video display, but channel end, device end and any other status conditions that may exist at the time are presented in the initial status.

Video Display Control Characters

The control characters and orders in the data streams of ‘write’ and ‘erase/write’ commands specify the actual screen location of a message and provide information about the message, such as whether it is protected, unprotected, modified, or to be printed on the console printer. The following text describes the control characters in more detail.

Write-Control Character

The write-control character is the first character in the data stream of every ‘write’ or ‘erase/write’ command. This character specifies subcommands associated with the keyboard, the audible alarm, and the (optional) console printer. The meanings of the bits which comprise the write-control character are shown in the following table.

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	(Not used)
1	(Not used)
2	(Not used)
3	(Not used)
4	Start printer
5	Sound alarm
6	Restore keyboard (and reset attention identifier)
7	Reset modified data tags to zero.

Note: A ‘write’ or ‘erase/write’ command may be used for control operations such as sounding the alarm, resetting the keyboard, and so on. In these cases only the write control character need be transferred.

Start Printer (Bit 4): If the console printer is installed, the start printer bit, when set, causes the printer to print out all fields on the screen that have the print bit set in their attribute character.

Sound Alarm (Bit 5): This bit, when set, sounds the alarm which is used to alert the operator to the importance of the message. The alarm sounds for a fixed amount of time and is then silenced automatically. The audible alarm is a standard feature on the video display.

Restore Keyboard (Bit 6): The restore keyboard bit, when set, is used to unlock the keyboard and to reset the attention identifier (created by a previous keyboard operation) to zero.

Reset Modified Data Tag (Bit 7): This bit, when set, resets all modified data tag bits to zero prior to the execution of a ‘write’ or ‘erase/write’ command, so that new modified data tags can be written.

Set Buffer Address Order

The set buffer address order is a sequence of three adjacent bytes. The first byte is the set buffer address order code (Hex 11). When this code has been recognized, the next

two bytes are assumed to represent the buffer address. The buffer address can range from 0 to 672 (decimal) and specifies where the text data is to be located on the screen. The bits in the two buffer address bytes represent a binary number as follows:

Byte 1	
Bit	Value
0	(Not used)
1	(Not used)
2	(Not used)
3	1024
4	512
5	256
6	128
7	64

Byte 2	
Bit	Value
0	(Not used)
1	(Not used)
2	32
3	16
4	8
5	4
6	2
7	1

The buffer address is checked for validity and if it is outside the screen area (beyond 672), the 'write' or 'erase/write' command is terminated with unit check set in the CSW. The data stream transferred via a 'write' or 'erase/write' command may contain as many set buffer address orders as required for text distribution on the screen.

Note: If the data stream does not contain a set buffer address order, the data provided by the command enters the buffer location that currently holds the cursor.

Start Field Order

The start field order consists of two bytes. The first byte is the start field order code (Hex 1D) which indicates that the next byte is to be interpreted as the attribute character. The start field order code follows the buffer address bytes to open the field. A data stream such as the one transferred by a 'write' or 'erase/write' command may be subdivided into as many fields as necessary by means of the start field order. If each of these fields is to be located in a different area of the screen, they must each be preceded by a set buffer address order, otherwise they are stored (and displayed) sequentially.

Attribute Character

The attribute character is a single byte which describes the characteristics of the field that follows it. The field extends from the attribute character to the next attribute character that follows (if any) or to the buffer end.

The attribute character is protected by cursor movement from overwriting by the operator. The program can, however, overwrite any attribute character by use of the 'write' or 'erase/write' command.

The attribute character occupies a buffer position but is not displayed. Because the video display operates in formatted mode only and cannot wrap around, buffer position zero must contain an attribute character.

Each bit in the attribute character, when set, has a specific function. When a bit is zero, it represents the opposite function. The bit assignments are shown in the following table:

Bit	Assignment
0	Print
1	Always set (for compatibility)
2	Protected data
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	Modified data

Print (Bit 0): The print bit, when set, specifies that the field covered by the attribute character is enabled for printing on the (optional) console printer.

Protected Data (Bit 2): The protected data bit, when set, specifies that the data in the field is to be protected against overwriting by the operator. This protection is required because the operator can move the cursor to any location on the screen via the cursor positioning keys and can thus inadvertently destroy a message. Data fields thus protected cannot be erased by an 'erase all unprotected' command.

Modified Data (Bit 7): The modified data bit, when set, specifies that the field is to be made available for retrieval via a 'read modified' command. Data entered by the operator via the keyboard will always have the modified data bit set. A field that has this bit off is ignored by the 'read modified' command. An 'erase all unprotected' command resets the modified data bits of the attribute characters of all unprotected fields to zero so that none of these fields can be read by a 'read modified' command.

Insert Cursor Order

The insert cursor order consists of one byte (containing hex code 13) that causes the cursor to be relocated to the next available buffer position when the order is detected in the data stream. A data stream may contain as many insert cursor orders as required and each of them causes the cursor to be moved to the current (next) buffer address.

Attention Identifier

The attention identifier is a byte generated by the SVP when the ENTER key, CNCL key or REQ key is operated, or when an unsolicited 'read modified' command is given.

The attention identifier interprets the meaning of the attention status (bit 32 in the CSW) so that the operating system can react accordingly. If the operating system issues a 'read modified' command upon detection of the enter, request, or cancel key code, this command is solicited. A 'read modified' command that follows a solicited 'read modified' command is also considered a solicited command. If the operating system "volunteers" a 'read modified' command, then the command is unsolicited. The attention identifier is generated as follows:

Byte Value (hex)	Meaning
7D	ENTER key depressed
6E	CNCL key depressed
6C	REQ key depressed
60	No operator action (unsolicited 'read modified')

Once the attention identifier has been generated, it is stored in the SVP. The next 'read modified' command receives the attention identifier as the first byte of the data stream that is transferred to main storage. The identifier is not reset to zero by this read operation, but is reset by the next 'erase all unprotected' command or a 'write' or 'erase/write' command which specifies restore keyboard in its write control character.

VIDEO DISPLAY STATUS INFORMATION

The following paragraphs describe the unit status and channel status reports for the video display, keyboard and optional console printer, operating under command set 1.

Unit Status

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits are assigned as follows:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit may be set alone (for an attention interruption) or in the initial or the ending status for a command, depending on the time of the action which caused it to be set. The attention bit is, however, always indicated at the earliest possible moment.

There are three possible causes for the attention bit being set. The operating system should, therefore, give a 'read

modified' command. The first byte transferred to main storage will indicate the reason for the attention interruption as follows:

Byte Value (hex)	Meaning
7D	ENTER key depressed
6E	CNCL key depressed
6C	REQ key depressed

7D means that the operator has depressed the ENTER key to enter a message into the display buffer.

6E and 6C are solely interpreted by the operating system.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is set together with the busy bit when the video display is addressed while the SVP is occupied by log operations, or manual operations (such as alter/display).

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is set when log operations or manual operations have been completed and the display was addressed while such operations were in progress. Control unit end thus signals to the operating system that the display is available.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit, when set, indicates that the video display (or the optional console printer) is either executing a previously-initiated command or has an interruption condition (such as device end or attention) pending. If busy is set together with the status modifier bit, the SVP is occupied with log operations. The setting of control unit end will then indicate when the display is available.

Note: The busy bit is not set when the keyboard is being used because the display system is available.

Channel End (Bit 36)

The channel end bit, when set, indicates that data transfer between main storage and the transient area, or the command transfer, has been completed.

Device End (Bit 37)

The device end bit, when set, indicates that the device is free to execute another command. The term device applies to the video display and the console printer (if installed) but *not* to the keyboard. If the console printer is installed, the setting of device end may also indicate that the console printer has been put manually into the ready state.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit can be set by several errors or unusual conditions, such as incomplete control codes, invalid buffer

address specification or equipment check. If unit check is set, a 'sense' command should be given in order to retrieve the actual cause (see "Video Display Sense Information").

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when print operations are stopped because the MODE SEL key, the ILT key, or the STOP key has been pressed.

Channel Status

The channel status is recorded in bits 40 to 47 of the CSW. The bits are assigned as follows:

Bit	Designation
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check
45	Channel control check
46	Interface control check
47	Chaining check (not used)

The channel status bits have the same standard functions for the video display as for any device attached via a channel, integrated adapter, or integrated attachment. These functions are described for the 2560 under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2". For a more detailed description of the channel status bits, see *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000*.

Note: Incorrect length is indicated if the length count for a 'write' or 'erase write' command exceeds 2,048 bytes, or if the number of bytes to be transferred by a 'read modified' command does not equal the byte count in the CCW.

VIDEO DISPLAY SENSE INFORMATION

The SVP provides only one byte of sense information for the video display.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	(Not used)
3	Equipment check
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	Operation check

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when an unassigned command is received at the SVP.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set only when the optional console printer is installed and either has an end-of-forms condition or the cover is open while an operation that includes printing is attempted.

Note: Presentation of intervention required does not make the console non-operational. A 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction will still receive condition code 0 in response because messages can still be displayed.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

Equipment check is set only when the console printer is installed and a hardware malfunction occurs during a printer operation. Malfunctions of this type are either a failure to reset to a defined state, a failure to send request pulses during a print operation, or a parity error.

Operation Check (Bit 7)

The operation check bit, when set, indicates that one of the following conditions has been detected at the time channel end or device end was presented:

1. An illegal buffer address was detected in the data stream of a 'write' or 'erase/write' command. An address above 672 (decimal) is illegal.
2. A valid buffer address is used but the buffer limits are exceeded during command execution. This can occur if the length count is valid but larger than the space available from the buffer address to the buffer end.
3. An incomplete start field order or an incomplete set buffer address order has been detected in the data stream of a 'write' or 'erase/write' command.
4. Location zero in the display buffer does not contain an attribute character.

Note: An operation check condition is detected during byte transfer from the SVP transient area to the display buffer. The residual length count in the CSW does not show which data byte caused the operation check, because the data is transferred in 128-byte blocks from main storage to the SVP transient area.

VIDEO DISPLAY ERROR RECOVERY

Programming faults, such as those indicated in the sense byte, are the most frequent cause of errors in the video display. Such faults require program debugging. Errors associated with the optional console printer are usually caused by conditions such as end-of-forms or open cover. Both of these conditions render the printer not ready and, thus, require manual intervention by the operator.

If the execution of a command is halted by conditions such as channel data check or channel control check, the command should be retried (retry is frequently successful in these cases). If a 'hard' SVP error occurs (as indicated by the SVP error lamp on the console) the error is not

recoverable and initial microprogram loading (IMPL) is required or the CE must be called.

If channel data check or channel control check is indicated, the operating system should find out whether a limited channel logout has been stored at location 176. This logout will show how far the operation has progressed and/or how it was terminated.

CONSOLE PRINTER COMMANDS

The commands for the console printer (command set 2) are identical to those for a 1052, although the console printer does not operate like a 1052 (which is a printer-keyboard). Moreover, the console printer is physically remote from the video display and keyboard which form the operator console. For these reasons, command set 2 is so designed that the video display copies the functions of a 1052 in addition to displaying a copy of the print operations that are executed on the console printer. This copying is transparent to the program.

Command Descriptions

The following command descriptions explain the purpose of each command and mention the action of the video display, where applicable. Figure 100 shows the commands which are available for the console printer.

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write inhibit carrier return
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Write auto carrier return
0A	C	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Read inquiry
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
0B	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	Control alarm
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense

Figure 100. Console Printer Commands [17604]

Programming Note: With command set 2, one attribute character per screen line is automatically provided. This reduces the number of 'useful' display positions to 55 characters per line (for all write commands). Print control characters such as are used in the 1052 are accepted as data but do not have any control function. Indirect data addressing must not be used; if used, it will cause a program check.

Write Inhibit Carrier Return

The 'write inhibit carrier return' command causes data to be transferred from the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW to the transient area of the SVP. The data transfer continues in ascending order of address until the length count in the CCW has been reduced to zero or the transient area has been filled, whichever occurs first.

The length count should be 125 (decimal) to comply with the line width of the console printer. The data thus transferred is shown on the video display and printed on the console printer. When the mechanical print operation is completed, the carrier stops at the character position next to the last printed character. Channel end and device end are both set at this time. No carrier return or forms movement occurs.

Write Auto Carrier Return

The 'write auto carrier return' command is similar to the 'write inhibit carrier return' command. However, when the last character has been printed, the carrier returns automatically to the left-hand margin and the form is then advanced by one step. Channel end and device end are both set at the completion of all mechanical movement.

Read Inquiry

The 'read inquiry' command is given when requested by the operator. The operator requests service by pressing the REQ key on the keyboard. The request is latched (stored) in the SVP unless the video display is being used for manually initiated operations, such as alter/display or instruction stepping. When manual operations are in progress, the REQ key has no function. The existence of a latched request is indicated by the message 'Req' which should appear on the screen after the operator has depressed the REQ key.

When the attention interruption is taken, the program will generally give the 'read inquiry' command. Acceptance of this command is indicated to the operator by the message 'Proceed' which appears on the screen. Simultaneously the keyboard is unlocked and the cursor is positioned at the beginning of the data entry area on the screen. The operator may now key in data via the keyboard.

Any keyed-in data appears in the data entry area on the screen. The operator can move the cursor to any position within the data entry area, thus distributing his input as desired. The console printer so far does not participate in the operation. The operator therefore has the opportunity to change his input by moving the cursor underneath the character that is to be changed, then entering a new one.

The operator cannot enter more than 125 characters. If he does so, the cursor wraps around to the beginning of the input area and text is overwritten. This limitation is due to the console printer having a print line width of 125 characters. The read operation is not completed until the operator terminates it by one of the following actions:

1. Pressing the ENTER key.
2. Pressing the CNCL key.
3. Pressing the MODE SEL key.

As soon as any of these keys is depressed, the 'Proceed' message disappears from the screen and the keyboard locks.

The actions which follow depend on the key that was pressed.

ENTER Pressed: If the operator has pressed the ENTER key, the contents of the data entry area on the screen are moved up to the message display area. Any message that was in the message display area is moved up as far as is necessary to accommodate the newly-entered message.

The newly-entered message is transferred to main storage and also printed on the console printer. When the last character has been printed, the carrier returns to the left-hand margin, the form advances by one step, then channel end and device end are both presented. This completes the 'read inquiry' command.

CNCL Pressed: If the operator has pressed the CNCL key, the contents of the data entry area are moved up to the message display area, where they are marked with an asterisk. If the cancelled message is less than 125 characters and less than the length count of the 'read inquiry' command, the same data is transferred to main storage and printed on the console printer, where it is also marked with an asterisk. Channel end, device end, and unit exception are set in the CSW when the print operation is completed. This terminates the 'read inquiry' command.

MODE SEL Pressed: If the operator has pressed the MODE SEL key, the actions taken are identical to those caused by pressing the CNCL key. After the end of print operations and the setting of channel end, device end and unit exception, however, the system enters manual mode and is no longer available.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command causes no action at the console. When this command is given, channel end, device end, and any other status conditions that may exist at that time are presented in the initial status.

Control Alarm

The 'control alarm' command causes the audible alarm to sound. The command is of the immediate type, and channel end and device end are both presented as soon as the command code has been transferred to the SVP. The alarm sounds for a fixed time and is then silenced automatically.

Sense

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the console printer front end to the main storage location designated in CCW bits 8 to 31. At the completion of this data transfer channel end and device end are both set. The 'sense' command does not reset the sense indicators. These are reset by any other command that may follow (except 'sense' or 'control no-op'). For a detailed description of the contents of the sense byte, see "Console Printer Sense Information".

CONSOLE PRINTER STATUS INFORMATION

Status information is recorded in bits 32 to 47 of the CSW whenever an I/O instruction and/or command has been terminated, completed, or rejected.

Unit Status

Bits 32 to 39 of the CSW represent the unit status conditions, these are specific to the console printer/video display combination. The unit status bits are assigned as follows:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
32	Attention
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is generated in the SVP when the REQ key is pressed. Attention status is presented to the channel immediately when no other operation is in progress. If another operation is in progress, attention status is presented when that operation ends. If interruptions are disabled, the attention status remains pending until interruptions are enabled or until an I/O instruction such as 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' clears the condition, whichever occurs first. The program should react to attention by giving the 'read inquiry' command.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier is presented together with busy if the console printer is addressed while the SVP is handling log operations, microinstruction retry, or manual operations (such as instruction step or alter/display).

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is set when the SVP becomes available after a log operation, manual operation, or microinstruction retry has been completed, provided the console printer was addressed while such operations were in progress.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set when the console printer is executing a previously initiated operation. The busy bit is set together with the attention bit whenever a 'start I/O' instruction addresses the console printer and the attention interruption has not yet been taken or cleared. The busy bit is set together with the status modifier bit if the console printer is addressed at a time when manual operations or log operations are in progress in the SVP.

Channel End (Bit 36), Device End (Bit 37)

The channel end and device end bits are always presented together for any of the console printer commands. Depending on the command, both bits are either presented when the command code has been transferred (immediate commands) or when the data transfer and the mechanical print operation have been completed or the command has been terminated. Device end is set alone only when the console printer is manually placed from the not-ready to the ready state (as when the operator inserts new forms and/or closes the cover of the console printer).

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit can be set by various errors and unusual conditions. When this bit is set it indicates that sense information is available on the exact cause of the error (see "Console Printer Sense Information").

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set if a 'read inquiry' command was terminated either via the CNCL key or via the MODE SEL key, or if a print operation was disrupted by the MODE SEL key or the STOP key.

Channel Status

Bits 40 to 47 represent the channel status conditions, which are common to all I/O devices which can be connected to the Model 115. Only bits 40 to 43 of the CSW are set for the console printer:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
40	Program-controlled interruption
41	Incorrect length
42	Program check
43	Protection check
44	Channel data check (not used)
45	Channel control check (not used)
46	Interface control check (not used)
47	Chaining control check (not used)

For more detailed information on the channel status bits, see the description under "2560 Status Information" in the section "IBM 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine; Models A1 and A2".

CONSOLE PRINTER SENSE INFORMATION

When unit check is set in the CSW, the console printer provides the following sense information. Only one sense byte is available.

Sense Byte 0

The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	(Not used)
3	Equipment check
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when a command outside the assigned set is issued to the console printer.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set when the console printer is addressed while in the not-ready state. The console printer is in the not-ready state when the cover is open or the end-of-forms condition exists.

Correction of either of these conditions causes device end to be set, which indicates that the ready state has been restored.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set when, in a read operation, incorrect parity is detected during data transfer from the SVP to main storage.

CONSOLE PRINTER ERROR RECOVERY

When the unit check bit is set in the CSW, the operating system should issue a 'sense' command to retrieve the detailed reason. If intervention is required, the operator sees 'Cnsl Prtr' on the screen. He should put in new forms or close the cover, as required. In cases of equipment check, the program should retry the last operation. If equipment check persists, or if the video display is damaged, the operating system should issue a message for the operator on the *line* printer.

Integrated Communications Adapter – Introduction

Teleprocessing facilities are available for the Model 115 through the optional integrated communications adapter, which enables communication between the system and communication terminals and/or other computers at remote locations.

This chapter briefly outlines the capabilities of the ICA, then goes on to describe the available line control procedures. The characteristics, commands, status reports and sense information for each line control procedure are also described.

The Model 115's integrated communications adapter performs all the functions of, and is equivalent to, a byte multiplexer channel with a maximum of 12 subchannels (similar to the IBM 2701 Data Adapter Unit, and IBM 2702 or 2703 Transmission Control, with which it is compatible). Each subchannel consists of a line attachment that provides the necessary control functions for the connected communication line. Five synchronous lines (U.S.A. only), or four synchronous lines and eight asynchronous lines, may be attached. A suitable modem is required for each line (except telegraph lines). Suitable modems are available as separate pieces of equipment or in integrated (under the

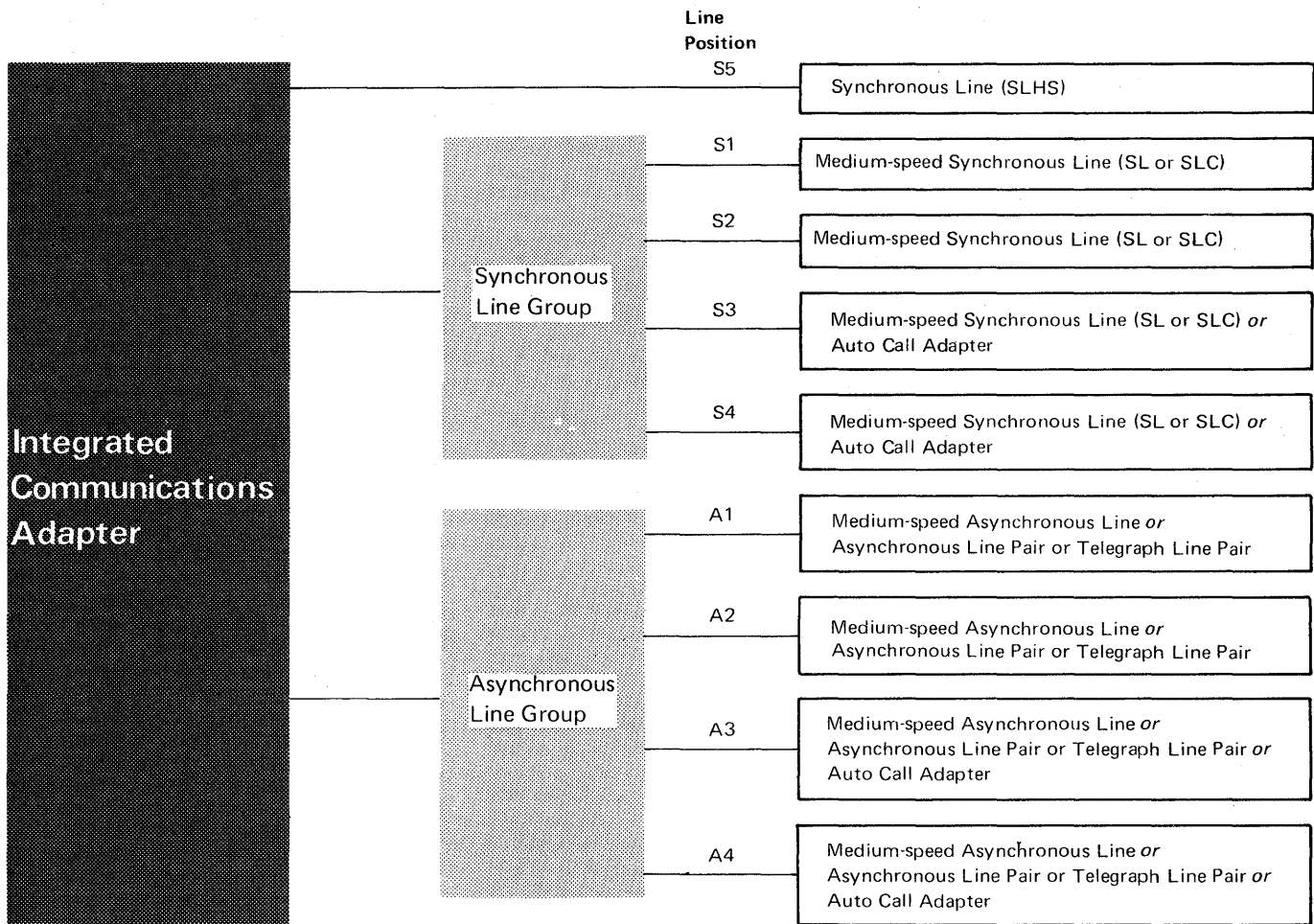
cover) versions. See *IBM 3115 Processing Unit Integrated Communications Adapter: Configurator*, GA33-1513.

Figure 101 shows the types of lines that can be served by the ICA and also shows line addresses and transmission speeds.

Six different line control procedures may be used, in any combination. Each is designed to match the characteristics of the communications terminal equipment on the other end of the line. The following types of line control procedure are available:

- IBM Terminal Control – Type 1
- IBM Terminal Control – Type 2
- Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 1
- Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 2
- World Trade Leased Telegraph Line Control
- Binary Synchronous Communication Control.

To avoid confusion caused by similarities or minor differences between certain types of terminal controls, the remainder of this chapter is divided into six sections. The sections describe the characteristics, available commands, status reports, and sense information for each line control procedure.



Line Position	Device Addresses in Hexadecimal					
	Interface Type					
	AL	ALP	TLP	SLC	SL	SLHS
	Feature Code					
	≠ 1231	≠ 1241	≠ 7881	≠ 7141 to 7144	≠ 7151 to 7154	≠ 7129
A1	20	28	28			
A2	22	2A	2A			
A3	24	2C	2C			
A4	26	2E	2E			
S1				30	30	
S2				31	31	
S3				32	32	
S4				33	33	
S5						34

Legend

- AL = Asynchronous line, 600 bps
- ALP = Asynchronous line pair, 50 to 134.5 bps
- TLP = Telegraph line pair, 45.5 to 75 bps
- SLC = Synchronous line with clock, 600 to 1,200 bps
- SL = Synchronous line, 600 to 7,200 bps
- SLHS = Synchronous line, high speed, max 50,000 bps

ICA Overview Configurator and Line Addressing

Figure 101. ICA Overview Configurator and Line Addressing [10859B]

IBM Terminal Control – Type 1

CHARACTERISTICS

The command set, line control characters, and transmission code comprising the IBM terminal control – type 1 are designed for asynchronous start/stop communication with the following terminals and data communication systems:

IBM 1050 Data Communication System (using 6-bit BCD with shift)

IBM 1060 Data Communication System (using 6-bit BCD without shift)

IBM 2740 Communication Terminal (using 6-bit BCD or EBCDIC with shift)

IBM 2741 Communication Terminal (using 6-bit BCD or EBCDIC with shift).

IBM 3767 Communication Terminal (using BCD or EBCDIC).

Note: In the following text, “Type 1 terminals” is used as a summary name to avoid listing all the individual terminals that can be operated by the same line control procedure.

Line Control Characters

Six line control characters are used for type 1 terminals.

ⓑ (End of Block)

The ⓑ (“circle B”) character indicates the end of a block of text.

ⓒ (End of Transmission)

The ⓒ character indicates the end of a transmission or the beginning of either a polling or a selection operation.

ⓓ (End of Address)

The ⓓ character indicates the end of an address (if any) and, consequently, the beginning of text. It is a positive response to polling.

Ⓝ (Negative Response)

The Ⓝ character indicates for polling that the terminal has nothing to send, or for addressing that the terminal cannot receive (or has detected a transmission error).

Ⓢ (Start of Address)

The Ⓢ character indicates a start-of-address condition and is used, for example, when the Station Control feature is installed in a 2740 Communication Terminal. Ⓢ is used only during addressing and concerns the remote station only.

Ⓨ (Positive Response)

The Ⓨ character indicates that the addressed terminal is ready to receive.

Note: For a listing of all applicable function and control characters, see “Appendix A. ICA Code Tables”.

Transmission Code

The transmission code for type 1 terminals is six-bit BCD, also known as the paper tape transmission code (PTTC). The code is shown in the following table.

<i>Storage byte:</i>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<i>Interpreted as:</i>	S	B	A	8	4	2	1	C
<i>Transmission code:</i>	start	B	A	8	4	2	1	C stop

The S-character is the shift bit, which indicates upper case when set, lower case when zero. During transmission, the line attachment inspects the shift bit of each character before it is stripped off. The inspection shows whether or not the shift bit is the same as that of the preceding character. If a shift change is detected (a change from upper case to lower case, or vice versa), the line attachment generates an appropriate shift character (upshift or downshift) which is transmitted ahead of the character that caused the shift change. This allows the remote terminal to operate its shift mechanism.

When the line attachment is receiving, it inspects incoming shift characters but does not transfer them to main storage. The character that follows the shift character is stored with a shift bit that reflects the change effected by the shift character. The start and stop bits are added for transmission and deleted upon reception.

COMMANDS

Figure 102 shows the commands available for type 1 terminals.

Read

The ‘read’ command causes data to be transferred from the addressed line to the main storage address specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. Data transfer continues in ascending order of this address. To ensure that data is actually received on the line, a three-second timeout is started when a ‘read’ command is given. If the time elapses before data is received, the ‘read’ command ends with unit check (bit 38 in the CSW) set and the timeout complete bit is set in sense byte 0. If a character is received before the three-second timeout has elapsed, a 28-second timeout is started for each subsequent character.

The data received is normally in the form of a stream that consists of line control characters and text characters. The operations within the ICA and the way in which the ‘read’ command is terminated depend on the data received, as described in the following text.

ⓓReceived: If a ⓓ is received, it is recognized as a line control character if the line attachment is in control mode

Hex	Command Code CCW Bits							Command	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Inhibit
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
29	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Dial
0D	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Break
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Poll
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadthree')
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
2B	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Set line mode

Notes:

1. Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
2. For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo' and 'sadthree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 102. Commands for Type 1 Terminals [10860A]

(the line attachment is in control mode after enable, disable, or end of transmission). Recognition of a **D** causes the line attachment to set text-in and lower case modes. The data that follows **D** will be text.

In text-in mode, when the next incoming character is received, the line attachment begins to accumulate the longitudinal redundancy check character. Each text character received causes the LRC to be updated. Reception continues as long as successive text characters arrive within 28 seconds. All characters are stripped of their start bit and stop bits (these bits do not enter main storage). Shift bits are inserted into the byte prior to storing the byte into main storage.

In text-in mode, further **D**, **N** or **Y** characters are not recognized as line control characters, but are treated as text characters.

The read operation continues until a timeout (28 seconds elapsed) occurs, a **B** or **C** is received, or the length count is exhausted, whichever occurs first.

Delete and Idle Characters Received: If delete (BA8421C) and idle characters are received, they are included in the LRC accumulation, but are not transferred to main storage.

Shift Characters Received: If a shift character is received it is inspected but not transferred to main storage. The next character received is stored with a shift bit that corresponds

to the shift change effected by the shift character. The shift character is included in LRC accumulation.

B Received: Receipt of **B** indicates that the end of the text block has been reached and the line attachment stops LRC accumulation. The next character received is assumed to be the LRC character from the remote terminal. This LRC character is compared with the LRC accumulated in the line attachment and if both are the same, channel end and device end are presented for the 'read' command. The attachment remains in text-in mode.

C Received: Receipt of **C** indicates the end of transmission, and channel end, device end and unit exception (bits 36, 37, and 39 in the CSW) are presented to terminate the 'read' command. The line attachment goes back to control mode and lower case mode.

Timeout: If a timeout elapses, the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit check. The timeout complete bit in sense byte 0 will be set if 'data carrier detect' (a modem signal) is still on.

Write

The 'write' command causes data from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to be transmitted over the addressed communication line. One or more characters can be sent. If more than one character is sent, the additional characters are taken from main storage in ascending order of address. The action taken by the ICA depends on the data being transmitted, as described in the following text.

D Transmitted: If a **D** is transmitted, the data that follows (if any) will be text. Transmission of **D** places the line attachment in text-out mode, provided that it was previously in control mode or text-in mode. The **D** also puts the line attachment in lower case mode.

When text-out mode is set, the line attachment begins to accumulate an LRC character. The LRC character is updated with each additional character that is transmitted. Text-out mode causes the shift bit of each text character to be inspected before it is stripped off. If a text character has its shift bit set and the immediately preceding character had its shift bit at 0, the line attachment generates, and transmits, an upshift character. Simultaneously, it sets upper case mode before the next text character is transmitted. If the line attachment detects a change to lower case, the converse happens.

Transmission (writing) continues until a **B** is detected in the output stream or the length count reaches zero, whichever occurs first. Transmission occurs at the speed associated with the addressed line. The line attachment converts the main storage data to the appropriate code (6-bit BCD) and provides the start bit at the beginning and the stop bit at the end of each character.

Ⓒ Transmitted: If a Ⓒ is transmitted, the LRC characters are reset in both the line attachment and the receiving station. The 'write' command does not end. (Usually a polling or addressing character follows Ⓒ.)

Ⓑ Transmitted: If a Ⓑ is transmitted, LRC accumulation stops and the LRC character is transmitted immediately after the Ⓑ. Then channel end and device end are presented for the 'write' command. Ⓑ is the only character that ends a 'write' command.

Steady Space Level Sensed: If a steady space level for more than 16 bit times is sensed on the receiving line and a 'set mode' command specified "write interruption", the 'write' command ends with unit check, and intervention required is set in sense byte 0.

Notes:

1. The write interruption feature requires a four-wire line.
2. A 'write' command need not necessarily transmit an address and text. Instead it may be used to transmit a positive or negative acknowledgement, such as Ⓨ or Ⓝ.

Polling and Addressing with Alternate Read and Write Commands

'Read' and 'write' commands can be used alternately to poll or address type 1 terminals in a multipoint network. The line control sequences for IBM terminal control – type 1 are shown in Figures 103 to 106.

Addressing: Addressing is used to find out if a terminal is ready to receive data. Before addressing can be performed, the line attachment must be in control mode. This can be accomplished by giving a 'write' command that transmits a Ⓒ (end of transmission) followed by the terminal address. The 'write' command must be chained to a 'read' command so that the response can be received as soon as possible. If Ⓝ is received (negative response) the remote terminal cannot receive and the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit exception set. If a Ⓨ is received, the remote terminal is ready to receive and the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end.

Polling: Polling is used to find out if any remote terminal has a message to send. Before polling can be performed, the line attachment must be in control mode. This can be accomplished by giving a 'write' command that transmits a Ⓒ followed by the polling address. The 'write' command should be chained to a 'read' command to obtain the response as quickly as possible. If a Ⓝ is received, the remote terminal has nothing to transmit and the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit exception set. If nothing is received before three seconds have elapsed, the command ends with channel end, device end, and unit check. In either case, the line attachment remains in control mode so that polling (or addressing) can

continue. If a Ⓓ is received, however, the polled terminal will transmit text. The line attachment therefore goes to text-in and lower case modes, and starts the 28-second timeout for the next character.

Inhibit

The 'inhibit' command is similar to the 'read' command, except that neither a three-second timeout at the beginning nor the 28-second timeouts between characters are started. The 'inhibit' command may be used whenever it is necessary for the line attachment to wait an unlimited period of time for data.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command allows the program to check for meaningful signals on the addressed communication line, and thus find out when a 'read' command should be given. The command is similar to a 'read' although no data is transferred to main storage. When given, the 'prepare' command checks the communication line for a valid start bit. If a valid start bit is detected, the timing circuits next attempt to detect one complete character. If a character can be assembled, channel end and device end are presented for the 'prepare' command. The assembled character, however, is lost and is not transferred to main storage.

If no stop bit is found after detection of a start bit and associated character, a 28-second timeout is started. If the timeout elapses before a stop bit is found, the 'prepare' command ends with unit check and the timeout complete bit is then set in sense byte 0. The lost data bit in sense byte 0, however, is not set, because no data is transferred to main storage during execution of a 'prepare' command.

Enable

The 'enable' command is a prerequisite for data transmission and reception because it enables the addressed line attachment for operation. The command also sets the line attachment to downshift mode. If the 'enable' command is given to a line attachment operating a private or leased line, channel end and device end are set in the initial status. If it is given to a switched line, channel end and device end are set only when the connection with the remote terminal has been established. No data is transferred.

Disable

The 'disable' command makes the addressed line attachment unavailable to commands other than 'enable', 'set line mode', 'sense', or 'dial'. Other commands issued to a disabled line attachment end with unit check set in the CSW and intervention required set in sense byte 0. If the line to which the 'disable' command is given is a private or leased line, channel end and device end are set in the initial status. If the addressed line is a switched line, a line

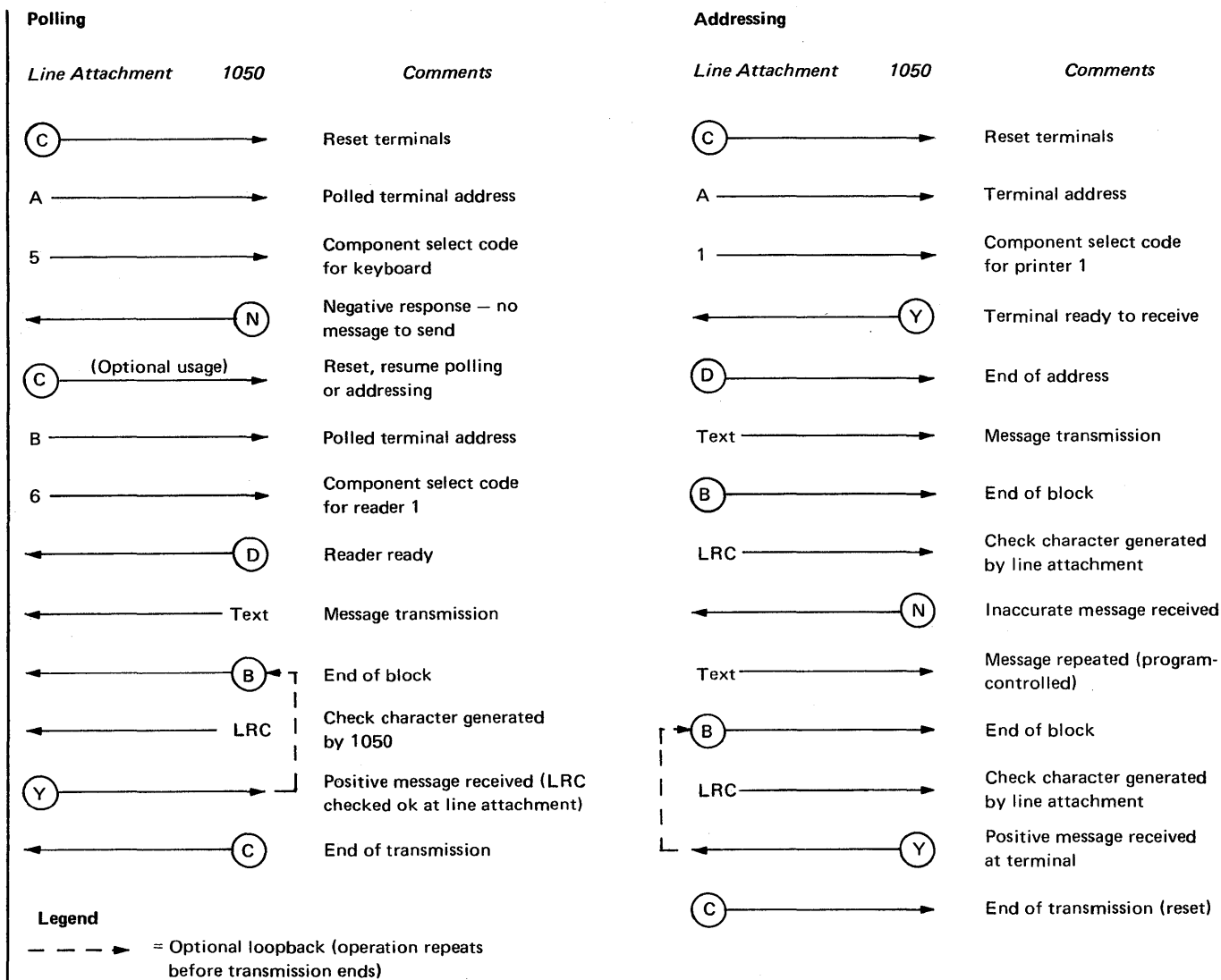


Figure 103. Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 1050 Data Communication System [19585]

disconnect occurs and then channel end and device end are presented.

Dial

The 'dial' command can be used only when the addressed line attachment is equipped with the Auto Call Adapter feature and the line attachment is disabled, otherwise the command is rejected. The 'dial' command causes dial digits (which form the subscriber number) to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. The transfer continues in ascending order of this address to the automatic calling unit (ACU) until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero, or the ACU signals 'abandon call-retry', whichever occurs first. The ACU uses the dial digits to produce dial pulses suitable for the switched network. Channel end and device end are presented for the 'dial' command when the last digit has

been transferred and the ACU indicates "connection established". If the connection cannot be made, unit check is set together with channel end and device end and the timeout complete bit is set in sense byte 0. After a 'dial' command, the line attachment is in control mode.

Break

The 'break' command is used to stop transmission from a remote terminal. The 'read' command in progress should be terminated, with a 'halt device' instruction, then the 'break' command can be given. The ICA treats a 'halt device' instruction like a 'halt I/O', so both instructions can be used in the same way. The 'break' command causes a steady space level to be placed on the line for a duration that is determined by the count in CCW bits 48 to 63. The count causes an appropriate number of bytes to be fetched from main storage for timing purposes: at least five bytes must

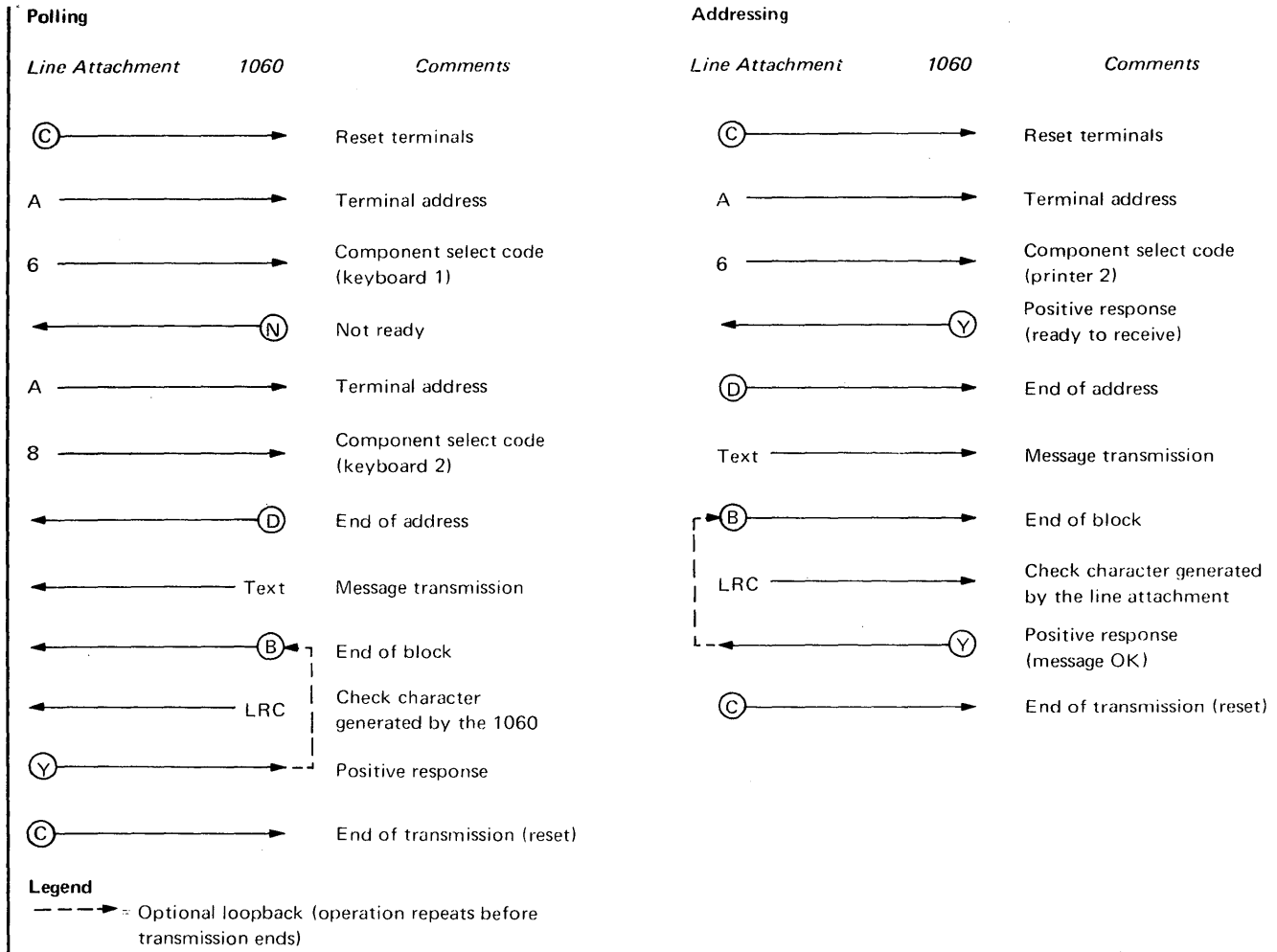


Figure 104. Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control - Type 1 with 1060 Data Communication System [19586]

be specified. These bytes may contain any bit pattern because they are not transmitted over the line. When the count is reduced to zero, channel end and device end are presented.

Note: The 'break' command must only be used if the remote terminal is equipped with a receive interrupt feature, which allows detection of the 'break' signal. For this reason, use of the 'break' command for type 1 terminals can be specified via the 'set line mode' command (set read interruption). If its use is prohibited, a 'break' command is rejected.

Poll

The 'poll' command allows the program to search a multipoint network for remote terminals which have a message to transmit. The 'poll' command provides an automatic procedure that relieves the program from having to give alternate 'read' and 'write' commands.

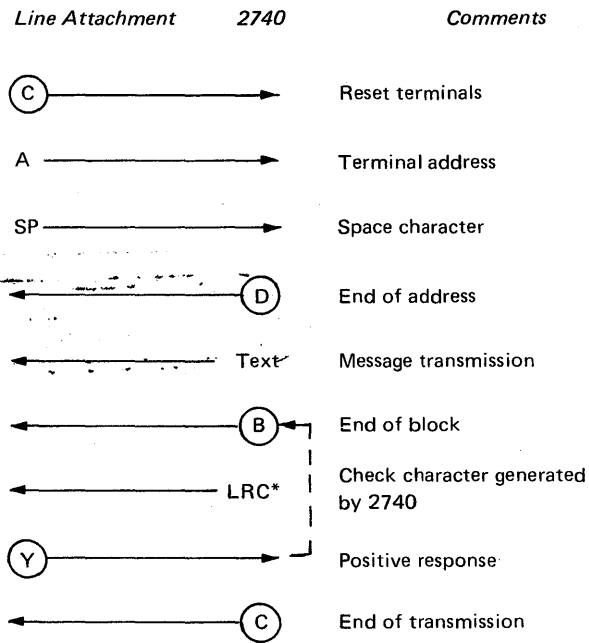
The 'poll' command causes data to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to

the addressed communication line. The data thus transmitted is a 'polling character sequence', which usually consists of a character that sets control mode, terminal address, and a character that specifies an I/O device such as a card reader or card punch (if any) at the remote station.

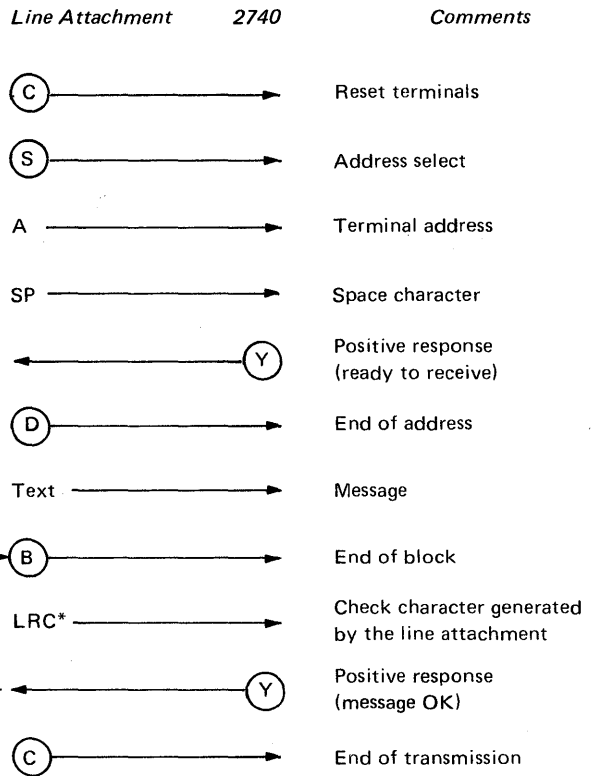
After transmission of the polling characters, the line attachment is put into receive status until either a reply is received or a timeout occurs. If a negative response, such as a (N), is received, the next polling character is fetched from main storage and transmitted over the line. The line attachment again checks for a reply. This continues until the polling list is exhausted (all polling characters have been transmitted and the length count reaches zero). The command will then be terminated with channel end and device end set. At this point it is recommended to branch back to the 'poll' command via a 'TIC' command to keep a "polling loop" running until a reply is received.

If a timeout occurs before a reply is received, channel end, device end, and unit check are presented. If, however, a (D) is received, the 'poll' command ends with channel end,

Polling



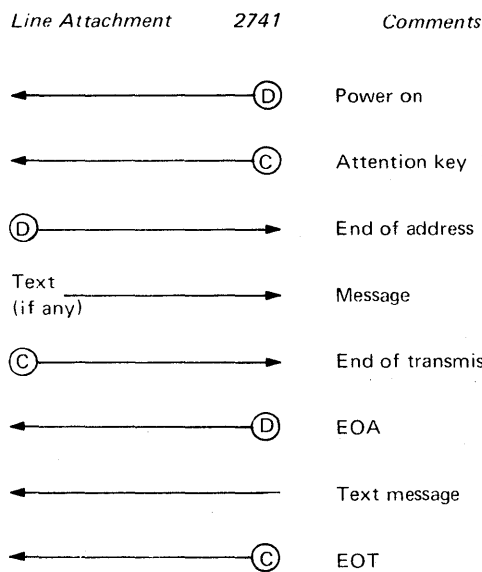
Addressing



Legend

- * Used only on 2740 equipped with the Record Checking feature
- - - → Optional loopback (operation repeats before transmission ends)

Figure 105. Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 2740 Communication Terminal [19587]



Note: This sequence must be followed for transmit or receive

Figure 106. Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 with 2741 Communication Terminal [19588]

device end, and the status modifier (bit 33) set in the CSW. If command chaining has been specified, the current CCW address is incremented by 16 and the CCW at this location is fetched (this should be a 'read' because \textcircled{D} indicates that a message will arrive). The first character thus read in will be the index character (which is excluded from LRC accumulation). The index character identifies the terminal from which the message is being received.

Examples of polling and addressing are shown in Figures 103 to 106.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command performs no function at the line attachment. Channel end, device end, and any other status conditions that may exist at that time are presented in the initial status.

Notes:

1. The 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo', and 'sadthree' commands used by the IBM 2703 Communication Control are accepted by the Model 115's ICA, but are treated as 'control no-op'.
2. The 'auto-wrap' command used by the System/360 Model 25 is rejected if given to the Model 115's ICA.

Set Line Mode

The 'set line mode' command provides a means of adjusting the line attachment to suit the characteristics of the communications system with which it is used. Certain details, such as the availability of a two-wire or four-wire line, or the availability of a duplex or half-duplex modem, may not be known or may be uncertain up to the point of actual installation. The 'set line mode' command, therefore, allows the programmer to specify the characteristics of remote terminals which will communicate with the ICA so that there is no need for hardware changes. The following information can be specified in one byte that is transferred from the main storage location designated in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the line attachment.

Bit	Meaning
0	Continuous request to send
1	Leased line (0)/switched line (1)
2	(Not used)
3	Unit exception suppress or downshift on space
4	Read interruption
5	Write interruption
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Information specified by the 'set line mode' command must correctly define the characteristics of the equipment with which the ICA is to communicate. If, for example, leased line is specified by bit 1 but a switched line is actually used, correct operation will be impossible although no error indication will be given.

The following text describes in more detail the conditions that can be specified by the 'set line mode' command.

Continuous Request to Send (Bit 0): Bit 0, when set, specifies that the 'request to send' circuit to the modem is on at all times that the line attachment is enabled. Normally, request to send is set only when a 'write', 'break', or 'poll' command is given and this causes a short delay until 'clear to send' is returned. Continuous request to send avoids turnaround delays.

Leased Line/Switched Line (Bit 1): When bit 1 is off (0), leased line is specified; when bit 1 is set, switched line is specified.

Unit Exception Suppress (Bit 3): When bit 3 is set, unit exception status is suppressed if a \textcircled{C} is received. The suppression of unit exception must be specified when a 2741 terminal is attached to the other end of the line. Because the downshift on space function is not applicable, bit 3 only serves as the unit exception suppressor.

Read Interruption (Bit 4): When bit 4 is set, a 'break' command is not rejected (as it normally would be) but is executed. This allows the program to stop a remote terminal that forces the line attachment to continue reading. The 'read' command must, however, be terminated (via 'halt I/O') before the 'break' command can be given. Bit 4 should be set only if the remote terminal is capable of recognizing a 'break' signal.

Write Interruption (Bit 5): When bit 5 is set, the line attachment is capable of recognizing a 'break' signal received from the remote terminal while the attachment is transmitting to this terminal. The remote terminal operator is thus allowed to press a break key or attention key to stop execution of the 'write' command.

Default Values of 'Set Line Mode' Command: If no 'set line mode' command is given, the following modes of operation are effective:

1. Not continuous request to send
2. Leased line
3. Not unit exception suppress
4. No read or write interruption.

Sense

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the line attachment to main storage for inspection. A 'sense' command can be given at any time but should always be given when unit check is set in the CSW. For details of the sense information available for type 1 terminals, see "Sense Information" in this section. Channel end and device end are set when transfer of the sense information to main storage is complete.

UNIT STATUS

The unit status shows the state of the addressed line attachment (which works as a subchannel). The unit status

is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is set (together with channel end and device end) when a 'poll' command ends because a **D** is received from the polled terminal. The **D** indicates that text will follow. If command chaining is in progress, the status modifier causes the current CCW address to be incremented by 16, to indicate the address of the CCW after the next sequential one to be fetched). This should be a 'read' command.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set if an inline test is running and the subchannel is busy. If a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction is given, condition code 1 is set in response.

Channel End (Bit 36) and Device End (Bit 37)

The channel end and device end bits are always presented together when the line attachment becomes available for a new command. Depending on the command, this may occur at initial selection or later. Channel end and device end, with or without the status modifier, indicate normal or successful completion of a command. If unit check accompanies this status, a 'sense' command must be given to find the exact circumstances in which the command was completed.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit can be set by several errors or unusual conditions which may have caused the termination of a command. For example, a timeout during a 'read' command or during a 'dial' command sets unit check. An unassigned command; or a command during which a parity error occurs also causes the setting of unit check. A 'sense' command must be given to retrieve the actual error condition. For a more detailed description of the causes of unit check being set, see "Sense Information" in this section.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit, when set, indicates either a specific response or a situation that is unexpected. The meaning of unit exception is specific for each of the following commands:

1. For 'write' and 'poll' commands, unit exception indicates that the line was receiving at the time the command was issued.
2. For a 'read' or 'inhibit' command, unit exception indicates that a **C** (end of transmission) or **N** (negative response for polling/selection) has been received.
3. For a 'prepare', 'dial', or 'enable' command, unit exception indicates that the command was ended prematurely by a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction.

Note: Unit exception is not set upon reception of **C** (end of transmission) when suppressed via a 'set line mode' command.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete

Note: All conditions indicated in sense byte 0 set unit check in the CSW.

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set for any invalid command. Command reject is also set when a 'dial' command is given to a line that does not have the auto call adapter installed or when the 'break' command is given although read interruption has not been specified.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set whenever the line attachment, the modem, or the automatic calling unit is not ready. The line attachment is not ready when, for example, it has been disabled. The modem is not ready if it fails to indicate 'data set ready' or if it remains in receive mode when it should be in transmit mode (half-duplex modems). The ACU is not operational when its power indicator line is off. The intervention should then consist of issuing an 'enable' command, getting the modem on-line, or turning power on at the ACU, as the case may be. Intervention required is set when a steady down level is received during a

'write' command, provided write interruption was specified in the 'set line mode' command. Intervention required is also set if 'data carrier detect' (a modem signal) is found off after a timeout.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

Equipment check is set if malfunctions are detected within the attachment hardware.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set if a vertical redundancy check or longitudinal redundancy check is detected. The following are examples of situations which can cause data check to be set:

1. Line attachment has been transmitting text, and receives an **(N)** (indicating that the remote terminal detected a VRC or LRC error).
2. Line attachment is receiving text ('read' command) and receives a character with bad VRC, or the LRC received does not match the locally-accumulated LRC.
3. After execution of a 'poll' command, the line attachment receives a character other than **(N)** or **(D)**.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set when a data byte is lost because data service could not be obtained from the line attachment within one character interval.

Lost Data (Bit 6)

The lost data bit is set when at least one data byte is lost for reasons other than overrun. The following are typical situations which can cause the lost data bit to be set:

1. One complete character (or more) has been received by the line attachment when a 'read' command is given for that line. The character is "unsolicited" and is therefore lost.
2. A 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction stops data reception during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command before the ending status is set.
3. During execution of a 'dial' command, the telephone line is busy or the call is answered before the last dial digit has been transferred.
4. The length count is reduced to zero during a 'read' operation and no **(B)** or **(C)** is received.

Timeout Complete (Bit 7)

The timeout complete bit is set when the period of time within which a character should be received has elapsed before a character was received. The length of the timeout depends on the mode in which the line attachment operates. When in control mode, the first character for a 'read' command must be received before three seconds have elapsed. When in text-in mode, a character must be received before 28 seconds have elapsed. In the case of a 'prepare' command, timeout complete is set when a valid start bit was detected but no stop bit can be found. If 'data carrier detect' is found off, intervention required is set (not the timeout complete bit).

IBM Terminal Control — Type 2

CHARACTERISTICS

The IBM terminal control — type 2 is designed for communication with the IBM 1030 Data Collection System. The 1030 Data Collection System uses the 6-bit BCD (PTTC) code without shift. The command set and the control characters used are the same as for terminal control type 1, except that there is no 'dial' command or 'break' command.

Line Control Characters

The following line control characters are used with terminal control — type 2.

ⓑ (End of Block)

ⓑ indicates the end of a block of text data.

ⓒ (End of Transmission)

ⓒ indicates end of transmission and sets the line attachment to control mode.

ⓓ (End of Address)

ⓓ indicates the end of an address (if any) and thereby the beginning of text.

Ⓝ (Negative Response)

Ⓝ indicates that the remote station cannot receive, has nothing to send, or detected a transmission error during reception.

Ⓨ (Positive Response)

Ⓨ indicates that the remote station is ready to receive or has received error-free data.

Ⓢ (Start of Address)

Ⓢ indicates that a message is available for the printer (used only during addressing and concerns the remote station only).

Note: For a listing of all applicable control characters, see "Appendix A. ICA Code Tables".

Transmission Code

The transmission code on the line differs in one aspect from that for type 1 terminals. On transmission, the line attachment adds one start bit and two stop bits. Shift bits are not used. There is no LRC accumulation in terminal control — type 2.

The following line transmission code is used in relation to EBCDIC:

Storage byte:	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Interpreted as:	—	B	A	8	4	2	1	C
Transmission code:	start	B	A	8	4	2	1	C stop, stop

Code translation and the addition (or deletion) of start and stop bits are performed within the ICA.

COMMANDS

Figure 107 shows the commands available for type 2 terminals.

Hex	Command Code							Command	
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Inhibit
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Poll
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadthree')
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
2B	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	Set line mode

Notes:

- Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
- For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo', and 'sadthree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 107. Commands for Type 2 Terminals [10861A]

Read

The 'read' command causes data to be transferred from the addressed line to the main storage address specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. Data transfer continues in ascending order of this address. To ensure that data is actually being received on the line, a three-second timeout is started when a 'read' command is given. If the character arrives before the three seconds have elapsed, a 28-second timeout is started for each subsequent character. If no data is received before the three seconds have elapsed, unit check is set in the CSW, together with the timeout complete bit in sense byte 0.

For a 'read' command, the operations within the ICA depend on what data is received, as described in the following text.

ⓓ *Received:* If a ⓓ character is received while the line attachment is in control mode (which it is after end of transmission, disable, or enable) the attachment sets text-in mode. In text-in mode, further ⓓ, Ⓝ, or Ⓨ characters

are not recognized as line control characters, they are treated as text characters. No LRC accumulation takes place, but each character is individually checked for odd VRC.

Delete Characters or Idle Characters Received: If delete characters (BA8421C) or idle characters (B8421) are received, they reset the timeout but are not transferred to main storage.

(B) Received: If a **(B)** is received, channel end and device end are presented for the 'read' command. The line attachment remains in text-in mode.

(C) Received: If a **(C)** is received, channel end, device end, and unit exception are set in the CSW. The line attachment goes back to control mode.

Timeout: If a timeout occurs, the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit check set, and the timeout complete bit is set in sense byte 0.

Write

The 'write' command causes data from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to be transferred (in ascending order of this address) to the selected communication line. The storage bytes are translated to six-bit BCD and each byte is provided with one start bit and two stop bits. Upon reception these bits are deleted by the remote station. The action taken by the ICA during write operations depends on what is being transmitted, as described in the following text.

(D) Transmitted: If a **(D)** is transmitted, the line attachment sets text-out mode, provided that it was in text-in or control mode at the time **(D)** was sent. No LRC accumulation takes place.

(C) Transmitted: If a **(C)** is transmitted, the line attachment goes into control mode. The 'write' command does not end (**(C)** is normally followed by a polling or addressing character sequence).

(B) Transmitted: If a **(B)** is transmitted, channel end and device end are presented for the 'write' command. The line attachment remains in text-out mode.

Note: **(B)** is the only character capable of ending a 'write' command. For this reason, the command length count (held in CCW bits 48 to 63) should be equal to (or greater than) the number of bytes transferred.

Polling and Addressing with Alternate Write and Read Commands

'Read' and 'write' commands can be used alternately to poll or address remote stations (similar to the polling and addressing procedures for type 1 terminals). The line control sequences for IBM terminal control – type 2 are shown in Figure 108.

Addressing: Addressing is used to find out if a remote station is ready to receive data. Before addressing can be performed, the line attachment must be in control mode. This is accomplished by giving a 'write' command that transmits a **(C)**. **(C)** may be followed by **(S)** after which the actual address is transmitted. The 'write' command must be chained to a 'read' command so that the incoming response can be received as soon as possible. If the response is **(N)**, the remote station cannot receive and the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit exception set. If the response is **(Y)**, the remote station is ready to receive and the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end only. Chaining may now progress to a 'write' command that sends the text.

Polling: Polling is used to find out if any remote station has a message to send. A 'write' command is used to transmit the polling character sequence. This must occur in control mode which can be ensured by transmitting **(C)**, then the polling character sequence. The 'write' command must be chained to a 'read' command to obtain a response as quickly as possible. If the response is **(D)**, the line attachment sets text-in mode and continues to receive. If the response is **(N)**, the remote station has nothing to send and the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end, and unit exception set. If a timeout occurs, the 'read' command ends with unit check set.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command allows the program to check for meaningful signals on the addressed communication line, so as to find out when a 'read' command should be given. The command is similar to a 'read' but no data is transferred to main storage. When 'prepare' is given, the line attachment checks the line for a valid start bit. If a valid start bit is detected, the line attachment attempts to assemble a complete character. If a complete character can be assembled, channel end and device end are presented for the 'prepare' command. The assembled character will be lost and is not transferred to main storage.

If a start bit was detected but no stop bit can be recognized when it is expected, a 28-second timeout is started. The timeout may elapse (in which case unit check ends the command and the timeout complete bit is set in sense byte 0), or a stop bit may be detected (in which case the command ends normally). The lost data bit in sense byte 0 is not set if the timeout elapses, because no data is transferred to main storage.

Inhibit

The 'inhibit' command is similar to the 'read' command except that it is free of timeouts. It may be used whenever there is a justification for waiting an unlimited amount of time for data.

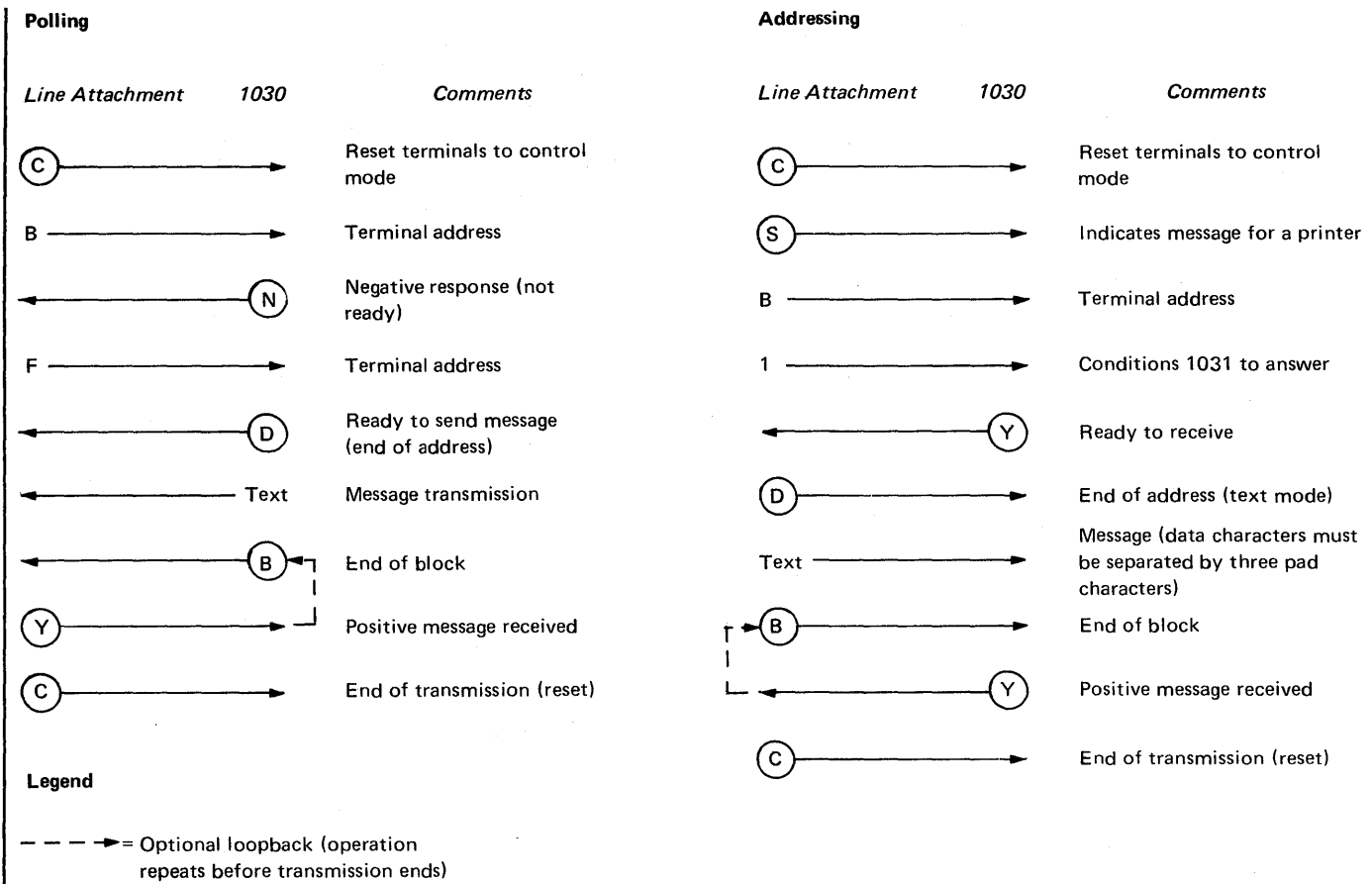


Figure 108. Line Control Sequences for IBM Terminal Control – Type 2 with 1030 Data Collection System [19589]

Enable

The 'enable' command causes the addressed line attachment to be enabled for operation, and is a prerequisite for data transmission or reception. When the 'enable' command is given to a private or leased line attachment, channel end and device end are presented at initial selection. When 'enable' is given to a switched line, channel end and device end are presented only after connection with the remote station has been established.

Disable Command

The 'disable' command makes the addressed line attachment unavailable to commands other than 'enable', 'set line mode' and 'sense'. Other commands are rejected with unit check set and the intervention required bit is set in sense byte 0. When the 'disable' command is given to a private or leased line attachment, channel end and device end are presented immediately. When 'disable' is given to a switched line, the connection is broken and channel end and device end are set before the command is completed.

Poll Command

The 'poll' command provides an automatic polling procedure (instead of alternate 'read' and 'write' commands) which allows the program to search for remote stations, in a multipoint network, that have a message to transmit. The automatic procedure begins with the transfer of the poll character sequence from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the addressed line attachment. The attachment transmits the polling sequence, and is then put into receive mode to check for a response. Either a response is received or the timeout (which was started when the polling sequence was transmitted) elapses. If the timeout elapses, channel end, device end, and unit check are presented.

If a (N) response is received, the polled station has no message to send and the line attachment transmits the next polling character and switches again to receive mode. This may continue until the polling list is exhausted (length count is 0) and the 'poll' command is terminated with channel end and device end set. At this point, the program may branch back to the 'poll' command via a 'TIC'

command. This action keeps a polling loop running until a response is received. If a **(D)** response is received, the polled station is about to send text (**(D)** indicates a successful poll). The 'poll' command then ends with channel end, device end, and the status modifier set in the CSW. If chaining is being performed, the status modifier causes the CCW address to be incremented by 16 where a 'read' command should be located. The 'poll' command should be chained to that 'read' command to avoid loss of data.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command performs no function at the line attachment. Any status conditions which may exist when the command is first given are presented in the initial status.

Set Line Mode Command

The 'set line mode' command allows the line attachment to be adjusted to suit the characteristics of the communication system with which it is to be used. One byte of mode-setting information is transferred from main storage to the attachment, after which channel end and device end are set. The following can be specified:

Bit	Meaning
0	Continuous request to send
1	Leased line (0)/switched line (1)
2	(Not used)
3	Unit exception suppress (not used)
4	Read interruption (not used)
5	Write interruption (not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Continuous Request to Send (Bit 0): Bit 0 specifies the operational characteristic of the modem (half-duplex when 0, duplex when 1).

Leased Line/Switched Line (Bit 1): When bit 1 is set to 1, it specifies switched line operation. When bit 1 is off (0), it specifies leased line operation. Leased line operation implies a permanent connection.

Bit 2: Bit 2 is not used, and must be 0.

Unit Exception Suppress or Downshift on Space (Bit 3): Bit 3 is not used, and must be 0.

Read Interruption (Bit 4): Bit 4 is not used, and must be 0.

Write Interruption (Bit 5): Bit 5 is not used, and must be 0.

Sense Command

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the line attachment into the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. One byte of information is available from terminal control – type 2 line attachments. A 'sense' command can be used to show the exact reason for unit check being set in the CSW. For details of the sense information available for type 2 terminals, see "Sense Information" in this section.

UNIT STATUS

The unit status shows the status of the addressed line attachment, and is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

The circumstances under which the status bits are set are identical to those for terminal control – type 1.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available when unit check is set in the CSW. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete.

The sense bits are set in the same circumstances as previously described for terminal control – type 1, except for cases which are not applicable because of the lack of a 'break' or 'dial' command in terminal control – type 2.

Telegraph Terminal Control — Type 1

CHARACTERISTICS

Telegraph terminal control — type 1 comprises the command set, line control characters, and transmission code required to operate the following remote terminals:

- AT & T* 83 B2 Selective Calling Terminal
- AT & T 83 B3 Selective Calling Terminal
- Western Union Plan 115A Terminal.

Line Control Characters

The following line control characters and character sequences are used:

FIGS (Figures)

FIGS is an upshift character that is generated by the line attachment when an outgoing data byte with its shift bit off is followed by a byte with its shift bit set. Upon reception, FIGS is deleted, but the shift bit in the next byte which is to be transferred to storage is set if the preceding character was received in lower case mode.

LTRS (Letters)

LTRS is a downshift character that is generated by the line attachment when an outgoing data byte with its shift bit set is followed by a byte with its shift bit off. Upon reception, an LTRS character is deleted but the appropriate shift bit is added to the next byte before transfer to storage.

EOM/EOT (End of Message/End of Transmission)

EOM/EOT is a sequence that consists of the upper case H character followed by the LTRS character; this sequence indicates message end (transmission end). To ensure that the remote terminal recognizes the sequence, it is recommended that FIGS H LTRS be transmitted (because the FIGS character sets upper case mode).

V (or M) (Verify)

V (or M) is a positive response to addressing but a negative response to polling.

EOA (End of Address)

EOA has no control power but is used as a programming convention in polling operations.

Note: For a list of all applicable control characters, see "Appendix A. ICA Code Tables".

Transmission Code

The transmission code used with telegraph terminal control

— type 1 is the shifted 5-bit Baudot code with 1 start and 1.5 stop bits, as follows:

Storage byte: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Interpreted as: — — S 1 2 3 4 5
Transmission code: start, 1 2 3 4 5, stop

Bits 0 and 1 of the storage byte are zeros. Bit 2 represents the shift bit which is 0 for downshift (lower case) and 1 for upshift. The shift bit is inspected and converted to an appropriate shift character by the line attachment.

COMMANDS

Figure 109 shows the commands available for use by telegraph terminal control — type 1.

Hex	Command Code CCW Bits							Command	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
0D	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Break
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Inhibit
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadhree')
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
2B	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	Set line mode

Notes:

- Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
- For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo' and 'sadhree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 109. Commands for Type 1 Telegraph Terminals [10862A]

Read

The 'read' command causes data from the selected telegraph line to be transferred to the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31; the transfer continues in ascending order of this address if data is actually received on the line. To ensure that data is actually received on the line, a three-second timeout is started when the 'read' command is given. If no data is received before the three seconds elapse, the command ends with unit check set and the timeout complete bit set in sense byte 0. If data is received before the three-second timeout elapses, a 28-second timeout is started for each subsequent character.

* American Telephone & Telegraph Company.

For a 'read' command, the operations within the ICA depend on the data received, as described in the following text.

FIGS Received: If a FIGS character is received, the line attachment switches to figures (numeric) mode. The FIGS character itself does not enter main storage, but it determines the setting of the shift bit in the storage byte of subsequent characters.

LTRS Received: If an LTRS character is received, the line attachment switches to letters (alphabetic) mode if it is currently operating in figures mode. The LTRS character is not transferred to main storage but it determines the setting of the shift bit for subsequent characters.

Note: If the line attachment is already in the mode dictated by an incoming shift character, the shift character has no effect.

V or M Received: If the character V or M is received as the first non-shift character, the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end set (this is a normal ending).

FIGS H LTRS: If the sequence FIGS H LTRS is received, the 'read' command ends with channel end, device end and unit exception set.

Space Character Received: If a space character is received and 'downshift on space' has been specified by the 'set line mode' command, the line attachment switches to letters mode. The incoming space character receives a 0-shift bit before it is transferred to main storage. If the downshift on space has not been specified, the space character is treated as a text character.

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred to the selected telegraph line from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31; data transfer continues in ascending order of this address until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero.

The data transfer includes the insertion of the start and stop bits and takes place at the speed assigned to the line.

For a 'write' command, the operations within the ICA depend on the data transmitted, as described in the following text.

FIGS Transmitted: The line attachment inspects the shift bit of each character before the character is transmitted. If the line attachment is in letters mode (as after reset, disable, or enable) a character that has its shift bit set causes the attachment to generate automatically a FIGS character. The FIGS is transmitted ahead of the character that caused its generation and the line attachment switches to figures mode.

LTRS Transmitted: If the line attachment is in figures mode and a character has its shift bit off (0), an LTRS character is generated automatically and transmitted ahead of the character that caused its generation. The line attachment is switched back to letters mode.

Space Character Transmitted: A space character transmitted when downshift on space has been specified (via the 'set line mode' command) causes the line attachment to switch to letters mode irrespective of whether the space character has its shift bit on or off. No LTRS character is generated, however.

Echo Check: If transmission and reception occur simultaneously on the telegraph line (due to the telegraph relays being wrongly positioned), an echo check is recognized and this terminates the 'write' command with unit check set, and data check set in the sense byte.

Shift Characters Transmitted: Care must be taken when transmitting shift characters from main storage, because the line attachment does not recognize them as control characters but treats them as text characters. Shift characters are inspected for their shift bits like any other characters and a shift character is generated automatically when the shift bit differs from that part of the preceding character. This causes two shift characters to be transmitted (one from storage, the other from the line attachment).

Note: The 'write' command is not terminated by any control character sent out. Termination is determined by the CCW count only. However, care must be taken that the program does not accidentally cut off the remote terminal by sending the upper case H followed by LTRS; this is taken as the EOT signal at the remote terminal.

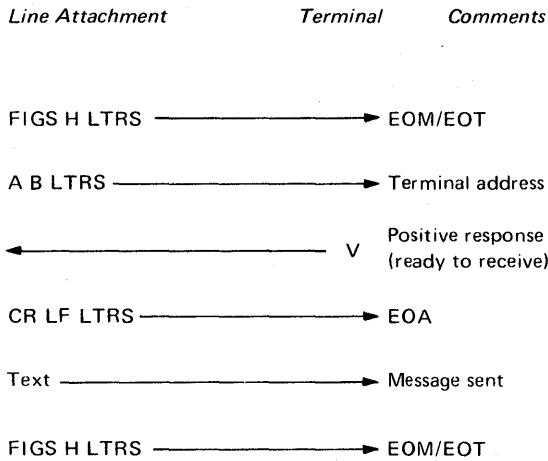
Addressing and Polling

Addressing and polling can be performed by alternate 'write' and 'read' commands (there is no separate 'poll' command). The line control sequences for telegraph terminal control – type 1 are shown in Figure 110.

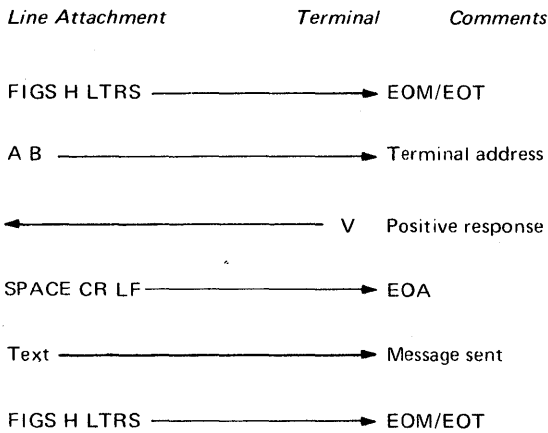
Addressing: Addressing is used to find out if a remote terminal is ready to receive. A 'write' command is used to address the remote terminal and this 'write' command should be chained to a 'read' command to obtain the response as soon as possible. If the response is a V or M character, the remote terminal is ready to receive and the command ends with channel end and device end. Chaining to a 'write' command may then occur. The message should be started off with EOA, then the text should follow, ending with EOM/EOT.

Polling: Polling is used to find out whether a terminal has a message to offer. A 'write' command should be given to

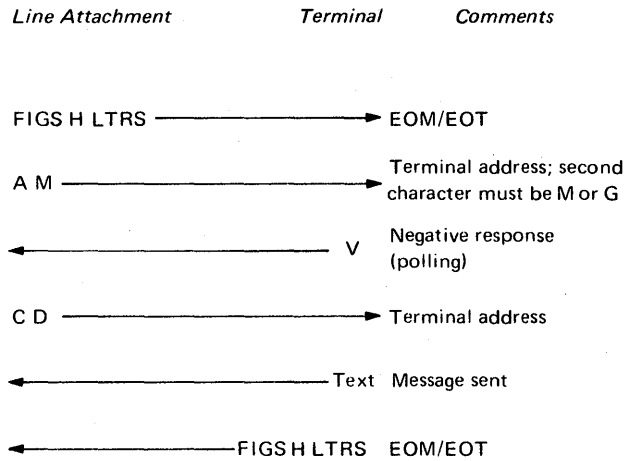
Addressing AT & T 83B2/83B3



Addressing Western Union Plan 115A



Polling AT & T 83B2/83B3



Polling Western Union Plan 115A

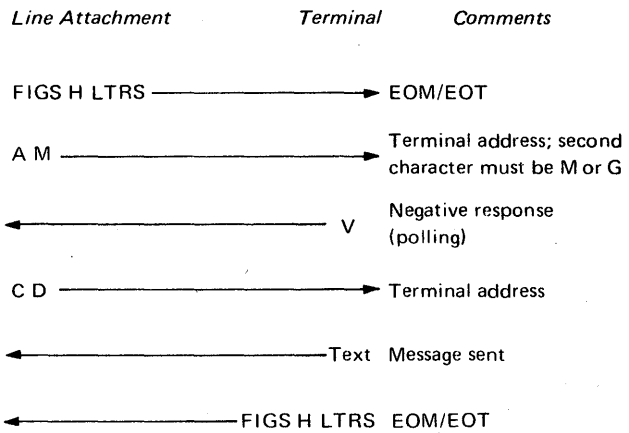


Figure 110. Line Control Sequences for Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 1 with AT & T 83B2/83B3 and Western Union Plan 115A Terminals [19590]

transmit EOT and the polling character. To make sure that the terminal recognizes EOM/EOT, the sequence FIGS H LTRS should be sent. This sequence is never transferred to main storage but is recognized by the attachment as an EOT. Thereafter chaining to a 'read' command is required to obtain the response. If a V character is received in response, the terminal has nothing to send and the command ends with channel end and device end. If the terminal has data to send, it would answer with EOA, then text, then EOM/EOT.

Break

The 'break' command is used to stop a remote terminal transmitting. This is achieved by placing a continuous space-level on the addressed telegraph line. Before the 'break' command can be given, receive operations must be stopped by a 'halt I/O' instruction. The command fetches data from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8

to 31 in ascending order of this address until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. Channel end and device end are then presented for the 'break' command. The data bytes fetched are used by the line attachment to control the duration of the 'break' signal. The bytes may have any bit combination because they are not transmitted over the line. The minimum length of the 'break' signal required to disconnect a remote terminal depends on the characteristics of the terminal. At least five bytes are required.

Note: Before the 'break' command is given, a previous 'set line mode' command must have specified read interruption; otherwise, the 'break' command is rejected.

Inhibit

The 'inhibit' command is similar to the 'read' command, except that neither the three-second nor the 28-second timeout is started. The 'inhibit' command may be used

whenever it is necessary for the line attachment to wait an unlimited amount of time for data.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command allows the program to check for meaningful signals on the addressed communication line, and thus find out when a 'read' command should be given.

The 'prepare' command receives the first character, which is, however, lost because no data is transferred to main storage. If a FIGS character is received, the 'prepare' command ends with channel end and device end.

Enable

The 'enable' command is a prerequisite for data transmission and reception. The command also sets the line attachment to downshift mode. If the line attachment is not enabled, commands such as 'read', 'write', 'inhibit', and 'prepare' are terminated with intervention required. The 'enable' command ends with channel end and device end set in the initial status.

Disable

The 'disable' command makes the addressed line attachment unavailable to commands other than 'enable', 'sense', or 'set line mode'. Other commands given to a disabled line are rejected with unit check set in the CSW and intervention required set in sense byte 0.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command performs no function at the line attachment. Channel end, device end, and any other status conditions that may exist at the time the command is given are presented in the initial status.

Set Line Mode

The 'set line mode' command allows the program to adjust the line attachment to suit the characteristics of the communication system with which the attachment is to operate. For this purpose one byte of mode-setting information is transferred from main storage to the line attachment. The 'set line mode' command can specify the following information:

Bit	Meaning
0	Continuous request to send (not used)
1	Leased line (0)/switched line (not used)
2	(Not used)
3	Unit exception suppress or downshift on space
4	Read interruption
5	Write interruption (not used)
6,7	(Not used)

Downshift on Space (Bit 3): When bit 3 is set, a space character received during a 'read' command puts the line attachment in lower case (LTRS) mode. The same occurs

when the line attachment transmits a space character during a 'write' command. The unit exception suppress function is not applicable.

Read Interruption (Bit 4): When bit 4 is set, a 'break' command is executed instead of being rejected as it would be if bit 4 was off.

Sense

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the addressed line attachment into the main storage location addressed via CCW bits 8 to 31. A 'sense' command may be given at any time but should always be given when unit check is set in the CSW. The sense information shows the reason for the unit check (see "Sense Information" in this section).

UNIT STATUS

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Attention (Bit 32)

The attention bit is not used.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is not used.

Control Unit End (Bit 34)

The control unit end bit is not used.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set if an inline test is running and the subchannel is busy. If a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction is given, condition code 1 is set in response.

Channel End (Bit 36) and Device End (Bit 37)

The channel end and device end bits are always presented together when activity in the line attachment is completed. This may be at initial selection time (as is the case with an 'enable' or 'disable' command) or later (as with a 'read' or 'write' command).

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit is set whenever errors or unusual conditions are detected which require further definition

through the sense information. For example, unit check is set for a 'read' command when the timeout limit has elapsed before a character is received. In that case, the timeout complete bit in sense byte 0 is set to define the reason for the unit check status. Unit check is also set when intervention is required before a command can be executed because the line is disabled, or when an unassigned command is given.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit, when set, indicates a specific form of command termination. Unit exception has a specific meaning for each of the following commands:

1. For a 'read' command, unit exception is set when an EOM/EOT sequence is received.
2. For an 'inhibit' command, unit exception is set when an EOM/EOT sequence is received.
3. For a 'write' command, unit exception is set when the command is given to a line that is currently receiving data or has received data since the end of the previous command.
4. For a 'prepare' command, unit exception is set if a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction was given before any data was received.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when an unassigned command (such as 'dial' or 'poll') is given to a line operating under telegraph control — type 1. Command

reject is also set if a 'break' command is given while read interruption is not specified in the 'set line mode' command.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set if a command other than 'enable' or 'set line mode' is given while the line is disabled. The bit is also set if data carrier detect is found off after a timeout has expired.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit, when set, indicates a basic failure within the attachment hardware.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set for a 'read' or 'inhibit' command when a space level is detected on the line at the time reserved for a stop bit (stop bit error). Data check is set for a 'write' command when, during command execution, the line attachment receives an echo check from the line.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set if a character is lost during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command. This can happen when a data transfer to main storage fails.

Lost Data (Bit 6)

The lost data bit is set when a character is lost for reasons other than overrun. This could occur during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command when at least one character had been received at the time the command was given. When this happens for a 'prepare' command, lost data is *not* set. Lost data is set, however, when a 'read' or 'inhibit' command is terminated by a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction. The lost data bit is also set if the byte count in the CCW is reduced to zero during the execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command.

Timeout Complete (Bit 7)

The timeout complete bit is set when the time allotted for the assembly of one complete character has elapsed. The timeout limits are 3.0 seconds for the first character, and 28.0 seconds for any subsequent characters.

Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 2

CHARACTERISTICS

Telegraph terminal control – type 2 is designed to operate synchronous start/stop terminals, such as Common Carrier TWX Models 33/35, that operate over a switched network. These terminals use the eight-level TWX code.

Line Control Characters

Five line control characters are used.

WRU (Who Are You?)

The WRU character is a request for station identification. Upon reception of this character, the remote terminal's automatic address generator responds by sending the assigned identification. WRU, when received during a read operation, causes normal termination of the 'read' command.

XON (Transmitter On)

The XON character indicates that the remote terminal is ready to transmit. XON causes a 'read' command to end normally (with channel end and device end).

ACK (Acknowledge)

The ACK character is a positive reply to a received message. ACK causes normal ending of a 'read' command.

XOFF (Transmitter Off)

The XOFF character indicates that the local terminal may transmit. (XON and XOFF are used to avoid contention.) XOFF causes normal ending of a 'read' command.

EOT (End of Transmission)

The EOT character indicates that transmission is completed. EOT causes a 'read' command to end with unit exception set in the CSW.

Note: For a list of all applicable control characters, see "Appendix A. ICA Code Tables".

Transmission Code

The following transmission code is used:

<i>Storage byte:</i>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<i>Interpreted as:</i>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
<i>Transmission code:</i>	start, 1 2 3 4 5 6 7, parity, stop, stop							

The start bit and the two stop bits are added by the line attachment upon transmission and are deleted by the remote terminal upon reception. The parity bit is added when the remote terminal is equipped with a parity-checking feature. Parity checking can be programmed by means of the 'translate and test' instruction.

COMMANDS

Figure 111 shows the commands available for telegraph terminal control – type 2.

Hex	Command Code								Command
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
0D	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Break
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Inhibit
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
29	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Dial
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadhree')
2B	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Set line mode

Notes:

- Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
- For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo', and 'sadhree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 111. Commands for Type 2 Telegraph Terminals [10863A]

Read

The 'read' command causes data to be transferred from the addressed line to the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. The data transfer continues in ascending order of this address. To ensure that data is actually received on the line, a 28-second timeout is started with the acceptance of the 'read' command. If a character is received before 28 seconds have elapsed, a further 28-second timeout is started. If no character arrives before the timeout has elapsed, the 'read' command ends with unit check set and the timeout complete bit set in sense byte 0.

As each character is received, the start and stop bits are removed. The operations within the ICA and the way in which the 'read' command ends depend on the characters received.

WRU, XON, ACK, or XOFF Received: If one of these characters is received, the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end.

EOT Received: If EOT is received, the read command ends with channel end, device end, and unit exception.

Delete Characters Received: If delete characters (all 1-bits) are received, they are not transferred to main storage. They do, however, reset the timeout like all other characters.

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the addressed communication line. Data transfer continues in ascending order of this address until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero or a 'break' signal is detected, whichever occurs first. As the characters are transmitted, they are provided with one start and two stop bits. None of the control characters have any influence on the 'write' command. However, if space levels are detected on the line in place of the stop bits of two successive characters, a 'break' signal from the remote terminal is recognized (although the line is in transmit mode). This situation causes the 'write' command to end with unit check set, and the intervention required bit is set in sense byte 0. Normally, however, the 'write' command ends, with channel end and device end set, when the count in the CCW is exhausted.

Break

The 'break' command causes a continuous space level to be placed on the line for a duration that is determined by the number of bytes specified. These bytes are fetched from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 until the count is reduced to zero, at which time channel end and device end are presented. The bytes may have any bit combinations as they are used for counting purposes only. The length of the 'break' signal depends on the requirements of the remote terminal; it must cover at least five character periods to be effective.

Note: Before the 'break' command is given, a previous 'set line mode' command must have specified read interruption; otherwise, the 'break' command is rejected.

Inhibit

The 'inhibit' command is similar to a 'read' command, but no timeouts are started. The inhibit operation ends just as for a 'read' on reception of WRU, XON, ACK, XOFF, or EOT.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command allows the program to check for meaningful signals on the addressed line, and thus to find out when a 'read' command should be given. When the 'prepare' command is given, the line attachment is put into receive mode although no characters are transferred to main storage. The attachment checks for a valid start bit on the line. If found, the line attachment attempts to assemble one

character, which will be lost. If no stop bits are detected for this character, a 28-second timeout is started. If the stop bits are detected before the timeout has elapsed, the 'prepare' command ends with channel end and device end. The 'prepare' command ends in the same way if a 'break' signal is detected on the line. However, if the stop bits associated with the character that has been captured are not detected, the 'prepare' command ends with unit check because the timeout expired. The lost data bit is not set, because no data is transferred to main storage.

Enable

The 'enable' command is a prerequisite for data transmission and reception because it makes the line attachment operational. The 'enable' command also sets the line attachment to downshift mode. Channel end and device end are set for the 'enable' command when connection has been established with the remote terminal.

Disable

The 'disable' command makes the addressed line unavailable to all commands other than 'enable', 'set line mode', 'sense', or 'dial'. After the disable operation, channel end and device end are presented. In the disabled state, all commands except 'enable', 'set line mode', or 'dial' are terminated with unit check set and intervention required is set in sense byte 0.

Dial

The 'dial' command causes data from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to be transmitted to the automatic calling unit. Transmission continues until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. The data thus transferred represents the subscriber number. Channel end and device end are presented when the call is completed. If the call is abandoned or if the line was receiving at the time the 'dial' command was given, unit exception is set.

Sense

The 'sense' command causes sense information to be transferred from the line attachment to main storage for inspection. A 'sense' command can be given at any time but must always be given when unit check is set in the CSW, as the contents of the sense byte will show the reason for unit check. (See "Sense Information" in this section.)

Set Line Mode Command

The 'set line mode' command provides a means of adjusting the line attachment to suit the characteristics of the communications system with which it is being used. One byte of mode-setting information is transferred to the

attachment. The mode-setting byte can specify the following information:

Bit	Meaning
0	Continuous request to send
1	Leased (0)/switched (1) line
2	(Not used)
3	Unit exception suppress or downshift on space (not used)
4	Read interruption
5	Write interruption
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Continuous Request to Send: Bit 0 is set when the 'request to send' interface line to the modem is required to be kept permanently on. This mode is used for lines which have duplex capability, a prerequisite for read/write interruption.

Downshift on Space and Unit Exception Suppress: Bit 3 is not applicable to telegraph control – type 2 (must be zero).

Read/Write Interruption: Bits 4 and 5 must be set, because read and write interruptions are mandatory in telegraph control – type 2.

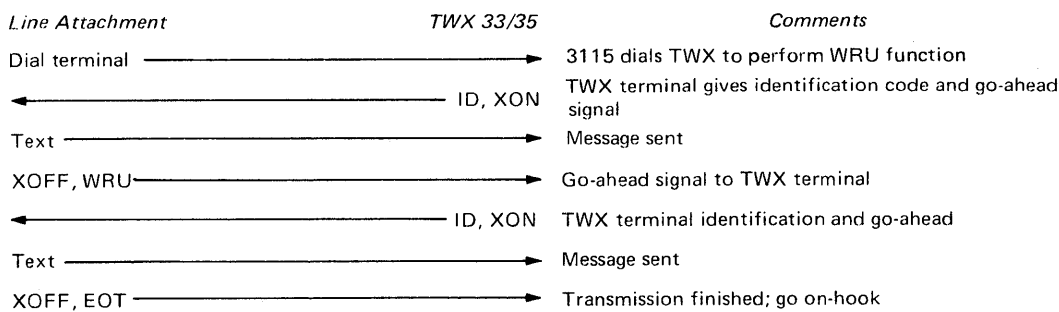
Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command performs no function except that channel end, device end and any other status conditions that may exist at that time are presented at initial selection.

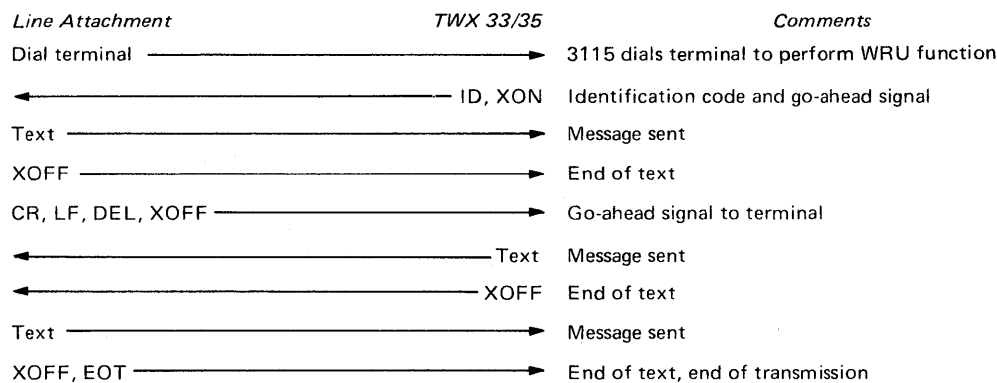
Line Control Sequences

The line control sequences for telegraph terminal control – type 2 are shown in Figure 112.

Keyboard Unattended, TWX Models 33 and 35



Keyboard Attended, TWX Models 33 and 35



Paper Tape Reader Operation

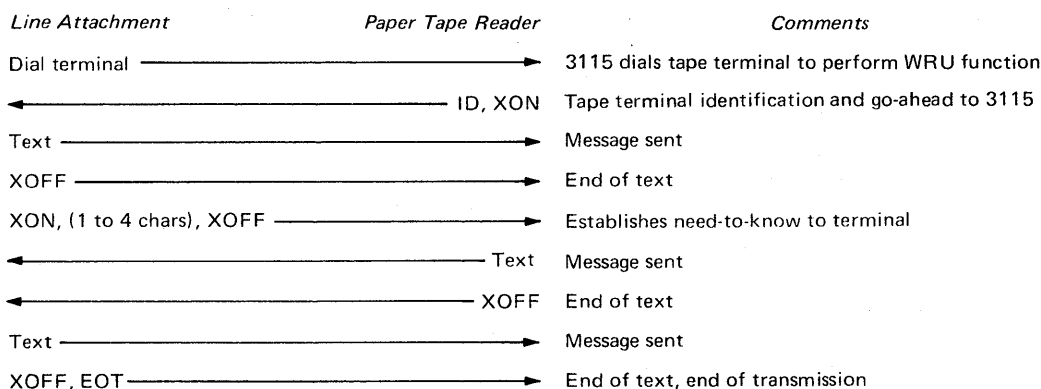


Figure 112. Line Control Sequences for Telegraph Terminal – Type 2 with Paper Tape Reader and TWX Models 33/35 [19591]

UNIT STATUS

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set if an inline test is running and the subchannel is busy. If a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction is given, condition code 1 is set in response.

Channel End and Device End (Bits 36 and 37)

Channel end and device end are always presented together when a command has been accepted or terminated. This status is presented upon acceptance of an 'enable' or 'disable' command. All other commands have this status presented on their termination or completion. When channel end and device end are set, it indicates that the subchannel (line attachment) is available for a new command.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit, when set, indicates that a command was terminated by an error or unusual condition. (The exact cause can be determined from the contents of sense byte 0.) Unit check is, typically, set in the following situations:

1. A timeout elapses during execution of a 'read' command.
2. A 'break' signal is detected during execution of a 'write' command.
3. During execution of a 'prepare' command, a start bit is detected but no stop bits.
4. A command is issued to a disabled line attachment.

For further information on the conditions which set unit check, see "Sense Information" in this section.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit, when set, has a specific meaning for each of the following commands:

1. For a 'read' command, unit exception is set when EOT (end of transmission) is received.
2. For an 'inhibit' command, unit exception is set when EOT is received.
3. For a 'dial' command, unit exception is set if the addressed line is receiving at the time the command is given.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

<i>Bit</i>	<i>Designation</i>
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when a command not assigned to telegraph terminal control – type 2 is given (such as a 'poll' command or a 'dial' command if there is no auto-call adapter). Command reject is also set when a 'break' command is given while read interruption is not specified in the 'set line mode' command.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit is set in the following situations:

1. A command other than 'enable', 'sense', 'set line mode', or 'dial' is addressed to a disabled line attachment.
2. The modem or the ACU is not operational.
3. During the execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command, the line attachment receives a steady space level for more than 16 bit times (the 'break' signal) from the remote terminal.
4. 'Data carrier detect' is found off during a read operation.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit, when set, indicates an error or malfunction in the ICA hardware.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set for a 'read' or 'inhibit' command when a space level is detected on the line at the time reserved for a stop bit (stop bit error). The stop bit time is monitored to ensure that the stop bit length is correct.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set, during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command, when data service could not be obtained in time from the main storage controller, causing a character to be lost.

Lost Data (Bit 6)

The lost data bit is set when a character is lost for reasons other than overrun. This may occur when a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction cuts off data transfer to main

storage at a time when at least one character has already been gated in from the line. Lost data is also set, during execution of a 'dial' command, when the ACU replies before all dial digits have been transmitted. Lost data is not set for a 'prepare' command.

Timeout Complete (Bit 7)

The timeout complete bit is set during a read operation if the 28-second timeout expires before data has been received. This cannot occur during execution of an 'inhibit' command. For a 'prepare' command, timeout complete is set if a valid start bit was found but no stop bit could be detected within 28 seconds.

World Trade Leased Telegraph Line Control

CHARACTERISTICS

World Trade leased telegraph line control provides the command set, line control characters, and transmission code required to operate World Trade terminals. The term "World Trade terminals" refers to various European teleprinters using a start/stop five-level code with two shifts (letters shift and figures shift) to transfer data over leased, point-to-point, single-current telegraph lines.

Line Control Characters

Four line control characters and sequences are used.

FIGS

FIGS is a shift character indicating upper case.

LTRS

LTRS is a shift character indicating lower case, and is also a motor start signal when transmitted to a teleprinter.

FIGS X

The FIGS X sequence is a response that ends a 'read' command in normal fashion (EOM/EOB function). The X is an identification number or character previously agreed upon between the subscribers and it must be a downshift character.

FIGS Y LTRS

The FIGS Y LTRS sequence is a response that terminates a 'read' command with unit exception (EOT function). The Y is an agreed identification and it must be a downshift character.

nnnn

The four n (X '06') character sequence will end a 'read' command normally (EOM function).

Transmission Code

The transmission code may be either the International Telegraph Alphabet Number 2 or the Figure-Protected Code ZSC3. Both codes use 5 data bits, one start bit and one elongated (1.5) stop bit, as follows:

Storage byte:	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Interpreted as:	--	--	(S)	1	2	3	4	5
Transmission code:	start,	1	2	3	4	5,	stop	

COMMANDS

Figure 113 shows the commands available for terminals operated by World Trade leased telegraph line control.

Hex	Command Code CCW Bits							Command	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
0D	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Break
0A	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Inhibit
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadhree')
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
2B	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Set line mode

Notes:

- Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
- For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo', and 'sadhree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 113. Commands for World Trade Leased Telegraph Line Control [10864A]

Read

The 'read' command causes data to be transferred from the addressed communication line to the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. To ensure that data is actually received on the line, a 28-second timeout is started when the command is given. If no data is received, the command ends with unit check set in the CSW and the timeout complete bit set in sense byte 0. If a character is received, a further 28-second timeout is started for each successive character and data transfer continues in ascending order of the main storage address.

As the characters are received, the start and stop bits are removed. If shift characters are received, they are inspected but do not enter main storage. If a change from upper to lower case, or vice versa, is detected, the shift bits for the following characters are set as indicated by the shift character. If FIGS is received, following characters have their shift bits set to 1 (for upper case); in the same way, LTRS causes shift bits to be reset to 0 (for lower case). The read operation continues until a FIGS X or FIGS Y or nnnn sequence is received. FIGS X is the EOM/EOB (end of message/end of block) signal, which has been assigned by agreement between the stations, and it causes channel end and device end to be presented for the 'read' command. FIGS Y is the EOT (end of transmission) signal which causes unit exception to be set with channel end and device end.

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred to the communication line from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31. Data transfer continues in ascending order of this address. The characters are provided with one start and 1.5 stop bits before they are transmitted. The shift bit of each character is inspected and if there is a change of shift from the preceding to the current character, the FIGS or LTRS character (as appropriate) is generated in the line attachment and transmitted ahead of the data character causing the shift change.

Most European teleprinters, when connected and supplied with power, are always ready to receive. However, some teleprinters do not run continuously, but use a self-generated timeout (generally between 10 and 30 seconds) to switch off their motors if no data is received. To start the remote teleprinter's motor, therefore, a 'write' command should generally begin by transmitting the LTRS character. Because some teleprinters cannot receive until their motors reach normal running speeds, a number of LTRS characters sufficient to cover 1.5 seconds (average) motor start time should follow, after which, message data may be transmitted. The 'write' command does not end with the transmission of any particular character or sequence, but continues until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. Then channel end and device end are presented for the 'write' command.

If the 'write' command is addressed to a line that is receiving data, the command ends with unit exception set. If a 'write' command runs into an echo check, the command ends with unit check set in the CSW and the data check bit set in sense byte 0.

Note: FIGS and LTRS characters may be transmitted from main storage to the remote teleprinter, but they are not recognized as shift characters by the line attachment. They are treated as normal data instead. This means that the shift bits of FIGS and LTRS are inspected and if they differ from those of preceding characters, two shift characters are transmitted (one from the line attachment, the other from storage).

Break

The 'break' command is used to stop transmission from a remote teleprinter by means of a continuous space level that is transmitted by the line attachment. The duration of the 'break' signal is determined by the number of characters (of any type) that are fetched from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 and ascending locations. The characters are used as timing elements, they are not transmitted. At least five characters must be specified in the length count. Channel end and device end are presented for the 'break' command when the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is zero.

Note: The read interruption must have been set by a 'set line mode' command before the 'break' command is given, otherwise the 'break' command is rejected.

Inhibit

The 'inhibit' command is similar to a 'read' command, except that no 28-second timeouts are started between received characters. The 'inhibit' command may be used whenever it is necessary for the line attachment to wait an unlimited amount of time between characters received.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command allows the program to check the addressed line for meaningful signals, and thus to determine if a 'read' command should be given. If a valid start bit is found and a complete character including a stop bit is then received, the 'prepare' command ends in the normal way with the presentation of channel end and device end. This character is lost and is not transferred to main storage. If the start bit was found but no stop bit was found at stop bit time, a 28-second timeout is started. If the timeout elapses with no stop bit found, unit check is set in the CSW and the timeout complete bit is set in sense byte 0.

Control No-Op

The 'control no-op' command causes no action in the line attachment. Channel end, device end, and any other status conditions that may exist are presented at initial selection.

Sense

The 'sense' command causes one byte of sense information to be transferred from the line attachment to main storage for inspection. The 'sense' command may be given at any time but should always be used when unit check is set in the CSW, as the information in the sense byte will show the reason for unit check being set (see "Sense Information" in this section).

Enable

The 'enable' command turns on the line attachment and is a prerequisite for transmit and receive operations. The 'enable' command sets the attachment to downshift mode.

Disable

The 'disable' command turns off the line attachment. In the disabled state, all commands except 'enable', 'sense', and 'set line mode' are terminated with unit check set in the CSW and intervention required set in sense byte 0.

Set Line Mode

Up to three bytes of mode-setting information can be specified, by the 'set line mode' command, for World Trade leased telegraph line control.

Mode Byte 1: Bit 4 (08 hex) must be set, because read interruption is standard to allow the 'break' command to be issued. The other bits must be zeros.

Mode Byte 2: The "X" identifier in the EOM ending sequence can be modified by specifying any lower case character in this byte. The basic X identifier is character G (0B hex).

Mode Byte 3: The "Y" identifier in the EOT ending sequence can be modified by specifying any lower case character (except the X identifier) in this byte. The basic Y identifier is character H (05 hex).

UNIT STATUS

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier (not used)
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set if an inline test is running and the subchannel is busy. If a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction is given, condition code 1 is set in response.

Channel End and Device End (Bits 36 and 37)

Channel end and device end are always set together. They indicate that the line attachment is free to accept another command. If not accompanied by other status bits, the setting of channel end and device end means that the previous command ended normally.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

The unit check bit can be set for several errors or unusual conditions which cause command termination. Unit check is set, for example, if a timeout elapses when no data has been received; when a 'break' signal is received; or if an echo check occurs. For further details of the conditions that can set unit check, see "Sense Information" in this section.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when the character sequence FIGS Y (indicating EOT) is received during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command or when a 'write' command attempts to transmit data while characters are being received on the addressed line.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following assignments:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set when an unassigned command, for example, a 'poll' command is given. Command reject is also set when a 'break' command is given when read interruption has not been specified by a 'set line mode' command.

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

Intervention required is set for commands, other than 'enable' or 'set line mode', that are given to a disabled line attachment.

Bus Out Check (Bit 2)

The bus out check bit is not used.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit, when set, indicates a hardware error within the line attachment.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is set, during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command, when a space level is received instead of a stop bit. Data check is also set when an echo check occurs during a write operation.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The overrun bit is set if a character is lost during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command. This can happen when a data transfer to main storage fails.

Lost Data (Bit 6)

The lost data bit is set when characters are lost for reasons other than overrun. Characters are lost if the line receives at least one character before or at the time a 'read' command is accepted; or when a 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instruction prevents a received character from being transferred to main storage. Characters are also lost when, during execution of a 'read' or 'inhibit' command, the byte count in the CCW has been reduced to zero. Lost data cannot be set during execution of a 'prepare' command.

Timeout Complete (Bit 7)

The timeout complete bit is set when 28 seconds have elapsed before the first or any subsequent character has been received during a 'read' command. This occurs also when, during execution of a 'prepare' command, a valid start bit is detected but no stop bit.

Binary Synchronous Communication Control

CHARACTERISTICS

The binary synchronous communication (BSC) line control procedure comprises the command set, the line control characters and sequences required to communicate with any other binary synchronous terminal or processor attachment. This allows telecommunication with other System/360 or System/370 machines provided these are equipped as required.

Line Control Characters

SOH and STX

SOH (start of heading) and STX (start of text) both cause the same action in receive as well as transmit operations: they set the line attachment to text mode. In text mode, block check character accumulation is started and subsequent SOH or STX characters are treated as data (no control function).

ETX and ETB

ETX (end of text) and ETB (end of transmittal block) both cause the same action in transmit and receive modes: they end text mode and the command (unless transparent mode is set). If error index byte mode was specified (by a 'set mode' command), reception of ETX or ETB causes an error index byte to be stored next to ETX or ETB.

ENQ (Inquiry)

ENQ ends a 'read' command but has no effect on a 'write' command. When used during a 'poll' command, ENQ causes a line turnaround (a change from transmit to receive mode).

ACK (Positive Acknowledgement)

ACK ends a 'read' command and causes channel end and device end to be set. The line attachment remains in receive mode. ACK has no effect on a 'write' command.

NAK (Negative Acknowledgement)

NAK ends a 'read' command and causes channel end and device end to be set. The line attachment remains in receive mode. NAK has no effect on a 'write' command.

EOT (End of Transmission)

EOT ends a 'read' command (if received while the line attachment is not in text mode) but has no effect on a 'write' command.

ITB (Intermediate Text Block)

The ITB character does not end a 'read' or 'write' command but resets block check character accumulation, causing the accumulated value to be transmitted (during a 'write'

command) or an error index byte to be stored (during a 'read' command if error index byte mode was specified). Transmission or reception then continues with new block check character accumulation.

DLE (Data Link Escape)

The DLE character has no function when transmitted or received alone. If specific characters immediately follow DLE, a sequence with control functions is recognized. For example, DLE coupled with 70 (hex) is the ACK-0 reply; DLE coupled with 61 (hex) is the ACK-1 reply; DLE with 7F (hex) is the WACK (wait before transmit) reply. All of these sequences terminate a 'read' command. Other sequences such as DLE/STX set transparent mode. (For details, see the descriptions of individual commands in this section.)

SYN (Synchronization)

The SYN character is used ahead of a transmission and is inserted into the message stream at one-second intervals to establish and maintain synchronization.

Note: For a complete listing of all applicable control characters, see "Appendix A. ICA Code Tables".

Line Transmission Code

The line transmission code used for binary synchronous communication is either EBCDIC or ASCII (ISO*/CCITT** No 5).

Storage byte: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
ASCII relation: - 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

When ASCII characters are transmitted, the bit position shown as a dash (this bit is off while in storage) is replaced by an appropriate parity bit which is transmitted over the line. When ASCII characters are received, the parity bit is stripped off and its bit position is stored as zero. Regardless of the code used, the low-order bit (bit 7 in EBCDIC, bit 1 in ASCII) is always transmitted first.

COMMANDS

Figure 114 shows the commands available for binary synchronous communication control.

Read

Whenever the binary synchronous line attachment is enabled and is not executing a write-type command, it monitors the line for activity. The line attachment decodes

* International Organization for Standardization.

** Comité Consultatif International Téléphonique et Télégraphique

Hex	Command Code								Command
	CCW Bits								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
02	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Read
01	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Write
06	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	Prepare
27	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	Enable
2F	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	Disable
09	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Poll
1E	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	Address prepare
29	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Dial
2B	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Set line mode
23	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	Set mode
04	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Sense
03	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Control no-op
13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	No-op ('sadzero')
17	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	No-op ('sadone')
1B	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	No-op ('sadtwo')
1F	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	No-op ('sadthree')

Notes:

1. Bits 0 and 1 are "don't care" bits.
2. For compatibility purposes, the 'sadzero', 'sadone', 'sadtwo' and 'sadthree' commands (hex 13, 17, 1B, and 1F) are accepted and treated as no-operations.

Figure 114. BSC Commands [10865A]

the last eight bits received. If these eight bits do not represent a SYN character, monitoring continues. If a SYN character is decoded, the next eight bits are gated in and are subsequently checked for their identity with a SYN character. If the second byte thus received is a SYN character, then the line attachment has established character phase, which is a prerequisite for read operations.

When a 'read' command is given, the line attachment may or may not have character phase. If character phase has already been established, execution of the 'read' command progresses. However, if more than one non-SYN character comes in before the 'read' command is given, the command ends with unit check and the lost data bit is set in the sense byte.

The 'read' command causes a three-second timeout to be started. If character phase cannot be established before three seconds have elapsed, the command ends with unit check set and the timeout complete bit is set in the sense byte.

If character phase can be established in time, the line attachment checks whether a control character is received within three seconds after reception of a SYN character. If a control character (other than SYN) cannot be found in time, the command ends with unit check set and the timeout complete bit set in the sense byte.

If character phase can be established and there is no timeout, further actions within the line attachment depend on the data that is actually received, as described in the following text.

1. If a DLE acknowledgement sequence, NAK, or ENQ is received, the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end set. If an EOT is received, unit exception is also set.
2. If an SOH or STX character is received, the line attachment sets text mode. In text mode, further SOH or STX characters are no longer recognized as control characters, but are treated as text. In addition, the block check character accumulation begins. The SYN characters (which are included in the data stream at one-second intervals) are not transferred to main storage but are used to maintain character phase. If characters are received while the line attachment is in text mode, a SYN non-SYN sequence must be received before three seconds have elapsed. This is to prevent a situation in which the line attachment has lost character synchronization.

As text reception continues, each character received updates the block check character accumulation. Being in text mode, the line attachment is sensitive to the following ending characters:

- a. If ETX or ETB is received, the line attachment leaves text mode. Block check character accumulation stops and the attachment awaits the BCC characters from the remote station. Upon reception of these characters (2 bytes), they are compared with the value accumulated locally. Depending on the line code and the checking method used, the block check characters can be two CRC bytes, or one LRC byte. If the result is equal, channel end and device end are presented for the 'read' command. If the result shows not equal, unit check is also presented and the data check bit is set in the sense byte. If EIB mode was specified by a 'set mode' or 'set line mode' command, an error index byte is stored next to the ETX or ETB character.
- b. If ENQ is received, the line attachment leaves text mode but does not compare BCC characters. Channel end and device end are presented for the 'read' command.

The foregoing description covers the basic aspects of a 'read' command. There are three variations, however, which alter the behavior of the line attachment during execution of a 'read' command.

1. If an ITB character is received, the attachment stops block check character accumulation, waits for the BCCs from the remote station, and compares these with the accumulated value without ending the read command. Reading continues with the next block for which BCC accumulation is started from an initial value. If the BCC comparison gives an unequal result, data check is set in the sense byte, but this data check is presented to the program only at the end of the read operation.

If error index byte (EIB) mode was specified by a 'set mode' or 'set line mode' command, reception of an ITB

character causes the same BCC comparison but, in addition, an error index byte is stored next to every ITB. This error index byte may contain all zeros or have bit 4 (data check) and/or bit 5 (overrun) turned on, depending on the type of error case. In this manner, each data block will have its own ITB character (and its own error index byte, if EIB mode is in effect). The 'read' command ends when ETX, or ETB is received. If EIB mode was specified, an error index byte is stored next to the ending character. At that time unit check is set in the status (and data check or overrun in the sense byte) if such errors occurred.

2. If transparent text mode was specified via the 'set line mode' command and the DLE/STX sequence is received, the line attachment sets transparent mode. In transparent mode, the attachment is *insensitive* to all control characters; which means that all possible codes are treated as text. However, in transparent mode the attachment is sensitive to the escape sequences which all start with the DLE character. To differentiate between DLE as text data and a DLE-escape sequence, the line attachment examines each DLE and the character that immediately follows it. The action depends on the character that follows DLE. Four actions are possible:
 - a. If DLE is followed by another DLE, the first DLE is ignored and the second DLE, inserted by the transmitting station, is transferred to main storage. Transparent reading continues.
 - b. If a SYN character follows DLE, the DLE and SYN characters are ignored. The three-second timeout is restarted and transparent reading continues. SYN characters which do not follow DLE characters are recognized as data.
 - c. If an ITB character follows DLE, the line attachment leaves transparent text mode and continues reading. The BCC is compared and the error index byte is stored (if EIB mode was specified). If thereafter DLE/STX is received again, the line attachment returns to transparent mode.
 - d. If an ETB or ETX character follows DLE, the 'read' command ends with channel end and device end set. This terminates transparent text mode. ETB or ETX characters which do not follow a DLE character are treated as data.
3. During execution of a 'read' command, the line attachment may not receive a character that sets text mode (or transparent text mode). When not in text mode, the line attachment is sensitive not only to the control characters that set text mode or end the command but also to all DLE-sequences that consist of DLE followed by any of the characters in column 3 of the ASCII code table (or columns 6 and 7 in the EBCDIC table). Most of these sequences have no particular assignment but some have been agreed upon as a programming convention in IBM support programs

(access methods); for example, ACK-0, ACK-1, WACK (wait before transmit), RVI (reverse interruption), DLE/EOT (switched line disconnect signal), and so on. However, all of these assignments concern the program only. For example, ACK-0, ACK-1 are positive acknowledgements with a built-in count that alternates 0, 1, 0, 1 so that the program can discover that an acknowledgement is missing. Reverse interruption is a request from the remote station asking the program to stop transmitting and issue a 'read' command so that a message can be put through. The logical meanings of these DLE sequences are ignored by the line attachment.

When not in text mode, the line attachment recognizes any of the DLE column 3 sequences as a signal to terminate the command with channel end and device end.

Write

The 'write' command causes data to be transferred from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 to the line attachment, for transmission to the remote terminal. When the 'write' command is given, the line attachment stops its continuous search for synchronization unless it is in character phase. If character phase is already established (which is an exceptional condition), the 'write' command ends with unit exception. Unit exception in response to a 'write' command indicates that a 'read' command should be issued because of incoming data (some data may already have been lost). If character phase has not been established at the time when a 'write' command is given (which is the normal case), the line attachment transmits a pad character. If the clock is in the modem, the pad character is followed by two SYN characters. If the clock is in the line attachment (internal clock), the pad character is followed by two bit-synchronization characters, hex '55', and two SYN characters.

The SYN characters are immediately followed by the data from main storage. The data is interspersed with single SYN characters at one-second intervals. The detailed actions within the line attachment depend on the data transmitted, as described in the following text.

1. If control characters such as ENQ, NAK, or EOT or character sequences such as ACK-0, ACK-1, WACK or RVI are transmitted, no action occurs and the 'write' command does not end. (The receiving station, however, does terminate the corresponding 'read' command.)
2. If the SOH or STX character is transmitted, the line attachment sets text mode, which means that BCC accumulation is reset and begins from an initial value. Further SOH or STX characters are not treated as control characters, but as ordinary text data.
3. If an ETX or ETB character is transmitted, the line attachment leaves text mode and transmits the accumulated BCC characters. Channel end and device end are then presented for the 'write' command.

The foregoing text describes a basic 'write' operation. If,

however, EIB mode or transparent text mode have been specified, the line attachment is sensitive to certain control characters as follows:

1. If an ITB character is transmitted, the line attachment next transmits the BCC value accumulated up to this point. This value allows the receiving station to compare (and to store the appropriate error index byte if EIB mode has been specified). Execution of the 'write' command continues, with a new BCC accumulation.
2. If the character sequence DLE/STX is transmitted, the line attachment sets transparent text mode if this mode was specified by a 'set line mode' command. Transparent text mode has the following consequences:
 - a. Whenever a DLE character is transmitted, the line attachment generates a second DLE which it sends out following the first DLE. This allows the receiving station to differentiate between a DLE control sequence and a DLE character which is treated as data.
 - b. If a SYN character is fetched from main storage and transmitted, no action occurs. However, the automatically inserted SYN characters are each preceded by a DLE. This allows the receiving station to differentiate between SYN characters that are data and SYN characters that are inserted for synchronization purposes only.
 - c. If the sequence DLE/ETX or DLE/ETB is transmitted, the sequence is not recognized because any DLE is automatically doubled by insertion of another DLE, thus altering the sequence to DLE/DLE ETX or DLE/DLE ETB which has no effect. For this reason, a 'write' command in transparent mode continues until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. Another 'write' command must then be given within three seconds for the explicit purpose of sending just DLE/ETX. The second 'write' command should be chained to the first one. The line attachment is in the transparent wait state, in which it rejects all commands except 'write' (and 'control no-op'). In this second 'write' command, the sequence DLE/ETX is not altered by the extra DLE and is therefore understood by the remote station.
 - d. If DLE/ITB is to be transmitted, this sequence must also be sent by a separate 'write' command. DLE/ITB ends transparency and must be followed by transparent or non-transparent text, or by ETX.

Prepare

The 'prepare' command provides a means of alerting the program to the fact that character phase has been obtained at the addressed communication line. Since character phase is a prerequisite for a successful read operation, the 'prepare' command may be chained to a 'read' command (which will then be successful).

When the 'prepare' command is given, the attempts to obtain character phase are monitored. If character phase has already been established, channel end and device end are presented in the initial status for the 'prepare' command, otherwise this status is given when character phase is actually obtained. No data transfer occurs and no timeouts are associated with the 'prepare' command. The first data byte of the incoming message is read into storage by the next 'read' command.

Enable

The 'enable' command puts the line attachment into the operational state. If the line attachment is not enabled, all commands (except 'enable', 'dial', and 'set line mode') are rejected with unit check set in the CSW and the command reject bit set in the sense byte. If the 'enable' command is issued to a privately-owned or leased line, channel end and device end are presented when the line attachment detects the 'data set ready' signal being raised by the modem. If 'data set ready' is not detected within one second of the line attachment raising the 'data terminal ready' signal, the 'enable' command ends with unit check set and the intervention required bit is set in the sense byte. If the 'enable' command is given to a switched line, the line attachment is conditioned to answer automatically an incoming call, assuming the modem has auto-answer capability. Channel end and device end are then presented when an incoming call is received. No timeout is associated with the 'enable' command.

Disable

The 'disable' command turns off the addressed line attachment. The disabled line attachment can no longer search for character phase, execute any command (except 'enable', 'dial', 'sense', or 'set line mode'), or react to an incoming call. If the 'disable' command is given to a private or leased line, channel end and device end are indicated after one second. If given to a switched line, the command causes the modem to disconnect. A 32-second timeout (for Swedish or UK modems) or a one-second timeout (for all other modems) is started and if the modem has not disconnected before the timeout expires, the 'disable' command ends with unit check set and the timeout complete bit set in the sense byte.

Poll

The 'poll' command provides a means of requesting several remote stations, one after the other, to transmit data to the line attachment. The command is normally used in a multipoint network (where several satellite stations are connected to the same receive line) but it can also be used in a point-to-point installation.

When the 'poll' command is given, the attachment transmits the pad character followed by the appropriate number of SYN characters. The SYN characters are

followed by data that is fetched from the main storage location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 and ascending addresses. This data usually consists of a station address and ends with the ENQ character. Up to this point there is no difference between the 'poll' command and a normal 'write' command.

As data is being transmitted, however, the line attachment attempts to detect the ENQ character in the outgoing data stream. When the line attachment detects ENQ, the index character is fetched from storage but not transmitted; it is retained in the line attachment. The line attachment next goes into receive mode *without* ending the 'poll' command. A three-second timeout is started and the search for character phase begins. Further actions by the line attachment depend on the state of the remote station, as described in the following text.

Note: The 'poll' command must end with an EOT as the last character in the poll list.

Unsuccessful Poll: If the remote station is inactive, character phase cannot be obtained. The three-second timeout elapses in the line attachment, causing the 'poll' command to end with channel end, device end, and status modifier bits set. If the 'poll' command is chained, the next command is skipped (due to the status modifier being set) and the next sequential command after the skipped command (which is usually a 'read') is terminated with unit check set and the timeout complete bit set in the sense byte. The index byte (previously fetched) is returned to main storage to an address specified by the 'read' command.

Remote Station Has Nothing to Send: If the remote station is transmitting SYN characters, the line attachment obtains character phase before the timeout elapses. When character phase is obtained, the line attachment checks whether the first non-SYN character received is the EOT character. If the first non-SYN character *is* EOT, the line attachment goes back to transmit mode because the remote station has nothing to send. The next polling data is then fetched from main storage and, when the ENQ character is detected, the line attachment fetches the next index byte and turns around to receive mode, as before.

Successful Poll: If character phase is obtained and the first non-SYN character is *not* EOT, the 'poll' command ends with channel end, device end and status modifier bits set. If chaining is in progress, the status modifier causes the next sequential command to be skipped and the next sequential command after the skipped command is executed. Since this command is usually a 'read', the line attachment then reads in the message from the remote station. Before the first character is transferred to main storage, however, the line attachment returns the index byte (previously fetched) to main storage as an identifier for the message that

follows, so that the program knows which remote station has responded.

Note: Polling can also be performed by alternate 'write' and 'read' commands that are chained appropriately.

Address Prepare

The 'address prepare' command allows the program to set up the line attachment to monitor the receive line for its own polling or selection address. This function is required when the line attachment is to operate as a tributary station.

When the 'address prepare' command is given, the line attachment is set to address prepare control mode. It attempts to establish character phase and starts a three-second timeout, unless character phase has already been established. Further actions within the line attachment depend on the activity on the receive line, as described in the following text.

1. If the three-second timeout expires, the line attachment enters "adprep monitor mode"* and starts a new three-second timeout. The line attachment remains in adprep monitor mode until it receives the sequence SYN, SYN, EOT, pad character. This is a valid EOT sequence and sets the line attachment to "adprep control" mode which is the only state in which it can recognize poll or selection addresses. The 'address prepare' command can be terminated only when a poll or selection address is recognized.
2. If character phase is already established when the 'address prepare' command is given, the line attachment enters adprep monitor mode, starts a three-second timeout and waits for the SYN, SYN, EOT, pad character sequence. When this sequence is received, another three-second timeout is started, because if there is any polling going on, the address should follow EOT before three seconds have elapsed.
3. If character phase is established and a control character such as SOH or STX is received, the line attachment sets adprep monitor mode and text mode but does not transfer data to main storage. The line attachment is capable of looking for its address only after it has recognized the EOT character because this sets adprep control mode.
4. If character phase is established the line is in address prepare control mode, and one of the tributary station addresses of the line attachment is recognized, further

* In adprep monitor mode, the line attachment is conditioned to check for an EOT character which is *not* part of text. Such an EOT must be preceded by two SYN characters and followed by a pad character. The pad character serves as a "filler" and ensures that the last bit of the EOT character is safely recognized. The EOT must be isolated in this way to be recognized as valid.

action depends on the type of address received. The line attachment has a selection address and a polling address.

5. If the selection address has been recognized, the 'address prepare' command ends with channel end and device end. This allows chaining to a 'read' command that will read the address into main storage.
6. If the polling address is recognized, the 'address prepare' command ends with channel end, device end and status modifier. This allows chaining to the command after the next sequential command, which should be a 'read' that transfers the polling address to main storage.

Note: When polled, the line attachment is requested to transmit to the remote station (the control station). When selected, the line attachment is requested to receive from the control station.

Dial

The 'dial' command causes the line attachment to be enabled and a data transfer from main storage to the automatic calling unit is performed. If there is no ACU installed, the 'dial' command is rejected and the line attachment is not enabled.

The data is transferred from the location specified in CCW bits 8 to 31 and ascending locations until the count in CCW bits 48 to 63 is reduced to zero. In the data thus transferred, only bits 4 to 7 of each byte are actually placed on the interface (the digit lines) of the calling unit.

The program is responsible for sending to the ACU only:

1. Decimal values from 0 to 9 as dial digits.
2. The end of number (EON, or separator) character, if this character is required by the ACU.

This is because the line attachment does not check the validity of data sent to the ACU. The program is also responsible for sending the *correct number* of dial digits or, if applicable to the ACU, the EON character after the last dial digit.

Whether or not EON is used depends on the type of ACU connected. Some ACUs recognize EON, some do not, and some can be set either to recognize, or not recognize, EON. ACUs which recognize EON may use the character as a signal that an answer may be expected from the remote station, or as a signal that dialing is complete (avoiding a timeout).

The dial digits are presented to the ACU at a rate set by the ACU. If the ACU timeout elapses before connection is established, the 'dial' command ends with unit check, and the timeout complete bit is set in the sense byte. If the ACU has its power indicator off, the 'dial' command ends with unit check in the initial status and intervention required is indicated in the sense byte.

Note: The line must be disabled before the 'dial' command is given, otherwise the command is rejected.

Set Line Mode

The 'set line mode' command allows the line attachment to be adjusted to suit the characteristics of the modem, the line, and the remote stations with which it is to operate. When the command is given, up to three bytes of mode-setting information are transferred from main storage to the line attachment. The characteristics which can be specified by each mode-setting byte are described in the following text.

Mode Byte 1: Mode byte 1 allows speed selection. The bit designations and interpretations are shown in the following tables.

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used) [0]
1	(Not used) [0]
2	(Not used) [0]
3	Speed select
4	Speed select
5	(Not used) [0]
6	(Not used) [0]
7	(Not used) [0]

Bits 3 and 4 allow speed selection for either an external clock or an internal clock as follows:

1. An *external clock* is a clock incorporated in an external modem (that is, in a modem which is not under the CPU covers). The IBM 3872, 3874 and 3875 Modems are examples of external modems. The dual speed feature of such modems allows a choice between two operating speeds, such as 1200/2400, 2400/4800, 3600/7200, or 4800/9600 bits per second. If the external modem can operate at only one speed, the setting of bits 3 and 4 has no effect. If the modem has a dual speed feature, bits 3 and 4 are used as follows:

Bit 3	Bit 4	Meaning
(Not used)	0	Lower speed
(Not used)	1	Higher speed (default)

2. An *internal clock* is a clock incorporated in the integrated communications attachment under the covers of the CPU. The internal clock which can be installed in the Model 115's ICA gives a choice of two speeds, 600 or 1200 bits per second. For the internal clock, bits 3 and 4 are used as follows:

Bit 3	Bit 4	Meaning
0	1	1200 bits per second (default)
1	0	600 bits per second

If no 'set line mode' command is given, any internal or external modem clock runs at its higher speed.

Mode Byte 2: Mode byte 2 allows selection of various line and modem properties, as well as special modes. The bits in mode byte 2 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Continuous request to send
1	Switched network
2	New sync
3	Swedish or UK modem
4	EIB mode
5	Transparent mode
6	ASCII
7	Not used (0)

Continuous Request to Send (Bit 0). When the continuous request to send bit is set, the request to send line to the modem is permanently on. This mode is used for lines having duplex capability (that is, four-wire lines) in the following types of installations:

- Point-to-point (leased line)
- Multipoint, if ICA is the control station.

The mode cannot be used in the following types of installations:

- Two-wire point-to-point (leased or switched line)
- Four-wire multipoint, if ICA is a tributary station.

The continuous request to send mode avoids turnaround delays and improves the performance of the teleprocessing equipment. If bit 0 is off, the request to send line is turned on only when a 'write' or 'poll' command is given.

Switched Network (Bit 1) and New Sync (Bit 2). Bits 1 and 2 together can represent several code combinations:

Bit 1	Bit 2	
0	0	= Leased line without new sync
0	1	= Leased line with new sync
1	0	= Switched line

New sync is a special method of fast synchronization that allows faster turnaround recovery during polling operations in a multipoint network. New sync is recommended for use with the IBM 3872 Modem, IBM 3874 Modem, IBM 3875 Modem, and the Western Electric WE 201 B3 Modem. New sync is mandatory when the IBM 4872 Modem is attached. The new sync bit is only effective on a modem that has the new sync feature installed.

Note: If the modem is equipped with an Automatic Call Originate feature, bit 1 (switched network) is forced on regardless of its value in the 'set line mode' command.

Swedish or UK Modem (Bit 3). Swedish PTT Modems, Type GH2002A, and British General Post Office Datel 1-5 modems use the "connect data set to line" procedure on switched networks and this procedure is employed when bit 3 is set. In addition, a 32-second timeout is used for disconnection. If bit 3 is off, the data terminal ready procedure is used in establishing the line connection and a one-second timeout is used for disconnection.

EIB Mode (Bit 4): This mode provides for the use of the

ITB character as an indication of the end of an intermediate block of characters. When the EIB mode bit is set, an error index byte is generated and stored next to every ITB character that is received. The error index byte is stored next to the ending character (ETX or ETB) of a received message. The error index byte may contain all zeros or may indicate the two types of error that can occur during receive operations. These are data check (unequal BCC compare) which sets bit 4, and overrun (service too late) which sets bit 5.

Transparent Mode (Bit 5). When the transparent mode bit is set, the line attachment becomes sensitive to the DLE sequences that start and stop transparent text mode. This means that any type of information (such as packed decimal data, or program code) can be transmitted or received because all code combinations are treated as text data.

ASCII (Bit 6). When the ASCII bit is set, the line attachment treats all line code received as ASCII, and ASCII is transmitted during write operations. If bit 6 is off, EBCDIC is used.

Note: If no 'set line mode' command is given, the following default values are assumed for mode byte 2:

- Not continuous request to send
- Leased line
- Not new sync
- Not Swedish or UK modem
- Not transparent mode
- EBCDIC.

Mode Byte 3: Mode byte 3 specifies the tributary station address. Any EBCDIC or ASCII character (except SOH, STX, ETX, ETB, EOT, ENQ, DLE, NAK, SYN, or ITB) can be used to specify the address. The address-specifying character is in hexadecimal notation and bit 2 of the address chosen must be off. Upon detecting its address on the line, the ICA distinguishes between polling and selection by the state of bit 2. When bit 2 is on, selection is indicated; when bit 2 is off, polling is indicated.

The following table shows, as an example, how mode byte 3 would represent station address "B".

Bit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Binary Value	8	4	2	1	8	4	2	1
Character B = 'C2'	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0

If the same station is addressed, but for selection, the character S (hex E2) must be used (bit 2 set).

Note: It is the responsibility of the operating system to specify the mode in accordance with the actual environment. If, for example, the operating system specifies switched network although a leased line is used, no error indication is given.

Set Mode

The 'set mode' command allows the program to specify

whether or not the line attachment is to operate in EIB mode. The command is provided for compatibility reasons because programs written for an IBM 2703 Transmission Control do not use a 'set line mode' command, only a 'set mode' command.

One byte is used for specifying EIB mode; the bits have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	(Not used)
1	EIB mode (1)
2	(Not used)
3	(Not used)
4	(Not used)
5	(Not used)
6	(Not used)
7	(Not used)

Sense

The 'sense' command causes one byte of sense information to be transferred to the main storage location specified in bits 8 to 31 of the CCW. The contents of the sense byte are described in "Sense Information" in this section.

UNIT STATUS

The unit status is recorded in bits 32 to 39 of the CSW. The bits are assigned as follows:

Bit	Designation
32	Attention (not used)
33	Status modifier
34	Control unit end (not used)
35	Busy
36	Channel end
37	Device end
38	Unit check
39	Unit exception.

Status Modifier (Bit 33)

The status modifier bit is set during polling operations in specific cases to allow chaining to the command after the next sequential command. If a 'poll' command has progressed to the point where the polling data has been sent out and the line attachment is in receive mode, the status modifier is set if the first character received after the SYN characters is not the EOT character. If the line attachment operates as a tributary station, the status modifier is set when the polling address (not the selection address) is detected during execution of an 'address prepare' command.

Busy (Bit 35)

The busy bit is set if an inline test is running and the subchannel is busy. If a 'start I/O' or 'test I/O' instruction is given, condition code 1 is set in response.

Channel End and Device End (Bits 36 and 37)

The channel end and device end bits are always presented together when a command has ended (that is, when the subchannel is free). For some commands, the presentation of channel end and device end is in itself an indication that a specific event has occurred. For example, when channel end and device end are presented for the 'prepare' command, this indicates that character phase has been established. For an 'address prepare' command, this status indicates that the selection address has been detected.

Unit Check (Bit 38)

Unit check is a summary indication which can be set by several different errors or unusual conditions. For example, if a disabled line attachment is addressed or if a timeout has elapsed, unit check is set. For more detailed information on the conditions which set unit check, see "Sense Information" in this section.

Unit Exception (Bit 39)

The unit exception bit is set when certain specific conditions occur during the execution of a command. These conditions, which are described in the following list, are unique for each command.

1. If a 'write' command is given when character phase is already being established, unit exception is set because a transmission from the remote station has started or is in progress. The 'write' command is not executed but is terminated immediately. The same applies to the 'poll' command under the same circumstances.
2. If the EOT character is recognized during execution of a 'read' command, the command is terminated with unit exception set.
3. For all other commands, unit exception is set whenever such commands are terminated by 'halt I/O' or 'halt device' instructions before any action could occur.

SENSE INFORMATION

One byte of sense information is available, which can be transferred to main storage via a 'sense' command. A 'sense' command should be given whenever unit check is indicated. The bits in sense byte 0 have the following meanings assigned:

Bit	Designation
0	Command reject
1	Intervention required
2	Bus out check (not used)
3	Equipment check
4	Data check
5	Overrun
6	Lost data
7	Timeout complete

Command Reject (Bit 0)

The command reject bit is set during command initiation if an invalid command is given to a line attachment or if the line is in a condition in which the command cannot be executed. The command is terminated immediately with only unit check set in the CSW. The following conditions cause command rejection:

1. Bit positions 2 to 7 of the command code in the CCW do not match bit positions 2 to 7 of any of the valid commands.
2. A 'break' or 'inhibit' command is given to a synchronous line.
3. A 'read', 'autopoll', 'write', 'address prepare', or 'prepare' command is given to a synchronous line that has not been enabled.
4. A command other than a 'write', 'sense' or 'control no-op' has been given to a synchronous line while in the transparent wait condition (transparency feature must be installed).
5. A 'dial' command is given but no ACU is installed.
6. The 'data terminal ready' signal is detected when a 'dial' command is initiated (that is, the addressed line is not in the disabled state when the 'dial' command is initiated).

Intervention Required (Bit 1)

The intervention required bit, when set, normally causes immediate termination of the current command, and channel end, device end, and unit check are set in the CSW when stored at I/O interruption. The following conditions cause intervention required to be set:

1. The 'data set ready' signal is inactive at command initiation of a 'read', 'prepare', 'address prepare', 'write' or 'autopoll' command.
2. The 'data set ready' signal is inactive during execution of a 'read', 'prepare', 'address prepare' or 'autopoll' command.
3. An 'enable' command is given to an already enabled line ('data terminal ready' signal active), but the 'data set ready' signal is not active.
4. The 'clear to send' signal has not been activated by the modem before the three-second timeout ends during 'write' command initiation, 'autopoll' command initiation, or an autopoll read to autopoll write turnaround.
5. The 'clear to send' signal is inactive during execution of a 'write' command or (in the autopoll write state) during execution of an 'autopoll' command.
6. In two-wire operations (not continuous request to send), the 'clear to send' signal is not de-activated by the modem before the one-second timeout elapses either at 'write' command termination or at 'autopoll' write-to-read turnaround.
7. A character underrun condition is detected during a 'write' command or an 'autopoll' command in the

autopoll write state. Intervention required is set together with the overrun bit. The command continues to its normal end.

8. In modem-clocked operation, a clock check has been presented (while the 'data set ready' signal was still present) during the execution of a 'write' command or 'autopoll' command in the autopoll write state.
9. The ACU's power indicator signal was inactive at 'dial' command initiation or has become inactive during execution of a 'dial' command.
10. The 'data line occupied' signal is active when a 'dial' command is initiated.
11. The 'data set ready' signal is not activated by the modem within one second after the 'data terminal ready' signal was presented to the modem during execution of an 'enable' command on a leased line configuration.
12. The ACU does not indicate either 'present next digit' or 'abandon call and retry' within three seconds after 'data terminal ready' and 'call request' were presented to the ACU during the execution of a 'dial' command.
13. The ACU fails to indicate either 'not present next digit' or 'abandon call and retry' within three seconds after 'digit present' was presented to the ACU during execution of a 'dial' command.
14. The ACU does not present either 'data set ready' or 'abandon call and retry' within 96 seconds after all dialing digits and the 'not digit present' signal have been presented to the ACU during execution of a 'dial' command.

Equipment Check (Bit 3)

The equipment check bit is set if an ICA hardware check is detected. Such checks occur in the internal microprogram that controls the line attachment. Equipment check causes immediate termination of the current command. Channel end, device end, and unit check are set in the CSW.

Data Check (Bit 4)

The data check bit is only set during execution of a 'read' command. It is set in the following situations:

1. A BCC noncompare is detected during execution of a 'read' command. If this happens, the command is allowed to continue to its normal end.
2. The line has ASCII code specified and a VRC error (even parity) is detected during execution of a 'read' command. If this happens, the command is allowed to continue to its normal end.

Overrun (Bit 5)

The setting of the overrun bit does not cause the command to terminate immediately but allows it to continue to its normal end. The overrun bit is set in the following situations:

1. An overrun condition is detected during execution of a

'read', 'prepare' or 'address prepare' command or during execution of an 'autopoll' command while the line attachment is in the receive state.

2. An underrun condition is detected during execution of a 'write' command or during execution of an 'autopoll' command while the line attachment is in the transmit state. If this occurs, intervention required is set together with the overrun bit.

Lost Data (Bit 6)

The lost data bit is set in the following situations:

1. The data-lost flag bit is detected during command initiation, indicating that at least one full character was received and lost before the command was given. The command is allowed to continue to its normal end.
2. The length count has been reduced to zero but data is still coming in during execution of a 'read' command. The command is terminated immediately.
3. The line attachment is executing a 'read' command when a 'halt I/O' instruction is given, causing the command to be terminated.
4. The 'data set ready' or 'present next digit' signal is active during command initiation for the 'dial' command, or 'data set ready' rises before the dial-end sequence has been set during execution of the 'dial' command. In either case the command is terminated immediately.

Timeout Complete (Bit 7)

When the timeout complete bit is set, the command in progress is terminated immediately. Timeout complete is set in the following situations:

1. The line attachment is executing a 'read' command and does not receive any control character (except SYN)

within three seconds of the beginning of the 'read' command.

2. The line attachment is executing a 'read' command and has not received a SYN character followed by a non-SYN character within three seconds of the previous SYN non-SYN while in text mode, or has not received DLE, SYN, non-DLE within three seconds from the previous DLE, SYN, non-DLE while in transparent text mode.
3. The line has transparent mode specified in the 'set line mode' command and a second 'write' command is issued later than three seconds after the termination of a 'write' command that placed the adapter in transparent mode. This second 'write' ends immediately with the timeout complete bit set.
4. The 'abandon call and retry' signal of the ACU has become active during initiation or execution of a 'dial' command.
5. The line attachment is operating as control station on a data link and has been executing a 'poll' command. After the transmission of an autopoll sequence to a tributary station the control station (in the autopoll receive state) waits for three seconds for an answer from the tributary station. If no answer has been received within three seconds, the 'poll' command is ended and chained to a 'read' command. During the initiation of the 'read' command, the index byte is transferred to main storage and the 'read' command is then immediately ended with the timeout complete bit set in the sense byte.
6. The 'data set ready' signal is not de-activated by the modem within one second (not Swedish or UK modem) or 32 seconds (Swedish or UK modem) after the 'data terminal ready' signal has been dropped, during the execution of a 'disable' command.

ICA Inline Test and Control Procedures

The ICA inline test and control procedures are used to verify the operation of the IBM line attachments, IBM modems (including any wrap facilities) and the ICA interface. By running these tests, the operator can distinguish between faults occurring in his equipment and those occurring on the communication line.

The ICA inline test and control procedures are part of the ICA microprogram and are executed while the user's programs are being run. Only one line, however, can be tested at a time, and this line must not be accessed by the user's programs during the inline test. If this rule is broken, the I/O instruction terminates with condition code 1, and the busy bit (bit 35) is set in the CSW.

The operator's actions for running the inline test and

control procedures are described in *Operator's Library, System/370 Model 115 Procedures*, GA33-1514. If the operator attempts to start an inline test or control procedure on a communication line which is currently occupied with a channel command, the message 'Busy' is displayed. The test then starts as soon as the channel command has been executed.

Programming Note: The ICA inline test and control procedures can only be exploited fully if the user's program is written to allow the operator to start and stop operations on a communication line. The user's program should also be able to handle the busy condition described above, in case the operator starts an inline test by mistake.

Appendix A. ICA Code Tables

		Lower case								Upper case							
		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3, (S, B, A, 8)															
Byte Positions	Hex	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 2, 1, C)	Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0		8	@		<u>Ⓝ</u>			h		*	ç		<u>Ⓝ</u>			H
0001	1	Space			y		q	&		Space			Y		Q	+	
0010	2	1			z		r	a		=			Z		R	A	
0011	3		9	/		Ⓝ			i		(	?		J			l
0100	4	2					Minus Zero (MZ)	b		<						B	
0101	5		0	s		k			Plus Zero (PZ)		)	S		K			
0110	6		Ⓟ EOA #	t		l			Ⓝ		Ⓟ "EOA"	T		L			Ⓝ
0111	7	3			,		\$	c					I		!	C	
1000	8	4			Bypass		Re-store	d		:			Bypass		Re-store	D	
1001	9		Punch On (PN)	u		m			Punch Off (PF)		Punch On (PN)	U		M			Punch Off (PF)
1010	A		Reader Stop (RS)	v		n			Horiz Tab		Reader Stop (RS)	V		N			Horiz Tab
1011	B	5			LF		CR / LF	e		%			LF		CR / LF	E	
1100	C		Up-shift	w		O			Down-shift		Up-shift	W		O			Down-shift
1101	D	6			Ⓟ EOB		Back-space	f		-			Ⓟ EOB		Back-space	F	
1110	E	7			Prefix		Idle	g		>			Prefix		Idle	G	
1111	F		Ⓝ EOT	x		p			Delete		Ⓝ EOT	X		P			Delete

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---


System/370 Byte

S	B	A	8	4	2	1	C
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Terminal Code Structure

Start	B	A	8	4	2	1	C	Stop
-------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	------

Transmitted and Received Character

 These codes perform no function in the 1050 Data Communication System but are valid data codes. They are not printable.

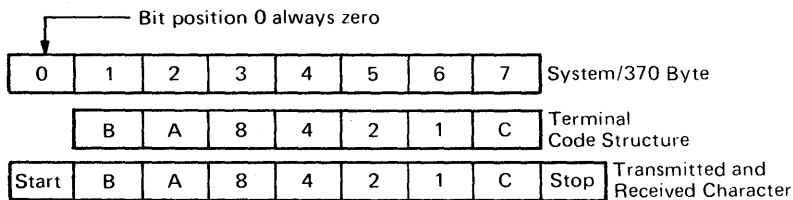
 Duplicate Assignment

Notes:

1. *Equivalent Functions*
CR/LF = NL LF = Index
2. *S-bit position* (0 for lower case, set for upper case) inserted on receive operations or deleted on transmit operations. Insertion/deletion performed by equipment.
3. *Start and stop bits* are deleted at the ICA during receive operations, added at the ICA during transmit operations.

Figure 115. Code Structure for 1050 Data Communication System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations [10866]

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3, (0, B, A, 8)							
		0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 2, 1, C)	Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0000	0		8	Add		Ⓝ			H
0001	1	Space			Y		Q	+	
0010	2	1			Z		R	A	
0011	3		9	/		J			I
0100	4	2					Mes- sage	B	
0101	5		0	S		K			Re- store
0110	6		Ⓣ EOA #	T		L			Ⓢ
0111	7	3					\$	C	
1000	8	4					*	D	
1001	9			U		M			Subtr
1010	A			V		N			Tab
1011	B	5			LF		CR	E	
1100	C			W		O			
1101	D	6			Ⓟ EOB			F	
1110	E	7					Idle	G	
1111	F		Ⓢ EOT	X		P			Delete



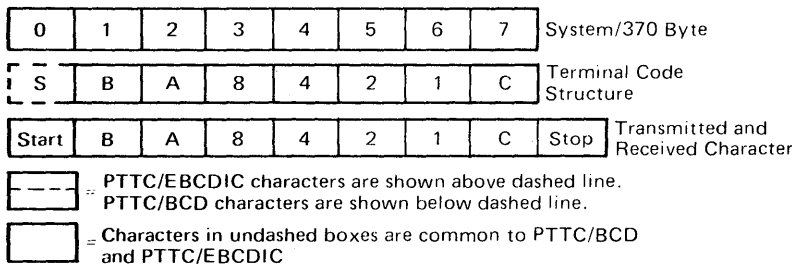
Note: Start and stop bits are deleted at the ICA during receive operations, added at the ICA during transmit operations.

Figure 116. Code Structure for 1060 Data Communication System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations [10867]

Lower case

Upper case

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3, (S, B, A, 8)															
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 2, 1, C)	Hex	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0		8	@		Ⓝ			h		*	ç		Ⓝ			H
0001	1	Space			y		q	&		Space			Y		Q	+	
0010	2	1			z		r	a		=			Z		R	A	
0011	3		9	/		j			i		(	?		J			I
0100	4	2						b		<							B
0101	5		0	s		k					)	S		K			
0110	6		Ⓞ EOA #	t		l		Ⓟ			"	T		L			Ⓟ
0111	7	3			Ⓢ		\$	c		;					!		C
1000	8	4						d		:							D
1001	9			u		m						U		M			
1010	A			v		n			Horiz Tab			V		N			Horiz Tab
1011	B	5			LF (Notes 3 & 5)		NL	e		%			LF (Notes 3 & 5)		NL	E	
1100	C		Up- shift	w		o			Down- shift		Up- shift	W		O			Down- shift
1101	D	6			Ⓟ EOB		Back- space	f		,			Ⓟ EOB		Back- space	F	
1110	E	7					IDLE	g		>					IDLE	G	
1111	F		Ⓞ EOT	x		p						X		P			



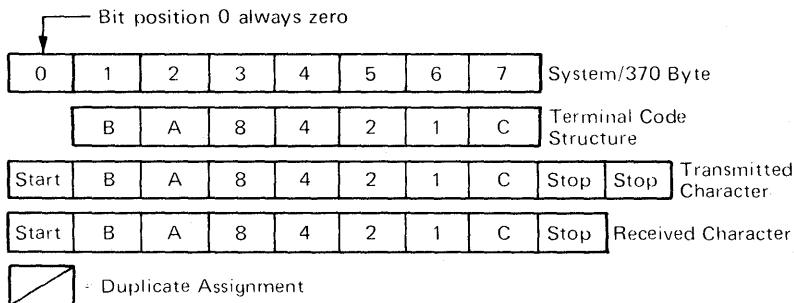
Notes:

1. Start and stop bits are deleted at the ICA during receive operations, added at the ICA during transmit operations.
2. S-bit position (0 for lower case, set for upper case) is inserted during receive operations, deleted during transmit operations. Insertion/deletion is performed by equipment.
3. LF (line feed) performs the indexing function.

4. NL (new line) performs the carrier return and line feed function.
5. The following characters (not used by 2740 or 2741 Communication Terminals) are provided for PTTC/BCD and PTTC/EBCDIC programming considerations with the 1050 Data Communication System:
 - Punch ON (PN) '09' and '99'
 - Bypass (BY) '38' and 'B8'
 - Restore (RES) '58' and 'D8'
 - Punch OFF (PF) '79' and 'F9'
 - Delete (DEL) '7F' and 'FF'
 - Prefix (PRE) '3E' and 'BE'.
6. In the 2741, the index key is replaced by an attention key: no indexing functions can be performed during transmission. The indexing function is performed when the terminal receives an index character from the line.

Figure 117. Code Structure for 2740 Communication Terminal or 2741 Communication Terminal in IBM Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations [10868]

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3, (0, B, A, 8)							
		0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 2, 1, C)	Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0000	0		8	@ 0 (see Note)		Ⓝ			H
0001	1	Space			Y		Q		
0010	2	1			Z		R	A	
0011	3		9	/		J			I
0100	4	2						B	
0101	5		0 (see Note)	S		K			
0110	6		Ⓞ EOA	T		L			Ⓜ EOFC
0111	7	3			Ⓢ		\$	C	
1000	8	4						D	
1001	9			U		M			
1010	A			V		N			Horiz. Tab
1011	B	5			LF		LF/CR	E	
1100	C			W		O			
1101	D	6			Ⓟ EOB			F	
1110	E	7						G	
1111	F		Ⓢ EOT	X		P			EOC Delete

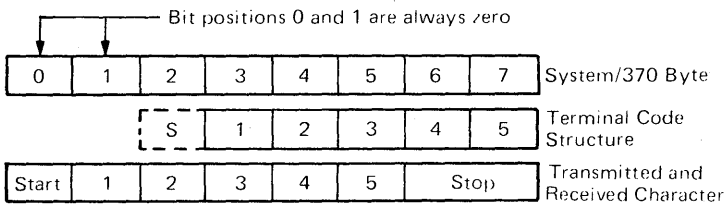


Notes:

1. The 1031 transmits the numeric zero as an A-bit only. The 1033 receives the numeric zero as a C-8-2 code and @ as an A-bit only code.
2. Pad Characters = Hex DF = 11011111.
3. Start and stop bits are deleted at the ICA during receive operations, added during transmit operations.
4. EOFC = end of first card.

Figure 118. Code Structure for 1030 Data Collection System in IBM Terminal Control – Type 2 Operations [10869]

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3 (0, 0, S, 1)			
4, 5, 6, 7 (2, 3, 4, 5)	Hex	0000	0001	0010	0011
		0	1	2	3
0000	0	Blank	E	Blank	3
0001	1	T	Z	5	"
0010	2	CR	D	CR	\$
0011	3	O	B	9	5/8
0100	4	Space	S	Space	Bell
0101	5	H	Y	◆	6
0110	6	N	F	7/8	1/4
0111	7	M	X	•	/
1000	8	LF	A	LF	-
1001	9	L	W	3/4	2
1010	A	R	J	4	,
1011	B	G	FIGS↑	&	FIGS↑
1100	C	I	U	8	7
1101	D	P	O	0	1
1110	E	C	K	1/8	1/2
1111	F	V	LTRS↓	3/8	LTRS↓



Notes:

1. S-bit position (0 for lower case [LTRS], set for upper case [FIGS]) is inserted during receive operations, deleted during transmit operations. Insertion/deletion is performed by equipment.
2. ↑ = upshift character
↓ = downshift character

Figure 119. Code Structure for AT & T 83B2/83B3 Terminals and Western Union Plan 115A Terminals in Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 1 Operations [10870]

		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3, (1, 2, 3, 4)															
Byte Positions		0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
4, 5, 6, 7 (5, 6, 7, 8)	Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0	Null			Form Feed		Line Feed				Horiz Tab	WRU		EOM			Shift In
0001	1	Null		EOT	Form Feed	EOA	Line Feed		Shift Out	SOM	Horiz Tab	WRU	Return	EOM	Vertical Tab	Bell	Shift In
0010	2		H	D		B			N	A			M		K	G	
0011	3	@	H	D	L	B	J	F	N	A	I	E	M	C	K	G	Q
0100	4		(\$		"			!			-			+	,	
0101	5	SP	(\$		*	&	!)	%	-	#	+	,	/		
0110	6																
0111	7																
1000	8																
1001	9																
1010	A	P			/		Z				Y	U		S			←
1011	B	P	X	T	/	R	Z	V	↑	Q	Y	U	|	S	|	W	←
1100	C	O			<		:				9	5		3			?
1101	D	O	8	4	/	2	:	6	>	1	9	5		3	:	7	?
1110	E																
1111	F																Delete

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	System/370 Byte		
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Terminal Code Structure		
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	Stop	Stop	Transmitted and Received Character


Notes:

1. When two codes are shown for a single character, the shaded indication denotes the bit configuration due to the parity bit being held in Mark Hold state. The companion bit configuration has even parity.
2. Start/stop bits are deleted at the ICA during receive operations, added at the ICA during transmit operations.

Figure 120. Eight-Level TWX Code for Standard Keyboard Arrangement in Telegraph Terminal Control – Type 2 Operations [10871]

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3 (0, 1, 2, 3)															
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 5, 6, 7)	Hex	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0	NUL	DLE	DS		SP	&	--									0
0001	1	SOH	DC1	SOS						a	j			A	J		1
0010	2	STX	DC2	FS	SYN					b	k	s		B	K	S	2
0011	3	ETX	DC3							c	l	t		C	L	T	3
0100	4	PF	RES	BYP	PN					d	m	u		D	M	U	4
0101	5	HT	NL	LF	RS					e	n	v		E	N	V	5
0110	6	LC	BS	EOB ETB PRE	UC					f	o	w		F	O	W	6
0111	7	DEL	IL	ESC	EOT					g	p	x		G	P	X	7
1000	8		CAN							h	q	y		H	Q	Y	8
1001	9		EM							i	r	z		I	R	Z	9
1010	A	SMM	CC	SM		ç	!										
1011	B	VT				.	\$										
1100	C	FF	IFS		DC4	<	*	%									
1101	D	CR	IGS	ENO	NAK	()										
1110	E	SO	IRS	ACK		+	:	>									
1111	F	SI	IUS	BEL	SUB	|	⌋	?									

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	System/370 Byte
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	EBCDIC Structure
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	Transmitted and Received Character

 = Duplicate Assignment

Notes:


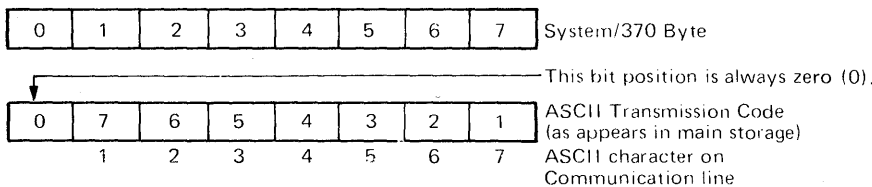
- During receive operations in non-text mode, the DLE character, followed by any of the bit configurations in columns 6 or 7, will cause the command to be ended. However, only those bit configurations indicated by  are valid.
- The following DLE sequences are defined.
 '70' - ACK0
 '61' - ACK1
 '7F' - WABT

Figure 121. EBCDIC, as used for Binary Synchronous Communication Control [10872]

Byte Positions		Main Storage Byte Positions 0, 1, 2, 3 (0, 7, 6, 5)																
4, 5, 6, 7 (4, 3, 2, 1)		Hex	0000	0001	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1000	1001	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
		Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	P	\	p									
0001	1	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q									
0010	2	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r									
0011	3	ETX	DC3	=	3	C	S	c	s									
0100	4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t									
0101	5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u									
0110	6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v									
0111	7	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w									
1000	8	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x									
1001	9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y									
1010	A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z									
1011	B	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	k	{									
1100	C	FF	FS	'	<	L	\	l	|									
1101	D	CR	GS	.	.	M	|	m	}									
1110	E	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~									
1111	F	SI	US	/	?	O	..	o	DEL									



Notes:

1. During receive operations in non-text mode, the DLE character, followed by any character appearing in column 3, causes the command to be ended.
2. There are three DLE sequences:
 - '30' - ACK0
 - '31' - ACK1
 - '3F' - WABT

Figure 122. ASCII, as used for Binary Synchronous Communication Control [10873]

Appendix B. Instruction Timings for Processing Unit

3115-0 Models

The instruction timings listed in the following tables are for a 3115 (model F, FE, G, GE, or GF) with its interval timer enabled. To allow for the slight performance degradation caused by updating of the interval timer, the tables assume that a microinstruction is executed in 450.22 ns; the actual execution time is 450.0 ns.

If program event recording is enabled, the execution time of a microinstruction is increased by a certain time, the exact value of which depends on the class of events recorded, as follows:

- 82 μ s increase for successful branch instruction
- 105 μ s increase for instruction fetching
- 168 μ s increase for storage alteration
- 94 μ s increase for general register alteration
- 156 μ s increase if all four of the above classes are to be recorded.

Note: These figures do not include the time taken by the PER program interruption.

If address compare mode is specified for instruction fetching, the execution time of a microinstruction increases by 38.5 μ s.

The timing formulas in the tables are correct for processing with dynamic address translation when the logical addresses are contained in the translation lookaside buffer (TLB). If the required address is not in the TLB, translation takes an extra 138 μ s.

Note: The instructions 'purge translation-lookaside buffer', and 'load control' (when used to load control register 0 or 1), destroy the contents of the TLB.

When the tables give separate times for DAT mode (as in the BALR instruction), these timings are based on a 2K page size.

Timings shown in the tables for floating-point instructions assume no pre- or post-normalization.

Parameters for Instruction Timing Formulas

Symbol	Definition
CC0	1 if condition code 0; otherwise 0.
CC3	1 if condition code 3; otherwise 0.
C _{DD}	1 if dividend is negative; otherwise 0.
C _{DR}	1 if divisor is negative; otherwise 0.
C _{MD}	1 if multiplicand is negative; otherwise 0.
C _{MR}	1 if multiplier is negative; otherwise 0.
C _{RE}	1 if result (quotient) is negative; otherwise 0.
D	Number of digit selectors or significance starters in the first operand.
E	Number of equal bytes, left-to-right.
F	Number of field separators in the first operand.
L ₁	1 if N ₁ = 1; otherwise 0.
L ₂	1 if N ₂ = 1; otherwise 0.
log (RES)	₁₀ log of decimal result.
M	Number of message characters in the first operand.
N	Total number of bytes in the first operand (instructions with a single length field).
N ₁	Total number of bytes in the first operand.
N ₂	Total number of bytes in the second operand.
N _B	Number of 1-bits in the absolute form of the multiplier (for floating point fraction only).
nc	Number of bytes compared in main storage.
n _{lz}	Number of bytes containing leading zeros.
NMD	Decimal sum of all digits of multiplier.
nm3	Number of 1-bits in mask M3.
np	Number of bytes compared against pad character.
NQ	Number of 1-bits in the absolute form of the quotient.
NQD	Decimal sum of all digits of quotient.
nr1	Number of times general register 1 is set.
nz	Number of bytes in the absolute form of the multiplier, which are zero (for floating point fraction only).
odd	1 if operand starts on odd boundary; otherwise 0.
R	Number of registers invoked.
RC	1 if absolute value of second operand exceeds first operand; otherwise 0 (recomplement).
R _T	IOP response time.
s	Number of signs in the second operand.
S ₁	0 if base register used; 0.45 μs if unused.
S ₂	0 if base register used; -0.9 μs if unused.
T	0 if both base registers used; 0.90 if only one base register used; 1.81 if no base register used.
U	0 if all function bytes are zero; 1 if a non-zero function byte is found.
X ₁	0 if single indexing; -0.45 if no indexing; +1.81 if double indexing.
X ₂	0 if indexing with base register; -0.9 if no indexing; +0.45 if indexing with X-register; +1.81 if double indexing.
Z	Number of bytes pointing to a zero function byte.

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Average Time in Microseconds	Notes
Add	RR	1A	AR	7.23 - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3	
Add	RX	5A	A	14.03 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3	+ 0.90odd
Add decimal	SS	FA	AP	If operands are added: 76.42 + 5.88N ₁ + 3.17N ₂ - T If operands are subtracted: 76.46 + 5.88N ₁ + 3.17N ₂ + RC(2.26N ₁) - T	
Add halfword	RX	4A	AH	13.58 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3	+ 0.45odd
Add logical	RR	1E	ALR	6.78	
Add logical	RX	5E	AL	13.58 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Add normalized (extended)	RR	36	AXR	133.36	
Add normalized (long)	RR	2A	ADR	62.33	
Add normalized (long)	RX	6A	AD	66.86 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Add normalized (short)	RR	3A	AER	50.91	
Add normalized (short)	RX	7A	AE	54.10 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Add unnormalized (long)	RR	2E	AWR	63.86	
Add unnormalized (long)	RX	6E	AW	70.08 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Add unnormalized (short)	RR	3E	AUR	49.13	
Add unnormalized (short)	RX	7E	AU	52.29 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
AND	RR	14	NR	6.78 + 0.90CC0	
AND	RX	54	N	12.66 + X ₁ + 0.90CC0	+ 0.90odd
AND	SI	94	NI	10.40 - S ₁ + 0.45CC0	
AND	SS	D4	NC	21.70 - T + 5.89N	
Branch and link	RR	05	BALR	<i>DAT Off</i> No branch: 11.76 Branch: 15.39 Subject of 'execute': 76.9 <i>DAT On</i> No branch: 16.28 Branch: 18.56 Subject of 'execute': 78.35	Including 'execute' instruction
Branch and link	RX	45	BAL	<i>DAT Off</i> Branch: 17.65 + X ₂ Subject of 'execute': 78.74 + X ₂ <i>DAT On</i> Branch: 20.83 + X ₂ Subject of 'execute': 80.60 + X ₂	Including 'execute' instruction
Branch on condition	RR	07	BCR	No branch: 3.61 Branch: 6.33	
Branch on condition	RX	47	BC	No branch: 4.07 Branch: 7.69 + X ₁	
Branch on count	RR	06	BCTR	No branch: 6.78 No branch: 7.23 Branch: 9.50	Count zero Count non-zero, R2 zero
Branch on count	RX	46	BCT	No branch: 8.60 Branch: 10.86 + X ₂	
Branch on index high	RS	86	BXH	No branch: 18.09 - S ₂ Branch: 16.75 - S ₂	- 3.16 if R3 is even + 3.16 if R3 is even
Branch on index low or equal	RS	87	BXLE	No branch: 18.09 - S ₂ Branch: 16.75 - S ₂	- 3.16 if R3 is odd + 3.16 if R3 is even
Compare	RR	19	CR	Operand signs equal: 11.76 - 0.90CC0 Operand signs unequal: 4.98	} + 0.90odd
Compare	RX	59	C	Operand signs equal: 16.74 + X ₁ - 0.90CC0	
Compare and swap	RS	BA	CS	Operand signs unequal: 11.31 + X ₁ If first and second operands are equal: 26.68 - S ₂	+ 0.90odd

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Average Time in Microseconds	Notes
Compare and swap double	RS	BB	CDS	If first and second operands are unequal: 22.64 - S ₂ If first and second operands are equal: 37.10 - S ₂ If first and second operands are unequal: 27.16 - S ₂	+ 1.81odd
Compare (long)	RR	29	CDR	49.33	
Compare (long)	RX	69	CD	50.87 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Compare (short)	RR	39	CER	39.33	
Compare (short)	RX	79	CE	42.33 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Compare decimal	SS	F9	CP	66.49 - T + 4.97N ₁ + 3.16N ₂	
Compare halfword	RX	49	CH	Operand signs equal: 15.84 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0 Operand signs unequal: 10.86 + X ₁	+ 0.45odd
Compare logical	RR	15	CLR	10.40 - 0.90CC0	
Compare logical	RX	55	CL	16.30 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0	+ 0.90odd
Compare logical	SI	95	CLI	10.85 - S ₁	
Compare logical	SS	D5	CLC	27.61 - T + 4.07E - 4.52CC0	
Compare logical (long)	RR	0F	CLCL	32.12 + 4.97nc + 3.16np	
Compare logical character under mask	RS	BD	CLM	If mask M3 is zero: 9.04 - S ₁ If mask M3 is not zero: 16.74 - S ₁ + 0.90nm3 - 0.90CC0	
Convert to binary	RX	4F	CVB	216.63 + X ₁ - 23.97nlz	+ 1.81odd
Convert to decimal	RX	4E	CVD	32.21 + X ₁ + 36.63log (RES)	+ 3.62odd
Diagnose	RS	83	-	8.14 - S ₂	
Divide	RR	1D	DR	Result > 65.535: 205.3 - 4.97C _{DR} + 12.21C _{DD} + 4.07C _{RE} + 2.26N _Q Result < 65.536: 115.76 - 4.97C _{DR} + 12.21C _{DD} + 4.07C _{RE} + 2.26N _Q	
Divide	RX	5D	D	Result > 65.535: 209.81 + X ₁ - 4.97C _{DR} + 12.21 C _{DD} + 4.07C _{RE} + 2.26N _Q Result < 65.536: 120.31 + X ₁ - 4.97C _{DR} + 12.21C _{DD} + 4.07C _{RE} + 2.26N _Q	+ 0.90odd + 0.90odd
Divide (long)	RR	2D	DDR	600.53 (minimum) 818.35 (maximum)	
Divide (long)	RX	6D	DD	605.54 (minimum) 822.81 (maximum)	+ 1.81odd
Divide (short)	RR	3D	DER	201.78 (minimum) 251.12 (maximum)	
Divide (short)	RX	7D	DE	205.89 (minimum) 254.90 (maximum)	+ 0.90odd
Divide decimal	SS	FD	DP	286.15 - T - 0.9N ₁ + 78.76N ₂ + 22.61N _{QD}	
Edit	SS	DE	ED	<i>DAT Off:</i> 23.96 - T + 9.95D + 8.14F + 3.62s + 6.33M <i>DAT On:</i> 31.66 - T + 13.57D + 11.31F + 3.62s + 9.50M	
Edit and mark	SS	DF	EDMK	<i>DAT Off:</i> 24.4 - T + 9.95D + 8.14F + 3.62s + 6.33M + 5.88nr1 <i>DAT On:</i> 32.1 - T + 13.57D + 11.31F + 3.62s + 9.50M + 6.33nr1	
Exclusive OR	RR	17	XR	6.33 + 0.90CC0	
Exclusive OR	RX	57	X	12.66 + X ₁ + 0.90CC0	+ 0.90odd
Exclusive OR	SI	97	XI	10.40 - S ₁ + 0.45CC0	
Exclusive OR	SS	D7	XC	22.16 - T + 5.88N	

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Average Time in Microseconds	Notes
Execute	RX	44	EX	DAT off: $62.48 + X_2$ DAT on: $64.33 + X_2$	+ 0.45 if R1 is not zero, - 4.51 if successful branch, + execution time for the instruction which is the subject of the 'execute' instruction
Halt device	S	9E	HDV	If channel is not busy: $39.80 - S_2 + RT$ If channel is busy: $46.12 - S_2$	
Halt I/O	S	9E	HIO	$39.70 - S_2 + RT$	
Halve (long)	RR	24	HDR	37.35	
Halve (short)	RR	34	HER	33.40	
Insert character	RX	43	IC	$9.05 + X_1$	
Insert characters under mask	RS	BF	ICM	If mask is zero: $11.30 - S_1$ If mask is not zero: $10.85 - S_1$ + 2.26nm3	
Insert storage key	RR	09	ISK	BC mode: 12.22 EC mode: 11.76	
Load	RR	18	LR	4.98	
Load	RX	58	L	$10.86 + X_1$	+ 0.90odd
Load (long)	RR	28	LDR	19.45	
Load (long)	RX	68	LD	$23.08 + X_1$	+ 1.81odd
Load (short)	RR	38	LER	16.74	
Load (short)	RX	78	LE	19.45	+ 0.90odd
Load address	RX	41	LA	$8.14 + X_2$	
Load and test	RR	12	LTR	$6.78 + 0.90CC0$	
Load and test (long)	RR	22	LTDR	23.98	
Load and test (short)	RR	32	LTER	20.36	
Load complement	RR	13	LCR	$11.31 - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3$	
Load complement (long)	RR	23	LCDR	24.44	
Load complement (short)	RR	33	LCER	20.36	
Load control	RS	B7	LCTL	BC mode: $69.85 - S_2 + 6.33R$ EC mode: $65.32 - S_2 + 6.33R$	Execution includes purge TLB function + 0.45odd + 0.90odd per register loaded
Load halfword	RX	48	LH	$11.31 + X_1$	
Load multiple	RS	98	LM	$8.59 - S_1 + 2.78R$	
Load negative	RR	11	LNR	If second operand is negative: 5.87 If second operand is zero: 10.40 If second operand > zero: 10.85	
Load negative (long)	RR	21	LNDR	24.44	
Load negative (short)	RR	31	LNER	20.82	
Load positive	RR	10	LPR	If second operand > zero: 7.23 If second operand is zero: 8.14 If second operand is negative: $11.76 + 0.90CC3$	
Load positive (long)	RR	20	LPDR	24.44	
Load positive (short)	RR	30	LPER	20.36	
Load PSW	RS	82	LPSW	BC mode: 68.01 EC mode (DAT off): 73.02 DAT on: 78.00	+ 7.25 if external mask bit is on
Load real address	RX	B1	LRA	$105.47 + X_2$	
Load rounded (long to short)	RR	35	LRER	24.87	
Load rounded (extended to long)	RR	25	LRDR	29.42	
Monitor call	SI	AF	MC	Interrupt Disabled $12.21 - S_2$	

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Average Time in Microseconds	Notes
Move	SI	92	MVI	<i>Interrupt Enabled</i> BC mode: 112.54 - S ₂ EC mode, DAT off: 121.55 - S ₂ EC mode, DAT on: 121.55 - S ₂ 9.12 - S ₁	+ 7.25 if external mask bit is on in program new PSW
Move	SS	D2	MVC	22.01 - T + 1.22N	
Move (long)	RR	0E	MVCL	Destructive overlap: 35.77 If L ₁ ≤ L ₂ (L ₁ ≠ 0): 52.53 + 3.61N ₁ If L ₁ > L ₂ (L ₂ ≠ 0): 39.88 + 1.81N ₁ If L ₁ > 0, L ₂ = 0: 38.93 + 1.81N ₁ If L ₁ = 0, L ₂ = any value: 28.96	
Move numerics	SS	D1	MVN	20.15 - T + 4.72N	
Move with offset	SS	F1	MVO	24.87 - T + 5.43N ₁	
Move zones	SS	D3	MVZ	20.57 - T + 4.77N	
Multiply	RR	1C	MR	190.36 + 4.52C _{MR} + 4.52C _{MD} + 8.14C _{RE} - 38.0nz + 2.26N _B	
Multiply	RX	5C	M	185.63 + X ₁ + 4.52C _{MR} + 4.52C _{MD} + 8.14C _{RE} - 38.0nz + 2.26N _B	+ 0.90odd
Multiply (extended)	RR	26	MXR	2216.68 + 13.56N _B	
Multiply (long)	RR	2C	MDR	35.66 (minimum) 243.49 (maximum)	
Multiply (long)	RX	6C	MD	39.80 (minimum) 247.52 (maximum)	+ 1.81odd
Multiply (long to extended)	RR	27	MXDR	578.36 + 6.78 N _B	
Multiply (long to extended)	RX	67	MXD	584.26 + 6.78N _B	+ 0.90odd
Multiply (short)	RR	3C	MER	31.19 (minimum) 143.87 (maximum)	
Multiply (short)	RX	7C	ME	34.83 (minimum) 147.51 (maximum)	+ 0.90odd
Multiply decimal	SS	FC	MP	If N ₁ ≤ 8: 42.98 - T + 7.24N ₁ + 37.08N ₂ + 9.50NMD If N ₁ > 8: 84.11 - T + 7.24N ₁ + 70.51N ₂ + 18.54NMD	
Multiply halfword	RX	4C	MH	115.39 + X ₁ + 4.52C _{MR} + 4.52C _{MD} + 4.07C _{RE} - 38.0nz + 2.26N _B	+ 0.45odd
OR	RR	16	OR	6.78 + 0.90CC0	
OR	RX	56	O	12.66 + X ₁ + 0.90CC0	+ 0.90odd
OR	SI	96	OI	10.40 - S ₁ + 0.45CC0	
OR	SS	D6	OC	21.70 - T + 5.89N	
Pack	SS	F2	PACK	20.52 - T + 2.70N ₁ + 2.04N ₂	
Purge translation-lookaside buffer	S	B20D	PTLB	20.82 - S ₂	
Reset reference bit	S	B213	RRB	14.48 - S ₂	
Set clock	S	B204	SCK	If TOD CLOCK key "secure": 15.38 - S ₂ If TOD CLOCK key pressed: 87.32 - S ₂	Time for external interrupt (TOD > TODC) not included
Set clock comparator	S	B206	SCKC	91.46 - S ₂	Time for external interrupt (TOD > TODC) not included
Set CPU timer	S	B208	SCT	36.84 - S ₂	Time for external interrupt (CPU timer < 0) not included
Set program mask	RR	04	SPM	9.05	
Set system mask	S	80	SSM	BC mode: 61.8 - S ₁ EC mode, DAT off: 71.20 - S ₁ EC mode, DAT on: 74.60 - S ₁	
Set storage key	RR	08	SSK	12.22	
Shift and round decimal	SS	F0	SRP	58.40 (minimum) 368.94 (maximum)	
Shift left double	RS	8F	SLDA	19.00 (minimum) 54.28 (maximum)	
Shift left double logical	RS	8E	SLDL	11.75 (minimum) 39.34 (maximum)	

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Average Time in Microseconds	Notes
Shift left single	RS	8B	SLA	14.92 (minimum) 37.54 (maximum)	
Shift left single logical	RS	89	SLL	9.49 (minimum) 24.44 (maximum)	
Shift right double	RS	8E	SRDA	17.18 (minimum) 44.76 (maximum)	
Shift right double logical	RS	8C	SRDL	12.66 (minimum) 38.89 (maximum)	
Shift right single	RS	8A	SRA	13.11 (minimum) 28.05 (maximum)	
Shift right single logical	RS	88	SRL	10.38 (minimum) 23.97 (maximum)	
Start I/O	S	9C00	SIO	If channel is busy (CC2): 68.12 - S ₂ If channel is not busy: 56.98 - S ₂ + R _T	
Store	RX	50	ST	11.76 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Store (long)	RX	60	STD	25.80 + X ₁	+ 3.62odd
Store (short)	RX	70	STE	20.82 + X ₁	+ 1.80odd
Store channel ID	S	B203	STIDC	19.90 - S ₂	
Store character	RX	42	STC	9.12 + X ₁	
Store character under mask	RS	BE	STCM	9.50 - S ₁ + 1.36nm ³	
Store clock	S	B205	STCK	41.22 - S ₁	+ 3.62odd
Store clock comparator	S	B207	STCKC	26.28 - S ₂	+ 3.62odd
Store control	RS	B6	STCTL	13.11 - S ₂ + 6.78R	
Store CPU ID	S	B202	STIDP	20.02 - S ₂	
Store CPU timer	S	B209	STPT	43.05 - S ₂	+ 3.62odd
Store halfword	RX	40	STH	9.50 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Store multiple	RS	90	STM	72.4 - S ₁ + 4.52R	+ R x 1.81odd
Store then AND system mask	SI	AC	STNSM	BC mode: 63.96 EC mode, DAT off: 73.82 EC mode, DAT on: 77.62	
Store then OR system mask	SI	AD	STOSM	BC mode: 63.49 EC mode, DAT off: 73.92 EC mode, DAT on: 78.24	
Subtract	RR	1B	SR	10.40 - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3	
Subtract	RX	5B	S	15.37 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0 + 0.90CC3	+ 0.91odd
Subtract decimal	SS	FB	SP	If operands are added: 80.47 + 5.88N ₁ + 3.17N ₂ - T If operands are subtracted: 84.56 + 5.88N ₁ + 3.17N ₂ + RC(2.26N ₁)	
Subtract halfword	RX	4B	SH	14.49 + X ₁ - 0.45CC0 + 0.91CC3	+ 0.45odd
Subtract logical	RR	1F	SLR	10.40	
Subtract logical	RX	5F	RX	14.93 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Subtract normalized (extended)	RR	37	SXR	133.81	
Subtract normalized (long)	RR	2B	SDR	62.79	
Subtract normalized (long)	RX	6B	SD	67.30 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Subtract normalized (short)	RR	3B	SER	51.36	
Subtract normalized (short)	RX	7B	SE	54.52 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Subtract unnormalized (long)	RR	2F	SWR	63.73	
Subtract unnormalized (long)	RX	6F	SW	67.80 + X ₁	+ 1.81odd
Subtract unnormalized (short)	RR	3F	SUR	49.58	
Subtract unnormalized (short)	RR	7F	SU	52.76 + X ₁	+ 0.90odd
Supervisor call	RR	0A	SVC	BC mode: 94.25 EC mode, DAT off: 104.79 EC mode, DAT on: 111.60	
Test and set	S	93	TS	12.22 - S ₂ - 0.45CC0	
Test channel	S	9F	TCH	Channel 0: 24.82 - S ₂ Channel 1,2: 39.80 - S ₂ + RT	
Test I/O	S	9D	TIO	If channel is not busy: 37.98 - S ₂ + RT If channel is busy: 40.60 - S ₂	
Test under mask	SI	91	TM	10.85 - S ₁ - 0.90CC0	
Translate	SS	DC	TR	DAT off: 24.44 - T + 7.73N DAT on: 26.84 - T + 14.02N	
Translate and test	SS	DD	TRT	22.62 - T + 7.69nlz + 12.66	
Unpack	SS	F3	UNPK	23.96 - T + 3.16N ₁	
Zero and add	SS	F8	ZAP	63.40 - T + 2.71N ₁ + 2.71N ₂	

3115-2 Models

The instruction timings listed in the following tables are for a 3115 (model F2, FE2, G2, GE2, GF2, or H2) with its interval timer enabled. When the interval timer is disabled, all instructions run 0.16% faster.

If program event recording is enabled, CPU performance decreases by a factor of between six and ten, depending on the event to be recorded. If address compare mode for instruction fetching is enabled (console command 'CSC'), CPU performance decreases by a factor of approximately eight.

The timings and formulas presuppose that dynamic address translation is set and that virtual addresses are available in the translation lookaside buffer. Note that when the 'purge TLB' instruction of the 'load control' instruction is executed, the contents of the translation lookaside buffer are destroyed. A virtual address which is not available in the lookaside buffer is translated via a table register, segment table and page table. This process takes about 90 μ s.

Parameters and Special Symbols in Instruction Timing Formulas

Symbol	Definition
A	0 if base register specified; 0.96 if no base register specified.
AM	Number of address markings in EDMK instruction.
BI	0 if no base register specified in I/O instructions; 1.5 if base register specified in I/O instructions.
BM	Number of blocks of 256 data bytes invoked in a move operation (MVCL instruction), or in the comparison between operand 1 and operand 2 (CLCL instruction) until a mismatching byte pair is found.
BO	Number of one bits in the absolute form of the multiplier.
BP	Number of blocks of 256 data bytes invoked in padding until a mismatching byte pair is found.
C	Number of bytes to be compared in CLC operation until mismatch occurs or until length count is zero; $C \leq N$.
cc	Condition code.
CD	$32 - (\text{number of leading zero bits in absolute value of } R_1)$.
CI	2900 if operator console is addressed; otherwise 0.
CM	1 if $(R_1) < 0$; otherwise 0.
CN	1 if operand 2 sign is minus; otherwise 0.
DF	1 if $N_2 - N_1 = 1$; otherwise 0.
DL	Number of bytes in longer operand.

DMR	Number of significant hexadecimal digits in the operand with the most low-order zero halfwords.
DS	Number of bytes of shorter operand.
ds	Number of digit selectors.
DT	1 if DAT is enabled; otherwise 0.
EM	1 if $BM \geq 1$; 0 if $BM = 0$.
EP	1 if $BP \geq 1$; 0 if $BP = 0$.
EX ₁	1 if $R_1 \neq 0$; otherwise 0.
EX ₂	1 if subject of 'execute' instruction changes PSW address part; otherwise 0.
F	1 if $C = 1$ (only one pair of bytes is to be compared); 0 if $C > 1$.
FD	1 if all halfwords in operand 1 are non-zero; 0.6 when the following absolute value ratio applies: operand 1 bits 0 through 16 = 0 and bits 17 through 32 < operand 2 bits 0 through 15.
FS	Number of field separators.
I/F	Channel interface response time; this time depends on the type of I/O device addressed. Use the following factors: 300 for disk drives 150 for card I/O machines and printers 116 for devices attached to the multiplexer channel 115 for ICA lines 79 for magnetic tape units.
IM	Number of bytes exceeding 256BM invoked in move (MVCL instruction) or in the comparison between operand 1 and operand 2 (CLCL instruction) until a mismatching byte pair is found.
IP	Number of bytes exceeding 256BP invoked in padding until mismatching byte pair is found.
J	1 if EC mode (PSW bit 12) and I/O mask (PSW bit 6) are on; otherwise 0.
K	1 if $C = N$ (all operand bytes are compared in CLC instruction); otherwise 0.
KS	1.44 if base register is zero in I/O instruction; otherwise 0.
L	1 if $N = 1$ (length code 0 specified); otherwise 0.
L ₁	1 if $N_1 = 1$; otherwise 0.
L ₂	1 if $N_2 = 1$; otherwise 0.
MC	Number of message characters.
MI	0 if BC mode; 5.3 if EC mode and channel 0; 7.1 if EC mode and channel 1; 10.0 if EC mode and channel 2.
MM	1 if $IM \geq 1$; 0 if $IM = 0$.
MP	1 if $IP \geq 1$; 0 if $IP = 0$.
N	Number of bytes specified in operation (length code + 1).

N_1	Number of bytes specified for operand 1.
N_2	Number of bytes specified for operand 2.
Op_1	Operand 1.
Op_2	Operand 2.
P	1 if 4K DAT page size set; 0 if 2K DAT page size set.
PZ	1 if operand 2 = 0; otherwise 0.
R	1 through 15 (number of registers invoked in operation).
RD	1 if R_3 is odd.
RT	1 if non-zero function byte found (cc \neq 0); otherwise 0.
S	0 if base register specified; 0.96 if no base register specified.
SG	Number of signs in the second operand.
SH	Unsigned amount of shorter operand.
SN	1 if final operand 1 sign is minus; otherwise 0.
T	0 if $B1 \neq 0, B2 \neq 0$ 0.48 if $B1 = 0, B2 \neq 0$ 0.96 if $B1 \neq 0, B2 = 0$ 1.45 if $B1 = 0, B2 = 0$.
TE	1 if TOD clock in error state; otherwise 0.
W	0 if $B1 \neq 0, B2 \neq 0$ 0.96 if $B1 = 0, B2 \neq 0$ or $B1 \neq 0, B2 = 0$ 1.93 if $B1 = 0, B2 = 0$.
X	0 if single indexing -0.96 if no indexing +2.89 if double indexing.
Y	0 if $B1 \neq 0, B2 \neq 0$ 2.41 if $B1 = 0, B2 \neq 0$ or $B1 \neq 0, B2 = 0$ 4.82 if $B1 = 0, B2 = 0$.
ZT	Number of operand 1 bytes pointing to a zero function byte in the operand 2 table.
< >	Contents of the register specified in the instruction, not the number of the register itself; for example, < R_1 >.

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)
Add	RR	1A	AR	4.82
Add	RX	5A	A	9.65 + X
Add decimal	SS	FA	AP	<p><i>When signs are equal (true addition)</i></p> <p>If $N_1 < N_2$: $34.73 + 1.93N_1 + 2.41N_2 - 0.48L_1$ } +0.48SN - Y If $N_1 = N_2$: $33.28 + 4.34N_1$ } (see Note 1) If $N_1 > N_2$: $32.80 + 2.41N_1 + 1.93N_2$ }</p> <p><i>When signs are unequal (true subtraction, excluding overflow and recomplementing)</i></p> <p>If $N_1 < N_2$: $34.73 + 5.31N_2 - 1.45N_1 + 0.48L_1$ } +0.48SN - Y If $N_1 = N_2$: $33.28 + 4.34N_1$ } (see Note 1) If $N_1 > N_2$: $33.28 + 1.93N_1 + 1.93N_2 - 0.48L_2$ }</p>
Add halfword	RX	4A	AH	8.68 + X
Add logical	RR	1E	ALR	4.82
Add logical	RX	5E	AL	9.65 + X
Add normalized (extended)	RR	36	AXR	128.6
Add normalized (long)	RR	2A	ADR	65.9
Add normalized (long)	RX	6A	AD	66.9 + X
Add normalized (short)	RR	3A	AER	51.5
Add normalized (short)	RX	7A	AE	53.0 + X
Add unnormalized (long)	RR	2E	AWR	58.1
Add unnormalized (long)	RX	6E	AW	59.1 + X
Add unnormalized (short)	RR	3E	AUR	45.6
Add unnormalized (short)	RX	7E	AU	47.1 + X
AND	RR	14	NR	4.82
AND	RX	54	N	8.68 + X
AND	SI	94	NI	7.72 - S
AND	SS	D4	NC	12.54 + 1.93N - T
Branch and link	RR	05	BALR	DAT off, no branch: 8.68 DAT off, branch: 10.61 DAT on, 2K page size, no branch: 15.92 DAT on, 4K page size, no branch: 16.40 DAT on, 2K page size, branch: 17.37 DAT on, 4K page size, branch: 17.85 Subject of 'execute' instruction, no branch: 10.13 Subject of 'execute' instruction, branch: 12.06
Branch and link	RX	45	BAL	DAT off: 13.99 + X DAT on: 19.78 + X Subject of 'execute' instruction: 14.95 + X
Branch on condition	RR	07	BCR	No branch ($R_2 \neq 0$): 1.93 No branch ($R_2 = 0$): 2.40 Branch: 3.86
Branch on condition	RX	47	BC	No branch: 2.41 Branch, $X_2 = 0, B_2 = 0$: 4.34 Branch, $X_2 \neq 0, B_2 = 0$: 4.82 Branch, $X_2 = 0, B_2 \neq 0$: 5.31 Branch, $X_2 \neq 0, B_2 \neq 0$: 7.72
Branch on count	RR	06	BCTR	No branch, because $\langle R_1 \rangle = 0$: 6.27 No branch, because $R_2 = 0$: 6.75 Branch: 8.68
Branch on count	RX	46	BCT	No branch: 6.75 Branch: 10.13 + X
Branch on index high	RS	86	BXH	<p><i>No overflow in comparison</i></p> No branch (=): 16.40 + 0.48RD No branch (<): 17.37 + 0.48RD Branch (>): 21.23 + 0.48RD - S <p><i>Overflow in comparison</i></p> No branch (<): 18.33 + 0.48RD Branch (>): 20.74 + 0.48RD - S
Branch on index low or equal	RS	87	BXLE	<p><i>No overflow in comparison</i></p> Branch (=): 19.78 + 0.48RD - S Branch (<): 20.74 + 0.48RD - S No branch (>): 17.85 + 0.48RD

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)																																																																																					
				<p><i>Overflow in comparison</i> Branch (<): 20.26 + 0.48RD - S No branch (>): 17.85 + 0.48RD</p>																																																																																					
Compare	RR	19	CR	4.82																																																																																					
Compare	RX	59	C	9.65 + X																																																																																					
Compare and swap	RS	BA	CS	cc = 0, Op ₂ = (R ₁): 16.88 - S cc = 1, Op ₂ ≠ (R ₁): 13.99 - S																																																																																					
Compare decimal	SS	F9	CP	40.03 + 5.31DL + 0.96DS - Y + (see table)																																																																																					
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Conditions</th> <th colspan="2">SH=0</th> <th colspan="2">SH ≠ 0</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Signs Equal</th> <th>Signs Unequal</th> <th>Signs Equal</th> <th>Signs Unequal</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>cc = 0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1.45</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.96</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 1</td> <td>0.96</td> <td>1.45</td> <td>0.96</td> <td>1.45</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 2</td> <td>0.96</td> <td>1.45</td> <td>0.96</td> <td>1.45</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DS ≥ 2</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.96</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.96</td> </tr> <tr> <td>—</td> <td colspan="2">0</td> <td colspan="2">0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>N₁ ≠ N₂</td> <td colspan="4">4.34</td> </tr> <tr> <td>N₁ < N₂</td> <td colspan="4">1.44</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Conditions	SH=0		SH ≠ 0		Signs Equal	Signs Unequal	Signs Equal	Signs Unequal	cc = 0	0	1.45	0	0.96	cc = 1	0.96	1.45	0.96	1.45	cc = 2	0.96	1.45	0.96	1.45	DS ≥ 2	0	0.96	0	0.96	—	0		0.48		N ₁ ≠ N ₂	4.34				N ₁ < N ₂	1.44																																												
Conditions	SH=0		SH ≠ 0																																																																																						
	Signs Equal	Signs Unequal	Signs Equal	Signs Unequal																																																																																					
cc = 0	0	1.45	0	0.96																																																																																					
cc = 1	0.96	1.45	0.96	1.45																																																																																					
cc = 2	0.96	1.45	0.96	1.45																																																																																					
DS ≥ 2	0	0.96	0	0.96																																																																																					
—	0		0.48																																																																																						
N ₁ ≠ N ₂	4.34																																																																																								
N ₁ < N ₂	1.44																																																																																								
Compare double and swap	RS	BB	CDS	cc = 0, Op ₂ = (R ₁) (R ₁ + 1): 27.02 - S cc = 1, Op ₂ ≠ (R ₁) (R ₁ + 1): 24.12 - S																																																																																					
Compare halfword	RX	49	CH	9.17 + X																																																																																					
Compare logical	RR	15	CLR	Left halfword (Op ₁) ≠ left halfword (Op ₂): 3.86 Left halfword (Op ₁) = left halfword (Op ₂): 5.31																																																																																					
Compare logical	RX	55	CL	Left halfword (Op ₁) ≠ left halfword (Op ₂): 7.72 + X Left halfword (Op ₁) = left halfword (Op ₂): 9.17 + X																																																																																					
Compare logical	SI	95	CLI	7.24 - S																																																																																					
Compare logical	SS	D5	CLC	13.99 + 2.41C - 0.48K - 0.48F - 1.44L - W																																																																																					
Compare logical character under mask	RS	BD	CLM																																																																																						
				<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mask</th> <th>Time</th> <th>A</th> <th>B</th> <th>C</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0 (no comparison)</td> <td>7.24</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>13.02</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>13.50</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>14.00</td> <td>+1.93</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>12.55</td> <td>+1.45</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>12.55</td> <td>+6.75</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>12.55</td> <td>+7.24</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>12.55</td> <td>+7.72</td> <td>+1.93</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+1.45</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+6.75</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+7.24</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+7.72</td> <td>+1.93</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+2.41</td> <td>+1.45</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+2.41</td> <td>+6.75</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+2.41</td> <td>+7.24</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>F</td> <td>12.06</td> <td>+2.41</td> <td>+7.72</td> <td>+1.93</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>A is added only if the leftmost byte of Op₁ of the comparison is equal to the leftmost byte of Op₂. B is added only if the two leftmost bytes of Op₁ of the comparison are equal to the two leftmost bytes of Op₂. C is added only if the three leftmost bytes of Op₁ of the comparison are equal to the three leftmost bytes of Op₂.</p>	Mask	Time	A	B	C	0 (no comparison)	7.24				1	13.02				2	13.50				3	14.00	+1.93			4	12.55	+1.45			5	12.55	+6.75			6	12.55	+7.24			7	12.55	+7.72	+1.93		8	12.06	+1.45			9	12.06	+6.75			A	12.06	+7.24			B	12.06	+7.72	+1.93		C	12.06	+2.41	+1.45		D	12.06	+2.41	+6.75		E	12.06	+2.41	+7.24		F	12.06	+2.41	+7.72	+1.93
Mask	Time	A	B	C																																																																																					
0 (no comparison)	7.24																																																																																								
1	13.02																																																																																								
2	13.50																																																																																								
3	14.00	+1.93																																																																																							
4	12.55	+1.45																																																																																							
5	12.55	+6.75																																																																																							
6	12.55	+7.24																																																																																							
7	12.55	+7.72	+1.93																																																																																						
8	12.06	+1.45																																																																																							
9	12.06	+6.75																																																																																							
A	12.06	+7.24																																																																																							
B	12.06	+7.72	+1.93																																																																																						
C	12.06	+2.41	+1.45																																																																																						
D	12.06	+2.41	+6.75																																																																																						
E	12.06	+2.41	+7.24																																																																																						
F	12.06	+2.41	+7.72	+1.93																																																																																					
Compare logical (long)	RR	0F	CLCL	62.23 ± 2.89 + EM (622.06 + 626.08 (BM - 1)) + MM (5.31 + 2.41 IM) + EP (499.46 + 503.48 (BP - 1)) + MP (5.31 + 1.93 IP)																																																																																					
Compare (long)	RR	29	CDR	49.2																																																																																					
Compare (long)	RX	69	CD	50.2 + X																																																																																					
Compare (short)	RR	39	CER	39.3																																																																																					

Instruction	Format	Op code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)																																				
Compare (short)	RX	79	CE	40.8 + X																																				
Convert to binary	RX	4F	CVB	1.44CN + X + $\begin{cases} 71.9 \text{ if absolute value (decimal) of Op}_2 < 0,010,000,000 \\ 111.9 \text{ if absolute value (decimal) of Op}_2 < 2,140,000,000 \\ 114.8 \text{ if absolute value (decimal) of Op}_2 < 2,147,483,000 \\ 117.2 \text{ if absolute value (decimal) of Op}_2 < 2,147,483,648 \end{cases}$																																				
Convert to decimal	RX	4E	CVD	85.85 + 4.43CD + 0.305CD ² + 14.88CM + X ± 5% (see Note 2)																																				
Diagnose	SI	83	—	6.75 — S																																				
Divide	RR	1D	DR	241.2FD (See Note 1)																																				
Divide	RX	5D	D	245.5FD + X (See Note 1)																																				
Divide decimal	SS	FD	DP	6.5 + 76.7N ₁ — 80.6N ₂ + 57.5N ₂ (N ₁ — N ₂) — Y (See Note 1)																																				
Divide (long)	RR	2D	DDR	632.0																																				
Divide (long)	RX	6D	DD	641.6																																				
Divide (short)	RR	3D	DER	225.7																																				
Divide (short)	RX	7D	DE	231.0 + X																																				
Edit	SS	DE	ED	} 22.77 + 7.24MC + 9.65FS + 16.40ds + 2.92SG + 14.96AM + if DAT on (6.73 + 3.82MC + 3.82FS + 7.30ds + 1.71SG) — Y (See Note 1)																																				
Edit and mark	SS	DF	EDMK																																					
Exclusive OR	RR	17	XR	4.82																																				
Exclusive OR	RX	57	X	8.68 + X																																				
Exclusive OR	SI	97	XI	7.72 — S																																				
Exclusive OR	SS	D7	XC	13.02 + 1.93N — 0.48L — T																																				
Execute	RX	44	EX	DAT 4K page size: 52.12 + 0.96EX ₁ — 19.82EX ₂ + X DAT 2K page size: 51.64 + 0.96EX ₁ — 19.82EX ₂ + X No DAT: 43.44 + 0.96EX ₁ — 19.82EX ₂ + X																																				
Halt device	SI	9E	HDV	} 87.5 — KS + CI + I/F																																				
Halt I/O	SI	9E	HIO																																					
Halve (long)	RR	24	HDR	44.0																																				
Halve (short)	RR	34	HER	33.0																																				
Insert character	RX	43	IC	7.72 + X																																				
Insert characters under mask	RS	BF	ICM	<table border="0"> <tr> <td><i>Mask</i></td> <td><i>Time</i></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>6.75</td> <td rowspan="16">} + 1.45 (if cc ≠ 0) — S</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>15.44</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>15.92</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>15.44</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>15.44</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>21.70</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>15.44</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>21.70</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>15.44</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>21.70</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F</td> <td>21.22</td> </tr> </table>	<i>Mask</i>	<i>Time</i>		0	6.75	} + 1.45 (if cc ≠ 0) — S	1	15.44	2	15.92	3	15.44	4	15.44	5	21.22	6	21.70	7	21.22	8	15.44	9	21.22	A	21.70	B	21.22	C	15.44	D	21.22	E	21.70	F	21.22
<i>Mask</i>	<i>Time</i>																																							
0	6.75	} + 1.45 (if cc ≠ 0) — S																																						
1	15.44																																							
2	15.92																																							
3	15.44																																							
4	15.44																																							
5	21.22																																							
6	21.70																																							
7	21.22																																							
8	15.44																																							
9	21.22																																							
A	21.70																																							
B	21.22																																							
C	15.44																																							
D	21.22																																							
E	21.70																																							
F	21.22																																							
Insert storage key	RR	09	ISK	BC mode: 11.10 EC mode: 11.58																																				
Load	RR	18	LR	3.86																																				
Load	RX	58	L	7.72 + X																																				
Load address	RX	41	LA	No indexing: 4.34 Single indexing: 6.75 Double indexing: 8.68																																				

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)																														
Load and test	RR	12	LTR	3.86																														
Load and test (long)	RR	22	LTDR	cc = 0: 12.06 cc = 1: 12.54 cc = 2: 13.02																														
Load and test (short)	RR	32	LTER	cc = 0: 9.16 cc = 1: 9.64 cc = 2: 10.13																														
Load complement	RR	13	LCR	4.34																														
Load complement (long)	RR	23	LCDR	cc = 0: 13.50 cc = 1: 13.49 cc = 2: 14.47																														
Load complement (short)	RR	33	LCER	cc = 0: 10.61 cc = 1: 11.09 cc = 2: 11.58																														
Load control	RS	B7	LCTL	BC mode: 24.12 + 3.38R - S EC mode, DAT off: 27.01 + 2.89J + 3.38R - S EC mode, DAT on: 46.31 + 0.96P + 1.45XS + 2.89J + 3.38R - S																														
Load halfword	RX	48	LH	Op ₂ ≥ 0: 7.72 + X Op ₂ < 0: 8.20 + X																														
Load (long)	RR	28	LDR	8.68																														
Load (long)	RX	68	LD	10.61 + X																														
Load multiple	RS	98	LM	4.82 + 3.38 R - S																														
Load negative	RR	11	LNR	R ₂ < 0: 4.82 R ₂ ≥ 0: 5.31																														
Load negative (long)	RR	21	LNDR	cc = 0: 12.54 cc = 1: 13.02																														
Load negative (short)	RR	31	LNER	cc = 0: 9.65 cc = 1: 10.13																														
Load positive	RR	10	LPR	R ₂ ≥ 0: 4.82 R ₂ < 0: 5.31																														
Load positive (long)	RR	20	LPDR	cc = 0: 12.54 cc = 1: 13.02																														
Load positive (short)	RR	30	LPER	cc = 0: 9.65 cc = 1: 10.13																														
Load PSW	SI	82	LPSW	BC PSW to be loaded: 29.91 EC PSW to be loaded: 41.00 + 1.93DT + 2.89J - S																														
Load real address	RX	B1	LRA	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Segment/page size</th> <th>64K/2K</th> <th>64K/4K</th> <th>1M/2K</th> <th>1M/4K</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>cc = 0, translation OK</td> <td>57.40</td> <td>57.88</td> <td>55.01</td> <td>55.50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 1, segment table entry invalid bit on</td> <td>35.70</td> <td>35.70</td> <td>31.85</td> <td>31.85</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 2, page table entry invalid bit on</td> <td>55.95</td> <td>56.44</td> <td>53.57</td> <td>54.05</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 3, segment table entry outside table</td> <td>29.42</td> <td>29.42</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cc = 3, page table entry outside table</td> <td>48.24</td> <td>48.72</td> <td>45.85</td> <td>46.33</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Segment/page size	64K/2K	64K/4K	1M/2K	1M/4K	cc = 0, translation OK	57.40	57.88	55.01	55.50	cc = 1, segment table entry invalid bit on	35.70	35.70	31.85	31.85	cc = 2, page table entry invalid bit on	55.95	56.44	53.57	54.05	cc = 3, segment table entry outside table	29.42	29.42	-	-	cc = 3, page table entry outside table	48.24	48.72	45.85	46.33
Segment/page size	64K/2K	64K/4K	1M/2K	1M/4K																														
cc = 0, translation OK	57.40	57.88	55.01	55.50																														
cc = 1, segment table entry invalid bit on	35.70	35.70	31.85	31.85																														
cc = 2, page table entry invalid bit on	55.95	56.44	53.57	54.05																														
cc = 3, segment table entry outside table	29.42	29.42	-	-																														
cc = 3, page table entry outside table	48.24	48.72	45.85	46.33																														
Load rounded (extended operand, long result)	RR	25	LRDR	17.4																														
Load rounded (long operand, short result)	RR	35	LRER	11.2																														
Load (short)	RR	38	LER	6.27																														
Load (short)	RX	78	LE	8.68 + X																														
Monitor call	SI	AF	MC	No interruption: 5.79 Interruption: 33.26 + timing of SVC + 3.38 (R ₁ ≠ 0) - 6.53 (subject of 'execute' instruction)																														
Move	SI	92	MVI	6.75 - S																														
Move	SS	D2	MVC	13.02 + 1.45N - 0.48L - T																														
Move (long)	RR	OE	MVCL	cc = 0, 1, 2: 68.40 ± 2.89 + EM (375.85 + 397.87 (BM-1)) + MM (3.86 + 1.45 IM) + EP (251.24 + 255.26 (BP - 1)) + 0.97IP cc = 3: 43.41 ± 2.41																														

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing of Timing Formula (in Microseconds)
Move numerics	SS	D1	MVN	$13.02 + 3.86N - 0.48L - T$
Move with offset	SS	F1	MVO	$N_1 < N_2: 20.74 + 3.38N_1 - 0.48L_1 - Y$ $N_1 = N_2: 20.26 + 3.38N_2 - 0.48L_1 - Y$ $N_1 > N_2: 20.74 + 0.96N_1 + 2.41N_2 - 0.48L_1 - Y$
Move zones	SS	D3	MVZ	$13.02 + 3.86N - 0.48L - T$
Multiply	RR	1C	MR	Number of leading zero bytes in multiplier is 0: 130.8 1: 108.5 2: 77.4 3: 51.2 } + 2.92BO + X (See Note 1)
Multiply	RX	5C	M	Number of leading zero bytes in multiplier is 0: 134.2 1: 111.9 2: 80.8 3: 54.6 } + 2.92BO + X (See Note 1)
Multiply decimal	SS	FC	MP	$28.2 + 24.1N_1 - 16.4N_2 + 26.0N_2 (N_1 - N_2) - Y$ (See Note 1)
Multiply (extended)	RR	26	MXR	$217.6 + 53.7DMR$
Multiply halfword	RX	4C	MH	Number of leading zero bytes in multiplier is 0: 58.2 1: 40.2 } + 1.91BO + X (See Note 1)
Multiply (long)	RR	2C	MDR	$124.8 + 31.0DMR$
Multiply (long)	RX	6C	MD	$135.5 + 31.0DMR$
Multiply (long operand, extended result)	RR	27	MXDR	$147.9 + 31.0DMR$
Multiply (long operand, extended result)	RX	67	MXD	$163.8 + 31.0DMR + X$
Multiply (short)	RR	3C	MER	$96.9 + 15.8DMR$
Multiply (short)	RX	7C	ME	$103.2 + 15.8DMR$
OR	RR	16	OR	4.82
OR	RX	56	O	$8.68 + X$
OR	SI	96	OI	$7.72 - S$
OR	SS	D6	OC	$13.02 + 1.92N - 0.48L - T$
Pack	SS	F2	PACK	$N_2 \geq 2N_1 - 1: 17.36 + 5.31N_1 - 0.48L_1 - Y$ $N_2 < 2N_1 - 1, N_2 \text{ odd}: 20.53 + 0.96N_1 + 2.17N_2 - 0.48L_1 - Y$ $N_2 < 2N_1 - 1, N_2 \text{ even}: 19.78 + 0.96N_1 + 2.17N_2 - 0.48L_1 - Y$
Purge TLB	SI	B20D	PTLB	BC: 29.43 EC, DAT off: $32.32 + 2.89J$ EC, DAT on: $41.49 + 2.89J + 0.96P$
Reset reference bit	SI	B213	RRB	Base register specified: 10.13 No base register specified: 8.20
Set clock	SI	B204	SCK	TOD secure: 12.06 - S Comparator < TOD clock: 33.78 Comparator \geq TOD clock: 41.50 } + 2.40TE - S
Set clock comparator	SI	B206	SCKC	Comparator < TOD clock: 29.92 - S Comparator \geq TOD clock: 37.64 - S
Set CPU timer	SI	B208	SPT	$20.20 - S$
Set program mask	RR	04	SPM	4.82
Set storage key	RR	08	SSK	9.16
Set system mask	SI	80	SSM	BC: 12.06 - S EC, PSW bit 5 unchanged: 19.30 EC, PSW bit 5 reset (DAT off): 41.88 EC, PSW bit 5 set (DAT on): 34.73 } + 2.89J + 0.48P - S

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)																																																																				
Shift and round decimal	SS	F0	SRP	Left shift: $47.0 + 8.6N$ Right shift: $43.3 + 9.2N$ (See Note 1) } - Y																																																																				
				<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">Shift Amount</th> <th rowspan="2">Operand Negative</th> <th rowspan="2">$B_2 \neq 0$</th> </tr> <tr> <th>0-15</th> <th>16-31</th> <th>32-47</th> <th>48-63</th> <th>64 and up</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Shift left double</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8F</td> <td>SLDA</td> <td>31.83 36.17 41.48 45.82 31.83</td> <td>- 0.48</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift left double logical</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8D</td> <td>SLDL</td> <td>21.22 24.60 28.93 32.31 21.22</td> <td>-</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift left single</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8B</td> <td>SLA</td> <td>22.67 26.53 28.94 28.94 22.67</td> <td>- 0.48</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift left single logical</td> <td>RS</td> <td>89</td> <td>SLL</td> <td>12.06 14.95 16.40 16.40 12.06</td> <td>-</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift right double</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8E</td> <td>SRDA</td> <td>24.11 27.97 32.80 36.65 24.11</td> <td>- 0.48</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift right double logical</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8C</td> <td>SRDL</td> <td>23.15 27.01 31.83 35.69 23.15</td> <td>-</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift right single</td> <td>RS</td> <td>8A</td> <td>SRA</td> <td>14.95 18.81 20.74 20.74 14.95</td> <td>- 0.48</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift right single logical</td> <td>RS</td> <td>88</td> <td>SRL</td> <td>13.99 17.85 19.77 19.77 13.99</td> <td>-</td> <td>+ 0.48</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Shift Amount					Operand Negative	$B_2 \neq 0$	0-15	16-31	32-47	48-63	64 and up	Shift left double	RS	8F	SLDA	31.83 36.17 41.48 45.82 31.83	- 0.48	+ 0.48	Shift left double logical	RS	8D	SLDL	21.22 24.60 28.93 32.31 21.22	-	+ 0.48	Shift left single	RS	8B	SLA	22.67 26.53 28.94 28.94 22.67	- 0.48	+ 0.48	Shift left single logical	RS	89	SLL	12.06 14.95 16.40 16.40 12.06	-	+ 0.48	Shift right double	RS	8E	SRDA	24.11 27.97 32.80 36.65 24.11	- 0.48	+ 0.48	Shift right double logical	RS	8C	SRDL	23.15 27.01 31.83 35.69 23.15	-	+ 0.48	Shift right single	RS	8A	SRA	14.95 18.81 20.74 20.74 14.95	- 0.48	+ 0.48	Shift right single logical	RS	88	SRL	13.99 17.85 19.77 19.77 13.99	-	+ 0.48
Shift Amount					Operand Negative	$B_2 \neq 0$																																																																		
0-15	16-31	32-47	48-63	64 and up																																																																				
Shift left double	RS	8F	SLDA	31.83 36.17 41.48 45.82 31.83	- 0.48	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift left double logical	RS	8D	SLDL	21.22 24.60 28.93 32.31 21.22	-	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift left single	RS	8B	SLA	22.67 26.53 28.94 28.94 22.67	- 0.48	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift left single logical	RS	89	SLL	12.06 14.95 16.40 16.40 12.06	-	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift right double	RS	8E	SRDA	24.11 27.97 32.80 36.65 24.11	- 0.48	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift right double logical	RS	8C	SRDL	23.15 27.01 31.83 35.69 23.15	-	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift right single	RS	8A	SRA	14.95 18.81 20.74 20.74 14.95	- 0.48	+ 0.48																																																																		
Shift right single logical	RS	88	SRL	13.99 17.85 19.77 19.77 13.99	-	+ 0.48																																																																		
Start I/O	SI	9C	SIO	$72.5 - KS + CI + I/F$																																																																				
Store	RX	50	ST	$8.20 + X$																																																																				
Store and AND system mask	SI	AC	STNSM	BC: $14.95 - S$ EC, PSW bit 5 unchanged: 21.22 EC, PSW bit 5 reset (DAT off): 43.41 } + 2.89J + 0.48P - S																																																																				
Store and OR system mask	SI	AD	STOSM	BC: $14.95 - S$ EC, PSW bit 5 unchanged: 21.22 EC, PSW bit 5 set (DAT on): 36.18 } + 2.89J + 0.48P - S																																																																				
Store clock comparator	SI	B207	STCKC	$16.41 - S$																																																																				
Store CPU timer	SI	B209	STPT	$23.16 - S$																																																																				
Store channel ID	SI	B203	STIDC	$cc = 3$ due to invalid channel address Channel address 0 Card I/O/printer attachment: 18.80 ICA: 20.75 Multiplexer channel: 20.75 Channel addresses 1, 3, 4, and 5 to 16: 14.00 } - KS $cc = 0$ (channel ID stored) Channel address 0 Card I/O printer attachment: 22.19 Console attachment: 31.36 ICA: 25.09 Multiplexer channel: 29.42 Channel address 1: 23.64 Channel address 2: 23.64 } - KS																																																																				
Store character	RX	42	STC	$7.24 + X$																																																																				
Store character under mask	RS	BE	STCM	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mask</th> <th colspan="2">Address of Op₂</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>even</th> <th>odd</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>5.79</td><td>5.79</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>11.58</td><td>11.58</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>12.06</td><td>12.06</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>11.58</td><td>12.54</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>12.06</td><td>12.06</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>13.51</td><td>13.51</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>13.99</td><td>13.99</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>14.47</td><td>13.51</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>12.54</td><td>12.54</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>13.99</td><td>13.99</td></tr> <tr><td>A</td><td>14.47</td><td>14.47</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>14.95</td><td>13.99</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>12.06</td><td>13.02</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>13.51</td><td>14.47</td></tr> <tr><td>E</td><td>13.99</td><td>14.95</td></tr> <tr><td>F</td><td>13.51</td><td>15.44</td></tr> </tbody> </table> } - S	Mask	Address of Op ₂			even	odd	0	5.79	5.79	1	11.58	11.58	2	12.06	12.06	3	11.58	12.54	4	12.06	12.06	5	13.51	13.51	6	13.99	13.99	7	14.47	13.51	8	12.54	12.54	9	13.99	13.99	A	14.47	14.47	B	14.95	13.99	C	12.06	13.02	D	13.51	14.47	E	13.99	14.95	F	13.51	15.44														
Mask	Address of Op ₂																																																																							
	even	odd																																																																						
0	5.79	5.79																																																																						
1	11.58	11.58																																																																						
2	12.06	12.06																																																																						
3	11.58	12.54																																																																						
4	12.06	12.06																																																																						
5	13.51	13.51																																																																						
6	13.99	13.99																																																																						
7	14.47	13.51																																																																						
8	12.54	12.54																																																																						
9	13.99	13.99																																																																						
A	14.47	14.47																																																																						
B	14.95	13.99																																																																						
C	12.06	13.02																																																																						
D	13.51	14.47																																																																						
E	13.99	14.95																																																																						
F	13.51	15.44																																																																						
Store clock	SI	B205	STCK	Not set/set state: $19.30 - S$ Error state: $18.81 - S$																																																																				
Store control	RS	B6	STCTL	$7.72 + 3.38R - S$																																																																				
Store CPU ID	SI	B202	STIDP	$17.86 - S$																																																																				
Store halfword	RX	40	STH	$7.24 + X$																																																																				
Store (long)	RX	60	STD	$11.58 + X$																																																																				

Instruction	Format	Op Code	Mnemonic	Timing or Timing Formula (in Microseconds)
Store multiple	RS	90	STM	4.82 + 3.38R - S
Store (short)	RX	70	STE	9.17 + X
Subtract	RR	1B	SR	4.82
Subtract	RX	5B	S	9.65 + X
Subtract decimal	SS	FB	SP	<p><i>Signs equal (true subtraction), overflow and recomplementing excluded</i></p> $\left. \begin{array}{l} N_1 < N_2: 35.21 + 5.31N_2 - 1.45N_1 + 0.48L_1 \\ N_1 = N_2: 33.76 + 4.34N_1 \\ N_1 > N_2: 33.76 + 1.93N_1 + 1.93N_2 - 0.48L_2 \end{array} \right\} + 0.48SN - Y$ <p><i>Signs unequal (true addition)</i></p> $\left. \begin{array}{l} N_1 < N_2: 35.21 + 1.93N_1 + 2.41N_2 - 0.48L_1 \\ N_1 = N_2: 33.76 + 4.34N_1 \\ N_1 > N_2: 33.28 + 2.41N_1 + 1.93N_2 \end{array} \right\} + 0.48SN - Y$ <p>(See Note 1)</p>
Subtract halfword	RX	4B	SH	9.17 + X
Subtract logical	RR	1F	SLR	4.82
Subtract logical	RX	5F	SL	9.65 + X
Subtract normalized (extended)	RR	37	SXR	129.1
Subtract normalized (long)	RR	2B	SDR	67.0
Subtract normalized (long)	RR	6B	SD	68.0 + X
Subtract normalized (short)	RR	3B	SER	52.0
Subtract normalized (short)	RX	7B	SE	53.9 + X
Subtract unnormalized (long)	RR	2F	SWR	58.5
Subtract unnormalized (long)	RX	6F	SW	59.5 + X
Subtract unnormalized (short)	RR	3F	SUR	46.1
Subtract unnormalized (short)	RX	7F	SU	48.0 + X
Supervisor call	RR	0A	SVC	<p><i>Current PSW Subject of 'execute'</i></p> $48.24 + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 17.30 \text{ if DAT off} \\ 9.21 \text{ if DAT 2K page size} \\ 8.72 \text{ if DAT 4K page size} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0.48 \text{ if EC} \\ 8.68 \text{ if DAT 2K page size} \\ 9.17 \text{ if DAT 4K page size} \end{array} \right\}$ <p><i>SVC New PSW</i></p> $+ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 12.06 \text{ if EC, DAT off} \\ 13.99 \text{ if DAT on} \end{array} \right\} + 2.89J$
Test and set	SI	93	TS	7.72 - S
Test channel	SI	9F	TCH	Channel 0: 17.8 - KS + MI Channel 1: 71.6 - KS + MI Channel 2: 52.0 - KS + MI
Test I/O	SI	9D	TIO	68.0 - KS + CI + I/F
Test under mask	SI	91	TM	7.72 - S
Translate	SS	DC	TR	DAT off: 13.99 + 3.86N - T DAT on: 22.69 + 7.24N - T
Translate and test	SS	DD	TRT	17.36 + 5.31ZT + 13.51RT - T
Unpack	SS	F3	UNPK	$\left. \begin{array}{l} N_1 = 1: 22.19 \\ N_2 \geq \frac{1}{2}(N_1 + 1), N_1 \text{ odd}: 21.22 + 1.93N_1 \\ N_2 \geq \frac{1}{2}(N_1 + 2), N_1 \text{ even}: 21.70 + 1.93N_1 \\ N_2 < \frac{1}{2}(N_1 + 1): 20.74 + 0.96N_1 + 1.93N_2 \end{array} \right\} - Y$
Zero and add	SS	F8	ZAP	$\left. \begin{array}{l} N_1 \geq N_2: 26.04 + 0.96N_1 + 1.92N_2 + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0.48 \text{ if cc} = 1 \\ 3.86 \text{ if cc} = 0 \\ \text{and Op}_2 = -0 \end{array} \right\} - 1.44L_1 - Y \\ N_1 < N_2: 30.66 + 0.48N_1 + 2.41N_2 + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 0.48 \text{ if cc} = 1 \\ 3.86 \text{ if cc} = 0 \\ \text{and Op}_2 = -0 \end{array} \right\} - 0.96L_1 \end{array} \right\}$ <p>- 0.96PZ - 0.48DF - Y</p>

Notes:

1. The timings are weighted to provide realistic estimates for actual values that could be expected in typical applications.
2. The variation depends on the distribution of zero- and one-bits following the leading one-bit in R₁.

Appendix C. Conversion from 2311-1 to 3340; Job Example

The conversion consists of three jobs:

1. Initialize 3340.
2. Clear disk, and preformat each 2311 volume.
3. Initialize 2311.

The job control statements for each job are given in the following paragraphs.

INITIALIZE 3340

Prerequisite: A DOS release providing 3340 device support must be used.

Job Control Statements

The following statements are required:

```
// JOB INIT 3340
// ASSGN SYS000, X'160'
// EXEC INTDK
// UID IQ
// VTOC STANDARD (see Note)
VOL1VOL160
// END
/&
```

Note: VTOC may be on another cylinder provided that the cylinder is not used for mapping an emulated device.

CLEAR DISK AND PREFORMAT 3340

Prerequisite: A DOS release providing 3340 device support must be used.

Job Control Statements

The following statements are required:

```
// JOB CLEAR 3340 FOR 2311 USE (190)
```

```
// ASSGN SYS012,X'160'
// DLBL UOUT, 'VOL190', 99/365
// EXTENT SYS012, VOL160, 1, 0, 0012, 1020
```

Note: The underscored entry in the statement above is the relative track start address – the 3340 track where the 2311 volume begins. The individual track addresses are shown in Figure 56. Clear and preformat each 2311 volume by a separate run, using the same statements but the applicable relative track address.

```
// EXEC CLRDK
// UCL B=(K=0, D=3737), X'FF', OY, E=(3340)
// END
/&
```

Note: A 2314/3340 conversion is conducted in the same way except that the record length must be D=7474, and the relative offset to the next volume (which is 1020 for the 2311) is 4068 for the 2314.

INITIALIZE 2311

Prerequisite: The compatibility feature must be enabled, that is, one or more 2311 buffers must be assigned via the program load display.

Job Control Statements

The following statements are required:

```
// JOB INIT 2311
// ASSGN SYS000,X'190'
// EXEC INTD
// UID IA, C1
// VTOC STANDARD
// VOL1VOL190
// END
/&
```


Appendix D. Transfer of Old DOS Releases (3410/3411 Compatibility)

Note: The procedure described in this Appendix is only needed when the Model 115 includes a magnetic tape subsystem and uses a release of DOS which cannot handle the 'rewind unload' command for 3410/3411 tape units.

When the 2311/3340 or 2314/3340 compatibility feature is installed, and the volumes have been initialized, cleared, and re-stored as described in Appendix C, older DOS releases (such as release 26.0) will operate error/free without change. However, the support which was provided for previously-used tape units may not be able to handle the 'rewind unload' command for 3410/3411 tape units. The following text describes a procedure for achieving full compatibility.

PREPARING AND READING IN THE CONTROL CARDS

The following steps must be performed before re-storing the old DOS release onto emulated 2311-1 or 2314 drives.

1. Two transient phases from the core image library of DOS release 26.2 must be punched onto cards, and a job control statement prepared, as follows:

```
// JOB PUNCH (at least one blank after the slashes)
// EXEC CSERV
   DSPCH $$ANERRD, $$ANERRF
/&
```

This gives a card deck containing transients \$\$ANERRD and \$\$ANERRF.

2. Prepare an REP card, as follows:
Column 1: multipunches 12, 2, 9
Columns 2 to 4: punch in REP (alphabetic punching)
Columns 7 to 12: 0000EC
Columns 14 to 20: 0014780

3. Insert the REP card in front of the END card (sequence number 0011) of transient \$\$ANERRF.
4. Catalog the two transient phases (including the REP card) into the old DOS release that is to be used as the operating system. To do this, prepare a deck of job control cards (to include the decks already prepared) in the sequence shown below:

```
// JOB CATAL (at least one blank after slashes)
// OPTION CATAL
   INCLUDE (at least one blank prior to "include")
   Card decks $$ANERRD and $$ANERRF (with REP
   card) follow here
/*
// EXEC LNKEDT
/*
/&
```

Read the whole card deck into the DOS release, then re-store the operating system onto the emulated 2311-1 or 2314 drives.

TESTING

1. Load magnetic tape on one of the tape drives so that this drive is ready.
2. Enter the following operator command through the console keyboard:
MTC RUN, X'280' (or 281, whichever drive has the tape loaded)
3. If the tape now runs and no error message is given, the old DOS release is now fully compatible with the 3410/3411 tape units.

Appendix E. Definitions

ABBREVIATIONS

ACK	Acknowledgement (positive)	in.	Inch
ACU	Automatic calling unit	I/O	Input/output
ALU	Arithmetic and logic unit	IOP	Input/output processor
ASCII	American National Standard Code for Information Interchange	IPL	Initial program load
		IPU	Instruction processing unit
		ITB	Intermediate text block
		KL	Key length
BC	Basic control	LF	Line feed
BCC	Block check character	LRC	Longitudinal redundancy check
BCD	Binary-coded decimal		
BKWD	Backward		
bpi	Bits per inch		
BSC	Binary synchronous communication	MFCM	Multi-function Card Machine
		MFCU	Multi-function Card Unit
		MIP	Machine instruction processor
CAW	Channel address word	mm	Millimeter
CCITT	Comité Consultatif International Téléphonique et Télégraphique	ms	Millisecond
		MSC	Main storage controller
CCW	Channel command word		
CD	Chained data		
CE	Customer engineer	NAK	Negative acknowledgement
CPU	Central processing unit	NL	New line
CSW	Channel status word	NPRO	Non-process run-out
		NRZI	Non-return-to-zero inverted
		ns	Nanosecond
DAT	Dynamic address translation	OLSEP	On-line stand-alone executive program
DIL	Do interpretive loop	OLT	On-line test
DL	Data length	OMR	Optical mark read
DLE	Data link escape	Op	Operation
DOS	Disk operating system		
EBCDIC	Extended binary-coded decimal-interchange code	PCI	Program-controlled interruption
EC	Extended control	PE	Phase encoded
EIB	Error index byte	PER	Program event recording
ENQ	Enquiry	PSW	Program status word
EOA	End of address	PTTC	Paper tape transmission code
EOB	End of block		
EOM	End of message		
EON	End of number	RCE	Read column eliminate
EOT	End of tape	RPQ	Request for price quotation
EOT	End of transmission	RVI	Reverse interruption
ERP	Error recovery procedure		
ETB	End of text block		
ETX	End of text	SC	Solar cell
		SLI	Suppress length indication
		SOH	Start of heading
Hex	Hexadecimal	STX	Start of text
		SVP	Service processor
		SYN	Synchronization
ICA	Integrated Communications Adapter		
ID	Identity	TIC	Transfer in channel
IDAL	Indirect data address list	TLB	Translation lookaside buffer
IDAW	Indirect data address word	TOD	Time-of-day
ILT	In-line test	TU	Tape unit
IMPL	Initial microprogram load		

UCW	Unit control word
UCS	Universal character set
μ s	Microsecond
VRC	Vertical redundancy check
WACK	Wait before transmit

GLOSSARY

Address Translation: The process of changing the address of an item of data or an instruction from its virtual address to its real storage address. See also *dynamic address translation*.

Basic Control (BC) Mode: A mode in which the features of a System/360 computing system and some additional System/370 features, such as new machine instructions, are operational on a System/370 computing system. See also *extended control (EC) mode*.

Bootstrap Program: A small microprogram in the service processor which starts the SVP to the point where it can load its own *main* microprogram from the console file.

Burst Mode: An operating mode in which the operation of a high-speed I/O device excludes all other I/O operations on a given input/output processor.

Control Registers: A set of registers used for operating system control of relocation, priority interruption, program event recording, error recovery, and masking operations.

Control Station: The station (usually a CPU) in a multipoint data communications system that controls network traffic by means of polling and selection. On a centralized multipoint network, tributary stations can communicate *only* with the control station, when polled or selected by the control station.

Control Storage: An area in a subprocessor where the microprogram is stored.

Cursor: A movable marker on the Model 115's video display, used to indicate the position of the next character to be entered on the screen.

Dynamic Address Translation: (1) The change of a virtual storage address to a real storage address during execution of an instruction. See also *address translation*. (2) A hardware feature that performs the translation.

Extended Control (EC) Mode: A mode in which all the features of a System/370 computing system, including dynamic address translation, are operational. See also *basic control (BC) mode*.

Front End: Electronic circuitry which connects an I/O device or a control unit to an input/output processor.

Hexadecimal: A number system that uses the equivalent of decimal number 16 as a base.

Input/Output Interface: The interconnection between I/O channels and different types of I/O devices.

Input/Output Processor: A subprocessor which, after initiation by the instruction processing unit, exerts complete control over I/O devices by means of its circuitry and microprogram logic, and operates in fully overlapping mode with the instruction processing unit and other input/output processors.

Instruction Processing Unit (IPU): A subprocessor which fetches instructions from main storage, processes them, and returns the results to main storage. It also analyzes I/O instructions, selects input/output processors, and handles I/O interruptions.

Integrated Adapter (or Attachment): A device which allows I/O devices to be attached to the system without a standard input/output interface.

Machine Instruction Processor (MIP): The MIP is a subprocessor of the Model 115 which carries out the instruction processing, selects input/output processors and handles interruptions. The MIP also incorporates the direct disk attachment.

Main Storage Controller: A subprocessor which controls all traffic to and from main storage, and keeps and updates the address registers.

Microinstruction: A basic or elementary machine instruction. Each program, each channel routine, and so on, consists of sequences of microinstructions.

Microprogram: A sequence of microinstructions, also termed a *microroutine*.

Modem: Contraction of *modulator/demodulator*. A device that converts digital dc signals into frequency-encoded signals to allow transmission over telephone lines. It also reconverts frequency-encoded signals received from a remote station into digital dc signals. In some countries, the term is applied to devices that have the functions of a data set and is considered synonymous with *data set*.

Momentary Key: A key which causes only one character entry per key depression regardless of how long the key is held down.

Multiplex: To interleave or simultaneously transmit two or more messages on a single channel.

Multipoint Network: A line or circuit that interconnects several stations in a data communications system.

Page: A fixed-length block of instructions, data, or both, that can be transferred between real storage and external page storage.

Page Table: A table that indicates whether or not a page is in real storage and correlates virtual addresses with real storage addresses.

Page Translation Exception: A program interruption that occurs when a virtual address cannot be translated by the hardware because the invalid bit in the page table entry for that address is set. See also *segment translation exception*.

Program Event Recording (PER): A hardware feature used to assist in debugging programs by detecting program events.

Real Address: The address of a location in real storage.

Real Storage: The storage of a System/370 computing system from which the central processing unit can directly obtain instructions and data, and to which it can directly return results.

Segment: A continuous area of virtual storage, which is allocated to a job or system task.

Segment Table: A table used in dynamic address translation to control user access to virtual storage segments. Each entry indicates the length, location, and availability of a corresponding page table.

Segment Translation Exception: A program interruption that occurs when a virtual address cannot be translated by the hardware because the invalid bit in the segment table entry for that address is set. See also *page translation exception*.

Service Processor: A subprocessor which loads programs, initializes the system, monitors for and logs errors, and handles the manual control of the system.

Subprocessor: One of a number of independent Model 115 control processors, which have their own clocking devices, storages, and controls, and which execute specific tasks such as processing instructions or servicing I/O devices. The subprocessors minimize interference between control and I/O operations in the system. The subprocessors are the main storage controller, the machine instruction processor, the service processor, and the input/output processors.

Tag Line: Defines the nature of information being transmitted over a bus.

Tributary Station: In a centralized multipoint data communications system, a station, other than the control station, that can communicate only with the control station when polled or selected by the control station.

Typamatic Key: A key that causes a single character entry when briefly depressed, and repetitive character entry as long as it is held down.

Virtual Address: An address which refers to virtual storage and must, therefore, be translated into a real storage address when it is used.

Virtual Storage: Addressable space that appears to the user as real storage, from which instructions and data are mapped into real storage locations. The size of virtual storage is limited by the addressing scheme of the computing system and by the amount of auxiliary storage available, rather than by the actual number of real storage locations.

Index

Note: Where more than one page reference is given, the major reference is first.

A

- abbreviations 261
- adapter, IBM terminal control type 1 (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
- adapter, IBM terminal control type 2 (*see* IBM terminal control type 2)
- adapter, telegraph terminal control type 1 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
- address compare display 62
- 'address prepare' command, BSC terminals 234
- address translation, definition 262,12
- addresses
 - byte 16,13
 - disk, 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 143
 - "dummy" device 83
 - failing storage 39
 - input/output devices 37
 - on byte-multiplexer channel 105
 - on channel 0 103
 - page 15,13
 - program event 35
 - real 16,13
 - segment 14,13
 - translation exception 35
 - virtual 13
- addressing
 - disk, 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 143
 - IBM terminals, type 1
 - command 205
 - 1050 Data Communication System 206
 - 1060 Data Communication System 207
 - 2740 terminal 208
 - IBM terminals, type 2
 - commands 213
 - 1030 Data Collection System 214
 - I/O devices in channel 0 103
 - telegraph terminals, type 1
 - AT & T 83B2/83B3 218
 - commands 217
 - Western Union Plan 115A 218
- alphameric keys 50
- alter/display mode 66
- American Telephone and Telegraph Company terminals 216
- ASCII code in BSC 248
- assignments, main storage 32 to 40
- AT & T terminals 216
- attachments
 - integrated (*see* input/output devices)
 - line (*see* integrated communications adapter)
- attention identifier, video display 195
- attribute character, video display 195
- automatic reference recording 98

B

- backspace commands
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 159
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.4
- backspace key, console keyboard 52
- backup bit 38
- basic control mode (*see* BC mode)
- Baudot code 216
- BC (basic control) mode
 - definition 262
 - PSW 19
- binary synchronous communication (*see* BSC control)
- block multiplexing
 - control 22
 - in 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 145
 - in 2311-1, 2314/3340 Series Compatibility feature 82
- bootstrap program, definition 262
- BSC (binary synchronous communication) control
 - 'address prepare' command 234
 - characteristics 230
 - commands
 - command codes 231
 - 'dial' 235
 - 'disable' 233
 - 'enable' 233
 - polling 233
 - 'prepare' 233
 - 'read' 230
 - 'sense' 237
 - 'set line mode' 235
 - 'set mode' 236
 - 'write' 232
 - line control characters 230
 - lines, display 85
 - sense information 237
 - status information 237
 - telecommunication with System/360, System/370 230
 - terminals and processor attachments, communication with 230
 - transmission code 230
 - ASCII 248
 - EBCDIC 247
- buffer assignment for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 85
- burst mode, definition 262
- byte address, DAT 13,16
- byte-multiplexer channel (*see* multiplexer channel)

C

- cancel (CNCL) key 53
 - effect on console printer 199
- Card Machine, Multi-Function, 2560 (*see* 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine)
- card path diagrams
 - 2560 MFCM 172
 - 5425 MFCU 179
- Card Unit, Multi-Function, 5425 (*see* 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit)

- carriage control commands
 - for 3203 Printer 127,128
 - for 5203 Printer 168,170
- carriage control feature, 1403/3203 96
- CBC (checking block codes) 98
- CCW (channel command word) 108
- central processing unit (*see* CPU)
- change recording 98
- channels
 - channel 0 102
 - addressing I/O devices in 103
 - definition 102
 - channel 1 102
 - channel 2 102
 - channels 3, 4, 5 102
 - identification 35
 - limited channel logout 36
 - multiplexer 102
 - address bytes for 105
 - organization 99,101
 - subchannels 102,104,105
- channel available interruption 97
- channel command word (CCW) 108
- channel control check in CSW
 - for 2560 MFCM 126
 - for 3203 Printer 135
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 149
 - for 5203 Printer 177
- channel data check in CSW
 - for 2560 MFCM 121,126
 - for 3203 Printer 135
 - for 5203 Printer 177
- channel status (*see* status information)
- characters, video display 194,195
- check control mode 63
- checking block codes (CBC) 98
- clear reset 61
- clock, time-of-day 44
- clock comparator 46
 - interruptions 46,98
 - save area, main storage 37
 - validation 98
- CNCL (cancel) key 53
 - effect on console printer 199
- code
 - (*see also* command codes; transmission codes)
 - ASCII 248
 - checking block 98
 - EBCDIC 247
 - external interruption 34
 - ICA 241 to 248
 - interruption 41,34
 - machine-check interruption 38
 - monitor 35
 - PER 35
 - program interruption 34
 - region code, main storage 39
 - sequence 36
 - SVC interruption 34
 - TWX 246
- code, command (*see* command codes)
- code, transmission (*see* transmission codes)
- command codes
 - for BSC terminals 231
 - for console printer 198
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 204

- command codes (*continued*)
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 212
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 216
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 221
 - for video display 191
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 226
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 86
 - for 2560 MFCM 111
 - for 3203 Printer 127 through 130
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 137
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 157
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.1
 - for 5203 Printer 168,170
 - for 5425 MFCU 178
- command execution scheme for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 84
- command, 'control no-op' (*see* 'control no-op' command)
- command, 'sense' (*see* 'sense' command)
- commands, input/output 110
- commands, read (*see* read commands)
- commands, write (*see* write commands)
- Common Carrier TWX terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
- communication region
 - Model 20 compatibility feature 78
 - 1400 series compatibility feature 79
- compatibility features 77
 - deviations from *IBM System/370 Principles of Operation* 97,98
- disk
 - 2311-1 to 3340 series 82 to 95
 - 2314-1 to 3340 series 82 to 95
- System/360
 - input/output devices 77
 - Model 20 78
 - 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature 96
 - 1401, 1440 and 1460 Data Processing Systems 79,80
- compatibility procedure for 3410/3411 and old DOS releases 259
- concurrent maintenance 69
- configurator
 - ICA 202
 - System/370 Model 125 5
- CONS (console) FILE check light 58
- console
 - (*see also* console printer; control panel, operator console; video display)
 - general 47,7
 - keyboard 49
 - alphameric keys 50
 - backspace key 52
 - cursor control 51
 - function keys 53,54
 - tabulator keys 52
 - layout 48
 - outline of operation 7
- console file (CONS FILE) check light 58
- console printer
 - commands
 - command codes 198
 - 'control alarm' 199
 - 'control no-op' 199
 - 'read inquiry' 198
 - 'sense' 199
 - write 198
 - error recovery 200
 - sense information 200
 - status information 199

- console video display (*see* video display)
 - 'control alarm' command, console printer 199
 - control, BSC lines (*see* BSC control)
 - control characters, video display 192,194
 - control, IBM terminal, type 1 (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
 - control, IBM terminal, type 2 (*see* IBM terminal control type 2)
 - control of system 17 to 75
 - 'control no-op' command
 - for console printer 199
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 209
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 215
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 223
 - for video display 194
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
 - for 2311-1,2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 91
 - for 2560 MFCM 119
 - for 3203 Printer 130
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 142
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.6
 - for 5203 Printer 172
 - control panel, operator console
 - effect of power failure 58
 - EMERGENCY PULL switch 57
 - keys 56,57
 - layout 55
 - lights 58
 - 'control primary' command for 5425 183
 - control registers
 - control register 0 26
 - control register 1 27
 - control register 2 27
 - control register 8 28
 - control register 9 29
 - control register 10 30
 - control register 11 30
 - control register 14 31
 - definition 262
 - description 22
 - displaying contents 67
 - overview 24
 - relationship with EC mode PSW masks 25
 - save area in main storage 40
 - validation after machine-check interruption 98
 - 'control secondary' command for 5425 MFCU 183
 - control station, definition 262
 - control storage, definition 262
 - control, telegraph terminal type 1 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 - control, telegraph terminal type 2 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
 - control unit, storage 36
 - control units
 - 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility, Model A2 (*see* 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility)
 - 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control (*see* 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control/3410 Magnetic Tape Unit)
 - 3803 Tape Control (*see* 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit)
 - control, World Trade leased telegraph line (*see* World Trade leased telegraph line control)
 - COPY key 53
 - CPU (central processing unit)
 - concept 4
 - features 5
 - CPU (central processing unit) (*continued*)
 - timer 45
 - main storage save area 37
 - validation after machine-check interruption 18
 - CRT (*see* video display)
 - CSW (channel status word)
 - channel control check in (*see* channel control check in CSW)
 - data check in (*see* channel data check in CSW)
 - unit check in (*see* unit check in CSW)
 - current PSW (*see* program status word, current)
 - cursor
 - control via console keyboard 51
 - definition 262
 - cycle definitions, 2560 MFCM 119
 - cylinders per emulated device 83
- ## D
- damage bits 38
 - DAT (*see* dynamic address translation)
 - Data Collection System, 1030 212
 - data flow (simplified) 6
 - Data Modules, 3348
 - characteristics 136
 - mapping 2311-1 volumes on 82
 - mapping 2314-1 volumes on 82
 - 'data security erase' command
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 160
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
 - definitions 261
 - delayed machine-check interruption bit 49
 - deletion of transparent units 98
 - design of Model 115 4
 - deviations from System/370 97,98
 - device address (*see* addressing)
 - device, input/output (*see* input/output devices)
 - 'diagnose' instruction 97
 - 'dial' command
 - for BSC control 235
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 206
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 - DIL 20 78
 - 'disable' command
 - for BSC control 233
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 205
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 214
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
 - disabling of transparent units 98
 - disk addressing, for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 143
 - disk record formats, for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.1
 - disk storage
 - compatibility features (*see* compatibility features)
 - 3340 (*see* 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility)
 - display format, video display 59
 - display, video (*see* video display)
 - displaying
 - (*see also* modes of operation)
 - address compare 62
 - contents of
 - control registers 67
 - current PSW 67
 - floating point registers 67
 - general registers 67
 - main storage 67,68

- displaying (*continued*)
 - machine status 69 to 73
 - mode selection 61,60
 - modes 61,60
 - printer forms display 69,128
 - program load 62
 - protection key 67
- dual density tape feature
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 157,158,160
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.1,167.2,167.4
- dualing AN and HN trains 168
- "dummy" device addresses
 - 2311-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 83
 - 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 83
- dump display 64
- dynamic address translation (DAT) 12 to 16
 - definition 262
 - translation look-aside buffer 11

E

- EBCDIC code
 - as used in BSC control 247
 - 96-column card code superimposed on 180
- EC (extended control) mode
 - definition 262
 - program status word (PSW) 20,21
 - PSW masks and control registers relationship 25
- EMERGENCY PULL switch 57
- emulation methods
 - Model 20 78
 - 1400 series 79,80
 - 2311-1 or 2314-1 on 3340 series disk storage 82
- emulators (*see compatibility features*)
- 'enable' command
 - for BSC control 233
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 205
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 214
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
- ending message display, IC line mode selection 66
- ENTER key 54,8
 - effect on console printer 199
- 'erase all unprotected' command for video display 193
- 'erase gap' command
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 159
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.3
- 'erase/write' command for video display 193
- ERP (*see error recovery*)
- error alert bit, input/output 36
- error logging 97
- error recovery
 - console printer 200
 - enhancement feature 23
 - video display 197
 - 2560 MFCM 125
 - 3203 Printer 134
 - 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 154
 - 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 167
 - 5203 Printer 176
 - 5425 MFCU 189
- extended control mode (*see EC mode*)
- external damage bit 38
- external interruption code 34

F

- facilities, teleprocessing 204 to 240
- failing storage address 39
- features (*see compatibility features; system features*)
- feed commands
 - for 2560 MFCM 111 to 113
 - for 5425 MFCU 178,182
- field validity flags 36
- figure-protected code ZSC3 226
- fixed areas in main storage 33
- flag, field validity 36
- floating point registers
 - displaying contents 67
 - save area 40
 - validation after machine-check interruptions 98
- format
 - record, for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.1
 - track, 3340 146.1
- formatting write commands (*see write commands*)
- forwardspace commands
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 160
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.4
- front end 99
 - definition 262
- function keys, console keyboard 53

G

- general registers
 - displaying contents 67
 - save area 40
 - validation after machine-check interruptions 98
- glossary 262

H

- 'halt device' instruction 107,97
- 'halt I/O' instruction 107
- hexadecimal, definition 262

I

- IBM terminal control type 1
 - addressing
 - commands 205
 - 1050 Data Communication System 206
 - 1060 Data Communication System 207
 - 2740 Communication Terminal 208
 - characteristics 203
 - commands
 - addressing 205
 - 'break' 206
 - command codes 204
 - 'control no-op' 209
 - 'dial' 206
 - 'disable' 205
 - 'enable' 205
 - 'inhibit' 205
 - polling 205 to 208
 - 'prepare' 205
 - 'read' 203
 - 'sense' 209

IBM terminal control type 1, commands (*continued*)

- 'set line mode' 209
- 'write' 204
- line control characters 203
- line control sequences
 - 1050 Data Communication System 206
 - 1060 Data Communication System 207
 - 2740 Communication Terminal 208
 - 2741 Communication Terminal 208
- polling
 - commands 205 to 208
 - 1050 Data Communication System 206
 - 1060 Data Communication System 207
 - 2740 Communication Terminal 208
- sense information 210
- status information 209
- transmission code 203
 - 1050 Data Communication System 241
 - 1060 Data Communication System 242
 - 2740/2741 Communication Terminals 243
- 2741 operating sequence 208

IBM terminal control type 2

- addressing
 - commands 213,214
 - 1030 Data Collection System 214
- characteristics 212
- commands
 - addressing 213,214
 - command codes 212
 - 'control no-op' 215
 - 'disable' 214
 - 'enable' 214
 - 'inhibit' 213
 - polling 213,214
 - 'prepare' 213
 - 'read' 212
 - 'sense' 215
 - 'set line mode' 215
 - 'write' 213
- line control characters 212
- line control sequences 214
- polling
 - commands 213,214
 - 1030 Data Collection System 214
- sense information 215
- status information 215
- transmission code 212

ICA (*see* integrated communications adapter)

ILT (inline test) key 53

IMPL (initial microprogram load) key 57

'inhibit' command

- for IBM terminal control type 1 205
- for IBM terminal control type 2 213
- for telegraph terminal control type 1 218
- for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
- for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227

initial microprogram load (IMPL) key 57

initial program loading (IPL) 7

inline test and control procedures, ICA 240

inline test (ILT) key 53

input/output (I/O)
(*see also* input/output devices)

- channels 99 to 106
- characteristics 99 to 200
- commands 110
- control 107 to 110

input/output (I/O) (*continued*)

- error alert 36
- instructions
 - general 107
 - 2311-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 95
 - 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 95
- operations
 - channel organization 99 to 102
 - integrated adapters and attachments 99,100
 - usage metering 74,75
- input/output devices
(*see also* input/output)
- addresses 103,105
 - Direct Access Storage Facility, 3340 143
 - main storage location 37
- BSC terminals and processors 230 to 239
- compatibility with System/360 devices 77
- console 191 to 200, 48 to 73
- IBM terminals type 1 203
- IBM terminals type 2 212
- maintenance during system operation 69
- selection 102
- telegraph terminals type 1 216
- telegraph terminals type 2 221
- teleprinters, World Trade 226
- World Trade leased telegraph line terminals 226
- 2560 MFCM 111
- 3203 Printer 127
- 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 136
- 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control/3410 Magnetic Tape Unit 157
- 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit 167.1
- 5203 Printer 168
- 5425 MFCU 178

input/output processor (IOP) 4,5,6, 99 to 102

- definition 262

insert cursor order, video display 195

instruction processing damage bit 38

instruction step display 69

instruction processing unit (IPU)

- definition 262
- description 4

instruction timings

- for 3115-0 models 249 to 255
- for 3115-2 models 256 to 256.8

integrated adapters and attachments

- arrangement 100
- concept 3
- configuration 5
- definition 262,3

integrated communications adapter (ICA)

- codes 241 to 248
- configurator 202
- device addresses 202
- inline test and control procedures 240
- introduction 201
- line addresses 202
- line attachments 201,202
- line mode display 64 to 66
- line positions 202
- line speeds 202
- overview 202
- terminals 201
 - with BSC lines 230
 - with IBM terminal control type 1 203
 - with IBM terminal control type 2 212

integrated communications adapter (ICA) (*continued*)
 with telegraph terminal control type 1 216
 with telegraph terminal control type 2 221
 with World Trade leased telegraph line control 226
International Telegraph Alphabet Number 2 226
interrupt (INTRPT) key 54
interruption codes
 main storage locations
 fixed areas 34,41
 machine-check 38
 PSW 19
interruptions
 external 41 to 46,19,21
 input/output 41
 machine-check 38,41,19,21,98
 mechanism 41
 outline of operation 7
 program 41
 restart 41
 supervisor call 41
interval timer
 display 63
 main storage location 43
INTRPT (interrupt) key 54
I/O (*see* input/output)
I/O devices (*see* input/output devices)
IOP (input/output processor) 4,5,6,96 to 102
 definition 262
IPL (initial program loading) 7
IPU (instruction processing unit)
 definition 262
 description 4

K

Katakana table, 5425 MFCU 181
KEYBD (keyboard) RESET key 58
keyboard
 operator console 49 to 54
 alphameric keys 50
 backspace key 52
 cursor control 51
 function keys 53,54
 tabulator key 52
 telegraph terminals type 2 223
keyboard reset (KEYBD RESET) key 53
keys
 in storage, validation 98
 operator console 49 to 57
 alphameric 50
 backspace 52
 cursor 51
 function 53,54
 IMPL 57
 LAMP TEST 56
 POWER CHECK RESET 57
 POWER OFF 56
 POWER ON 56
 tabulator 52
 TOD CLOCK 56

L

LAMP TEST key 56
leased telegraph lines (*see* World Trade leased telegraph line control)

lights, console control panel 58
limited channel logout 36
line control characters
 for BSC control 230
 for IBM terminal control type 1 203
 for IBM terminal control type 2 212
 for telegraph terminal control type 1 216
 for telegraph terminal control type 2 221
 for World Trade leased telegraph line control 226
line control procedures, ICA 201
line control sequences
 for BSC control 230
 for IBM terminal control type 1
 1050 Data Communication System 206
 1060 Data Communication System 207
 2740 Communication Terminal 208
 2741 Communication Terminal 208
 for IBM terminal control type 2 214
 for telegraph terminal control type 1 218
 for telegraph terminal control type 2 223
line printer
 3203 (*see* 3203 Printer)
 5203 (*see* 5203 Printer)
line transmission codes (*see* transmission codes)
load commands for 2560 MFCM 115
locations in main storage 33 to 40
LOCK key 53
logout
 limited channel 36
 machine-check 32

M

machine-check interruption
 code 38
 invalid checking block codes 98
machine-check logout 32
machine instruction processor (MIP)
 definition 262
 description 4
machine status display 71 to 73
magnetic tape units
 3411/3410 (*see* 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control/3410 Magnetic Tape Unit)
 3420 (*see* 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit)
main storage 4
 address compare display 62
 displaying contents 67,68
 fixed areas 33 to 40
 save areas 37,39,40
main storage addressing
 dynamic address translation 12 to 16
 general 11
 normal 12
main storage controller (MSC) 4
 definition 262
main storage locations 33 to 40
 addresses
 failing storage 39
 input/output 37
 program event 35
 translation exception 35
 backup bit 38
 channel identification 35

main storage locations (*continued*)
codes
 interruption 34
 machine-check interruption 38
 monitor 35
 PER 35
 region 39
 sequence 36
damage bits 38
detect field 36
field validity flags 36
input/output error alert 36
interruption codes 34
interval timer 43
limited channel logout 36
machine-check interruption delayed bit 38
monitor class number 35
program status words 33
save areas 37,39,40
 clock comparator 37
 control register 40
 CPU timer 37
 current PSW 39
 floating point register 40
 general register 40
source field 36
storage control unit 36
storage error bit 38
storage error corrected bit 38
storage key error uncorrected bit 38
system recovery bit 38
termination type 36
validation after machine-check interruptions 98
maintenance, concurrent 69
maintenance displays 69
manual operations 47 to 73, 7 to 9
mapping scheme for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 83
matrix printer, console (*see* console printer)
metering, usage 74,75
method of emulation
 Model 20 78
 1400 series 79,80
 2311-1 disk storage on 3340 series 82 to 95
 2314-1 disk storage on 3340 series 82 to 95
MFCM, 2560 (*see* 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine)
MFCU, 5425 (*see* 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit)
microinstruction, definition 262
microprogram
 definition 262
 Model 20 compatibility feature 78
MIP (machine instruction processor)
 definition 262
 description 4
mode displays 61,60
 (*see also* displaying; modes of operation)
MODE SEL key (*see* mode select key)
mode select (MODE SEL) key 54
 effect on console printer 199
mode selection display 60,8
Model 20 compatibility feature 78
models of 3115/3115-2 5
model-dependent information 97
modem 201
 definition 252

modes of operation
 (*see also* displaying)
 address compare 62
 alter/display 66
 BSC lines 65
 check control 63
 ending message, ICA 66
 ICA line mode 64
 instruction step 68
 interval timer 63
 maintenance 69
 printer forms 69
 program load 62
 resets 61
 restart 69
 save usage counters 69
 start/stop lines 65
 storage dump 64
 store status 69
 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control/3410 Magnetic Tape Unit 157 to 161
 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit 167.1 to 167.4
Module, Data, 3348 136
momentary key, definition 262
monitor class number 35
monitor code 35
monitoring, control registers 22,28
MSC (main storage controller) 4
 definition 262
Multi-Function Card Machine, 2560 (*see* 2560 Multi-Function Card Machine)
Multi-Function Card Unit, 5425 (*see* 5425 Multi-Function Card Unit)
multiplex, definition 262
multiplexer channel
 address bytes 105
 input/output operation 102
multipoint network, definition 262
multiprocessing 97

N

non-formatting write commands (*see* write commands)
normal system reset 51

O

operating modes (*see* modes of operation)
operating sequence, 2741 Communication Terminal 208
orders for video display, description 194,195
 insert cursor order 195
 set buffer address order 194
 start field order 195

P

page
 address 13,15
 definition 262
 table 13,15
 definition 263
 translation exception, definition 263

panel, control (*see* control panel, operator console)
paper tape reader 223
paper tape transmission code (PTTC) 203
PER (program event recording) 22,29
 definition 263
permanent status display 70
polling
 in BSC control, command 233
 in IBM terminal control type 1
 commands 205,207
 1050 Data Communication System 206
 1060 Data Communication System 207
 2740 Communication Terminal 208
 in IBM terminal control type 2
 commands 214,213
 1030 Data Collection System 214
 in telegraph terminal control type 1
 commands 217
 Western Union Plan 115A terminal 218
POWER CHECK reset key 57
power failure, control panel lights 58
POWER OFF key 56
power on 7
POWER ON key 56,7
power (PWR) check light 58
'prepare' command
 for BSC control 233
 for IBM terminal control type 1 205
 for IBM terminal control type 2 213
 for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
print commands for 5425 MFCU 183
printer, console (*see* console printer)
printer forms display 69
printer forms mode 69
Printer, 3203 (*see* 3203 Printer)
Printer, 5203 (*see* 5203 Printer)
Printer, 5213 (*see* console printer)
processors, BSC 230
program event address 35
program event recording (PER) 22
 code 35
 control register 9 29
 control registers 10 and 11 30
 definition 263
program execution 7
program instruction timings 249 to 255
program interruption code 34
program interruptions 41
program load display 62,8
program reset 61
program status word (PSW)
 BC mode 18,19
 current
 displaying contents 67
 save area 39
 EC mode 20,21
 PSW mask and control registers, relationship 25
 general 18
programming errors 104
protection key 67
PSW (*see* program status word)
PTTC (paper tape transmission code) 203

punch commands
 for 2560 MFCM 113
 for 5425 MFCU 182
PWR (power) check light 58

R

read commands
 for BSC control 230
 for IBM terminal control type 1 203
 for IBM terminal control type 2 212
 for telegraph terminal control type 1 216
 for telegraph terminal control type 2 221
 for World Trade leased telegraph line control 226
 for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 88
 for 2560 MFCM 111
 for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 136
 for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 158
 for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.2
 for 5425 MFCU 178
'read inquiry' command for console printer 198
'read modified' command for video display 193
real address 13,16
 definition 263
 mode display 67
real storage
 definition 263
 displaying 67
'recalibrate' command
 for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 86
 for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 144
record format for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.1
record zero, 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.1
recording, main storage change 98
recovery bit 38
reference recording, main storage 98
region code, main storage location 39
registers (*see* control register; floating point registers; general registers)
remote keyboard (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
remote terminals
 in telegraph terminal control type 1 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 in telegraph terminal control type 2 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
REQ (request) key 53
 effect on console printer 198
request (REQ) key 53
 effect on console printer 198
'request track-in-error' command
 for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
'reset ERP mode' command for 5425 MFCU 184
resets, normal and clear 69
restart display 61
'restore' command for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 144
'rewind' command
 for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 158
 for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.3
'rewind unload' command
 for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 158,259
 for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.3

S

- save areas, main storage
 - clock comparator 37
 - control registers 40
 - CPU timer 37
 - current PSW 39
 - floating point registers 40
 - general registers 40
- save usage counters mode 69
- screen (*see* video display)
- search commands
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 37
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 140
- seek commands
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 85
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 142
- segment
 - address 13,14
 - definition 263
 - table 13,14
 - definition 263
 - translation exception, definition 263
- selective calling terminals, AT & T 216
- sense bytes (*see* sense information)
- 'sense' command
 - for BSC control 237
 - for console printer 199
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 209
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 215
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 - for video display 194
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 90
 - for 2560 MFCM 119
 - for 3203 Printer 130
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 141
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
 - for 5203 Printer 172
 - for 5425 MFCU 178
- 'sense drive release' command for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 142
- 'sense drive reserve' command for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 142
- sense information
 - for BSC control 237
 - for console printer 200
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 210
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 215
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 220
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 224
 - for video display 197
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 228
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 93
 - for 2560 MFCM 122
 - for 3203 Printer 131
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 149
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 162
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.7
 - for 5203 Printer 173
 - for 5425 MFCU 185
- 'sense I/O type' command for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
- sequence code 36
- service processor (SVP) 4,6,101
 - definition 263
- service processor (SVP) check light 58
- 'set buffer address' order, video display 194
- 'set diagnose' command
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
- 'set diagnostic mode' command
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.5
- 'set file mask' command
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 86
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 144
- 'set line mode' command
 - (*see also* set mode commands)
 - for BSC control 235
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 209
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 215
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
- set mode commands
 - (*see also* 'set line mode' commands)
 - for BSC control 236
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 160
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.4
 - for 5425 MFCU 184
- 'set sector' command for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 145
- SHIFT keys, console keyboard 53,54
- source field, limited channel logout 36
- stacker select commands
 - for 2560 MFCM 118,112
 - for 5425 MFCU 183,184
- 'start field' order, video display 195
- 'start I/O' instruction 107
- 'start I/O fast release' instruction 97
- START key, console keyboard 54
- status information
 - for BSC control 237
 - for console printer 199
 - for IBM terminal control type 1 209
 - for IBM terminal control type 2 215
 - for telegraph terminal control type 1 219
 - for telegraph terminal control type 2 224
 - for video display 196
 - for World Trade leased telegraph line control 228
 - for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 91
 - for 2560 MFCM 120
 - for 3203 Printer 130
 - for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 148
 - for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 161
 - for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.6
 - for 5203 Printer 172
 - for 5425 MFCU 184
- STOP key, console keyboard 54
- storage control unit 36
- storage dump display 64
- storage error bit 38
- storage error corrected bit 38
- storage key error uncorrected bit 38
- storage locations (*see* main storage locations)
- storage, main (*see* main storage)
- store status mode 69
- string switch feature for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 145
- subchannels (*see* channels)

subprocessor, definition 263
SVC (supervisor call) interruption code 34
SVP (service processor) 4
 definition 263
SVP (service processor) check light 58
system
 control 17
 damage bit 38
 design 4
 features 5
 operation, outline of 7
 profile 2
 recovery bit 38
system reset display 61
System/360
 input/output device compatibility with Model 115 devices 77
 machines, telecommunication with 230
 Model 20 compatibility feature 78
System/370
 machines, telecommunication with 230
 Model 115 deviations from 97,98

T

tabulator keys, console keyboard 52
tag line, definition 263
tape units
 3410 (*see* 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control, 3410 Magnetic Tape Unit)
 3411 (*see* 3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control, 3410 Magnetic Tape Unit)
 3420 (*see* 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit)
telegraph lines, World Trade leased (*see* World Trade leased telegraph line control)
telegraph terminal control type 1
 addressing
 AT & T terminals 217,218
 commands 217
 Western Union Plan 115A terminals 217,218
 characteristics 216
 commands
 addressing 217
 'break' 218
 command codes 216
 'control no-op' 219
 'disable' 219
 'enable' 219
 'inhibit' 218
 polling 217
 'prepare' 219
 'read' 216
 'sense' 219
 'set line mode' 219
 'write' 217
 line control characters 216
 line control sequences 218
 polling
 commands 217
 Western Union Plan 115A terminals 217,218
 selective calling terminals 216
 sense information 219
 status information 219
 transmission code 245,216
telegraph terminal control type 2
 characteristics 221
 commands
 'break' 222

telegraph terminal control type 2, commands (*continued*)
 command codes 221
 'control no-op' 223
 'dial' 222
 'disable' 222
 'enable' 222
 'inhibit' 222
 'prepare' 222
 'read' 221
 'sense' 222
 'set line mode' 222
 'write' 222
Common Carrier TWX Models 33/35 221
keyboard operation 223
line control characters 221
line control sequences 223
paper tape reader operation 223
sense information 224
status information 224
transmission code 246,221
TWX Models 33/35 221
teleprinters, World Trade (*see* World Trade leased telegraph line control)
teleprocessing facilities 201 to 240
 (*see also* BSC; integrated communications adapter; IBM terminal control type 1; IBM terminal control type 2; telegraph terminal control type 1; telegraph terminal control type 2; World Trade leased telegraph line control)
teleprocessing metering 74
terminals
 American Telephone & Telegraph company (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 BSC 230
 Common Carrier TWX (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
 IBM type 1 (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
 IBM type 2 (*see* IBM terminal control type 2)
 ICA 201
 selective calling (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 telegraph type 1 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 telegraph type 2 (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
 Western Union (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
 World Trade (*see* World Trade leased telegraph line control)
termination type bits limited channel logout 36
test, inline, ICA 240
'test I/O' instruction 107
thermal (TH) check light 58
time-of-day (TOD) clock 44
 key 56
timers 42
 clock comparator 45
 main storage save area 37
 CPU timer 45
 main storage save area 37
 damage bit 38
 Model 115 deviations from System/370 97
 interval timer 43
 display 63
 time-of-day clock 44
 validation after machine-check interruptions 98
timing facility damage bit 38
timings of instructions
 for 3115-0 models 249 to 255
 for 3115-2 models 256 to 256.8
TLB (translation look-aside buffer) 11
TOD (time-of-day clock) 44
TOD CLOCK key 56

track capacity, 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.2
track format, 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 146.1
'transfer-in-channel' (TIC) command for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340
Series Compatibility feature 91
transferring existing programs to the Model 115 81
translation exception address 35
translation look-aside buffer (TLB) 11,6
transmission codes
Baudot 245,216
for BSC control 230
ASCII 248,230
EBCDIC 247,230
figure-protected code ZSC 3 226
for IBM terminal control type 1 203
1050 Data Communication System 241
1060 Data Communication System 242
2740/2741 Communication Terminals 243
for IBM terminal control type 2 244,212
for telegraph terminal control type 1 245
for telegraph terminal control type 2 246,221
for World Trade leased telegraph line control 226
International Telegraph Alphabet Number 2 226
paper tape 203,212
PTTC 203,212
TWX 246,221
tributary station, definition 263
TWX code 246,221
TWX Common Carrier terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
type 1 IBM terminals (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
type 1 telegraph terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
type 2 IBM terminals (*see* IBM terminal control type 2)
type 2 telegraph terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 2)
typamatic key, definition 263

U

UCS (universal character set) commands
for 3203 Printer 129
for 5203 Printer 171
unit check in CSW, meaning of
for 2560 MFCM 120,125
for 3203 Printer 130
for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 148
for 5203 Printer 173,176
for 5425 MFCU 185,189
unit status (*see* status information)
universal character set (UCS) commands
for 3203 Printer 129
for 5203 Printer 171
UPPER CASE light 58
usage metering 74,75

V

valid characters, video display 192,194
validation after machine-check interruption
keys in storage 98
main storage locations 98
registers 98
timers 98
validity bits, machine-check interruption code 38
validity flags, field, location 36
video display
(*see also* displaying, mode displays; modes of operation)
attention identifier 195
attribute character 195

video display (*continued*)
characters 194
commands
command codes 191
'control no-op' 194
'erase all unprotected' 193
'erase/write' 193
'read modified' 193
'sense' 194
'write' 191
display format 59
error recovery 197
orders
'insert cursor' 195
'set buffer address' 194
'start field' 195
sense information 197
status information 196
virtual address 13
definition 263
displaying 68

W

Western Union Plan 115A terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
World Trade leased telegraph line control
characteristics 226
commands
'break' 227
command codes 226
'control no-op' 227
'disable' 227
'enable' 227
'inhibit' 227
'prepare' 227
'read' 226
'sense' 227
'set line mode' 227
'write' 227
line control characters 226
sense information 228
status information 228
transmission code 226
write commands
for BSC control 232
for console printer 198
for IBM terminal control type 1 204
for IBM terminal control type 2 213
for telegraph terminal control type 1 217
for telegraph terminal control type 2 222
for video display 191
for World Trade leased telegraph line control 227
for 2560 MFCM 116
for 2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature 89
for 3203 Printer 127
for 3340 Direct Access Storage Facility 138,139
for 3411/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 157
for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.1
for 5203 Printer 168
for 5425 MFCU 182,183
'write tape mark' command
for 3411/3410 magnetic tape subsystem 159
for 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystem 167.3

Numeric

83 B2/3 AT & T selective calling terminals (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
115A terminals, Western Union (*see* telegraph terminal control type 1)
360 system (*see* System/360)
370 system (*see* System/370)
1030 Data Collection System (*see* telegraph control type 2)
1050 Data Communication System (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
1060 Data Communication System (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
1400 Series Compatibility feature 79,80
1403/3203 carriage control (compatibility) feature 96,128
1440 compatibility feature 79,80
1460 compatibility feature 79,80
2311-1, 2314-1/3340 Series Compatibility feature
 block multiplexing 82
 buffer assignment 63,85
 command execution scheme 84
 cylinders per emulated device 83
 “dummy” device addresses 83
 emulated 2311 and 2314 commands
 command codes 86
 ‘control no-op’ 91
 read 88
 ‘recalibrate’ 86
 search 87
 seek 85
 ‘sense’ 90
 ‘set file mask’ 86
 ‘transfer-in channel’ 91
 write 89
 general 82
 input/output instructions 95
 mapping schemes 82
 method of emulation 82
 sense information 93
 status information 91
2560 Multi-Function Card Machine (MFCM)
 card path diagrams 112
 channel control check in CSW 121,126
 channel data check in CSW 121,126
 channel status 120
 commands
 command codes 111
 ‘control no-op’ 119
 ‘load print head buffer’ 115
 punch 113
 read 111
 ‘sense’ 119
 stacker select 118
 ‘write card’ 116
 cycle definitions 119
 error recovery 125
 sense information 122
 status information 120
 unit check in CSW 120,125
2740 Communication Terminal (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
2741 Communication Terminal (*see* IBM terminal control type 1)
3203 Printer
 channel control check in CSW 135
 channel data check in CSW 135

3203 Printer (*continued*)
 commands
 carriage control 127
 command codes 127,128,129
 ‘control no-op’ 130
 ‘sense’ 130
 write 127
 error recovery 133
 sense information 131
 status information 130
 unit check in CSW 130
 unit exception in CSW 130
3340 Direct Access Storage Facility
 block multiplexing 145,82
 commands
 command codes 137
 ‘control no-op’ 142
 read 136
 ‘recalibrate’ 144
 ‘restore’ 144
 search 140
 seek 142
 ‘sense’ 141
 ‘set file mask’ 144
 ‘set sector’ 145
 write 138,139
 disk addressing 143
 error recovery 154
 record zero 146.1
 sense information 149
 status information 148
 string switch feature 145
 track and record formats 146.1
 track capacity 146.1
 unit check in CSW 148
3348 Data Module 136
3411 Magnetic Tape Unit and Control/3410 Magnetic Tape Unit
 commands
 backspace 159
 command codes 157
 ‘control no-op’ 161
 ‘data security erase’ 160
 ‘erase gap’ 159
 ‘ERP loop write-to-read’ 161
 forwardspace 159,160
 read 158
 ‘request track-in-error’ 161
 ‘rewind’ 158
 ‘rewind unload’ 158,259
 ‘sense’ 161
 ‘set diagnose’ 161
 ‘set diagnostic mode’ 161
 set mode 160
 ‘write’ 157
 ‘write tape mark’ 159
 compatibility with old DOS releases 259
 data converter check bit 163
 error recovery 167
 sense information 162
 status information 161
3420 Magnetic Tape Unit (*see* 3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit)

3803 Tape Control/3420 Magnetic Tape Unit

commands

- backspace 167.4
- command codes 167.1
- 'control no-op' 167.6
- 'data security erase' 167
- 'erase gap' 167.3
- 'ERP loop write-to-read' 167.5
- forwardspace 167.4
- read 167.2
- 'request track-in-error' 167.5
- 'rewind' 167.3
- 'rewind unload' 167.3
- 'sense' 167.5
- 'sense I/O type' 167.5
- 'set diagnose' 167.5
- 'set diagnostic mode' 167.5
- set mode 167.4
- 'write' 167.1
- 'write tape mark' 167.3
- sense information 167.7
- status information 167.6

5203 Printer

- carriage control buffer 168
- channel control check 177
- channel data check 177
- character sets 168
- commands
 - 'advance to end of sheet' 171

5203 Printer, commands (*continued*)

- carriage control 168
- command codes 170
- 'control no-op' 172
- 'sense' 172
- UCS 171
- write 168

- dualing AN and HN trains 168

- error recovery 176

- sense information 173

- status information 172

5213 Printer (*see console printer*)

5425 Multi-Function Card Unit (MFCU)

- card path diagrams 179

commands

- command codes 178
- 'control primary' 183
- 'control secondary' 183
- read 178,182
- 'reset ERP mode' 184
- 'sense' 178
- 'set ERP mode' 184
- write print 183
- write punch 182

- error recovery 189

- sense information 185

- status information 184

- unit check in CSW 185,189

IBM System/370 Model 115

Functional Characteristics

GA33-1510-1

**READER'S
COMMENT
FORM**

Your views about this publication may help improve its usefulness; this form will be sent to the author's department for appropriate action. Using this form to request system assistance or additional publications will delay response, however. For more direct handling of such requests, please contact your IBM representative or the IBM Branch Office serving your locality.

Possible topics for comment are:

Clarity Accuracy Completeness Organization Index Figures Examples Legibility

Cut or Fold Along Line

What is your occupation? -----

Number of latest Technical Newsletter (if any) concerning this publication: -----

Please indicate in the space below if you wish a reply.

Thank you for your cooperation. No postage stamp necessary if mailed in the U.S.A. (Elsewhere, an IBM office or representative will be happy to forward your comments.)

Your comments, please . . .

This manual is part of a library that serves as a reference source for systems analysts, programmers, and operators of IBM systems. Your comments on the other side of this form will be carefully reviewed by the persons responsible for writing and publishing this material. All comments and suggestions become the property of IBM.

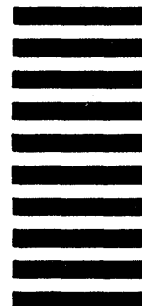
Cut or Fold Along Line

Fold

Fold

First Class
Permit 40
Armonk
New York

Business Reply Mail
No postage stamp necessary if mailed in the U.S.A.



Postage will be paid by:
International Business Machines Corporation
Department 813B
1133 Westchester Avenue
White Plains, New York 10604

Fold

Fold

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics (File No. S370-01) Printed in U.S.A. GA33-1510-1



International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, New York 10604
(U.S.A. only)

IBM World Trade Corporation
821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
(International)



Technical Newsletter

This Newsletter No. GN33-1715
Date 13 December 1976

Base Publication No. GA33-1510-1
System S370-01

Previous Newsletters GN33-1620
GN33-1673
GN33-1679
GN33-1689

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics

© IBM Corp. 1973

This Technical Newsletter provides replacement pages for the subject publication. Pages to be inserted and/or removed are:

81, 82	267, 268
167, 167.1	273, 274
167.4 through 167.7	277
203, 204	

A change to the text or to an illustration is indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Amendments

Minor changes have been made where necessary to bring information up to date.
The index has been revised.

Note: Please file this cover letter at the back of the manual to provide a record of changes.



This Newsletter No. GN33-1689
Date 5 July 1976

Base Publication No. GA33-1510-1
File No. S370-01

Previous Newsletters GN33-1620
GN33-1673
GN33-1679

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics

© IBM Corp. 1973

This Technical Newsletter provides replacement pages for the subject publication. Pages to be inserted and/or removed are:

v, vi	167.2, 167.3 (reissued)
65, 66	223, 224
66.1 (added)	235 through 240
167, 167.1 (reissued)	265 through 277

A change to the text or to an illustration is indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Amendments

- Information is brought up to date in the "System Control" and "Teleprocessing Facilities" chapters.
- Some information about 3803/3420 magnetic tape subsystems, issued in the last Technical Newsletter (GN33-1679), is corrected.
- The index is revised.

Note: Please file this cover letter at the back of the manual to provide a record of changes.



This Newsletter No. GN33-1679
Date 19 May 1976

Base Publication No. GA33-1510-1
File No. S370-01

Previous Newsletters GN33-1620
GN33-1673

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics

© IBM Corp. 1973

This Technical Newsletter provides replacement pages for the subject publication. Pages to be inserted and/or removed are:

v through viii	167, 167.1 (added)
3 through 6	167.2 through 167.7 (added)
81, 82	167.8 (added), 168
135, 136	275 through 277
145, 146	

A change to the text or to an illustration is indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Amendments

- Information has been added about a new submodel of the 3115-2 Processing Unit, with increased main storage size.
- Information has been added about a faster magnetic tape subsystem which can now be attached to the magnetic tape adapter. Pages 167.1 to 167.7 are new and should be read in their entirety.
- Other pages have been revised to bring information up to date.
- The Contents list, Illustrations list and Index have been updated where necessary. Please note that the Index will be more fully updated in a forthcoming Technical Newsletter.

Note: *Please file this cover letter at the back of the manual to provide a record of changes.*



Base Publication No. GA33-1510-1
System S/370-01

Previous Newsletters GN33-1620

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics

© IBM Corp. 1973

This Technical Newsletter provides replacement pages for the subject publication. Pages to be inserted and/or removed are:

iii through viii ✓	77, 78	146.1, 146.2 (added)
1 through 6 ✓	83, 84	149, 150
6.1 (added)	84.1 (added)	249, 250
7, 8	97 through 106	255, 256 (added)
11 through 14	135 through 136.1	256.1 through 256.8 (added)
63, 64 ✓	137, 138	261, 262
69, 70	141 through 146	265 through 277 (added)

A change to the text or to an illustration is indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Amendments

- Information about the new versions of the 3115 Processing Unit has been added throughout the publication.
- Information has been added about the 3340 String Switch feature (only for 3115-2 models).
- Appendix B has been expanded to include instruction timings for the new versions of the 3115 Processing Unit; this information is given on pages 256 through 256.8 and these pages should be read in their entirety.
- The contents list, illustrations list, and index are updated where necessary.

Note: *Please file this cover letter at the back of the manual to provide a record of changes.*



Technical Newsletter

This Newsletter No. GN33-1620
Date 9 December 1974

Base Publication No. GA33-1510-1
File No. S/370-01

Previous Newsletters None

IBM System/370 Model 115 Functional Characteristics

© IBM Corp. 1973

This Technical Newsletter provides replacement pages for the subject publication. Pages to be inserted and/or removed are:

Title page, ii	127 through 136
iii through viii ✓	136.1 (added)
1 through 6 ✓	141, 142 ✓
63, 64 ✓	149 through 154
77, 78	265 through 268 ✓
83 through 96	273 through 276 ✓

A change to the text or to an illustration is indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

Summary of Amendments

- Information has been added on a new model of the IBM 3115 Processing Unit, with increased main storage capacity.
- Information has been added on an RPQ which enables a user to install both a multiplexer channel and an integrated card I/O attachment on a 3115.
- Information has been added on the 3340 Fixed Head feature.
- Information covering the 2311-1/3340 series compatibility feature and the 2314/3340 series compatibility feature has been revised.
- Further information on the 1403/3203 Carriage Control feature is now included.
- The contents list, illustrations list and index are updated where necessary.

Note: Please file this cover letter at the back of the manual to provide a record of changes.

IBM

International Business Machines Corporation
Data Processing Division
1133 Westchester Avenue, White Plains, New York 10604
(U.S.A. only)

IBM World Trade Corporation
821 United Nations Plaza, New York, New York 10017
(International)